PC WORLD

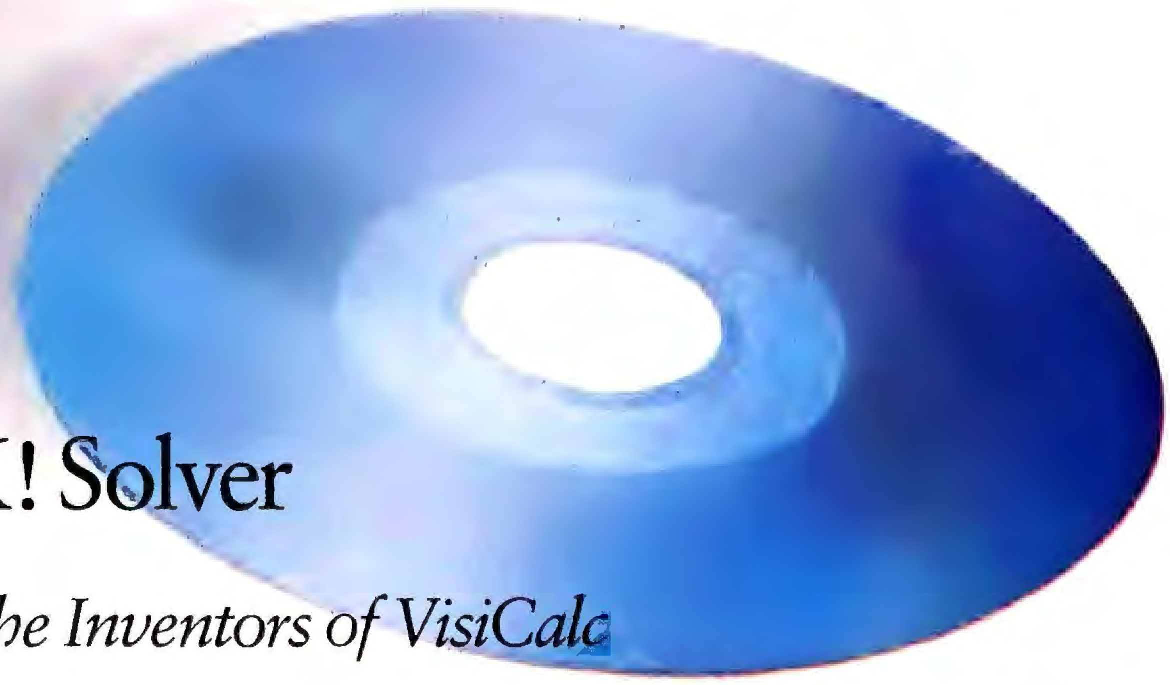
Volume 1, Number 4

The Personal Computer Magazine for IBM PCs and Compatibles

New WordStar 3.3

Faster than a Spinning Floppy

RAM Disk Software for the IBM PC



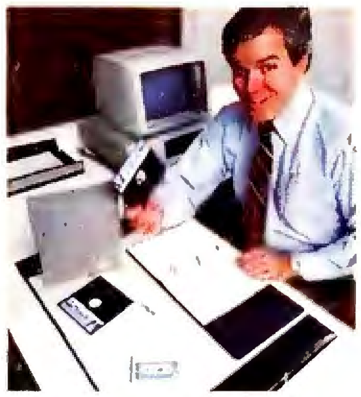
Exploring TK! Solver

New from the Inventors of VisiCalc

Writing Better BASIC
Teaching Your PC to Speak Mainframe
Tracking Bulls and Bears with Your Spreadsheet
Do You Want Your PC to Do Four Things at Once?
The Future of Concurrency and CP/M

THE NEW EXECUTIVE PACKAGE™ FROM ALPHA.

FORTY BUSINESS PROGRAMS YOU'LL USE EVERY DAY. STARTING TODAY.



All of a sudden, there are forty new ways to help run your business with an IBM PC.

Ways to help you plan, budget, schedule and forecast with the skill and insight of a b-school grad. But without attending business school, and without learning complicated programming.

It's called the Executive Package from Alpha. And it puts together forty powerful business analysis and projection formulas into ready to use programs for all types of executives, in every kind of business.

Use CASHPLAN for tighter cashflow management.

Call up INFLATE to help calculate profits in a changing market.

Optimize production scheduling and project planning with any of three CRITICAL PATH METHOD formulas.

Analyze your competition with GROWTH.

There's even BETA for objective weighing of stock investment risks.

SIMPLIFIES VISICALC,® 1-2-3™ AND MULTIPLAN.™

Plus, the programs are designed to work together with VisiCalc,® 1-2-3,™ Multiplan™ and BASIC. So now you'll have more of the tremendous power of these popular programs at your fingertips, ready to go.

To help keep things simple, each program in the Executive Package is presented with a real-world example of how another company used it and the results they got. You simply plug in *your* numbers and out come *your* company's solutions.

And like all software from Alpha, the Executive Package comes with a concise instructional audio tape to introduce you to the programs and get you started solving business problems right away. Nothing else is this easy. And with a suggested retail price of just $145 complete, nothing else you buy for your computer will pay back as fast.

Start doing the kind of critical everyday business calculations you'd be doing right now, if only you could. Because now you can.

See the remarkable new Executive Package from Alpha at leading computer and software stores. Or call us at 1-800-451-1018 (in Massachusetts call 1-617-229-2924 collect) for the name of the Alpha dealer nearest you.

THE NEW EXECUTIVE PACKAGE FROM

alpha SOFTWARE CORP.

12 New England Executive Office Park, Burlington, Massachusetts 01803


GUARANTEED
TOUGH.
LEADING
EDGE.
225 Turnpike Street, Canton, Massachusetts 02021
Toll-free: 1-800-343-6833; in Massachusetts (617) 828-8150. Telex 951-624.


BUY A BANANA.
SAVE A BUNCH.
MORE TO COME.
GORILLA · TOUGH · GUARANTEED
Leading Edge Products, Inc., 225 Turnpike Street, Canton, Massachusetts 02021.
Call: toll-free 1-800-343-6833; or in Massachusetts call collect (617) 828-8150. Telex 951-624.

The new COMPAQ Portable Computer. IBM compatibility to go.

Simple, isn't it? The COMPAQ™ Portable Computer can do what the IBM® Personal Computer does. To go.

It runs all the popular programs written for the IBM. It works with the same printers and other peripherals. It even accepts the same optional expansion electronics that give it additional capabilities and functionality.

There's really only one big difference. The COMPAQ Computer is designed to travel.

Carry the COMPAQ Computer from office to office. Carry it home on the weekend. Or take it on business trips.

If you're a consultant, take it to your client's office.

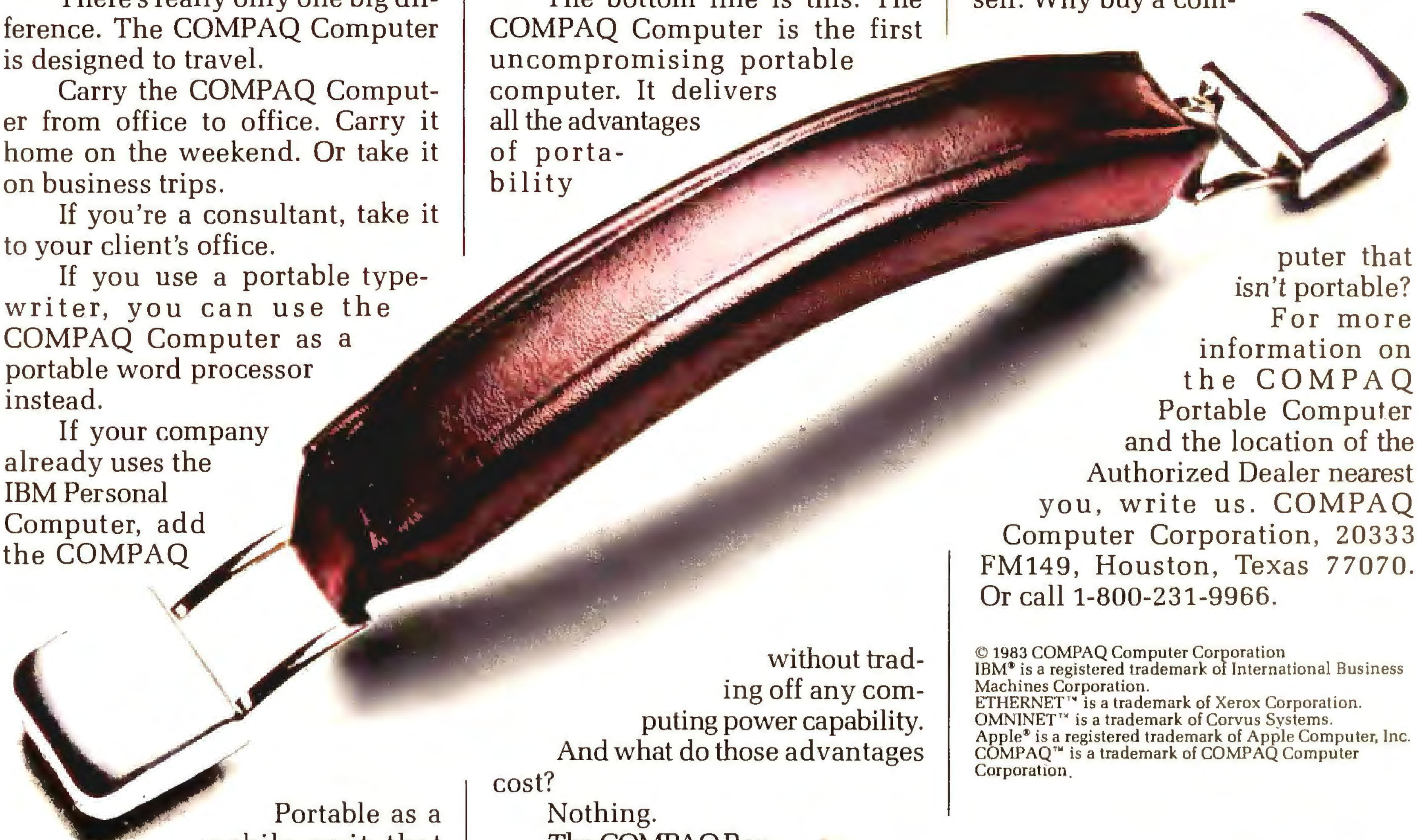
If you use a portable typewriter, you can use the COMPAQ Computer as a portable word processor instead.

If your company already uses the IBM Personal Computer, add the COMPAQ Portable as a mobile unit that can use the same programs, the same data disks, and even the same user manuals.

There are more programs available for the COMPAQ Computer than for any other portable. More, in fact, than for most non-portables. You can buy them in hundreds of computer stores nationwide, and they run as is, right off the shelf.

With most other portables you'd probably need to buy an additional display screen because the built-in screen is too small for certain tasks, like word processing. The COMPAQ Computer's display screen is nine inches diagonally, big enough for any job, and it shows a full 80 characters across. And the built-in display offers high-resolution graphics and text characters on the same screen.

The bottom line is this. The COMPAQ Computer is the first uncompromising portable computer. It delivers all the advantages of portability without trading off any computing power capability.



And what do those advantages cost?

Nothing.

The COMPAQ Portable sells for hundreds less than a comparably equipped IBM or APPLE® III. Standard features include 128K bytes of internal memory and a 320K-byte disk drive, both of which are extra-cost options on the IBM. Memory and additional disk drive upgrades are available options to double those capacities.

In the standard configuration, the COMPAQ Computer has three open slots for functional expansion electronics as your needs and applications grow. It accepts standard network and communications interfaces including ETHERNET™ and OMNINET™.

If you're considering a personal computer, there's a new question you need to ask yourself. Why buy a computer that isn't portable?

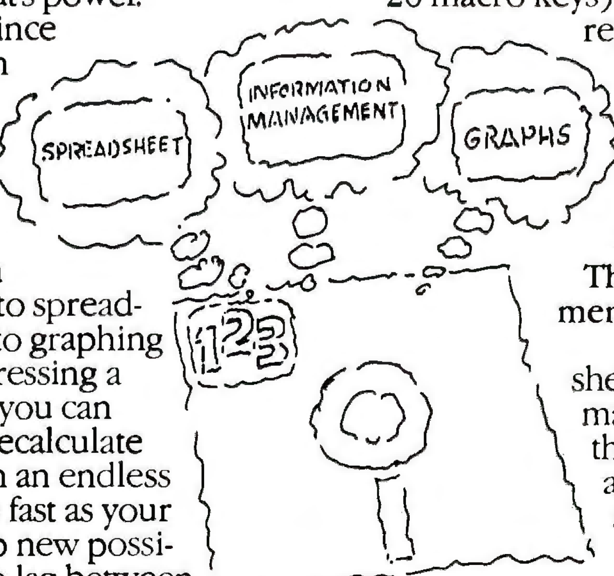
For more information on the COMPAQ Portable Computer and the location of the Authorized Dealer nearest you, write us. COMPAQ Computer Corporation, 20333 FM149, Houston, Texas 77070. Or call 1-800-231-9966.

COMPAQ™
PORTABLE COMPUTER
The most computer you can carry

INTRODUCING 1-2-3™. IT'LL HAVE YOUR IBM/PC JUMPING THROUGH HOOPS.

Meet 1-2-3 – the remarkable new software package that puts more raw power at your finger tips than anything yet created for the IBM PC. 1-2-3 actually combines information management, spreadsheet, and graphing in one program that can perform all three functions interchangeably and instantly at the touch of a key. That's power.

To explain: since 1-2-3's information management, spreadsheet and graphing functions reside in memory simultaneously, you can go from retrieval to spreadsheet calculation to graphing instantly, just by pressing a few keys. So now you can experiment and recalculate and look at data in an endless variety of ways. As fast as your mind can think up new possibilities. There's no lag between you and the computer. And that's a new kind of power – power that's greater than the sum of its programs.



Spreadsheet, graphing, information management all-in-one.

The spreadsheet function.

If 1-2-3 were just a spreadsheet, you'd want it because it has the largest workspace on the market (2048 rows by 256 columns). To give you a quick idea of 1-2-3's spreadsheet capabilities: VisiCalc's spreadsheet for the IBM PC offers 15 arithmetic, logical and relational operators, 28 functions and 32 spreadsheet-related commands. 1-2-3 has 15 operators, 41 functions and 66 commands. And if you include data base and graphing commands, it actually has 110!

In addition, 1-2-3 is up to 50 times as fast as established spreadsheets. With all the features you've ever seen on spreadsheets. 1-2-3 also gives you the capability to develop customized applications (with 26 macro keys) and lets you perform repetitive tasks automatically with one keystroke. If 1-2-3 were just a spreadsheet, it would be a very powerful tool. But it's much, much more.

The information management function.

Add to 1-2-3's spreadsheet a selective information management function, and the power curve rises at an awesome rate. Particularly since 1-2-3's information management capability reads files from other programs such as WordStar, VisiCalc and dBase II. So you can accumulate information on a limitless variety of topics and extract all or pieces of it for instant spreadsheet analysis. Unheard of before. Specific 1-2-3 information management features include sorting with primary and secondary keys. Retrieval using up to 32 criteria. 1-2-3 performs statistical functions such as mean, count, standard deviation and variance. It can produce histograms on part or all of the data base. 1-2-3 also allows for the maintenance of multiple data bases and multiple criteria.

The graphing function.

1-2-3 enables you to create graphs of up to six variables using information already on the spreadsheet. And have it on screen in less than two seconds! Once you've made a graph, three keystrokes will display it in a different form. If data on the spreadsheet changes, you can display a revised graph with one keystroke. This instant relationship of one format to another opens up a whole new application area. For the first time graphics can be used as a "what if" thinking tool!

For a full demonstration of 1-2-3's remarkable power, visit your nearby 1-2-3 dealer. For his name and address, call 1-800-343-5414 (in Mass. call 617-492-7171).

Lotus Development Corporation,
55 Wheeler Street, Cambridge, MA 02138.

1-2-3™

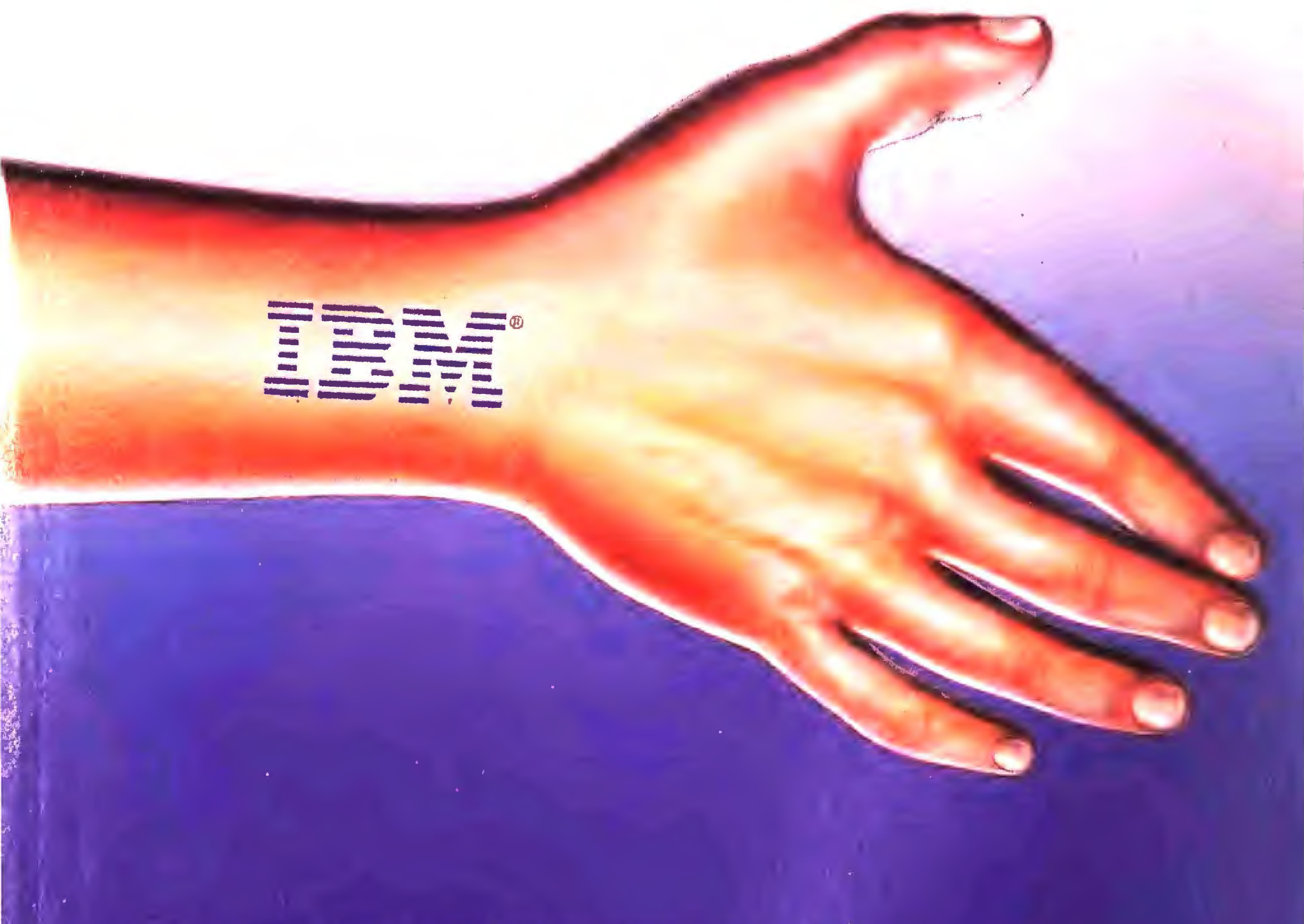
QUADRAM™ INAUGURATES THE

Use Apple software in your IBM PC and XT
Who said you can't mix Apples and IBMs? Innovation by Quadram makes it possible with Quadlink™. A simulated Apple computer on a revolutionary new enhancement board.

Most programs designed for the Apple II, II Plus or IIe -- including educational software and entertainment options -- are now compatible with IBM PC's sophisticated business capabilities. That's right. An Apple and an IBM. In one computer with no software limitations. Quadlink by Quadram opens a whole new world of possibilities.

Easy to use
Quadlink plugs inside IBM PCs. No conversion or reformatting of diskettes needed. Just load Apple software in the IBM and key one command. That puts you in the Apple mode. When ready to switch back, just press a different key. It's that simple. Like having an Apple 64K computer inside your IBM.

Keep the extras
Quadlink allows use of all IBM enhancements while running Apple software. Printers, buffers, monitors and more.



Apple and the Apple logo are registered trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.
IBM and the IBM logo are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.

MERGER OF APPLE AND IBM

When using a monitor there's no plugging or unplugging cables. Apple programs will appear on an IBM monochrome or color monitor, like Quadram's vivid RGB color monitor Quadchrome, more clearly than Apple's own screen -- even while working with Apple's high resolution color graphics.

Explore your options
Quadlink comes standard with 64K memory. Requiring only one expansion slot, it offers a parallel port designed to operate most printers and parallel devices. A serial port for connecting modems, printers and other serial accessories. And a game port for a variety of entertainment options. There's nothing like Quadlink. And nothing like reliable Quadram Quality to stand behind it.

Quadram Corporation is a division of Intelligent Systems, for over a decade an innovator in personal computer enhancements and color graphics peripherals.

Quadram products are available only through authorized dealers worldwide. Visit one and ask for a demonstration of Quadlink. Check on our other enhancements too, especially Quadboard, the original multifunction board for the IBM PC.

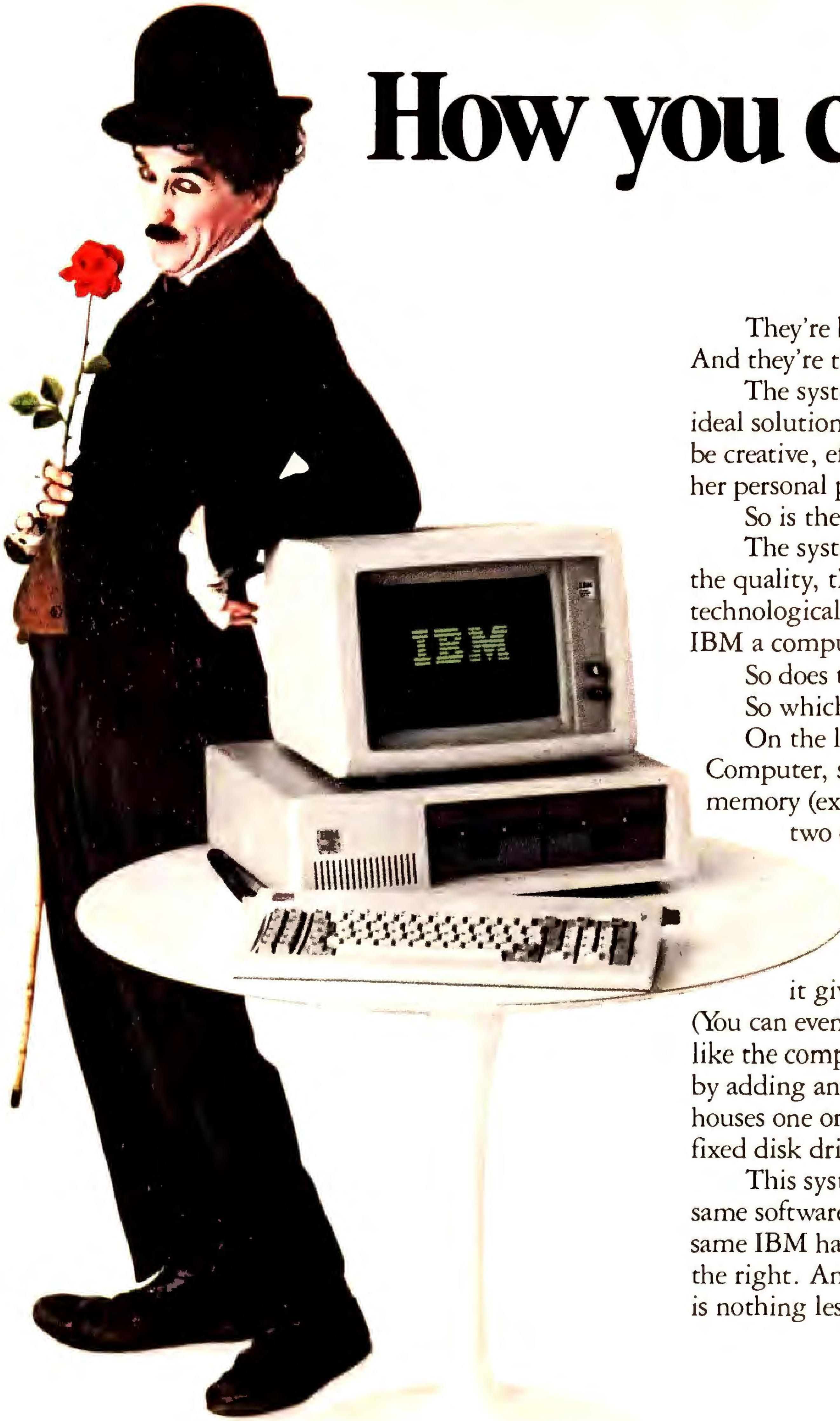
Priced at only $680, we think you'll like what we've discovered.

QUADRAM
CORPORATION
An Intelligent Systems Company

4357 Park Drive / Norcross, Ga. 30093 / (404) 923-6666
TWX 810-766-4915 (QUADRAM NCRS)

Available for delivery to retail stores worldwide in late June.

How you can tell



They're both IBM Personal Computer
And they're the same. Only different.

The system that's on the left is the ideal solution for a person who wants to be creative, efficient and improve his or her personal productivity.

So is the other one.

The system on the left incorporates the quality, the reliability and the technological excellence that have made IBM a computer leader for over 30 years.

So does the other one.

So which is which? Simple.

On the left is the IBM Personal Computer, starting with 64KB of user memory (expandable to 640KB) and two optional 5¼″ diskette drives. It can easily satisfy your computing needs at the office, at home or in school With 5 expansion slots, it gives you room to grow. (You can even make it function like the computer shown on the right by adding an expansion unit that houses one or two 10-million-character fixed disk drives.)

This system can run most of the same software and accept most of the same IBM hardware as the computer on the right. And its price/performance is nothing less than remarkable.

The IBM Personal Computer

which is which.

On the right is the IBM Personal Computer XT, starting with 128KB of user memory (expandable to 640KB), a 5¼" 360KB diskette drive *plus* a standard 10-million-character fixed disk drive that's *already* built in.

For a businessperson with heavyweight data requirements, the XT packs a lot of power, because it can store the facts, figures, names and numbers you need to know.

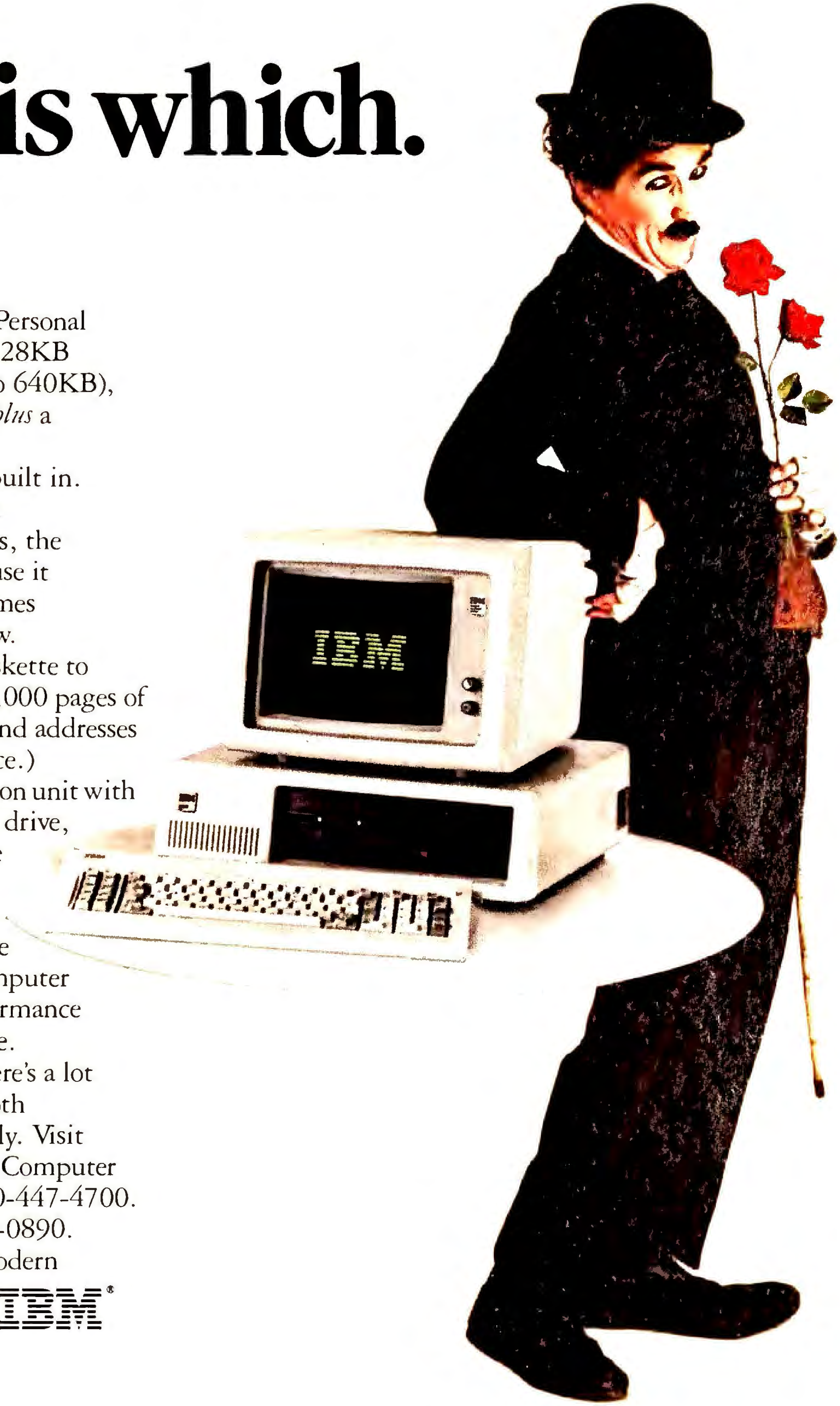
(Instead of going from diskette to diskette, you can have up to 5,000 pages of text or up to 100,000 names and addresses conveniently stored in one place.)

And by adding an expansion unit with a *second* 10-megabyte fixed disk drive, you get even more high-volume capacity from the system.

XT can run most of the same software and accept most of the same IBM hardware as the computer on the left. And its price/performance is nothing less than remarkable.

But for you to choose, there's a lot left (or right) to learn about both members of this growing family. Visit your authorized IBM Personal Computer dealer. To learn where, call 800-447-4700. In Alaska or Hawaii, 800-447-0890.

And see which tool for modern times is right (or left) for you.



The IBM Personal Computer XT

PC WORLD

The Personal Computer Magazine
For IBM PCs and Compatibles

State of the Art

Notice to Readers
As a service to our readers, *PC World* features a Reader Service Inquiry card in each issue. This card can be used to get additional information about products advertised in *PC World*. To use the card, simply circle the Reader Service Number of the products you're interested in and mail in the card—no postage is necessary. The information you want will be mailed to you by the product manufacturers. For your convenience, Reader Service Numbers are listed in the Products and Advertisers Indexes, grouped according to type of product and manufacturer.

Review

Photo/illustration credits: Aurora Systems, 40; David Bishop, 105; Bruce Charonnat, 262; Norman Dog, 40 (illustration); Lance Jackson, 218, 226; Michael Jay, 78; Ed Kashi, 58; John Littleboy, 67; Jeffrey Newbury, 176; Steve Nordström, 281 (robots courtesy of Clayton Bailey); Nick Pavloff, 292; Phil Shermeister, 262; Mick Wiggins, 262.

Printed May 1983

Volume 1, Number 4

Hands-On

Community

Departments

PC World Directory

Indexes

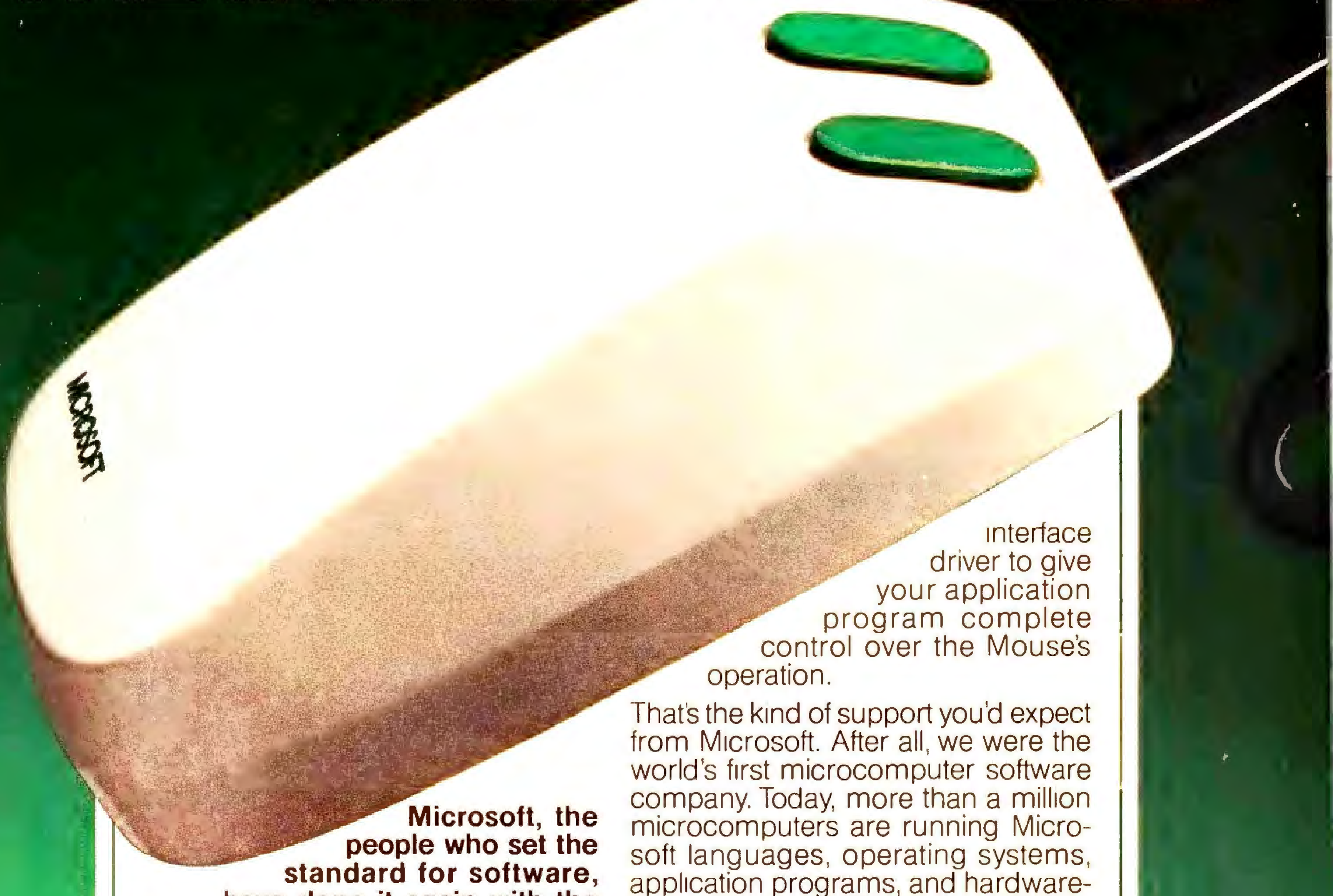
PC World™ (ISSN applied for) is published monthly for $24 one year, $39 for two years, $53 for three years. Additional postage for subscriptions outside the US and Canada $48 per year surface, $101 per year airmail, by PC World Communications, Inc., 555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107. Second-Class Postage is pending at San Francisco and at additional mailing offices. POSTMASTER: Send address changes to PC World, Subscription Dept., P.O. Box 6700, Bergenfield, NJ 07621.

Editorial and Business Offices: 555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107, 415/861-3861

CompuServe 74055,412
The Source STE908

Printed in the United States of America

THE NEW STANDARD. THE MICROSOFT MOUSE.



interface driver to give your application program complete control over the Mouse's operation.

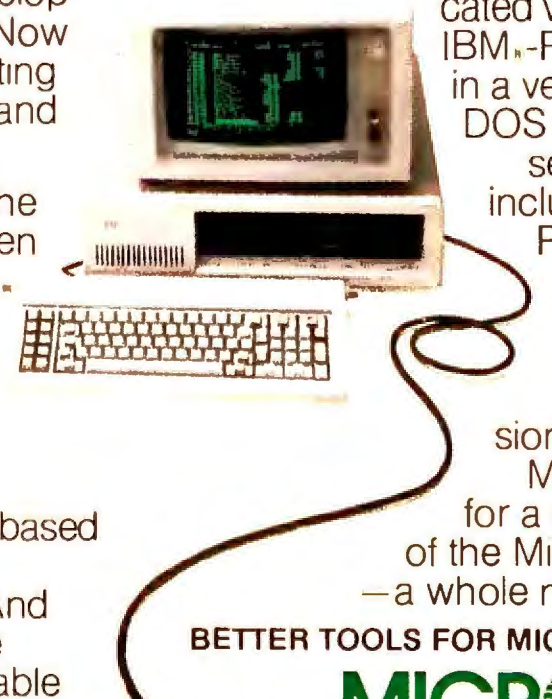
That's the kind of support you'd expect from Microsoft. After all, we were the world's first microcomputer software company. Today, more than a million microcomputers are running Microsoft languages, operating systems, application programs, and hardware-software combinations.

Microsoft, the people who set the standard for software, have done it again with the Microsoft® Mouse.

Our expertise in both hardware and software has gone into the development of the Microsoft Mouse. Now you can plug in the most exciting computer product of the year and put it to work.

The Mouse lets you move the cursor freely and naturally, then execute commands at the push of a button.

The Microsoft Mouse is a complete system. It comes with an on-screen tutorial, a practice application, and the Multi-Tool™ Notepad, a mouse-based text editor, so you can begin using the Mouse right away. And for application developers, the Mouse includes a programmable



You can get the Microsoft Mouse in dedicated versions for the IBM®-PC, PC XT, and in a version for MS™-DOS machines with serial interfaces, including the IBM-PC. The Mouse supports all versions of MS-DOS, including version 2.0. Ask your Microsoft dealer for a demonstration of the Microsoft Mouse —a whole new standard.

BETTER TOOLS FOR MICROCOMPUTERS

MICROSOFT™

Microsoft is a registered trademark, and MS and the Microsoft logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation

David Bunnell

Taking Know for an Answer

Sasha Besher, a talented copywriter, created a clever subscription ad for us recently with the headline "Take Know for an Answer." Sasha's copy tells you that to successfully conquer the baffling challenge of using your PC to its maximum capability, you need to understand a great deal of PC-related information. It then recommends a vital reference source, namely *PC World*, and suggests not too subtly that you subscribe as soon as possible.

I mention this because, biased though I naturally am, I think Sasha's concept brings up an important point. I recently saw an advertisement in which another computer publication claims that its language is "nontechnical." "Read this magazine and you will learn how to use computers without having to know or learn computerese" seemed to be its promise.

It strikes me that for the foreseeable future, even with the advent of more user-friendly environments such as Lisa or *Visi/ON*, some level of computer literacy will be required to use a personal computer effectively.

Whether a computer publication is technical, nontechnical, or both is not the most relevant question. More

important is its level of literacy, its scope and timeliness, and the form in which its content is presented.

If the Japanese want to penetrate the American PC market, they should hire thousands of English majors from our finest universities to write their documentation and instruction manuals. Judging from the instructions that come with some of their products, the so-called invasion of Japanese personal computers lies in the distant future.

The above McLuhan-inspired philosophy applies to all information delivery systems, not just magazines. When you think about it, there is an abundance of media for PC-related information, including seminars, TV and radio, books, computer camps, and self-teaching tutorials on videocassette, audio cassette, or diskette. We are in an age of abundant choices—you can eat your computer spinach any way you like it.

One of the best ways I know of to get an intensive dose of computer literacy is to go to a computer show. There you can see the latest products, try out programs, listen to speakers, and talk face to face with manufacturers, dealers, and real or self-proclaimed computer experts. The West Coast Computer Faire is an excellent example (see "Let Me Take You to the Faire").

PCs have an amazing capacity to increase the productivity of almost anyone who uses them. The biggest challenge in personal computing today is educating new users and doing it quickly. The headlong rush to get millions of hands on the keyboard has just begun, and for the moment at least accomplishing PC proficiency without learning computerese is like trying to be a doctor without understanding medical terminology.

One way we at *PC World* hope to play a significant role in this educational process is by caring as much about the string of plain language between the jargon as explaining the jargon itself.

David Bunnell

The structure of *PC World* is as crucial to its success as its literacy. The mix of information, including tutorials, product announcements, software reviews, user profiles, and even placement of advertisements must be determined and organized.

> The biggest challenge in personal computing today is educating new users and doing it quickly.

Publishing so much useful information without giving it some form of logical structure makes reader access difficult if not impossible.

Learning about computers can teach us a lot about organization. The UNIX operating system, which we reported on extensively in issue 3, has a nifty program library that includes root directories, subdirectories, and plain old directories and files. In reading about these information units and the pathways between them, I gained insights into how we think.

It works both ways, of course; the better you understand basic thought processes, the more able you are to write programs. As has often been said, the toughest part of programming is understanding the problem. Could you teach a computer how to design a house if you didn't know how to design one yourself?

Learning to use these beasts should become easier as computers become increasingly people literate, and as people become more computer literate. However, the gap between people and computers remains vast indeed for the moment.

The Standards Game

Some 800 computers are on the market today offered by as many companies, and new ones are popping up daily. Many of the computers produced by these companies run under different or variant operating systems, different storage media and recording formats, different bus structures, and different communications protocols, often without any technical basis for the differences.

Computer manufacturers have stacked the standards deck and each user is a potential mark. It's time to even up the odds.

Rules of the Game

The object of the "standards game" depends upon whether you're playing as a manufacturer or a user. As a manufacturer, you maintain an aloof pose and regard standards as if they carried the plague. Standards are acceptable only when they are defined by and embodied in one of your products, in which case other manufacturers are penalized.

As a user, however, it is considered good form to covet standards and do everything humanly possible to support and encourage them. In fact, users have been known to cheer wildly when a new standard is defined.

While the strategy of the standards game can be both complex and subtle, the basis for the polarization between manufacturer and user is straightforward and easily understood. For manufacturers, learning about standards and incorporating them in the design of new products usually costs more than not conforming at all. Furthermore, system designers claim that standards can be an unreasonable design constraint while the marketing department insists on a product that can be distinguished from the competition.

The enormous value of standards to users is equally clear. With standards, users can get on with the business of computing without having to become technicians to realize the benefits of the computer.

Although one approach may take longer than another, standards are usually achieved in one of three ways: standards by committee, de facto, or by what has been referred to as the Lone Ranger approach. The standards-by-committee approach is practiced by various accredited and governmental organizations including the American National Standards Institute (ANSI), the National Bureau of Standards (NBS), and the International Standards Organization (ISO). Since proposed standards of this type are circulated for review and commented upon and shaped by literally thousands of people, defining a standard by committee is often a process in which progress is measured in years. When all the thrashing is over, however, a concensus of expert opinion is reached about how to perform a given technological function. An example of this type of standard is the IEEE 696 (S-100) bus.

The de facto standard is achieved when a person or company invents a way of performing a function and that process is imitated throughout an industry. De facto standards are similar to standards by committee in that industrywide emulation of a product implies a degree of concensus. The CP/M-80 operating system is a good example of a de facto standard.

REMark

The Lone Ranger approach to standards is a rare form that results when a person or organization leaves the conventions of the mainstream marketplace behind and develops a way to perform some function. Once completed, the developer returns to the mainstream and presents the accomplishment as a *fait accompli*, often directly to the standards committees. This approach seldom works unless the perpetrator has considerable political or financial clout (both are recommended). A classic example of the Lone Ranger approach is the North American Presentation Level Protocol Standard for videotex and teletext.

Playing Strategies

If you're playing the standards game as a computer manufacturer several strategic alternatives are available. First and most obviously, you can continue business as usual and do nothing to incorporate standards into your products. If you pursue this strategy, be advised that you will probably become a statistic in the first industry shakeout.

Another approach pursued by certain companies involves investing in a liberal marketing budget with the expectation that a significant market share can be captured so that your nonstandard product/design becomes a de facto standard.

A third tactic is simply to get there first. Develop a new, significantly improved way to perform a function and you will more than likely garner a significant market share, all other things being equal.

If you're playing as a computer user, you have only a single strategy and a handful of tactics available. You must use and promote existing standards in your present work, providing an economic incentive to manufacturers by favoring industry-standard products. Computer professionals, hobbyists, and general users alike can participate by joining user groups and professional organizations that contribute to the standards-making process.

Winning

Whether you play the standards game as a computer user or manufacturer, you must retain a sense of perspective. Standards are not defined so that they are enforced at the expense of innovation. Such an approach produces a lose-lose situation for users and manufacturers alike. Users must encourage manufacturers to adhere to existing standards and avoid self-indulgent variations on standards when the only objective is to produce a nonstandard, noncompatible, proprietary product.

> Computer manufacturers have stacked the standards deck and each user is a potential mark.

Because standards don't usually win general acceptance overnight, it can be difficult to tell when the standards game is over. But don't worry. When there is a relative balance between innovation and a clearly defined degree of standardization, you'll know the game is over.

Edward Rodgers is a staff consultant on information systems at a Fortune 100 corporation. He specializes in office systems and personal computers.

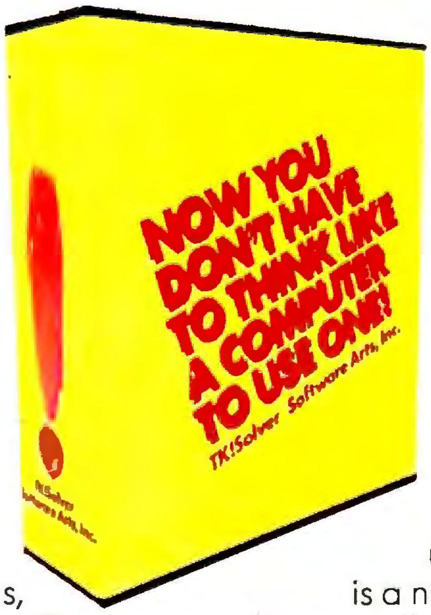
CRUNCH!

The inventor of VisiCalc,® the world's leading software product, introduces TK!Solver™—the revolutionary way to crunch problems on a personal computer.

With VisiCalc, Software Arts™ created an entirely new application for personal computers—the electronic spreadsheet.

Now Software Arts has developed TK!Solver, another entirely new and different application for personal computers—the problem solver. Business and financial problems. Scientific and engineering problems. Architectural and building design problems. Any kind of problem you can dream up, in any area.

What's so revolutionary about that? Simply this: the power of the TK!Solver program comes from the ease with which you can set up problems, vary assumptions, find solutions, and display results. All the facilities needed to solve the problems—simple or complex—are built-in, and need not be developed. Once you have stated your problem, simply enter the known values, then solve the problem with a single keystroke.



For even easier problem solving use a TK!SolverPack™ in which models for solving common problems in such areas as finance, engineering and education have already been formulated by professionals in these fields.

There is no software product in existence that solves problems as quickly, flexibly, and easily as TK!Solver—The Problem Cruncher™. In fact, no other software product even works the way TK!Solver does. It is a necessity for personal computer owners. See for yourself. Visit your nearest computer store for a demonstration and find out how much you can do with a personal computer when it thinks as flexibly as you do.

Software Arts™

27 Mica Lane, Wellesley, MA 02181


IBM
BPS
BUSINESS GRAPHICS

Letters

Microsoft Myopia

I want first to congratulate you on your new publication, which has a very pleasant design and seems to have found a comfortable style from its very beginning.

The interview with the Microsoft people was very interesting, but one sentence made me wonder whether the computer industry is hopelessly myopic. The Microsoft people state; "With MS-DOS, from its inception we allowed 30 bits of length in the file field and that's two to the thirtieth. We can't imagine what sort of devices could have that capacity."

Well, the people at Microsoft must be very short on imagination, since such devices are already in many mainframe installations around the country. Several vendors sell disk systems, such as the IBM 3380, with capacities above a gigabyte (that's two to the thirtieth). Optical disks are very likely to be used with microsystems and to have capacities above the Microsoft limit. An optical disk might be a special problem, too, because it might be used to distribute data bases. In that case the entire disk might very well be a single file.

I don't really want to criticize Microsoft on this point. Its use of 30 bits was reasonably liberal when they made the choice. Widespread use of such devices is still some time off, and entirely new operating systems may become prevalent in the interim. But I would like to suggest that they not boast without more careful consideration.

Scott E. Preece
Urbana, Illinois

Folk's Flack

As a subscriber I must protest your publication of an introduction to *Visi/ON* ("VisiCorp's Windows on the World," Vol. 1, No. 2) written by none other than VisiCorp's own Roy Folk.

This, with no evidence that anyone from *PC World* had seen the product, and following David Bunnell's self-righteous condemnation of Apple's refusal to provide a Lisa to *PC World* for a "completely fair and unbiased" test!

I hope that this outrageous piece of flackery, whether meant as such or not, will not prove to be typical of your editorial judgment.

Bruce Dodds
Middlefield, Connecticut

The articles in "State of the Art" describe the latest technology for the benefit of our readers, often covering products that are so new that the PC World *staff cannot research them. These articles are not intended as reviews.*

In the case of the Visi/ON *article, both Publisher David Bunnell and Technical Editor Steven Cook tried the product and felt that it would be of interest to our readers. We invited Roy Folk, who was in a position to provide the most accurate description in the shortest time, to prepare a draft, which was then edited by Steven Cook. Folk's connection with VisiCorp was clearly stated in the introduction to the article. We think our readers got a good deal, and we plan to do other such articles in the future—Ed.*

Column Comment

A comment on David Bunnell's column in Vol. 1, No. 2, about VisiCorp's *Visi/ON* vs. Apple's Lisa. First, I saw Lisa at a show last weekend and was suitably impressed. Secondly, regarding your inability to get a prerelease look at Lisa, it sounds funny when Bunnell says, "(We) thought Apple would jump at the chance to have Lisa featured in a leading personal computer magazine." On your cover you bill *PC World* as "The Personal Computer Magazine for IBM PCs..." With all due respect, since when does the president of General Motors send a GM car to Ford's president for constructive comments?

Richard K. Thompson
Fairfield, Iowa

Our magazine is completely independent from IBM, so your General Motors-Ford analogy does not hold. We focus on PCs, but we are interested in personal computers of all stripes. Personally, I think Lisa is a fascinating machine and I'd love to get my hands on one. During the past several years I have had the opportunity to become familiar with many personal computers, including the Altair, Sol, Radio Shack TRS-80, Commodore Pet, Apple II, Compucolor II, and Osborne, as well as the IBM PC.— David Bunnell

Counterpoint

In "Color Discrimination" (*REMark*, Vol. 1, No. 2) Lawrence J. Magid made a point. I should like to make a counterpoint.

It is very common for users to want the best of all worlds at an affordable price, but it is very rare to see such demands satisfied. In this case, I happen to be on the opposite side of the fence from Mr. Magid—I'd use a high-quality text monitor only if it could display several colors and graphics. Therefore, I am using a color monitor which does not provide characters that are as good looking as those seen on the IBM

Announcing the Eagle PC. From $1995, simply a better PC.

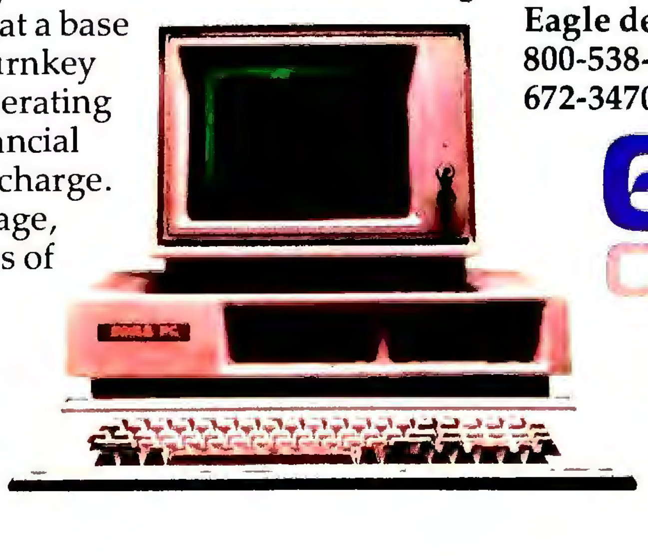
Eagle clears the air on what it takes to buy a computer.

Announcing the Eagle PC. This compact, economical computer gives you a headstart with its 16-bit microprocessor. User friendliness to a degree which may only be termed: simplicity with elegance. Just plug it in, flip the switch, and go to work.

The Eagle PC is compatible with hardware and software for the IBM personal computer, offering you a host of hardware extras, and your choice of programs from a large library of MS-DOS business and personal application software.

Save time without losing space. Silent, compact and modular, the Eagle PC is small enough to fit on a credenza. Its handsomely sculpted keyboard designed for word processing and financial planning conveniently stores inside the processor enclosure when not in use to save space.

Eagle productivity organizes your business. The Eagle PC is available at a base system price of $1995. Complete, turnkey systems for under $3000 include operating systems, word processing, and financial planning software at no additional charge. For those needing greater disk storage, the Eagle PC-XL, with 10 megabytes of hard disk storage, starts at $4495. High resolution graphics are standard.



Designed for the first-time computer user, the Eagle PC keeps pace with your growth. It is expandable, so you can add memory, additional disk storage, peripherals, and other options to build a system that will expand with your needs.

The Eagle PC. Simply, a better PC.

Also Announcing New $1595 8-Bit Eagle Power:

Introducing the Eagle IIE Series. Economic sense for business. All models of this exciting product line include disk storage, the CP/M operating system, word processing, financial planning, and the CBASIC programming language. What's more, all models include a full size display, a keyboard tailored for word processing, and Eagle's renowned user-friendly interface. Starting at $1595, the Eagle IIE Series is the best value in the computer industry today.

See Eagle Power in action today. For names of Eagle dealers nearest you, phone toll-free 800-538-8157, Ext. 938. In California 800-672-3470, Ext. 938.

EAGLE COMPUTER

Above and beyond.

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corp.
MS-DOS is a trademark of Microsoft Corp.
CP/M and CBASIC are registered trademarks of Digital Research, Inc.

Monochrome Display. Notice I said "good looking," not "legible." I believe that these 8 by 8 pixel characters are fully as legible as the 9 by 14 characters Mr. Magid prefers, but I readily concede that they are not as pretty.

Mr. Magid and I differ on two other points. First, the IBM Monochrome Display is not a standard, but a single product. Second, IBM did not make a mistake by producing two display adapters but supporting graphics on only one. The monochrome display and adapter use several design tricks to provide sharp characters at a very low cost. It is not directly compatible with other displays on the market because producing the same quality on a standard monitor would cost a lot more and would be incompatible with TVs or TV-like monitors.

The computer graphics marketplace is clearly and irreversibly committed to color-raster as the dominant technology. Capabilities are improving rapidly while costs simultaneously decline. Therefore, IBM chose, quite correctly, to rely on "standard" displays for graphics, not the unique IBM Monochrome Display. Transforming support from 640 by 200 to 640 by 400 is a trivial matter, with little effect on applications programs, but it would double the display resolution. The programming change required to support a 720 by 350 format would be more difficult; however, the even more severe problem would be to continue from there. The design tricks used in the monochrome adapter were really engineering decisions—compromises, in fact. Changing the capabilities and costs of display components realigns the collection of facts on which these decisions were based, probably rendering them invalid.

For what it's worth, one might thumb through issue 2 of *PC World* counting the screen photos that show the monochrome monitor and those that show a monitor driven by the color graphics adapter. My count found 60 color photos, versus 38 monochrome.

David F. McManigal
Stormville, New York

Our count was 65 to 25, but this probably reflects the fact that color screens make flashier ads, rather than the actual display preferences of PC users.—Ed.

Mixed Review

Your new publication is commendable but merits mixed reviews at this stage. For example, in Vol. 1, No. 2, Emil Flock's "WordStar Made to Order" sets forth precisely the type of information many readers need (this letter is written with *WordStar*). The author obviously knows his material and presents it well.

But other articles in the same issue show a curious lack of editorial review. In "Travels with COMPAQ," the author devotes a substantial percentage of his product review to his personal customizing of the machine and on how to carry it on board airplanes. Why not more info on the machine itself?

"Snake in the Glass," a short but rather sophisticated program written in IBM BASIC, was not line renumbered. And the statement in Charles Kelly's "Digital Dialects" that IBM BASIC suffers from "glaring deficiencies such as line lengths limited to 255 characters" borders on the bizarre. One of the outstanding features of IBM BASIC is its long line length. Has the author worked with other micros? Perhaps he would benefit from Emil Flock's article if his tastes run to commonly acknowledged poor programming practices such as unduly extended code lines.

Notwithstanding the above criticisms, please enter my subscription for 39 issues.

Robert L. Richardson
Woodbridge, Virginia

Fresh Air

I would like to thank you personally for the beautiful, professional job that you've done on your new magazine. It is by far the most useful and pleasant computer magazine I've ever read.

Congratulations for providing practical information in an entertaining manner to an audience ranging from nontechnical readers to seasoned computer professionals such as myself. Your topics are well chosen, and your articles reveal how simple everything really is at its essence. This is in sharp contrast with the old world mentality that insists that everything is so complex that only computer heavyweights can understand it.

Please keep up the excellent work. The professionalism and care you've shown are like a breath of fresh air.

Dennis Pasadis
Glen Ellen, California

Local Info

Your magazine supplies some of what I have been looking for. "How the PC Thinks" is the first basic explanation I have read that I can relate to. I have been working in the computer field for over 15 years (mainframes).

CP/M® gives you a new world of PC power

...for a new low price.

Now, for just $60, you can have the world's most popular operating system for your IBM® PC. Only $60 for instant access to the largest collection of applications software in existence—literally hundreds of proven, professional software programs for every business and educational need.

New highs in productivity.
New enhanced CP/M-86® comes with print spooling, an exclusive feature that increases the work power of your IBM PC like no other operating system can. With print spooling you can print documents and run applications programs *at the same time*. And, for the ultimate in efficiency, all CP/M-86 programs are upward-compatible to Concurrent CP/M,™ the productivity breakthrough that lets your PC run as many as four different programs simultaneously!

New high-performance graphics.
Another unique advantage of enhanced CP/M-86 is GSX,™ the new graphics extension that allows CP/M to operate the latest graphics hardware devices. This lets you choose from a growing array of exciting, sophisticated graphics applications packages which run under the widely-accepted GSX standard.

Great high-level languages.
For programming under CP/M, Digital Research offers the most complete selection of professional-quality languages and utilities for the IBM PC: CBASIC® and CBASIC Compiler,™ Pascal/MT+,™ CIS™ and Level II COBOL,™ "C," PL/I, DR Logo,™ and more.

High time to buy!
Before now, you'd pay $250 for CP/M-86 and another $75 for GSX. That's what makes new enhanced CP/M-86 such a terrific value. At $60 it puts PC Power within reach of any budget! You'll find this enhanced CP/M-86 value in The CP/M Library,™ a selection of the finest in CP/M software for your IBM PC. Look for it today at your IBM PC dealer. Or contact Digital Research Inc., (408) 649-5500, 160 Central Avenue, Pacific Grove, CA 93950.

DIGITAL RESEARCH™
The best of everything in software.

Recently I attended a local 1-day seminar for business people about selecting small-business computers. The response far exceeded what the university expected. The instructors emphasized that the participants did not need to learn all about computers to buy and use them. I felt, though, that many of those business people left wanting help in selecting and setting up computers for their businesses. Computer store personnel aren't the best ones to help these people, as salesmen's interests are served in selling equipment. What business people need are support consultants who can communicate well with them in defining their needs and uses.

I began searching for thorough information about micros several months ago and found there is no place to get comprehensive information. Publishing runs behind development, and most publications are trying to serve two different markets. The first is the novice who wants simple explanations to allow him or her to use a machine without having to fully understand it. The other is someone interested in fully understanding the equipment, who wants detailed information on all parts of the machine and its potential.

A recent article in *InfoWorld*, "Surviving the Harrowing Hell of Buying a Micro," makes an excellent point about the industry— it is highly unorganized and very hard for beginners to deal with. The manufacturers and vendors are telling the public to buy without understanding, and then they don't deliver or can't service what they've sold. Business people don't have the time and money to learn the hard way. The industry needs people in the local area who know enough to bridge that knowledge gap.

With all the publications I'm reading I gain only a few bits and pieces each week. It will be months, maybe a year, before I have enough information. This is why in your first questionnaire I have indicated the need for more technical articles. The industry needs to get the technical information out for those, like myself, who will create that much-needed local support.

P.A. Smith
Portland, Maine

Looking for DR LOGO

I would appreciate any information you might have or be able to find about the possibility of getting the programming language LOGO for the IBM PC. As far as I know, it is now commercially available only for the Apple, TI, and TRS-80 computers.

As a teacher and an owner of an IBM PC, I am very much interested in being able to use this excellent, educational computer language. It seems as if LOGO is beginning to get some coverage in the magazines devoted to the PC, which makes it all the more frustrating since it cannot yet be run on it! Any source of information on this topic would be greatly appreciated.

Gregory A. Harvey
San Francisco, California

LOGO was one of our prime interests when we spoke with Digital Research this month (see "The Future of Concurrency" in this issue). When DR LOGO is available on the PC in July, we'll review it.—Ed.

Multi-Rumors

I have had *Multiplan* on order since late December through my local computer store and have been told that IBM is now distributing its own version, that they have discovered an error in the program and are working to correct it, and that no copies will be released to the public until the problem is resolved. Would you be kind enough to shed some light on the problem?

Your magazine provides useful information for my continuing education about microcomputers and the IBM PC. Best wishes to you and your staff for a successful publication.

James C. Poindexter
La Canada, California

Microsoft distributes its own version of Multiplan *that runs on MS-DOS and can be configured for the COMPAQ or the IBM PC. Microsoft has licensed IBM to release an IBM version with slightly improved editing and screen painting capabilities.*

IBM says it knows of no bugs in its version, but that it has been delayed filling orders because of the great demand for the product.—Ed.

Software Review

I am a computer professional, having first programmed the IBM 650 in 1955. The last few years I've been in data communications, but I am just now getting experience with micros.

I can't tell you how exciting your premier issue is. I read every page, cover to cover. The only article that had no direct bearing on some aspect of my life was "The 8088 Is My Copilot."

We got our PC in early January of this year. Having paid a dear sum for the hardware, we are finding out that you can go broke buying software. Consequently, we are being very careful and going slowly. Books are $15 to $20 apiece; software is usually $100 to $500 apiece. The only real bargain is *PC World* (we have a 3-year subscription).

Our next task is to get a word processor. We are borrowing *WordStar* to try it out. But there seems to be no way of comparing programs to test ease of use and functions vs. cost and need. You could supply a major need by putting out an annual or semiannual compendium of software for the PC by type, giving differences of features and costs so that those just getting into a certain area would have some basis to start their selection process.

Comment on compatibility, or rather portability. I am afraid that programs such as *WordStar* that run on various operating systems may not take advantage of some of the significant strengths of the PC.

Glad you are putting out *PC World.*

Aaron Paxson

We will be publishing the PC World Software Review *this fall. Look for details in this issue.—Ed.*

X-rayted

I have several comments regarding Andrew Fluegelman's excellent article on the COMPAQ ("Travels with COMPAQ," Vol. 1, No. 2). The lack of information in COMPAQ's Operations Guide on how to remove the cover and set the switches is not accidental. When I asked for help from the Sears Business Center where I bought my COMPAQ, they called COMPAQ in Houston. The COMPAQ representative said that the information was intentionally left out of the manual in order to encourage people to buy add-ons only from their authorized dealers.

Regarding carrying the COMPAQ on an airplane, there should not be any problems. I have flown with it many times and have never been asked to check it. The rule is that any carryon that goes under the seat must be less than 45 inches in overall dimension—the COMPAQ is about 43. I get a middle seat on the plane and rest my feet on top of the unit in relative comfort.

Finally, what was the reason for hand-checking the COMPAQ at the security areas? It will fit through the x-ray machine without any damage to the unit.

D. Sumner Chase, III
Dallas, Texas

If you've accidentally left a disk in the computer's drives (which you shouldn't do), the x-rays might destroy data. COMPAQ says the machine itself won't be harmed, but we don't like to sit under x-ray machines unless we have to.—Ed.

Letters should be mailed to Letters, PC World, *555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107, or sent electronically to CompuServe 74055,415 or Source STE908.*

IBM UNLEASHED

Now you can move your IBM PC[1] from the fast lane into the jet stream. With the Personal Hard Disk™ from Corona.

More power to you.

The Corona Personal Hard Disk really revs up your IBM PC, with none of the floppy bottlenecks, headaches and hassles.

You get 5 to 10 megabytes of storage.

Speeds up to ten times faster than floppy disc drives.

The high reliability of a hard disk.

In an easy add-on external package, or a convenient internal plug-in.

Lightning strikes twice.

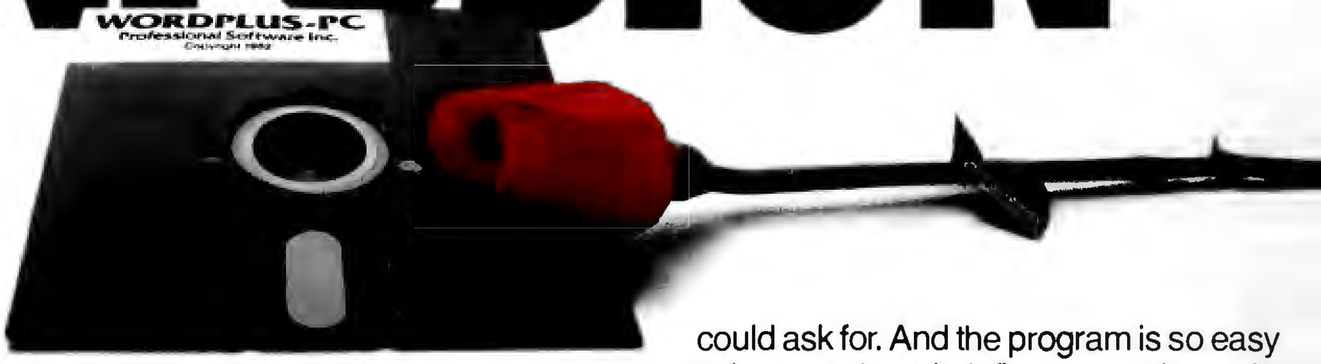
If that's not enough, you also get a lot of the features of the Corona PC, our own 16-bit desktop and portable personal computer.

Like free RAM "disk." Just define blocks of main memory as a disk and load your programs, then run them at incredible microsecond speeds.

Like disk partitioning that supports several operating systems at the same time, so MS-DOS[2] CP/M-86[3] and Pascal are all right there when you need them.

Like simple menu operation that makes your PC friendlier than you would have believed possible. Small directories. Automatic backup. And much more.

ANNOUNCING THE END OF WORD PROCESSOR CONFUSION



It's one confusing business, choosing a word processor. All those companies assuring you theirs is the most fantastic one of all. And leaving you to cut through all the smoke and hopefully whittle them down to the best one for you.

Well, we can help. If you'll just invest the next three minutes reading this, we'll tell you about a word processor that makes picking the right one a real breeze.

FIRST, A WARNING. There are two things you must do when evaluating any word processor. First, be careful. It's no secret that many of today's claims about being easy to learn and use just don't stand up to careful comparison. Watch carefully for complicated codes and programs that require "training sessions." Secondly, be selective. Buy a word processor you can use on a daily basis, not one that requires another "training session" when someone goes on vacation. In other words, be very careful to select the word processor that's absolutely the best and easiest to use. Which is what we'll now introduce you to.

WHY ONE WORD PROCESSOR MAKES THE MOST SENSE OF THEM ALL. Meet WordPlus-PC. It's the advanced, "user-oriented" software package that turns your IBM-PC computer into a word processor equipped with the sophisticated capabilities of far larger, more expensive systems.

THE REMARKABLE WORDPLUS-PC STORY. In a nutshell, it's this. WordPlus-PC was designed from the ground up to be the very latest in word processing technology. It has all the important features you could ask for. And the program is so easy to learn and use it defies comparison with other software.

HOW WE CAN BE SO SURE OF OURSELVES. We're Professional Software, a leader in word processing software with over 30,000 customers contentedly churning out letters and documents around the world on personal and business computer systems. We know precisely what a top quality word processor must do. And we've studied all the shortcomings of our competitors. That's how WordPlus-PC came to be the easiest-to-use word processor ever.

ALL THE FEATURES YOU'D EXPECT.

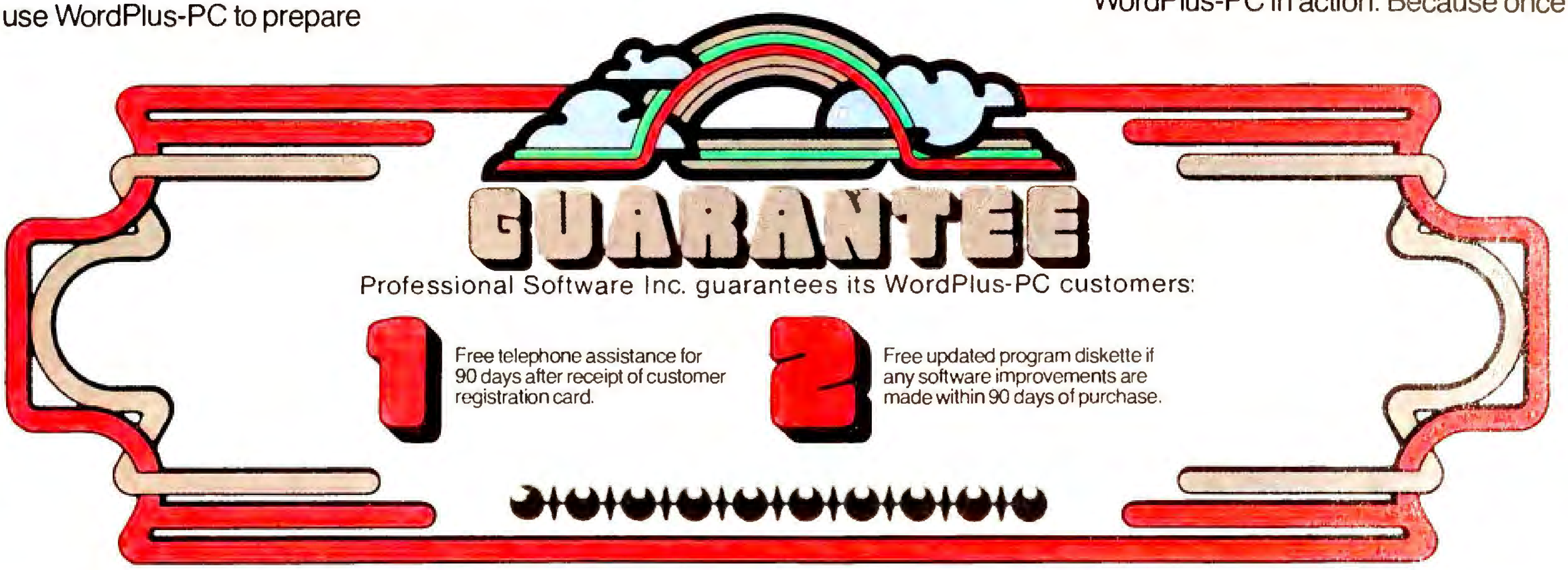
WordPlus-PC is both powerful and versatile. Its long list of major functions includes movement of paragraphs, global search-and-replace, and creation of multiple "boilerplate" and personal letters with the touch of a few buttons. There are 3-line headers and footers and automatic page numbering. When you underline or boldface words as you type, WordPlus-PC displays them in that form on the screen. You can merge information created by popular spread sheet programs. You'll create personal letters quickly and easily, or merge name and address information from other programs. You can easily create standard layouts for preprinted forms and use WordPlus-PC to prepare invoices or quotations. For large corporate customers, WordPlus-PC has the capability to merge information from files created by the firm's mini or mainframe computer. You can even type new documents while the system is printing other ones. And you'll find WordPlus fully compatible with virtually all popular ASCII letter-quality and dot matrix printers.

A BREEZE TO LEARN AND USE.

With WordPlus-PC's easy-to-use documentation, you'll be using your word processor right from the first minute. After an hour, you'll feel at home with all the basic functions and ready to explore the more sophisticated ones. After a few hours you'll put the manual away. There are never any complicated or confusing codes to memorize or look up. Rather, the screen's "message area" reminds you how to do what you want. WordPlus-PC's unique keyboard color coding makes things even easier. And whenever there's a question, simply press the HELP function to get back on track.

ALL THE HELP YOU NEED VIA TOLL-FREE PHONE. Learning something new goes best when you have encouragement, reassurance and answers to questions. That's how WordPlus-PC helps you learn. In addition to the help you'll get from your dealer, we're ready to assist you when you call our special toll-free number and talk to one of our carefully trained advisors. This service is available at no charge during the 90 days following receipt of your user registration card. It's all part of Professional Software's total commitment to customer service and support.

SEE WORDPLUS-PC FOR YOURSELF AT YOUR COMPUTER DEALER. Call us today. We'll answer all your questions. And we'll give you the name of the Professional Software dealership nearest you. Then go witness WordPlus-PC in action. Because once you're sitting in front of WordPlus-PC you'll quickly see where all our confidence and enthusiasm come from. After all, you already own the best personal computer. The best word processor is only $395. So call us today.



CALL US TOLL FREE:

1-800-343-4074

Professional Software Inc.

51 Fremont Street, Needham, MA 02194 Telephone (617) 444-5224

Dealer, distributor, OEM manufacturer, and corporate inquiries are invited. Call us at (617) 444-5224.
WordPlus-PC is a trademark of Professional Software Inc.
Specifications are subject to change without notice.
WordPlus-PC was designed and written by Andres Escallon.

to IBM Simple . . !

IT'S EASY - TieLine lets you transfer files between the Apple II and IBM PC **without serial ports or communications adapters of any kind.** TieLine's cable uses the cassette port on the IBM PC and the built in I/O facilities of the Apple.

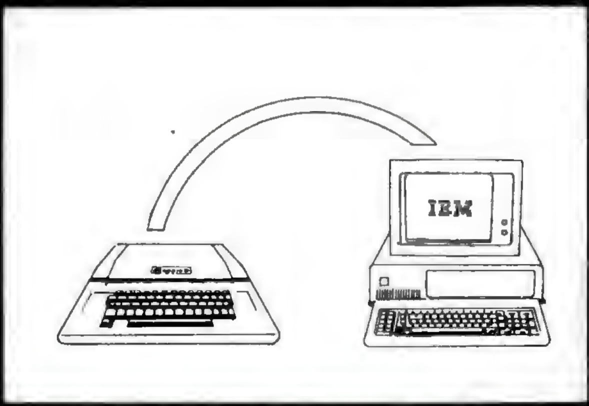
AND IT'S FAST TOO - Machine language programs and a supplied cable connect the two computers, permitting file transfer at better than 10,000 bits per second, thats 30 times faster than a 300 baud MODEM.

YOUR DATA IS SAFE - TieLine uses sophisticated error detection routines to verify every BIT of transferred data.

FLEXIBLE - BASIC programs, Apple Binary and Text files, VisiCalc models and even UCSD p-System files may be transferred.

IT'S EVEN FUN - TieLine's Remote Commander feature lets you run your Apple from the IBM PC keyboard. Naturally, you can save almost any Apple output at the IBM PC.

AND - If you bought a different Apple to IBM PC file transfer product, send us proof of purchase when you order TieLine, and we'll send you a $50 cash rebate.
All TRAX products come with printed instructions, no cassette player required!



Tie Line is your direct connection from the Apple to IBM PC.

TieLine XT supports the PC XT using the XT's built in serial port. Please specify XT when ordering.

To order, send check or money order for $170.00 to TRAX, 8948 West 24th Street Los Angeles, CA. 90034 (213) 670-9699 VISA/MasterCard also accepted, please include card number and expiration date. California residents, please add 6½% sales tax.

Rebate offer ends September 30, 1983.

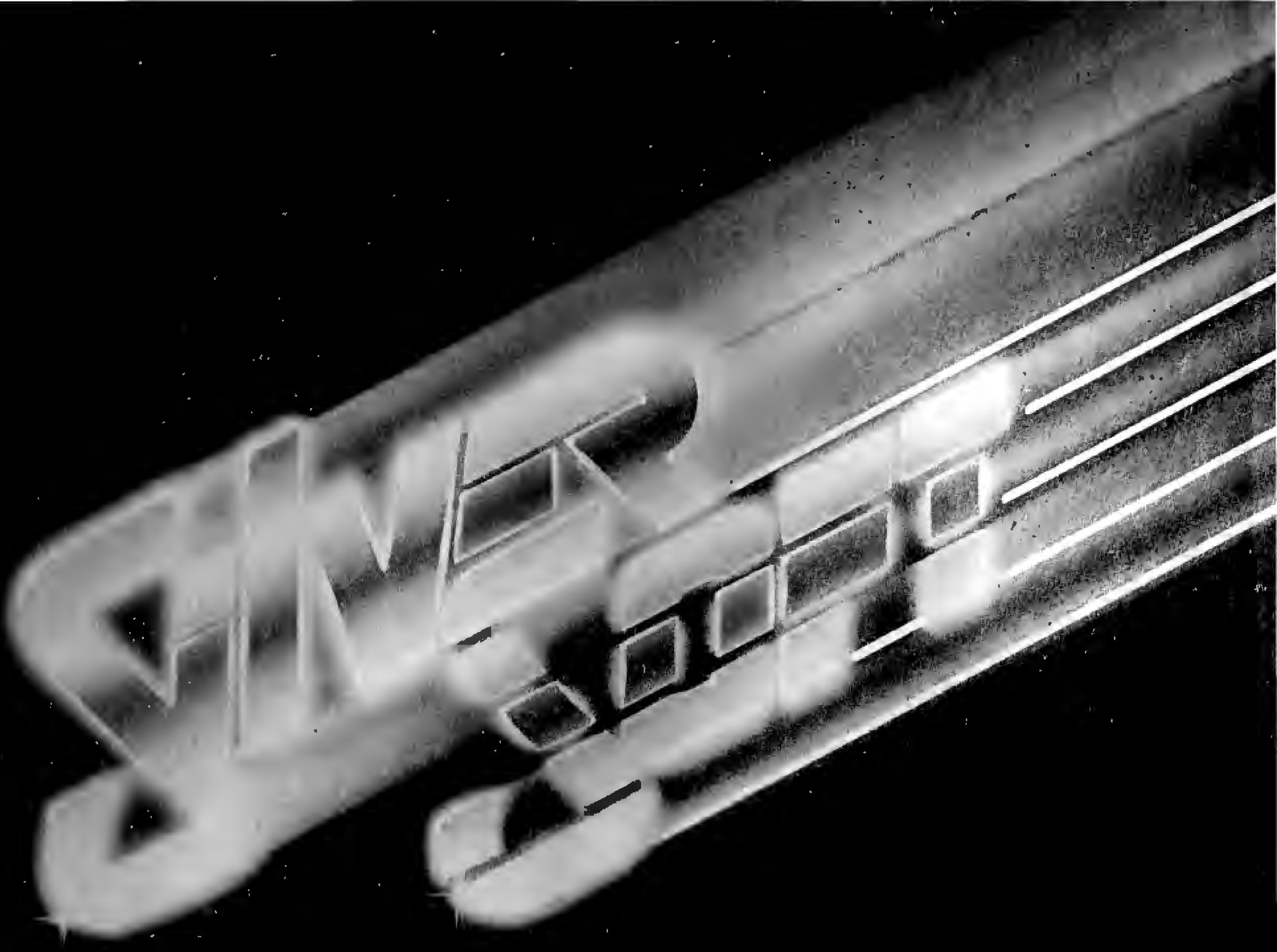
Requirements

Apple II - 1 Disk, 48K memory

IBM PC - 1 Disk, 64K memory

TRAX

8948 West 24th Street Los Angeles, CA 90034 (213) 670-9699



THE ULTIMATE
HOME COMPUTER
SOFTWARE

FIRST SHOWING / JUNE 5-8
CONSUMER ELECTRONICS SHOW

A DOUTHETT COMPANY

AST Quality Ad

Communications

CC-332 For use with
AST-3780

• An IBM 2780/3780 RJE Emulator • Supports Bisync point-to-point communications protocol • Allows file transfer between Host & IBM PC • Ideal for IBM **System 34, 38, 4300**

AST-SNA

• Emulates IBM 3274 Model 51C Control Unit • Emulates 3278 Display Station • Emulates 3278 Type Printer • Optional 3770 Emulation • Cluster Controller Operation • Protocol Converter Support

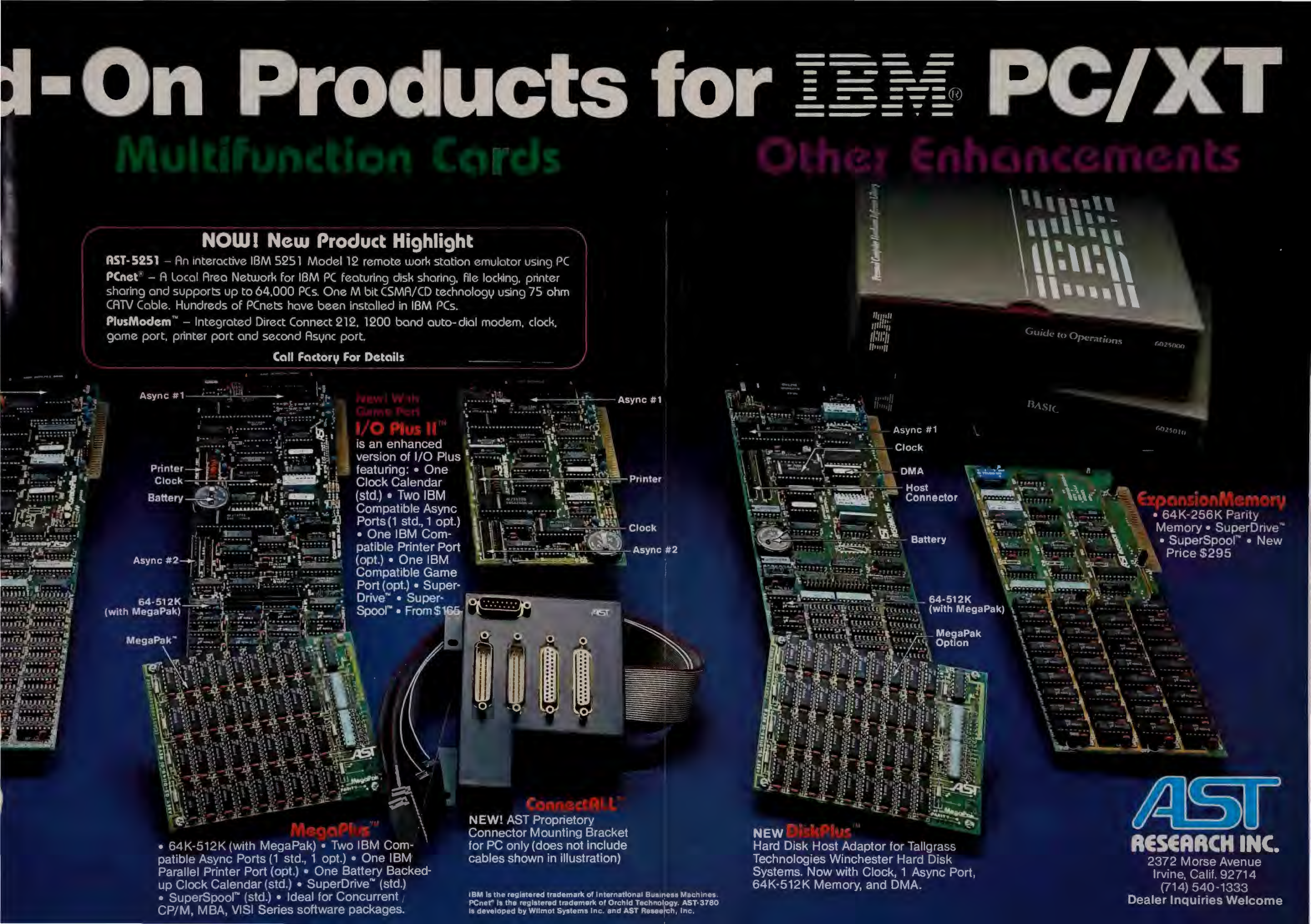
Advanced Comm. Card (CC-232)

• Programmable to communicate in Bisync, SDLC, HDLC, and Async protocols.
• Two Ports of RS 232

AST products are available from Computerland, Entré, ComputerMart and selected dealers worldwide. Call factory if your dealer does not have the AST products you want.

ComboPlus™

Standard Features:
• 64K-256K Memory
• One Battery Backed up Clock • One IBM Compatible Async Por
• One IBM Compatibl Printer Port • SuperDrive™ • SuperSpool™
• From $395



d-On Products for IBM® PC/XT
Multifunction Cards
Other Enhancements
NOW! New Product Highlight
AST-5251 – An interactive IBM 5251 Model 12 remote work station emulator using PC
PCnet® – A Local Area Network for IBM PC featuring disk sharing, file locking, printer sharing and supports up to 64,000 PCs. One M bit CSMA/CD technology using 75 ohm CATV Cable. Hundreds of PCnets have been installed in IBM PCs.
PlusModem™ – Integrated Direct Connect 212, 1200 band auto-dial modem, clock, game port, printer port and second Async port.
Call Factory For Details
Async #1
Printer
Clock
Battery
Async #2
64-512K (with MegaPak)
MegaPak™
New! With Game Port
I/O Plus II™
is an enhanced version of I/O Plus featuring: • One Clock Calendar (std.) • Two IBM Compatible Async Ports (1 std., 1 opt.) • One IBM Compatible Printer Port (opt.) • One IBM Compatible Game Port (opt.) • SuperDrive™ • SuperSpool™ • From $165
Async #1
Printer
Clock
Async #2
MegaPlus™
• 64K-512K (with MegaPak) • Two IBM Compatible Async Ports (1 std., 1 opt.) • One IBM Parallel Printer Port (opt.) • One Battery Backed-up Clock Calendar (std.) • SuperDrive™ (std.) • SuperSpool™ (std.) • Ideal for Concurrent CP/M, MBA, VISI Series software packages.
ConnectALL™
NEW! AST Proprietary Connector Mounting Bracket for PC only (does not include cables shown in illustration)
Guide to Operations
BASIC
Async #1
Clock
DMA
Host Connector
Battery
64-512K (with MegaPak)
MegaPak Option
NEW DiskPlus™
Hard Disk Host Adaptor for Tallgrass Technologies Winchester Hard Disk Systems. Now with Clock, 1 Async Port, 64K-512K Memory, and DMA.
ExpansionMemory
• 64K-256K Parity Memory • SuperDrive™ • SuperSpool™ • New Price $295
AST RESEARCH INC.
2372 Morse Avenue
Irvine, Calif. 92714
(714) 540-1333
Dealer Inquiries Welcome
IBM is the registered trademark of International Business Machines. PCnet® is the registered trademark of Orchid Technology. AST-3780 is developed by Wilmot Systems Inc. and AST Research, Inc.

CRITICS CHOICE!

Financier Personal Series, the financial software everyone's talking about.

Before you invest in financial software, here's what professional software reviewers coast to coast are saying about the Financier Personal Series – the software with performance that picks up where the others leave off!

"It is clear that the Financier Personal Series is the most sophisticated and flexible, of the financial programs under review here."

Burton Alperson, Ph.D. Reviewer
SOLFTALK for the IBM

"Within an hour of opening the software package, I was able to understand and appreciate the power of this financial package. Financier is one of those packages which many people will probably use, along with their wordprocessing and spreadsheet programs, quite frequently, if not daily."

Eric R. Bedell Reviewer
PC REPORT – IBM users group of the Boston Computer Society

"Out of all these programs,* the Financier Personal Series provides the best balance of extensive capabilities and ease of use. The manual is outstanding as an introduction to both the practice of bookkeeping and the use of a personal computer to perform this task."

Steven Yoder and Sherry Knight, CPA
PC MAGAZINE

"The Financier Personal Series is a financial record-keeping program. It is menu driven, and exceptionally well-documented. Written in BASIC, one gets a lot more from this system than from other so-called home accounting programs. Truly an outstanding package, I use it for my own financial records."

Thomas V. Bonoma, IBM Columnist
MICROCOMPUTING

See for yourself why Financier's Personal Series has everybody talking. Get a demonstration today!

*Five Financial Programs for the Home – February 1983, programs reviewed. Bonus Accounting System,™ Financier Personal Series,™ FMS II,™ Home Accountant Plus,™ Money Maestro™

FINANCIER

MODERN SOFTWARE FOR MODERN TIMES

For additional information, or to order directly, call.
(617) 366-0950 [24-hour, MasterCard and Visa accepted]
Financier, Inc. 2400 Computer Drive, P.O. Box 670, Westboro, MA 01581

Financier System Requirements: IBM Personal Computer, At least 64Kb of RAM, Two disk drives, 80 column display, IBM Personal Computer DOS, IBM Personal Computer Disk BASIC

FINANCIER TAX SERIES SPECIAL INTRODUCTORY PRICE: $150.
(Special price offered for limited time. Retail Price: $195.)
FINANCIER PERSONAL SERIES: $195

Now available at the following authorized IBM dealers:
ASD OFFICE SYSTEMS (NY), **CMB INC.** (KY), **COMPUSHOP INC.** (CO, IL, TX), **COMPUSHOP OF GEORGIA, INC.** (GA), **COMPUTER CITY** (CA), **COMPUTER CONCEPTS** (LA, TX), **THE COMPUTER MART** (IL, MI; WINDSOR, ONT.), **THE COMPUTER ROOM** (IN, MI), **COMPUTER SYSTEMS SPECIALIST** (NY), **COMPUTERLAND** (participating dealers), **COMPUTERWORKS** (CT), **FREDERICK COMPUTER PRODUCTS** (MO), **FUTURE DATA** (NYC, SC), **MICRO CENTER** (OH), **PERSONAL BUSINESS COMPUTERS** (UT), **SOFTSOURCE** (TX), or phone **(617) 366-0950** for nearest dealer

And Sears Business Systems Centers (Nationally)

THEY'RE IRRESISTIBLE!

It's understandable why he'd want to steal. He knows learning's a snap with PC Pal and PC Tutor.

PC Pal, for beginners, uses games, animation and sound to teach you the PC keyboard, the meaning and importance of software, and how the hardware operates.

PC Tutor takes you to the intermediate level, teaching higher level computer concepts and PC-DOS.*

Both programs create a dialog between you and your PC. Set your own pace while you learn easily, quickly . . . and inexpensively.

Both programs require 64KB, a double-sided diskette drive, an 80-character display and PC-DOS.

Available at your PC dealer for only $39.95 (PC Pal) plus $2.60 California sales tax.

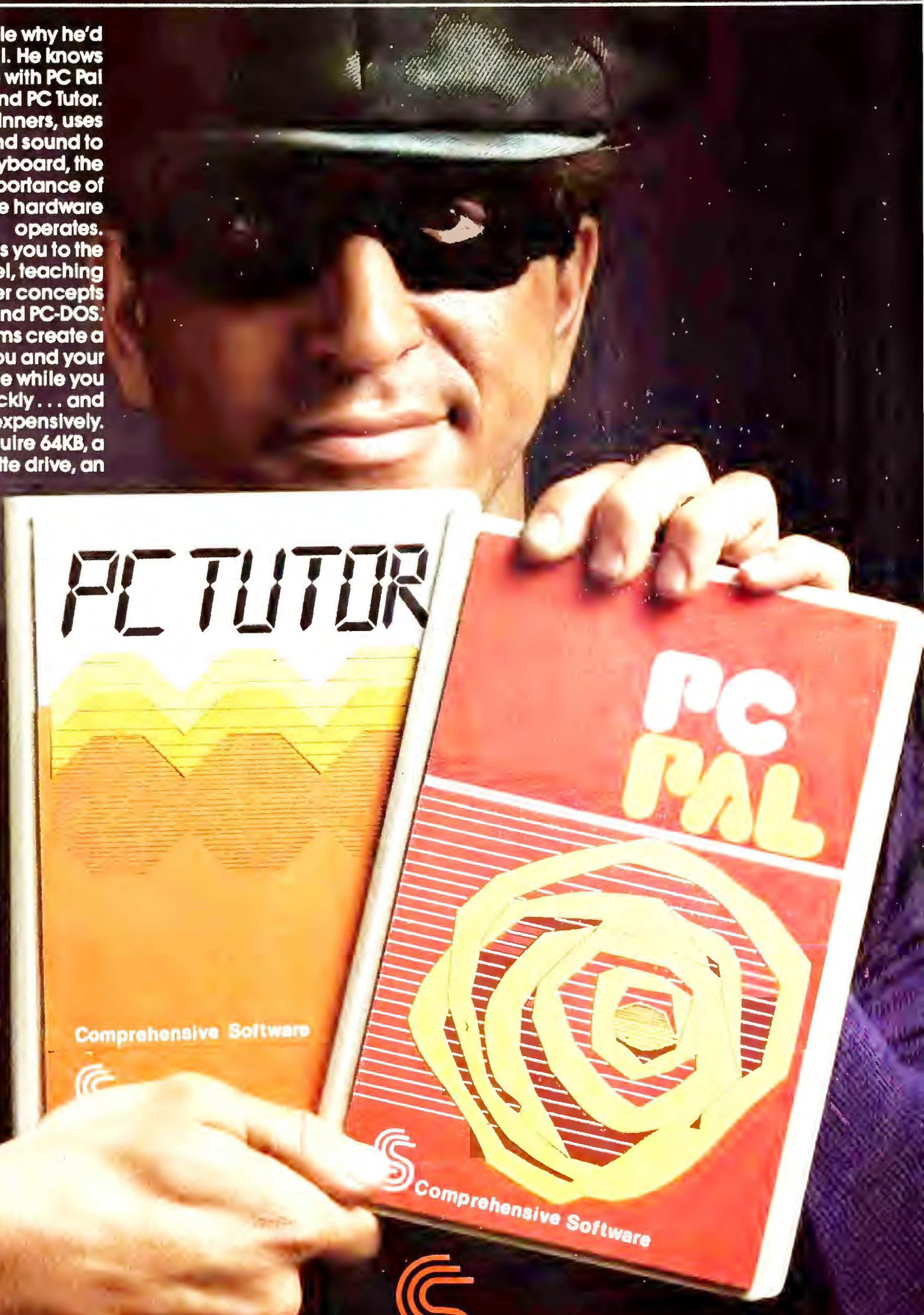
Or

$59.95 (PC Tutor) plus $5.20 California sales tax.

Dealer inquiries welcome.

*These products are in no way associated with this publication

**Available now for 2.0



Comprehensive Software Support
P.O. Box 90833 Los Angeles, Ca. 90009

Learning to Speak Mainframe

Arlin Torbett and Harry Miller

To communicate with mainframes, PCs will have to use data communications protocols. This article discusses what they are and what it takes to implement them.

Mainframes are far from being on their way out. While the microcomputer revolution will clearly have an effect on the way mainframes are used, it will be a positive effect. When PCs are used in place of intelligent terminals in mainframe networks, the mainframes can run faster and more efficiently. Freed from the burden of constant interaction with a large number of time-sharing users, the mainframe is left to do what it does best: high-speed data crunching and large-scale data storage and transfer. Most of the editing and browsing of programs or data files can be done on the PCs under local processing power without tying up the mainframe processor. The more PCs are used as work stations, the quicker the response time of the mainframe. In addition, many people will find useful the ability to work at home on their PC and still have access to the data stored on the company's mainframe.

> The messages transferred in data communications take the form of combinations of bits.

No matter what the motivation, the numbers of people wanting to use their PCs to communicate with mainframes is large and growing constantly. There are, however, a few hurdles to be crossed before the communication can take place. Mainframes use very precise standards of high-speed data communication, to which PCs will have to conform. PCs and IBM mainframes use different codes to refer to each character as it's stored or transferred. A mainframe also expects to exchange data with the type of terminals it knows about, and IBM hasn't yet provided systems software for mainframes to recognize the PC. So to communicate successfully, PCs must be made to emulate the standard terminal types.

The technical terms used in mainframe communications can pose equally troublesome hurdles. This article will outline and review many of the important concepts in mainframe communications protocols.

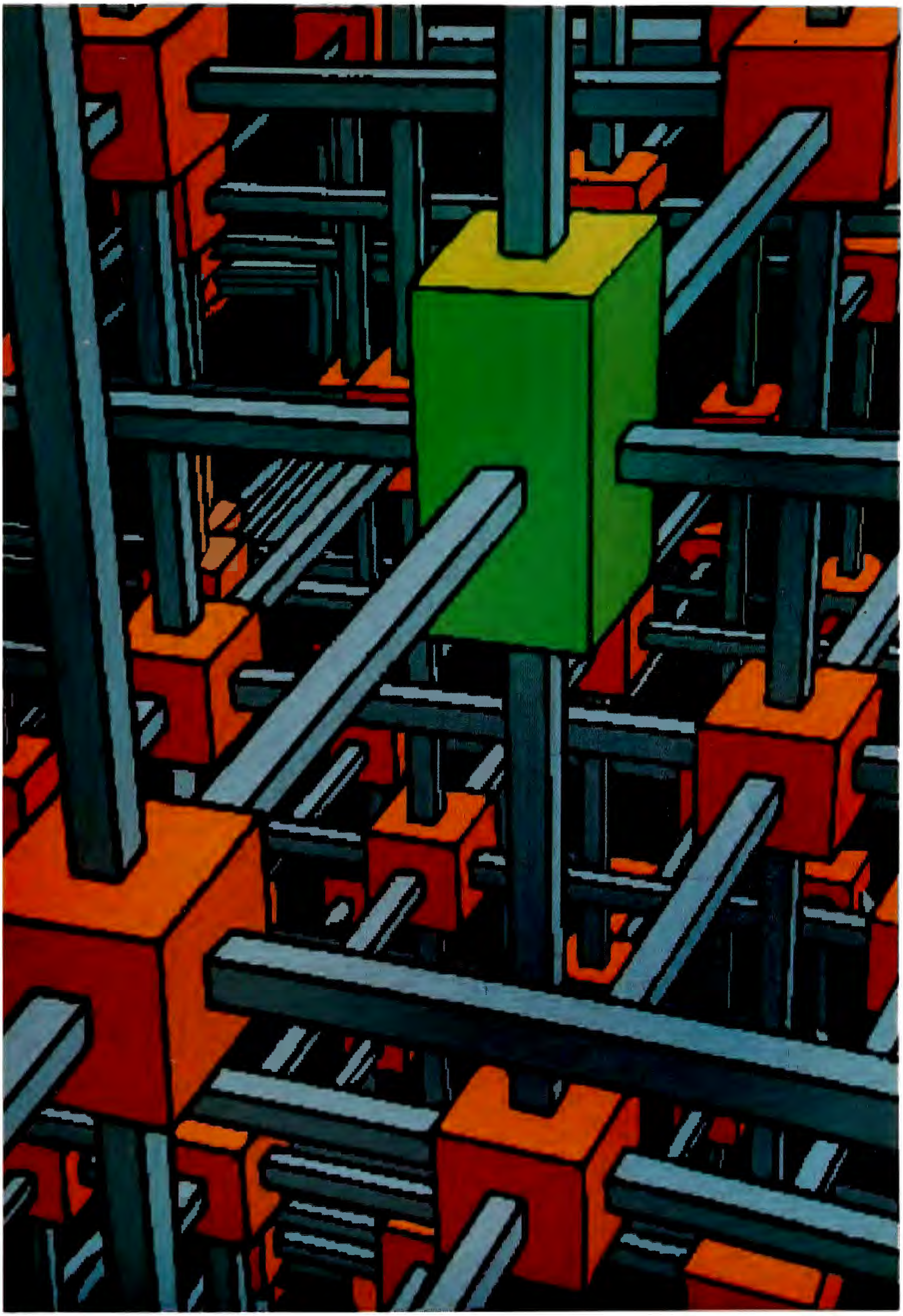
Data Communications

Figure 1 illustrates the relationship of the elements that are normally required for the data communications process. A transmitter (or source of information) sends a data message over a physical (electrical) binary serial interface (such as the RS-232C that the PC uses). Once a physical connection is made, the message flows over an established communications channel (or link) to a receiving device. In a mainframe network, the CPU host, front-end controller, and standard terminals take turns as the transmitter or receiver of messages.

Bits, Bytes, Characters, Packets

The messages transferred in data communications take the form of combinations of bits. A bit, or binary digit, is a unit of data in binary notation. In the binary number system only two marks (0 or 1) are used. Each of these marks is a bit. A bit can also be thought of as a single electrical pulse in a group of pulses: a 1 is a higher voltage pulse and a 0 is a lower voltage pulse.

Bits can be grouped into a code that represents a character. A character is an element of notation that represents letters, numbers, or symbols by a set configuration of bits. In most data communications a character is represented by a byte (8 bits equal 1 byte) of data. The two most common character codes, ASCII and EBCDIC, are described later in this article.



Some public data networks use packet switching. In that arrangement a packet, a short block (128, 256, or 512 bytes) of data that is prefixed with addressing and other control information, is used to carry information through the network.

Serial Interface

The message signals must have a way to travel from the transmitting device to the receiver. When they are moved around inside a device, they are transferred in parallel form; if the message character is 8 bits long, it uses eight wires, 1 bit per wire. To communicate with the rest of the network the device needs a serial interface to convert that parallel signal into a series of high and low voltages (corresponding to 1's and 0's) so that the signal can be transmitted over a single data wire. In other words, the 8-bit message would be transmitted bit after bit over a single wire. The next consideration is for the receiving device to know when to start counting bits as part of a character, and then when to stop.

Communications Channel

The network uses one of three basic types of communications channels: simplex, half duplex, and full duplex. A simplex channel, analogous to a one-way street with a one-way bridge, is often used by teletype wire services and only transmits information in one direction. A half-duplex channel, which is like a two-way street with a

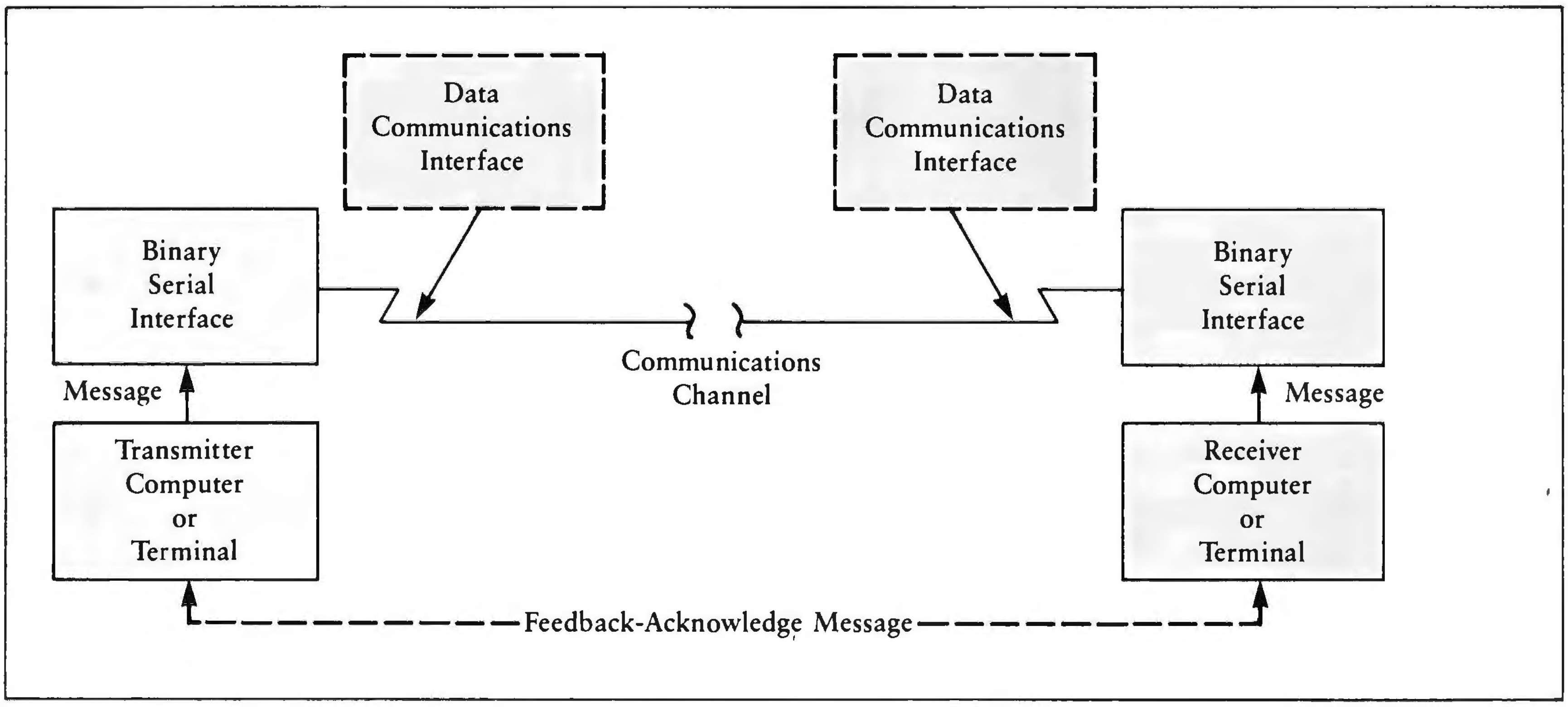


Figure 1: Elements of the Data Communications Process

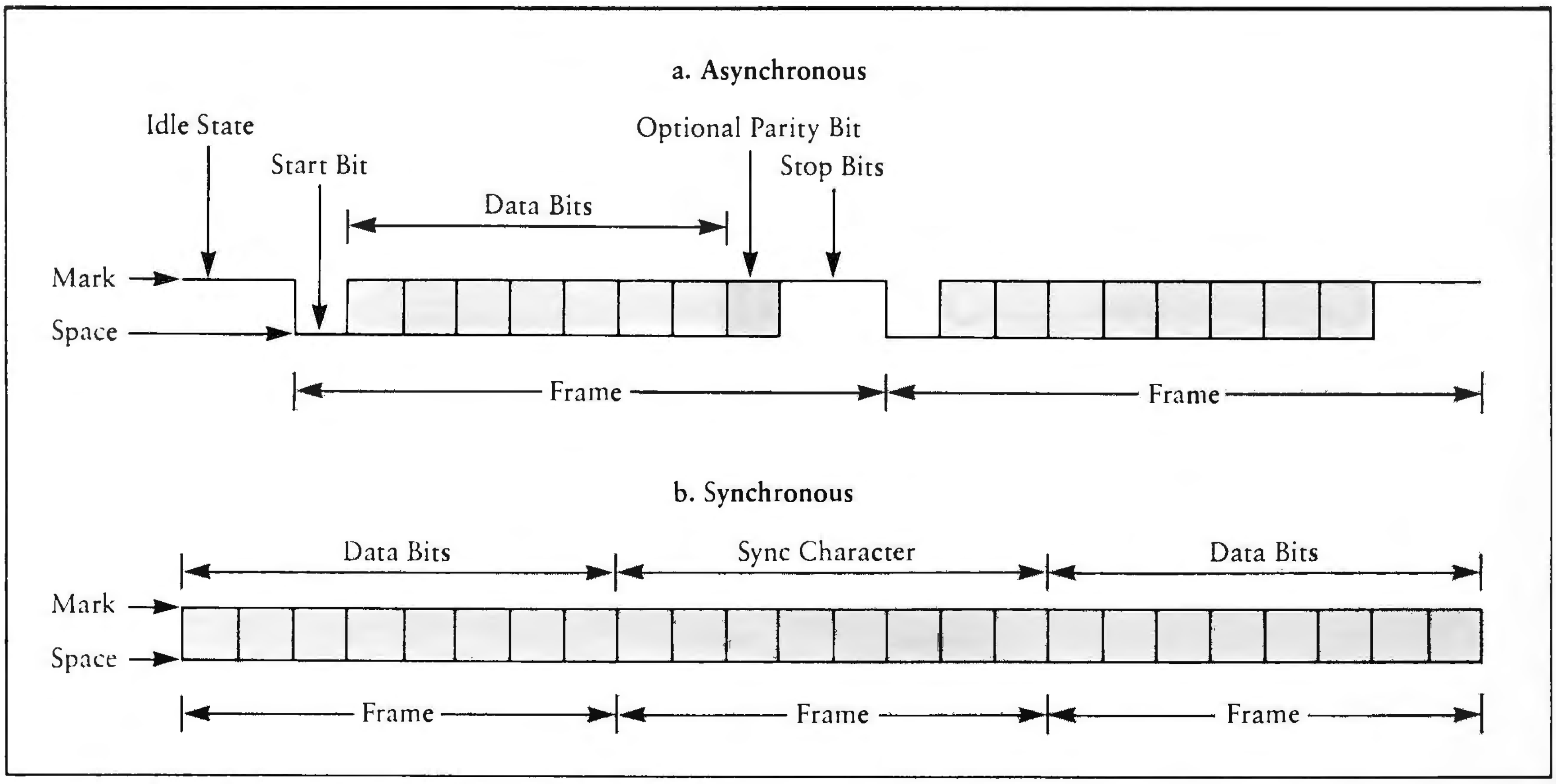


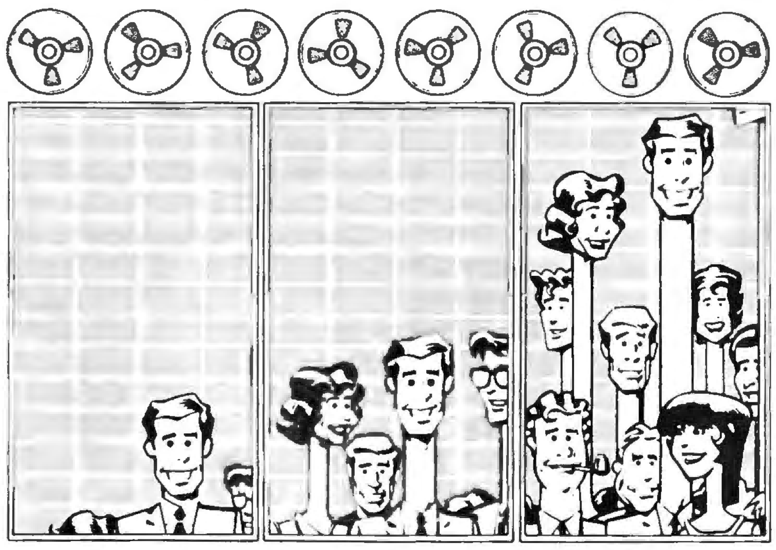
Figure 2: Asynchronous vs. Synchronous Transmission

one-way bridge, is used by most asynchronous terminals and can transmit in both directions but only in one direction at a time. A full-duplex channel, which, to follow the analogy, is like a two-way street with a two-way bridge, is used by intelligent synchronous terminals, multiplexers, and computers, and can transmit in both directions simultaneously.

The transmission across a communications channel may be either in asynchronous or synchronous timing mode. In asynchronous transmission, each transmitted character is preceded by a start bit and followed by a stop bit. Thus, the interval between characters in asynchronous transmission may vary. The receiving device knows that when it gets a start bit, the next 8 bits are going to be a character.

In synchronous transmission, on the other hand, each character consists of 7 or 8 information bits (depending on the code structure). There are no start or stop bits. Timing is derived through synchronizing characters at the beginning of each message or block of data. Eliminating the start and stop bits increases the speed by cutting down on the "overhead." Once the receiving device gets the special "sync" character, it knows that every 8 bits it receives constitute a character.

Choice of the proper timing mode depends directly on the application. Asynchronous transmission is used mostly with human-machine interfaces (where the transmission is irregular) whereas synchronous transmission offers the high speed and continuous data flow necessary for machine-machine communications. Figure 2 illustrates the typical flow of data in each type of transmission.



The CPU Break

It was the same process day after day. If you got to work at 8:30 or 9, the response time on the mainframe was acceptably fast. Around 10:30, as the rest of the company was logged on, the system would slow down a bit. By 11 it was barely usable.

Once we resigned ourselves to the necessary adaptations (important work had to be done at night or on the weekends), we devised a rating system for the system's response time. The office space was a large open room with "modular" walls and furniture organized as cubicles. When the system slowed down, heads would pop up as $40- to $60-per-hour programmers discussed football, home towns, fashions, motorcycles, and computer fantasies while they waited for the system to "come back." The theory was that you could gauge the system's speed by counting the number of heads you could see talking over the cubicle walls—taking a CPU break.

Communications Codes: ASCII and EBCDIC

All computer communications use codes to represent the characters of data being transferred. Almost all computers (including the IBM PC and PC compatibles) use the ASCII (American Standard for Computer Information Interchange) code system. IBM mainframes use the EBCDIC (Extended Binary Coded Decimal Interchange Code) system. Although the systems are different and data stored in ASCII can't be read by a system that uses EBCDIC, there are enough similarities to make translation between the two systems a manageable task.

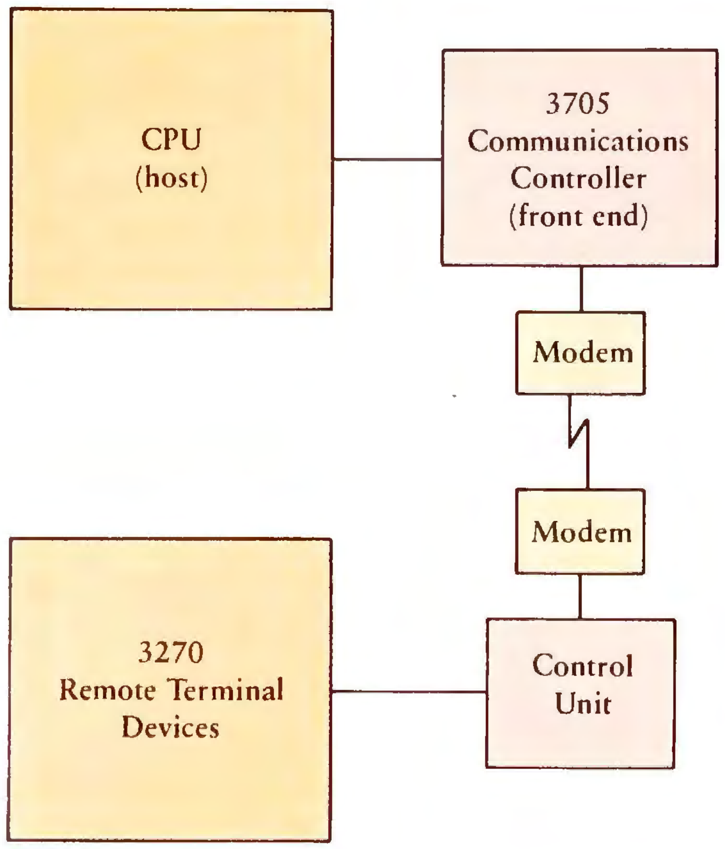
The examples in Table 1 demonstrate the correspondence between the binary representations of the ASCII and EBCDIC codes for characters. Each zero and 1 in the binary representation is 1 bit of data. Unfortunately, the correspondence is not exactly one-for-one. Some of the representations don't follow the pattern, and some characters exist only in one set of codes and not in the other. In any case, the most common way to accomplish code set translation when it is necessary is through a lookup table. Whenever a character is received using one set (ASCII or EBCDIC), it gets filtered through the lookup table and translated into the corresponding character from the other code set.

	ASCII		EBCDIC	
Character	HEX	BINARY	HEX	BINARY
A	41	01000001	C1	11000001
B	42	01000010	C2	11000010
C	43	01000011	C3	11000011
D	44	01000100	C4	11000100

Table 1: ASCII and EBCDIC Characters

Communications Protocols

A protocol is a standard followed by software and hardware so that different devices can transfer data between them. The standard is required because two devices couldn't send or receive data at the same time or perform either function out of sync. The protocol provides a



A Typical Mainframe Remote Communications Network

The CPU contains software called VTAM (Virtual Telecommunications Access Method), which is a way of controlling communications throughout the entire network.

The 3705 Communications Controller "polls" each of the control units in sequence to determine whether they have any messages to send to the host CPU.

When the operator at a 3270-type terminal hits ENTER, the message is transmitted to the local control unit. That message waits at the control unit until it is polled by the 3705, at which time the message is sent through to the host.

There is a difference between remote and local communications. In local communications a channel that comes off the CPU can have disk or tape drives connected to it. There is another channel that is connected to the local control unit and the terminals. When an operator presses ENTER on a terminal in a local network, it generates an interrupt signal that goes right to the CPU. When the CPU has something for the terminal, it just sends it right back.

This would seem to be an ideal communications arrangement, if not for the 2000-foot limit on local communications. Thus, for communications further than about a block away, a remote communications scheme is necessary.

method for synchronization of the devices, a way for one device to say, "I'm talking now, you have to listen," or "Go ahead and talk, I'm listening."

Protocols, in general, are sets of rules for controlling the transmission of data over a communications channel or link. Layered protocols, such as the Consulting Committee for International Telephone and Telegraph (CCITT) X.25 and the IBM Systems Network Architecture (SNA), are used to provide synchronization of more than the flow of bits across a communications channel. The International Standards Organization's Model for Open System Interconnection (see "Seven Layers of Protocol") is a good example of a layered protocol.

Data Link Control Protocols

A data link includes the modems, the serial communications interface, and the communications channel. Data link controls are needed to operate the data link but not the computers, terminals, or input/output devices at each end of the link. While Data Link Control is only part of the network communications picture, it is the place where the major differences in protocols are most evident.

The Data Link Control level of protocol (or line discipline), has several basic functions. It establishes and terminates a connection between two stations. It also assures the integrity of messages by using error detection, requests for retransmission, and positive or negative acknowledgments. Data Link Control also identifies the sending and receiving stations through polling or selection. It handles special control functions such as requests for status, station reset, reset acknowledge, start, start acknowledge, and disconnect.

Data Link Control protocol rules are designed to solve operating problems in the following areas:

Framing the data. Determining which groups of 8 bits constitute characters and then which groups of characters make up messages.

Error control. Includes the detection of data errors, the acceptance of correct messages, and the request for retransmission of faulty messages.

Sequence control. Uses the numbering of messages to eliminate duplication, avoid losing messages, and properly identify messages that are retransmitted by the error control system.

Line control. Determines which station on a half-duplex or multipoint line will transmit and which will receive.

In addition, the Data Link Control level must control startup, to get transmissions started in a communications system that has been idle, and Timeout, to deal with a sudden cessation of message flow.

At the Data Link Control level, the available protocols can be categorized as character oriented, byte-count oriented, or bit oriented.

Seven Layers of Protocol

The International Standards Organization Model for Open Systems Interconnection (see below) is made up of seven layers of protocol, the first three of which comprise the CCITT X.25 protocol. Each layer provides a certain subset of services to the overall set of network functions.

Physical Link layer. Controls the electrical and mechanical aspects of establishing, maintaining, and disconnecting the physical medium for transmitting data. This layer includes hardware, such as modems and communications lines, as well as systems software to drive the hardware.

Data Link layer. Sets up a communications path (or channel) between network nodes and manages access to and use of that channel. The Data Link frames the data in the transmitted messages, assures the proper sequence of transmitted information, and checks the integrity of received messages.

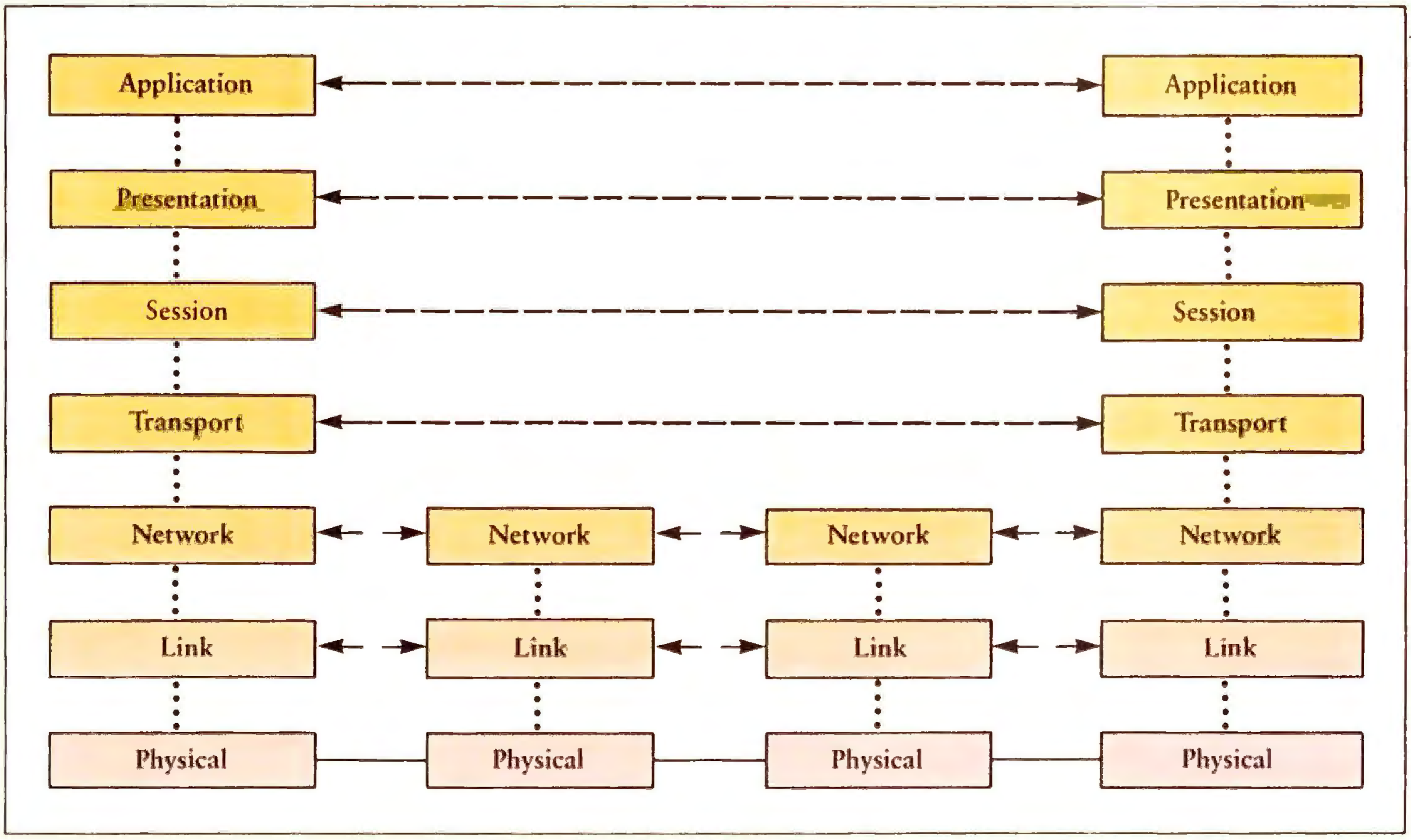
Network Control layer. Addresses and routes messages between communicating nodes on the network; it controls the flow of messages between nodes.

Transport layer. Controls the communications session between nodes once the path has been established. The transport layer allows processes to exchange data sequentially and reliably, no matter which systems are communicating or where they are in the network.

Session Control layer. Manages the logical connections between the communicating applications processes. It sets up and controls the system-dependent aspects of communications between specific nodes in the network. Among the services that the Session layer provides are the establishment and termination of connections, end-to-end session data unit control, dialogue control, message-unit flow control, and signaling nonrecoverable errors. The session control layer bridges the gap between the services of the transport layer and the logical functions running under the operating system in a communicating node.

Presentation Control layer. Translates encoded data that has been transmitted and converts it into display formats that can be used by terminal screens or printers. The presentation layer also provides data compaction or expansion, data encryption and decryption, data structure (for file transfer), and command translation (for virtual terminals). This level puts the data into forms that can be understood and manipulated by the user.

Applications or User layer. Supports user and applications tasks and systems management. Resource sharing, file transfers, remote file access, data base management, and network management are examples of applications provided at this level.



Character-Oriented Protocols

A character-oriented protocol uses special characters, such as SYN to synchronize the transmitter and receiver ends of the communications link, STX to indicate the start of text (message), and ETX to indicate the end of text. One of the most widely used character-oriented protocols is IBM's Binary Synchronous Communications protocol, known as BISYNC or BSC. This half-duplex protocol has been in use since 1968 for transmission between IBM computers and batch and video display terminals. Figure 3 shows an example of the point-to-point BISYNC used in batch operations. Figure 4 shows a similar example for the polled, multipoint BISYNC. Multipoint BISYNC allows the host CPU to communicate with a controller that has many terminals or devices connected to it.

Binary synchronous, or bisync, protocol operates on an acknowledgment basis. When device A signals the start of a message, and device B acknowledges receipt of the signal, device A knows it can continue to send data. If B acknowledges the data, A can send some more, and so on. When A signals the end of the message and B acknowledges it, then B is free to initiate a message and will expect A to acknowledge it.

How does a device acknowledge a signal received from another device? There is actually a signal called ACK (short for acknowledge) that is sent back and forth on the line. Devices alternate the types of ACK signal they send (called ACK0 and ACK1) so that the sending device will know which data the receiving device is acknowledging. If device B doesn't receive the data that A sent, B will send a negative acknowledgment (NAK) and A will have to retransmit the message.

Byte-Count Protocols

When BISYNC was introduced, the speed of half-duplex transmission was adequate for the batch mode operation that was prevalent. The trend toward interactive systems and distributed data processing, however, created the need for protocols that could accommodate full-duplex transmission.

Other problems associated with BISYNC were its inflexible structure and nontransparent nature. *Transparency* refers to the ability to send strings of bits that may not be recognized as normal characters, such as control characters. Transparency is the ability of the protocol to say to the receiving device: Take the next several bits literally; don't try to make a character out of them. It is possible to devise a protocol which, by keeping track of the byte count, solves the transparency problem of BISYNC without the use of control characters. One of the widely used protocols that does this is Digital Equipment Corporation's DDCMP protocol.

Byte-count-oriented protocols use a header that includes a beginning special character, followed by a count that indicates how many characters follow in the data portion of the message, and some control information

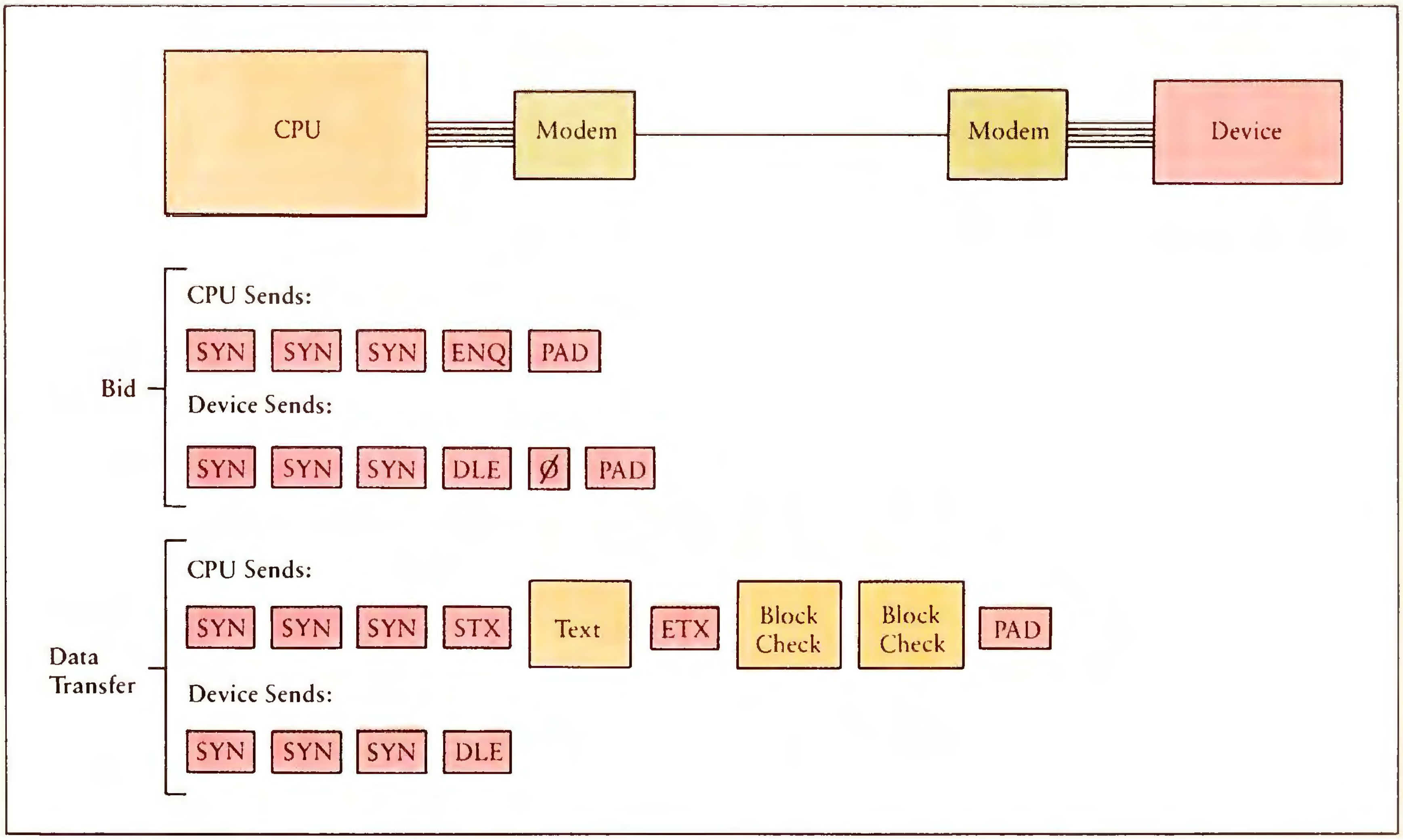


Figure 3: Point-to-Point BISYNC

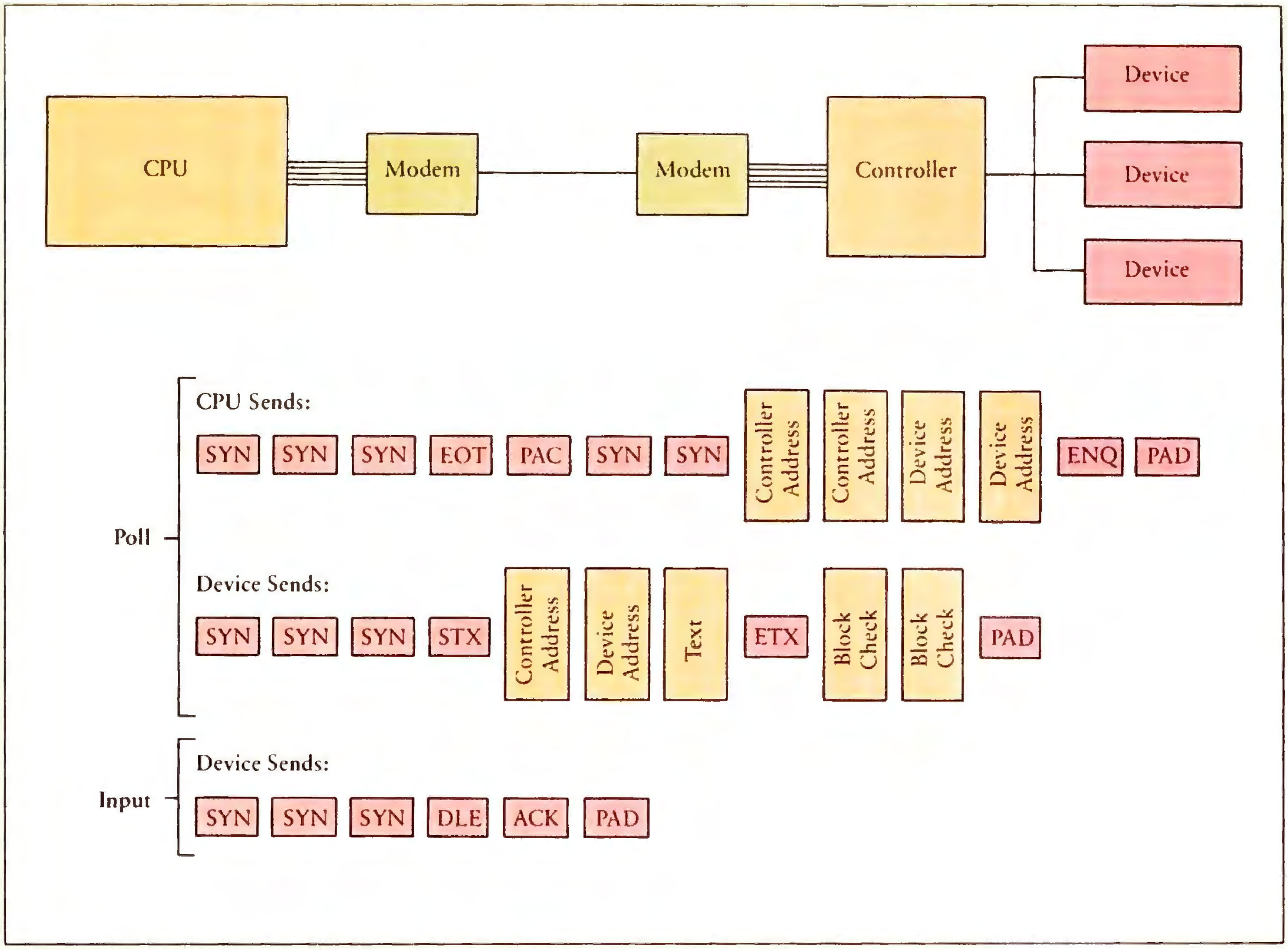


Figure 4: Multipoint BISYNC

such as which messages have been received correctly to date. The data portion that comes next is the specified length and is followed by block-check characters.

Byte-count-oriented protocols are an improvement over character-oriented protocols for batch operations; however, for interactive operation the larger header for transmitting a few characters makes the byte-count-oriented protocols rather inefficient.

Bit-Oriented Protocols

The next generation of Data Link Control protocols to evolve was the bit-oriented protocols operating in full-duplex mode. These protocols were designed to remove the limitations inherent in character-oriented protocols. Bit-oriented protocols share some common characteristics: codes, line configurations, and peripherals are independent of each other. Positional significance of bits within a message frame is used instead of control characters or character counts. One standard frame format serves for all messages. Half- or full-duplex operation is possible. Information transparency is achieved through inserting and deleting zeros. A complete frame is used for error checking.

Bit-oriented protocols separate the bits that constitute messages with a special flag character such as 01111110. These protocols specify that there will never be six 1 bits in a row except for the transmission of the flag. Thus, when the receiving station receives a flag character, it knows that the previous 16 bits were the block-check characters and that the bits between those 16 and the previous flag constitute the message.

If a message contains 6 or more 1 bits in a row, the transmitter "stuffs" a zero bit after every fifth 1 bit transmitted; the receiver removes the stuffed bit, restoring the bit stream to its original configuration. Figure 5 shows a typical bit-oriented, protocol frame format.

The most common bit-oriented protocols are the IBM Synchronous Data Link Control (SDLC), the American National Standards Institute Advanced Data Communications Control Procedure (ADCCP), and the CCITT and International Standards Organization High-level Data Link Control (HDLC). Other bit-oriented synchronous protocols are currently offered and supported by Burroughs, National Cash Register (NCR), Control Data Corporation, Univac, Digital Equipment Corporation, and Honeywell. Those protocols include Burroughs Data Link Control (BDLC), NCR Bit Oriented Data Link (BOLD), CDC Communication Protocol (CDCCP), Univac Data Link Control (UDLC), DEC DECNET Link Protocol, and HIS DSE Link Protocol. Each of these protocols are implemented on the respective manufacturer's own network architectures. All these protocols are subsets of HDLC, and thus all are somewhat similar.

Acceptance of the bit-oriented protocols has been held up in the past by user resistance to the adoption of the new network architectures. A substantial installed base of terminals and systems still use character-oriented protocols, primarily IBM BISYNC. However, with the growing prevalence of SNA and X.25 networks, the use of bit-oriented protocols is accelerating. Nevertheless, IBM BISYNC will be around for a long time to come, and protocol conversion will continue to be needed.

Higher Level Protocols

Higher level protocols are responsible for functions such as message buffering, code conversion, recognizing and reporting faulty conditions in terminals or lines, direct communications with the host mainframe, and management of the communications network. Such protocols are implemented by software packages such as IBM's Systems Network Architecture (SNA) and the Consulting Committee for International Telephone and Telegraph (CCITT) X.25.

The design philosophies of IBM's SNA and CCITT's X.25 are very different. SNA was implemented as a computer network in which users establish "sessions" with applications programs that reside on a host computer within the network. Once the session is established, the Network Control Program, which runs on the IBM 3705 front end processor, controls the information flow between the user and the applications program.

X.25, on the other hand, was conceived as a data communications network in which data packets are moved into and out of the network based on "virtual circuits." Virtual circuits are identified by their end points and are utilized only when there is data to be sent.

The users and the applications programs on the host are external to the X.25 network. The principal job of the X.25 protocol layers is to move data from an entry point to an exit point of the network, whereas, in SNA, the layers establish and manage sessions between users and applications programs.

With that overview, here are more detailed explanations of the two protocols.

IBM's SNA

IBM's SNA is a high-level implementation of a layered protocol. As Figure 6 shows, SNA builds upon the Physical Control layer with the Data Link Control (DLC), Path Control (PC), Transmission Control (TC), Data Flow Control (DFC), and Network Services Manager layers.

On the Physical Control level, SNA coordinates with the physical units of the nodes in the network to establish a switched connection or verify the existence of a nonswitched (continuous) connection. At the bit, character, and frame levels, errors are removed by retransmission. At the Data Link Control level SNA uses SDLC to synchronize adjacent nodes in the network.

The Path Control layer is responsible for routing messages to the proper destination node and segmenting messages to match the memory buffer size of the receiving node.

> Emulation is the process of giving a device the characteristics and behavior of another device.

Zero Insertion/Deletion & CRC Accumulation

Flag	Address	Control	Information	FCS	Flag
01111110	1 or more 8-bit chars	1 or 2 8-bit chars	0 or more characters*	16 bits CRC-CCITT inverted remainder	01111110

Any number of bits for ADCCP/HDLC. Must be multiple of 8 bits for SDLC.

The control field takes on any one of three formats depending on whether the field is to indicate:

- Information transfer
- Supervisory commands/responses
- Nonsequenced commands/responses

Figure 5: Bit-Oriented Protocol Frame Format

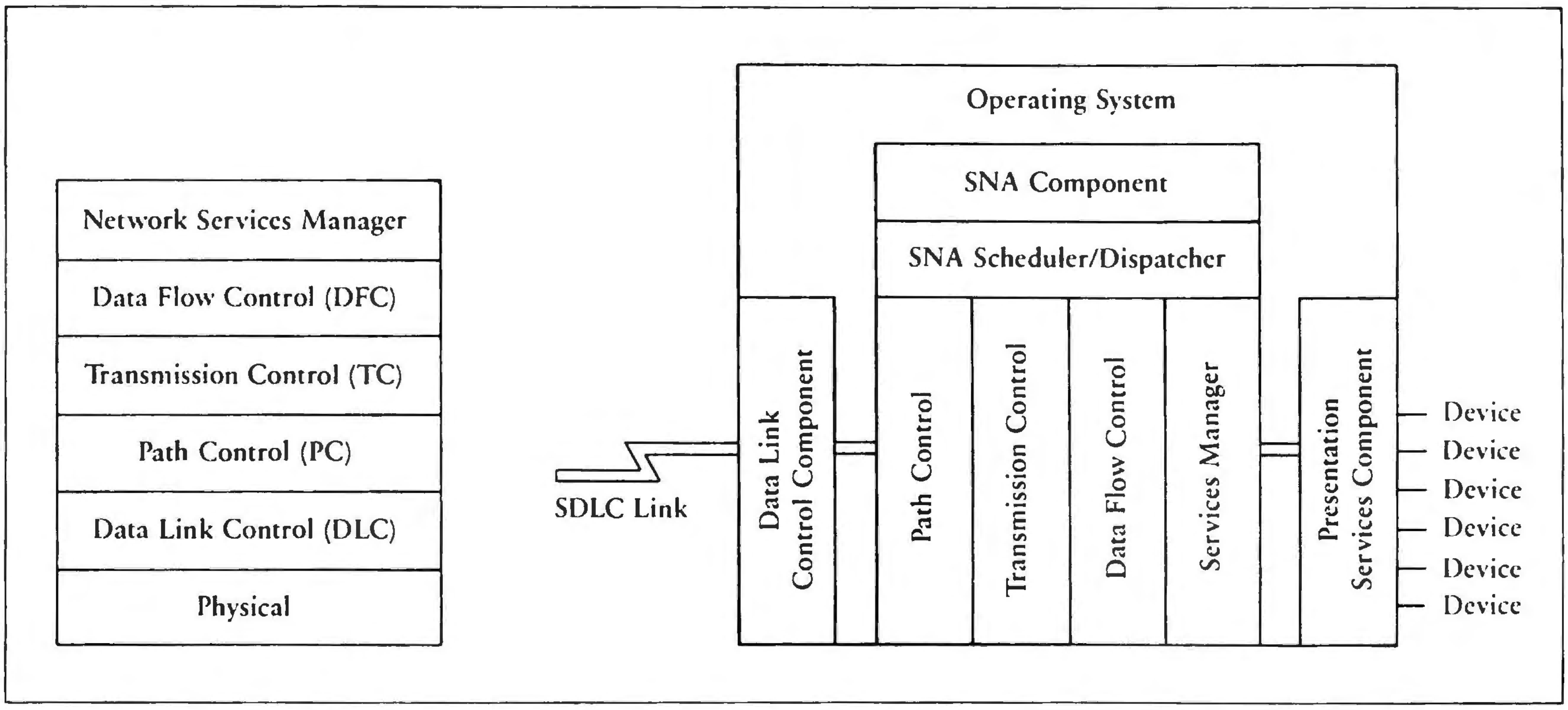


Figure 6: Structure and Function of SNA

Transmission Control paces the message flow to assure synchronization at the processing speed level. TC also works at the protection level to build message transmission headers and prevent the synthesis or duplication of network addresses.

The Data Flow Control layer maintains the integrity of the data flow within an SNA session between a pair of network addressable units although some parts of this task are performed by the Transmission Control layer. The DFC layer controls whether the half-session can send, receive, or concurrently send and receive. DFC is also responsible for delimiting transactions and controlling the correlation of requests and responses.

The Network Services layer manages the network, coordinating the physical configuration with the network address assignments and correlating network addresses with network names. It also modifies the physical configuration of the network in response to session initiation or termination requests from the nodes and resolves conflicting requests.

X.25 Packet-Switching Protocol

As public data networks emerged throughout the world, the need arose for a common protocol to describe how the networks operate internally and how the networks communicate with their customers' equipment. In 1976 the CCITT standards organization adopted its Recommendation X.25 as the international standard protocol to be used by Data Terminal Equipment (DTE), such as host computers to interface with public data networks (PDN). That protocol was enhanced and revised in 1980.

The X.25 protocol defines the DTE-PDN interface on three levels: the Physical (or electrical) level (which is RS-232C compatible), the Frame (or Link) level, and the Packet level.

The Physical Level of X.25 defines the electrical interface between the Data Terminal Equipment (DTE), the host, front end,.or intelligent terminal, and the Data Communications Equipment (DCE), the node. The Physical Level is defined by CCITT Recommendation X.21. The protocol also accepts the use of Recommendation X.21bis, which is equivalent to EIA RS-232C, which the PC uses.

The Frame Level of X.25 is responsible for transferring packets of data between the DTE (user) and the DCE (node) without error. Messages to be sent across the network are chopped into packets that usually contain 128 characters. Some X.25 networks use 256- or 512-character packets. Packets are delivered in sequence without loss or duplication. The Frame Level performs error detection and recovery. It includes procedures for link setup, information (packet) transfer, and link disconnect. Framing formats for BISYNC (character-oriented) and HDLC (bit-oriented) protocols are provided.

The X.25 Packet Level defines procedures for establishing and clearing calls for Switched Virtual Circuits (SVC). Procedures for the transfer of data and for initializing (restarting) all logical channels at the DTE/DCE interface are also specified.

Terminal Emulation

Once the protocols are met and the character sets match, the next consideration is making the host CPU think that it is communicating with a terminal it recognizes.

Emulation is the process of giving a device the characteristics and behavior of another device. Characteristics might be features such as a buffered screen and screen addressing on a terminal, and behavior would be the way a terminal communicates.

Protocol Conversion Products

Adrian Mello

Products that contribute to protocol conversion can take the form of an expansion board, a free-standing hardware device, and even a software disk. A product may simply allow one PC to emulate some of the features of a terminal or may serve as a conversion device for a large number of PCs.

Potential buyers searching for a product that permits them to operate their PCs in conjunction with a mainframe computer should know what operations they want the PCs to perform, the type of protocol they need to match, the type of terminal they wish to emulate, and how many PCs they want to use as terminals. The following represent the range of products that allow the PC to communicate with mainframes.

AST Research
AST-SNA is a product line based on the SNA 3270, a board that mounts inside the IBM PC System Unit and allows the PC to emulate an IBM 3270 terminal. An optional card called the SNA 3270P can be placed in the PC with the SNA 3270 board and permits up to three additional PCs to emulate 3270 terminals. The additional computers can operate as either 3270 terminals or independent work stations as long as the host PC with the AST SNA board remains in SNA mode. Software is provided with both products.

Another option, the SNA 3270C, permits an alternative compatible terminal design to be used for the additional terminal display stations instead of IBM PCs. An IBM 3770 Communications Terminal can be emulated for batch data transfer operations with SNA 3770 Batch.

The AST 3780 board and software allow the IBM PC to emulate any IBM 2780/3780 RJE work station using BISYNC point-to-point communications protocol. In the terminal mode the PC keyboard and screen can be used with communications software such as HASP, JES1, POWER, or RES. Any storage device used with the PC can be used in BISYNC mode. AST Research, Inc., 2372 Morse Ave., Irvine, CA 92714, 714/540-1333.

Commtex, Inc.
The MDS-8070 freestanding unit uses ASCII asynchronous communications procedures to allow up to 25 IBM PCs to be connected to one or two IBM host computers. PCs are not assigned individual ports but share with the assistance of a rotary port selection feature. Users can access separate mainframes, networks, or mainframe applications software with short commands due to the presence of dual host interfaces. Commtex plans to make SNA/SDLC protocol available by the end of the summer. Commtex, Inc., 2411 Crofton Ln., Crofton, MD 21114, 301/721-3666.

Datastream Communications
The T-7 permits up to 15 PCs to emulate an IBM 3277 terminal using BSC or SDLC to communicate with the host computer. Another protocol converter, the T-8, provides SNA/SDLC communications and comes with either 8 or 16 attachment ports. Datastream Communications, Inc., 1115 Space Park Dr., Santa Clara, CA 95050, 408/727-2980.

Gateway Communications
IBM PCs attached to the Gateway processor emulate 3278 terminals attached to host computers. Protocols supported by software for the Gateway Processor include SNA, X.25, 3270 BISYNC, 3780, and 2780. Up to 16 PCs can be attached to the Gateway Processor in increments of 4 to every communications board placed in the processor unit. Each PC is attached via a serial interface and cable. Gateway Communications, Inc., 139 E. Alton Ave., Santa Ana, CA 92707, 714/957-0763.

IBM
The 3270 Personal Computer Attachment allows a 3278 terminal to attach to an IBM PC sytem unit. Data can be transferred between the host and the independent 3278 terminal operating as an independent work station in conjunction with the PC system unit. An adapter is installed by IBM at the customer site for the 3278, and the user installs an I/O panel and cable attachment to allow the PC system unit to use the display and keyboard of the 3278.

The IBM 3101 Emulation Program allows the PC to operate in place of an IBM 3101 Model 20 except for the loss of some 3101 features. The emulator does not provide support for local mode, transparent mode, program mode and ATTR keys, interfaces other than EIA RS-232C types, foreign languages, and certain display features.

The Binary Synchronous Communications Adapter provides the ability to attach the IBM PC to host systems or other IBM PCs via switched or leased-line networks using BSC protocols. The adapter board is installed in the PC system unit and communicates with other computers by modem.

The Binary Synchronous 3270 Emulation version 1.0 allows the PC to emulate a 3270 device using BSC when it is used with the BSC adapter.

The Model 7426 Terminal Interface Unit allows up to four IBM PCs to attach to IBM 8100, 4331, and 4321 systems. IBM Corporation, Systems Products Division, P.O. Box 1328, Boca Raton, FL 33432, 800/447-4700, 322-4400 Illinois, 447-0890 Alaska, Hawaii.

ICOT

The ICOT Model 352 Virtual Terminal System is an external unit that allows up to 12 PCs to emulate 3278 display stations using 3270 BSC or 3271 SDLC communications protocol. The Model 352 is available in three host line configurations: one BSC host line, two BSC host lines, or one BSC and one SDLC host line. Complete SNA/SDLC support will be available by the end of the summer. ICOT Corporation, 830 Maude Ave., Mountain View, CA 94039, 415/964-4635.

Intelligent Technologies

The PC Express II allows PC users to exchange files with IBM and DEC mainframes by providing 327X emulation and VT-100/52 emulation. The product includes a board that fits inside the IBM PC system unit and software that provides SNA protocol conversion. The PC can act as a single 327X display terminal or a cluster controller for up to four PCs. Intelligent Technologies International Corporation, 151 University Ave., Palo Alto, CA 94301, 415/328-2411.

Local Data

The DataLynx/3274 is an external unit that allows up to 9 IBM PCs to connect to the IBM host computer and emulate 3278 terminals. The unit supports BISYNC or SNA/SDLC protocol conversion.

Another unit, the DataLynx/3270 allows two IBM PCs to communicate with a 3780 host computer. The PCs emulate either two 3277s or one 3277 and one 3287-2 using BSC. Local Data, 2701 Toledo St. #706, Torrance, CA 90503, 213/320-7126.

Persyst

A combination of two products from Persyst that allows one IBM PC to emulate a 3278 terminal for remote job entry. The DCP88 board is placed in the PC and is used in conjunction with the IBM HASP software to support the following protocols: Async, HDLC, SDLC, and BISYNC. Personal Systems Technology, Inc., 15801 Rockfield, Ste. A, Irvine, CA 92714, 714/859-8871.

Protocol Computers

PCI 1071 is an external unit that converts BSC protocol for up to seven IBM PCs. The 1071 provides emulation of the IBM 3271 and can be upgraded to provide SNA/SDLC protocol conversion.

The PCI 1076 allows up to seven IBM PCs to emulate 3278 terminals using SNA/SDLC protocol.

The PCI 1067 serves as an alternative to NTO (Network Terminal Option) that saves memory space in the 3705 controller by providing all of the NTO functions. The 1067 unit allows up to seven IBM PCs to operate as terminals for a 3767 host using SNA/SDLC protocol. Protocol Computers, Inc., 6150 Canoga Ave. #100, Woodland Hills, CA 91367-3773, 800/423-5904, 213/716-5500.

TAC

IRMA is a board that fits inside the IBM PC and permits attachment of the PC to most 3270 controllers. The board allows a single PC to emulate a 3278 terminal. Technical Analysis Corporation, 120 W. Wieuca Rd. NE, Atlanta, GA 30042, 404/252-1045, Telex: 54-9600.

IBM mainframes use several types of terminals. Currently, the most popular are the 3270 family of devices. As successive improvements are incorporated, the model numbers are assigned sequentially. Thus, 3277s are older than 3278s or 3279s. Since each has different capabilities, characteristics, and behavior, the control unit must know which of the devices is connected. Terminals use unique combinations of escape code sequences to control characteristics, such as function keys, cursor movement, and formatted screens. Thus, a terminal emulator must translate those escape codes.

Achieving Compatibility

The earlier sections of this article described some of the common protocols found on IBM mainframes. Based on that framework, you next need to know how to get the PC to conform to those standards.

Protocol conversion involves the transformation of data characteristics at several levels. Descriptions of these levels vary, but the important point to recognize is that Data Link Control protocol conversion is only part of the process involved in achieving compatibility between a PC and a mainframe computer.

Protocol conversion is the process of creating compatibility between peer protocols at the Data Link level. Strictly speaking, protocol conversion refers to conversion at the Data Link Control level, which does not assure compatibility in all cases. Nor does protocol conversion mean that, for example, providing an asynchronous ASCII port on a PC will be sufficient to emulate an IBM 3270. For practical purposes, terminal emulation is required to assure compatibility between a PC and a mainframe computer, especially if the PC is to be used as an interactive terminal. Therefore, to assure compatibility, conversions of protocols, character sets (ASCII to EBCDIC), terminal escape sequences, and transmission methods (asynchronous to synchronous) must be successfully completed.

Depending on the requirements of the PC user, compatibility can be achieved by one or more levels of conversion. Because conversion at a higher level (e.g., Data Link Control protocol level) assumes conversion at lower levels (e.g., Physical Connect (RS-232C) or Character Set level) consideration should be given to current and future compatibility issues in deciding on a protocol conversion option. For example, a current environment might require conversion only at the Data Link Control layer, allowing a PC user to transfer ASCII file data to a host using a point-to-point BISYNC protocol. This level of conversion may be sufficient for current applications, but any future applications requiring full-screen formatting and editing functions, for example, would be beyond the scope of the Data Link Control protocol conversion. Full-screen formatting and editing would require terminal emulation to appear as a particular type of device (e.g., an IBM 3276 Model 12) to the host-resident application.

To summarize, the protocol converter (terminal emulator) must provide characteristics at one or more of the following levels as a minimum requirement:

Link characteristics. Defines electrical characteristics and signal configurations together with their physical pins on the connector.

Communications code. Defines the code set of the PC (ANSI ASCII) and the conversion required into a

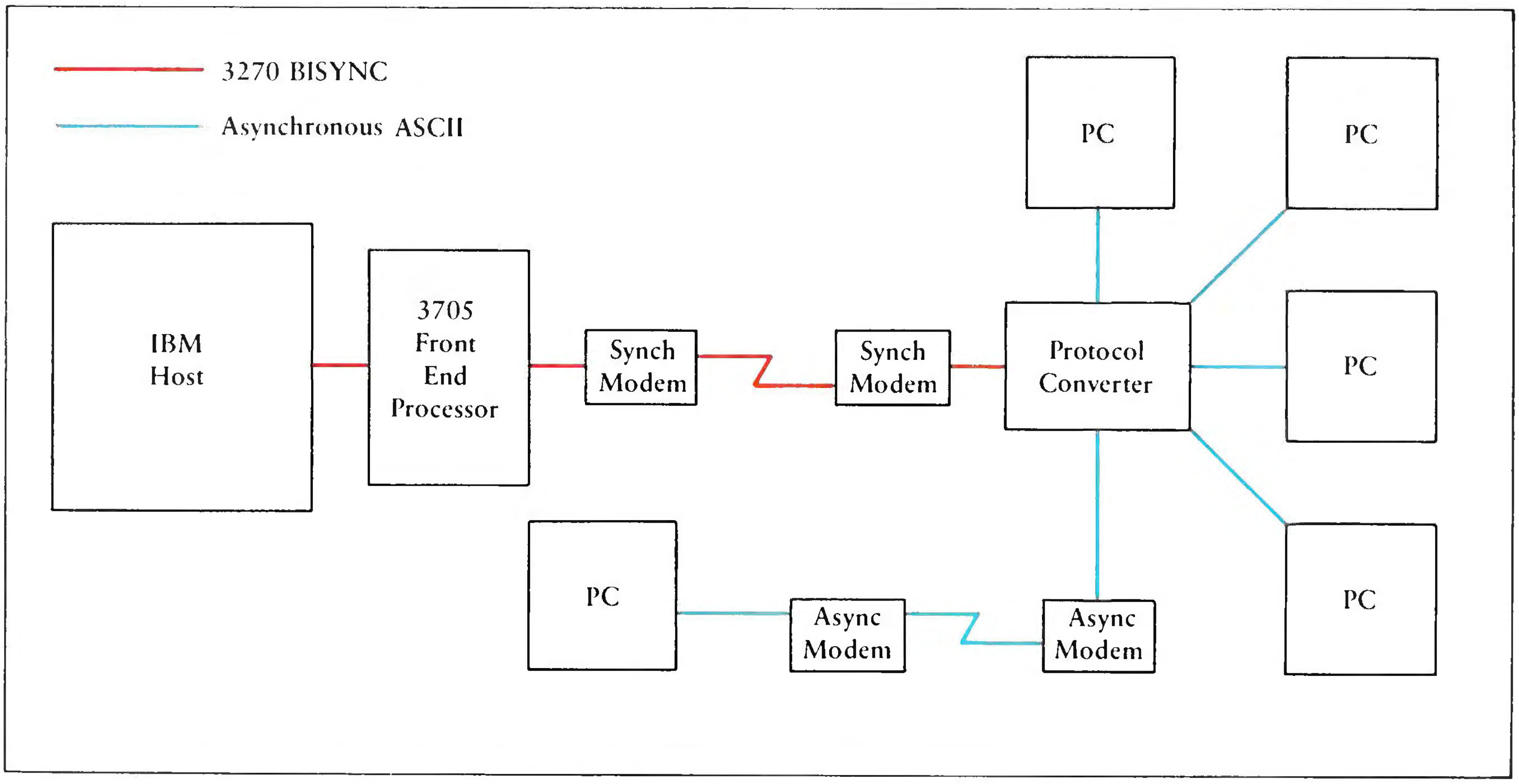


Figure 7: Asynchronous ASCII to IBM 3270 BISYNC Protocol Conversion

character set recognized by the host (e.g., IBM ASCII, EBCDIC, etc.).

Communication protocol/transmission. Maps data from PC protocol and transmission mode into that supported by the host, and acknowledges transmission.

Device type. Recognizes the device constraints (i.e., record size, block size, etc.) and reformats data to accommodate the emulated device.

Terminal emulation is required to assure compatibility between a PC and a mainframe.

Device characteristics. Interprets command and control codes of the PC and transforms them into those required by the host.

The fundamental message, therefore, is that selection of a protocol conversion option should be integrated into an overall data communications plan, not based on an isolated need.

Protocol Conversion Options

There are several protocol conversion and terminal emulation options currently available to PC users. These include software packages for the host and/or the PC, printed circuit boards with firmware modules that plug into the PC, and stand-alone microprocessor-based protocol converters that provide a virtual terminal capability for the PC.

The software for the host consists of a package that runs on the 3705 front end and supports the IBM 3101 ASCII terminal. To make use of that software, the PC requires emulation software to make it look like a 3101.

Applications of protocol conversion and/or terminal emulation vary in complexity, but most commonly involve converting asynchronous ASCII protocols to IBM BISYNC protocols and converting asynchronous and character-oriented synchronous protocols to bit-oriented protocols (SDLC, HDLC).

The asynchronous ASCII to IBM 3270 BISYNC (BSC) conversion, shown in Figure 7, is the major market for protocol converters, resulting from the basic economic rationalization that BISYNC has the largest currently installed user base. However, the conversion to a bit-oriented protocol is receiving greater attention because of the increased emphasis on SNA and X.25 communications networks.

With the numerous options available, selecting the best one requires a careful understanding of the needs of the PC user and his or her company.

Vendor-supplied software packages and user-written software may be viable alternatives in some protocol conversion situations. The primary advantage in the software approach is that it is adaptable. However, with the continuing shift to hardware-based microprocessor products for handling protocol conversion and other communications functions, the advantage of the software approach is rapidly dwindling, particularly if a license fee is charged for each PC using the software package.

A printed circuit board that plugs directly into the PC bus and contains modules for protocol conversion and/or terminal emulation may also be a viable option. However, like the software approach, a cost is incurred for each PC. The significant point is that the number of PCs to be supported is a primary consideration from a cost as well as a performance standpoint. If each PC interfaces directly with the host, the host front end may run out of available ports.

Multiple microprocessor-based protocol converter products provide a number of value-added features and functions not available with other approaches. These added capabilities include:

- Simultaneous multiple-device support of different types (different vendors or manufacturers) of PCs, KSR terminal, CRTs, receive-only printers, graphics terminals).
- Simultaneous support of multiple protocols.
- Simultaneous support of multiple hosts.
- Simultaneous support of multiple sessions.
- Use of dial-up lines instead of dedicated synchronous lines.
- Elimination of the need for coaxial cables.
- Elimination of the need for host emulation software (e.g., IBM Network Terminal Option for ASCII support).

The trend toward bit-oriented synchronous protocols for SNA and X.25 networks and the attention given to the efforts of various standards organizations will, in the long run, promote compatibility between different vendors' communications protocols. Despite these trends, compatibility is still well in the future, and the need for protocol conversion will continue, although the cost of protocol conversion will decrease as microprocessor-based solutions are more widely used.

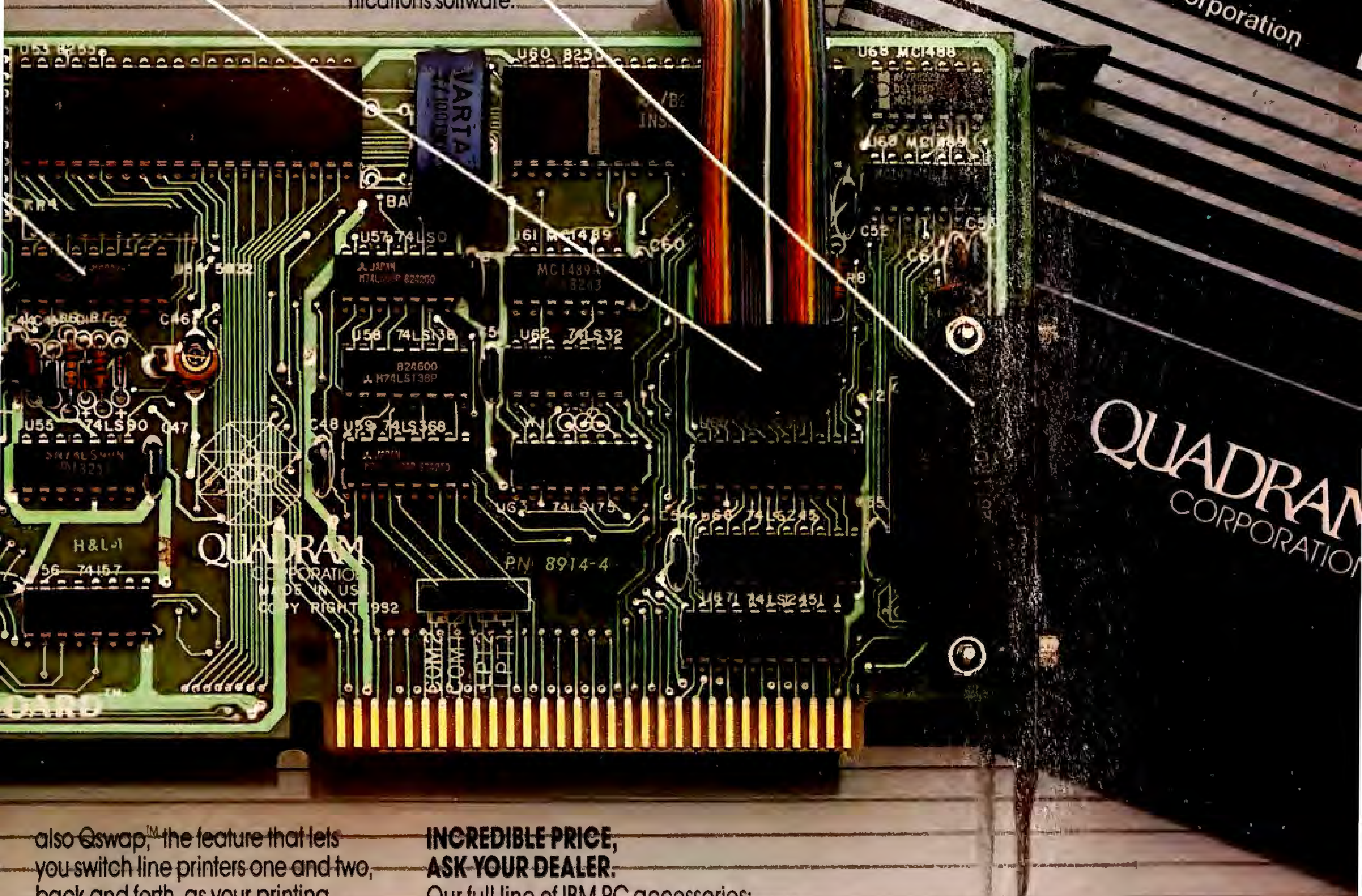
Arlin Torbett is Director of Systems and Technology at ICOT Corporation in Mountain View, California. He has extensive experience in computer communications networks dating back to early ARPANET days and has taught computer simulation courses at Stanford University and San Jose State. Harry Miller is an Associate Editor at PC World.

BY QUADRAM™

Parallel Port
There's a parallel I/O designed to operate most printers and parallel devices.
Or a second serial port on Quadboard II.

Serial Port
Used for connecting modems, printers, and other serial devices, Quadboard's serial adapter can be configured as COM1 or COM2 and fully supports IBM PC communications software.

\$395(64K)
\$595(256K)



also Qswap,™ the feature that lets you switch line printers one and two, back and forth, as your printing needs change.

Proven Design
Quadboard is the number one IBM PC option board on the market today. Nothing even comes close, because Quadboard is designed with performance in mind. Engineered for dependability and built with only the finest components available. Each board has been thoroughly tested and "burned-in" for years of reliable service.

INCREDIBLE PRICE, ASK YOUR DEALER.
Our full line of IBM PC accessories: Quadboard II, Quad 512+, Quadcolor, Quadchrome, Quadscreen, Quadmodem, Memory Board, Serial Board (Single or Dual ports), Parallel Board, Chronograph, and Microfazer.

All products are sold through local personal computer dealers. If yours does not stock Quadram, please ask him to call us at (404) 923-6666.

QUADRAM CORPORATION
A Division of Intelligent Systems

4357 Park Drive / Norcross, Ga. 30093 / (404) 923-6666
TWX 810-766-4915 (QUADRAM NCRS)

Shown are IBM-PC compatible programs. The Columbia MPC runs MS-DOS plus six other operating systems.

THE COLUMBIA MPC WORKS WITH A WORLD OF SOFTWARE. $3,000 WORTH COMES FREE WITH THE SYSTEM.

World Headquarters:
8990 Route 108
Columbia, MD 21045
(301) 992-3400
TWX 710-862-1891

West Coast:
3901 MacArthur Blvd.
Suite 211
Newport Beach, CA 92663
(714) 752-5245
Telex 277778

Europe:
Limitenstr. 94
4050 Moenchengladbach 2
West Germany
Phone 02161-33159
Telex 852452

Call our distributor nearest you.

Access Systems
Wellesley, MA
(617) 237-7743

Advanced Management Systems
Aurora, CO
(303) 752-2972

Central Microcomputer Distributors
Montreal, Quebec, Canada
(514) 849-7533

N.I.D.I. (National Instrument Distribution Inc.)
Dayton, OH
(513) 435-4503

RPC Electronics
Cleveland, OH
(216) 461-2280

RPC Electronics
Pittsburgh, PA
(412) 782-3770

Distributors in Australia, Austria, Belgium, Colombia, Denmark, Hong Kong, Israel, Italy, Malaysia, Netherlands-Antilles, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom, Venezuela.

Today, the Columbia MPC takes on hundreds of IBM-PC compatible software programs and IBM-PC add-ons or peripherals.

What's more, six other Columbia-supported operating systems are available — CP/M-80,* CP/M-86,* Concurrent CP/M-86,* MP/M-86* (OASIS-16* and XENIX* available soon) — stretching the Columbia MPC's software compatibility beyond any other personal computer.

Farther, faster, for far less.

The Columbia MPC is shipped with fully supported software that will save you $3,000. Included is the entire self-teaching Perfect Software™ family: Perfect Writer,™ a word processor; Perfect Speller,™ a 50,000 word dictionary; Perfect Filer,™ a data base manager; and Perfect Calc,™ a financial calculation system.

In addition you get MS-DOS, CP/M-86, Macro/86 Assembler, BASICA,* Asynchronous Communications Support, Diagnostics and the Columbia Tutor program. This means your Columbia MPC is up and running right out of the box. Space Commanders and Fast Graphs show off the Columbia MPC's full-color graphics.

Way out front in value and performance.

With a list price of $3,995 — including 128K RAM, 640K in dual disk drives, 8 IBM-PC compatible expansion slots, 2 serial and 1 parallel I/O, IBM-PC compatible keyboard, and color graphics monitor controller — the Columbia MPC is ready to go. And a complete 12MB hard disk system lists for $5,995 — software included! B/W or color monitors and printers optional.

Made in U.S.A.— supported worldwide.

All Columbia hardware and software are backed by the "Call for Columbia" national service program. So, call us or our distributor for the dealer nearest you — and start looking at the Columbia MPC. It'll show you a whole new world of performance and value.

COLUMBIA
DATA PRODUCTS, INC.

Commerical Computer Sales
Atlanta, GA
(404) 256-9190

Empire Micro Products
Rochester, NY
(716) 626-3660

MP Systems
Dallas, TX
(214) 385-8885

Mid Tech Associates
Desoto, KS
(913) 441-6565

Mid Tech Associates
Florissant, MO
(314) 837-5200

Mytec, Inc.
Sanford, FL
(305) 321-2301

Renaissance Technology Corp.
Concord, CA
(415) 676-5757

Southeastern Data Products
Lynchburg, VA
(804) 237-6286

Tek-Aids Industries
Arlington Heights, IL
(312) 870-7401

Tele-Terminals
Brooklyn Park, MN
(612) 328-3072

Waybern Corporation
Garden Grove, CA
(714) 554-4520

Perfect Software, Perfect Writer, Perfect Speller, Perfect Filer, and Perfect Calc are trademarks of Perfect Software, Inc. IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines. CP/M and MP/M are registered trademarks of Digital Research, Inc. OASIS is a trademark of Phase One. MS-DOS and XENIX are trademarks of MICROSOFT.

The Future of Concurrency

PC World talks with Digital Research, creator of the CP/M-86 operating systems.

Edited by Andrew Fluegelman

PC World Editor Andrew Fluegelman and Associate Editors Kearney Rietmann and Harry Miller went to Pacific Grove, California, the home of Digital Research. Dominant in the world of 8-bit computers, Digital Research is working to apply concurrency and program integration to 16-bit personal computing. *PC World* discussed these issues with Gordon Eubanks, General Manager of Digital Research's Commercial Systems Division. The following is an edited version of that discussion.

PCW: Digital Research gained its strong position with CP/M-86 for 8-bit computers. What's the future of your operating systems in the 16-bit world?

DR: During the last 12 months the industry has recognized that with IBM's entry into the market with the 8088 chip there's a different capability in the hardware. We believe, however, that the 8-bit market is alive and well and a viable market. It isn't as though the 8-bit market is going to disappear. We believe the 16-bit market is also a viable market, but with a different set of capabilities. This is something that's really important to differentiate.

So we have to worry about an integrated operating system strategy. We have to be able to migrate between 8-bit and 16-bit and from single-user through multiuser systems, and to have a strategy with which we can network the products together.

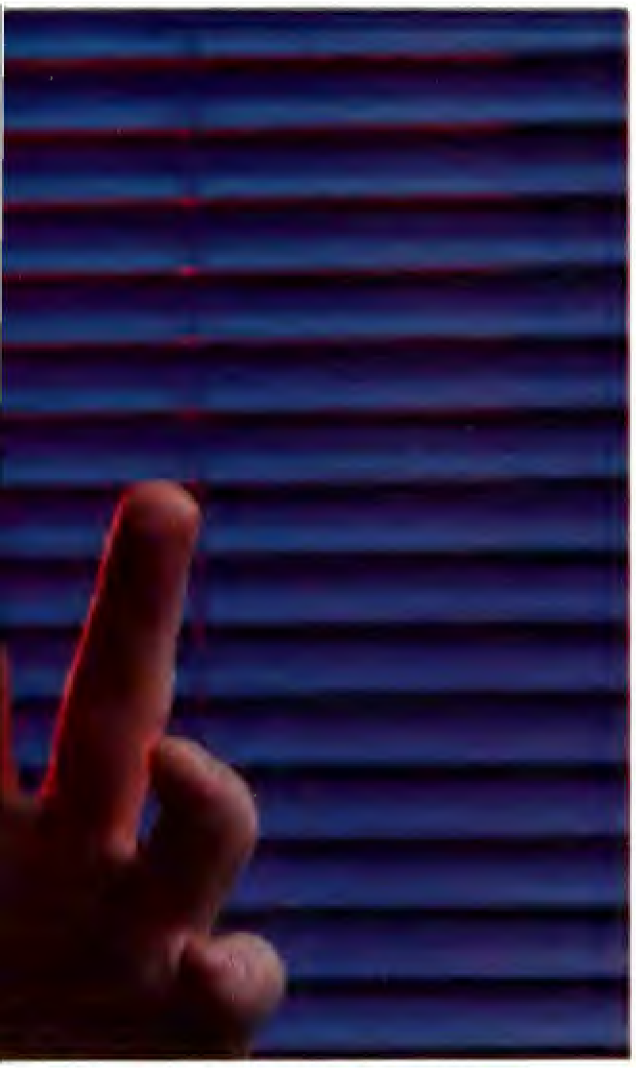
PCW: What's the 16-bit portion of that strategy?

DR: When we look at hardware like the IBM PC or the DEC Rainbow, we see a lot of memory, we see an integrated display, and we see some good graphics—not great graphics yet—but good graphics. Our strategy on the 16-bit systems is to provide an operating environment that takes advantage of the additional memory and the integrated display. And that's where Concurrent CP/M-86 enters the picture.

About 2 years ago Gary Kildall, Tom Rolander, Frank Holsworth—a whole bunch of our technical people—said "Ok, we have CP/M-86 out on the street with a multiuser system, but that doesn't fit the IBM PC at all!" That's how Concurrent came about.

PCW: Can you describe how Concurrent CP/M-86 works?

DR: Concurrent allows you to run several applications programs simultaneously. It lets you do this because in a 16-bit system you've got a lot of memory and you've probably got a video map going right out to the screen. Normally you have your application tell the operating system to put information on the video map via a system call. Whatever is in the video map is then displayed on the screen.



What Concurrent really does, simplistically, is make mirror images of the screens. Then you can have multiple applications working into each of the screens, and you can choose the one that will appear. You have multiple programs using the various screens, and you have a real-time operating system that allows you to maximize the additional memory capability of the hardware.

PCW: Is screen switching the way that things are managed, or are you looking at screen splitting?

DR: Right now on the IBM PC we implement a full screen for each job, or task, that's running. But the operating system is certainly capable of doing windowing or any kind of sophisticated user interface of the four tasks.

Screen splitting would be just fine, except we feel that right now if you try to do it with the IBM PC, you use up a lot of memory. We do know of manufacturers that are designing hardware where the screen may be split—that will open more opportunities for such interfaces.

I think you'd be surprised if you looked at who's going to be shipping CP/M-86 versus who's going to be shipping PC-DOS.

My opinion is that while it sounds great to run four applications on the screen at once, I would rather have the full screen for the application I'm working on, with the status line to tell me when I need to give attention to another one. With Concurrent, it takes just a keystroke to switch to another program.

PCW: I'd presume that concurrency has a great effect on working styles.

DR: Of course it does. The classic situation is when you're in the middle of word processing—writing an article—and someone calls up to send you some information for your data base. You're not going to want to save your article, get out of the word processor, go into telecommunications, receive the data, call up the data base, copy the information in, go out of the data base, back to your word processor, call up the article again, and start writing. You just won't do it—I've found that out.

I used to feel guilty that I never really used computers. I was always using them for development, but switching to another application was just too difficult. With Concurrent you just hit a button and you change applications.

People don't understand that Concurrent is not a gimmick; it's truly multiple tasks running together. It's exciting to see people when they first realize what concurrency can do.

PCW: What do you see as the best applications of Concurrent?

DR: Running four independent programs is just the rudimentary use of concurrency. The next step will be when software vendors use concurrency to get an integrated set of applications working together.

For example, with independent applications you do a spreadsheet and then transfer the information onto the graphics program and create a graph. If you go back to the spreadsheet and change a number, the graph doesn't know you've changed it. Concurrent allows communication between applications, not just through a file system, but through interprocess communications. The operating system supports the ability for programs in memory to communicate directly with each other through mechanisms called queues. They can actually synchronize.

It's not just that you can buy *WordStar, SuperCalc,* and *dBASE II* and run them all on Concurrent. You can do that now—that's what we demo. That's great—they're all fantastic products. But the next step is to have a total environment controlled by the applications, integrated through the operating system. We're seeing that with *1-2-3,* Lisa, and *VisiON.* These products are just the beginning of a trend for highly integrated applications.

PCW: You said four tasks. Is that a technical limit, or a limit you decided on for the present?

DR: There's no technical limit per se, but there's a realistic limit. Each screen you run takes up memory, so the amount of memory becomes a limit. On the PC, if you figure that each program takes about 80K and you have four programs, that's 320K. If you have large programs doing a lot of work, pretty soon you're up to a half megabyte [500K] of memory.

PCW: Once you solve the memory management question, could you put a large amount of memory into your computer, start up the system at the beginning of the day, and let applications run for the rest of the day on their own?

DR: Yes you could, but the real value of concurrency is the ability to interact with the computer. That's what micros have brought to the world. A sophisticated 8086 system with 1 megabyte of memory and a hard disk is very much like a minicomputer or an early mainframe. But what the micro gives you over a mini is total interaction with the computing environment. You get instant update on the screen. Even on a mainframe it would be hard to do *VisiCalc*-type products with a high level of screen intensity.

Concurrent is a natural for an interactive environment because it gives you instant response when switching from one task to another—almost instant gratification.

PCW: You can still keep a calculator next to a computer.

DR: Sure, but you could probably create a good calculator program that runs on your computer. When you wanted to add a few numbers, you'd just hit a button.

But why stop there? Why not integrate applications so you can do the calculation and send the information back to the task where you were? If you're in the middle of a report, and you say, "These numbers don't look right," you ought to be able to add them and put them right into the report.

PCW: You're envisioning the independent software vendors having applications that pass information back and forth interactively. Are you supporting those software developers? When they get Concurrent CP/M-86, do they get documentation that shows them how to do the interaction?

DR: Yes and no. The answer should be, "It's all explained in the program documentation." The answer right now is that we're not doing near what we will do. We are working on a plan to target these independent software vendors and focus on the fact that perhaps they don't know how to produce integration with Concurrent.

PCW: It's one thing to provide an environment in which someone can design an integrated application if they want to do their own graph, spreadsheet, and word processing. But are you going to be able to define the environment enough so that someone could work on just one of those applications and send the information into the operating system so that another application would be able to use it?

> Our strategy on the 16-bit systems is to provide an operating environment that takes advantage of the additional memory and the integrated display.

DR: We're working on that. The first stage will be people running disjointed applications under Concurrent C/PM because there's a definite productivity gain. I think you could sell Concurrent on that alone.

The second stage is that software vendors will see that using Concurrent is an opportunity for them to gain a foothold. If you look at what a program like *1-2-3* does, you can imagine the opportunities possible in developing highly integrated programs.

For stage three we will work very hard to define the data interchanges and file formats to allow people to have separate applications work together.

Right now we have an end-user product called *Graph*, which is an integrative graphing product. It's very nice—you enter data and *Graph* produces bar graphs and multiple graphs, Right now the program takes data from *VisiCalc* and *SuperCalc*. The next release will take data from *Multiplan* and *Microplan*. The process is endless, however, because if a program accepts n formats, there's always $n+1$ that you want it to accept. We want to have the program take the standard format, whatever we call it, and accept it in the *Graph* program. That's the third stage.

PCW: Will your "stage three" really benefit the independents?

DR: Let's face it, while many companies have integrated packages, most companies have only one or two real winners. If you get to stage two and never get to stage three, all you do is shut out the garage shop programmers, because they think, "Hell, people want integrated applications. I could do a great spreadsheet, but I can't do all the other applications." So the industry as a whole benefits from a standard interchange. The problem is to get all the big people—large companies that don't necessarily benefit quite as much—to agree on the format.

PCW: Can you accomplish that?

DR: That's something Digital Research can show leadership in, because we don't take the position that we're going to be a sole source of products. We will be involved in developing operating systems, languages, and applications—we will be working in all areas. We will show leadership in standards, but we are not—I'd like to say arrogant—dumb enough to say that we will be a sole source of software in what's going to be a multi-billion-dollar industry. We want to encourage standards, and we will be successful if we can help define them.

PCW: From the user's point of view, what do you see the market looking like over the next several years? Do you see people making use of a number of operating systems for different tasks, or do you think that there will be different segments of the user industry—a certain group of users using one system, a certain group using another?

DR: My guess is that suppliers of applications will settle on certain operating systems. There'll be a large base of CP/M, a large base of PC-DOS, and a large base of UNIX. But I don't see users thinking particularly about operating systems. They'll use the computer to solve specific problems. They may switch operating systems, but they won't consciously think about it. They might say "I'm going to do a spreadsheet." Their spreadsheet might happen to run under CP/M-86, but they won't think about that.

For instance, when we sell our LOGO product, it will be shipped with the operating system on the disk. You'll just plug LOGO into the PC and it will come up running CP/M-86; that fact will be irrelevant to most of the users who want to learn about computers through LOGO. Later, if they want to get more advanced and take a look at files or use other languages, they will have a standard CP/M file system.

PCW: There's a lot of interest in DR LOGO. What's the release date?

DR: It will probably be on the shelves in July.

PCW: You're going to get a lot of people trying LOGO when you come out with it, and you say CP/M-86 will be on the disk. So they'll just boot up and be running CP/M. Will they then have that operating system available to them, or will it be so integrated that it won't stand alone?

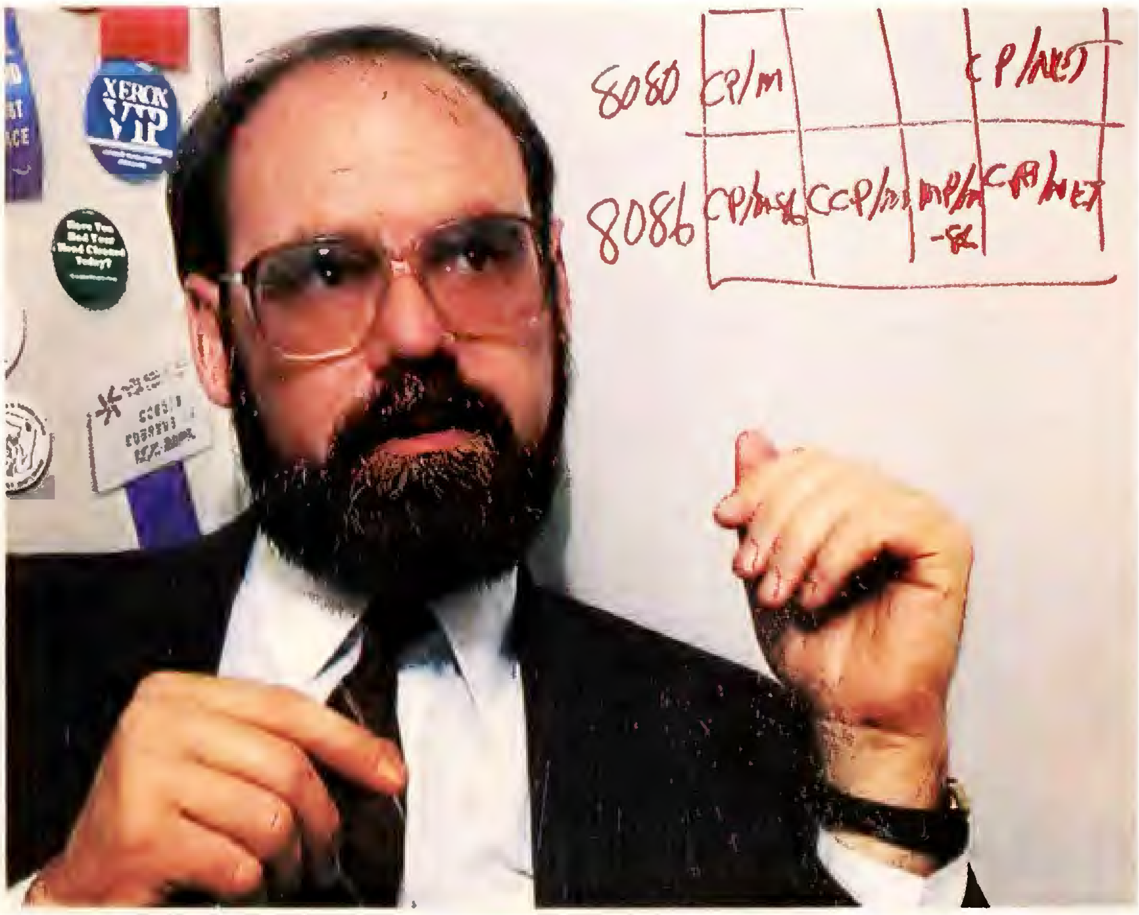
DR: It depends on how much they know. CP/M-86 on the LOGO disk will be stand alone enough that someone can actually stick a disk in, load a drive, and run another application. Generally, with CP/M-86 priced at $60, people buy products so they can get the user manual, support, and everything else. The point is not to put CP/M on the market. The intent is to look at the market that LOGO's targeted at and lower the resistance people have to getting used to a new product, to using computers.

You know, Gary Kildall has a real interest in getting people away from thinking in computer terms. He is really into that—how do you get kids into computers? How do you get people to feel good about computers? LOGO is a very interactive language. Gary has a good way of explaining it. He'll say, "Now this is a turtle and I'm moving it around." But of course you can't talk about turtles with businessmen, so it becomes a pointer.

For the person who really wants to get involved, he built in interactive debugging with windows. In one window is the LOGO program where you can edit; in another window you can interactively debug the program; and another window shows the output.

PCW: Is LOGO a language that people will build applications software on, or is it just something people will program?

DR: Both. I think people could do applications. LOGO's not going to run as fast as some languages, but you can definitely build applications under it.



PCW: What kind? Traditionally, LOGO's been used in education.

DR: You can build almost any kind of business graphics. Gary gives demonstrations with business graphs. Personally, I think LOGO is very powerful, but it's so powerful that it isn't that much easier to use than BASIC. Gary and I kid each other about that. LOGO's a very sophisticated language with a great deal of extendability. You can define little routines and make them part of your LOGO and build on that. It's really a very user-friendly LISP in disguise. We think LOGO will be extremely successful for Digital Research, but we also hope that it sets some trends in education. We see a tremendous school market for LOGO.

PCW: Let's look at the IBM PC market, which is not the only market, but it's the one we write about the most. The fact is that right now if you go to a user group meeting and ask how many people are running a Digital Research operating system, only a small percentage of them are doing so.

DR: It's incredible, though, that it's a noticeable percentage— that you can actually count the hands when they raise them. If you think about it, the fact that we've got 4 or 5 percent penetration is incredible, considering we have just launched a major retail program aimed at the IBM PC market.

PCW: What do you think explains your current market share?

DR: It's based on the fact that IBM decided they wanted everyone to use PC-DOS by having all IBM applications on PC-DOS. We're working very hard with IBM on a number of levels, but IBM is not the only market. You see, your magazine is *PC World*, but it's not IBM PC World, and I predict that within 6 months you'll have a DEC column, or at least coverage of the DEC.

PCW: Interesting.

DR: I talked to the product manager for the DEC Rainbow recently, and he gave me the ship rates, which I cannot give you, but which astounded me. And the Rainbows are all running CP/M-86 as the shipped operating system.

PCW: But they announced it over a year ago. They've been back ordered for a year.

DR: They did have some trouble getting the Rainbow out, but they have just begun volume shipments, and it's a damned nice machine.

I think you'd be surprised if you looked at who's going to be shipping CP/M-86 versus who's going to be shipping PC-DOS. Microsoft says that the whole world is buying MS-DOS—that everyone is going to be shipping it. We don't feel that the world is that way at all. We have over 120 CP/M-86 contracts—more than twice the number Bill [Gates of Microsoft] reports having.

> We're very optimistic that 6 months from now your magazine will be looking at PCs in a totally different way.

We see that the use of CP/M-86 is going to increase, and that there's a level up to which IBM can ship only so many PCs a month. They're shipping a lot—30,000 or so. We feel that 12 months from now we can reach more than parity with MS-DOS with the contracts we have in the bag today, and that does not include our expected penetration of the IBM market.

We're very optimistic that 6 months from now your magazine will be looking at PCs in a totally different way than you're looking at them now. And it has nothing to do with IBM. IBM's done a fantastic job. The PC is not a record-setting machine, but it's a good machine, it's well-positioned, it's well-supported, and it will be here for a long time. But so will DEC, so will NCR, so will Sony, NEC, and Fujitsu. Fujitsu is the largest computer company in Japan. They totally endorse Concurrent CP/M for the 8086.

PCW: Is Concurrent their only operating system?

DR: Either CP/M-86 or Concurrent CP/M is the operating system they ship, and they are the ones DEC and NEC are shipping.

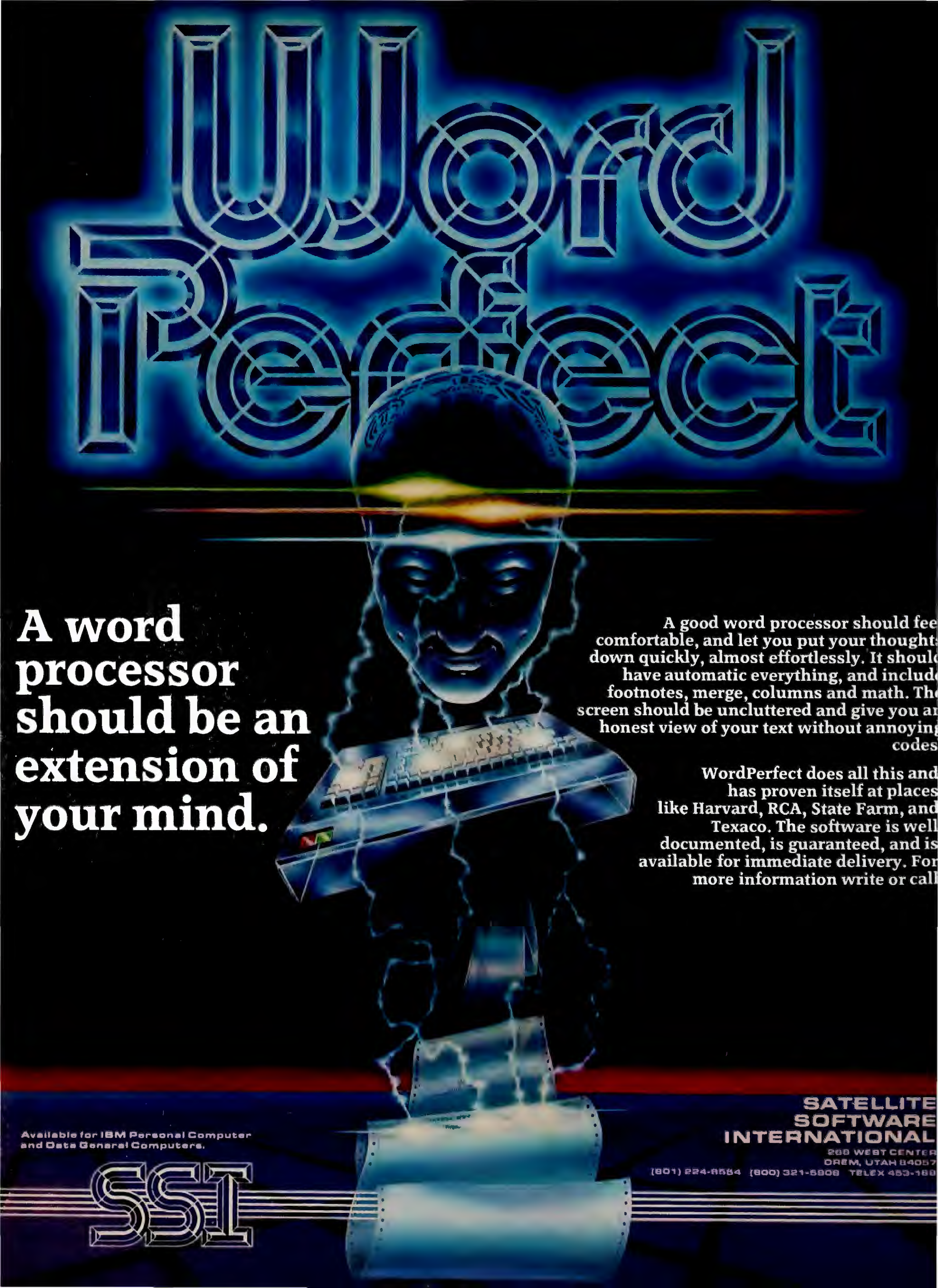
PCW: Will all these machines be compatible in the sense of data compatible, program compatible, graphics compatible, and keyboard compatible?

DR: They won't be keyboard compatible. We believe, however, that in terms of being data compatible and object code compatible, CP/M-86 has the best compatibility track record.

PCW: And how do you see CP/M-86's position in the personal computer world?

DR: We believe that people who are configuring systems are going to need functionality, networking, and concurrency. We think this will lead people to choose our underlying system software because it's got the technological lead. We've never had anyone say that concurrency is not the right technology for the 8086. If it weren't for IBM shipping PC-DOS, it would never be an issue.


BASF QUALIMETRIC™
A TOTALLY NEW DIMENSION OF QUALITY.
qualimetric
BASF
BASF
FlexyDisk
2
From BASF comes a totally new level of excellence in magnetic media – the Qualimetric standard, a standard so advanced that BASF FlexyDisks® are confidently backed by an extraordinary new lifetime warranty.* The Qualimetric standard is maintained without compromise through every step of BASF design, production, inspection, and testing...reflecting an unwavering BASF commitment to media fidelity and durability.
Our FlexyDisk jacket incorporates a unique two-piece liner that not only traps damaging debris away from the media surface, but also ensures precise media-to-head alignment. The result – certified 100% error-free performance, backed by BASF's exclusive lifetime warranty.*
For information security, tomorrow and beyond, look for the distinctive BASF package with the Qualimetric seal. Call 800-343-4600 for the name of your nearest supplier.
ENTER TOMORROW ON BASF TODAY
BASF
BASF
*Contact BASF for warranty details. © 1982, BASF Systems Corporation, Bedford, MA


WordPerfect
A word processor should be an extension of your mind.
A good word processor should fee
comfortable, and let you put your thought
down quickly, almost effortlessly. It shoul
have automatic everything, and includ
footnotes, merge, columns and math. Th
screen should be uncluttered and give you a
honest view of your text without annoyin
codes
WordPerfect does all this and
has proven itself at places
like Harvard, RCA, State Farm, and
Texaco. The software is well
documented, is guaranteed, and is
available for immediate delivery. For
more information write or call
Available for IBM Personal Computer and Data General Computers.
SATELLITE SOFTWARE INTERNATIONAL
288 WEST CENTER
OREM, UTAH 84057
(801) 224-8554 (800) 321-5906 TELEX 453-188

PC WORLD View

News and Notes for the Computing Community

Miriam Medom

The *PC World View* staff is avidly attuned to new developments in computer technology, and we hear lots of rumors, speculation, and advance news that interest us. We want to share the most promising and unusual of these developments, and we'll do that here. We've reserved the "Grapevine" section of this column for industry reports, speculation, and rumors that we find especially enticing.

Grapevine

Color to Come?

Now that IBM's color monitor is brightening up the PC and XT, a few of our clandestine correspondents have taken a close look at this device. Their findings: the tube inside the monitor is made by sometime-IBM-rival Hitachi.

Another observer noted that the IBM color display has a switch that is capable of increasing the resolution of the device. Our correspondent interprets this presently unused capability to mean that IBM may be preparing a new and better color graphics board for the PC and XT.

Pastries and Pinstripes

IBM's announcement of the XT was a major event, and we joined about two dozen computer journalists to learn about the new machine and to verify or debunk the rumors we'd been hearing for months. By now all the details of new hardware and software have been confirmed and interpreted, and the predictions of sales figures and market effects have been made. But what about the really important stuff? What kind of spread does a multinational corporation put on for a Tuesday morning press conference?

Well, for its San Francisco celebration of the XT, IBM chose the elegant but slightly ostentatious

surroundings of the Hyatt Regency Hotel. The press met XT in the Fountain View Room, which can only be reached by walking through the hotel's large atrium lobby with its flowing-stream fountain and half acre of potted fig trees. As the members of the press arrived in ones and twos, they were directed to a side entrance of the conference room, where they were greeted by several cordial IBM representatives. Two XTs with color displays and two 19-inch Sony color TV sets were spread out in the room beyond the foyer, where a few more IBM people chatted with the press and watched a continuous demo program about the XT.

Back in the foyer, where the first item on the day's agenda was food and drink, waiters wheeled in carts with coffee and tea, Danish pastries, and a large mound of cut melon and other fresh fruit. Not surprisingly, the journalists hit the coffee more heavily than the food, though they did a respectable job on the sweet stuff, too.

Most of the guests grasped the coffee cups as daintily as possible and moseyed into the conference room. Even without their cups the guests were easily distinguishable from the hosts because every one of the nine IBM representatives wore the company color—blue. With one exception, the hosts (eight men and one woman) wore navy blue suits in understated stripes or solids; the exception, a programmer, wore a light blue plaid sport coat and dark slacks. He also answered more questions than anyone else in the room.

So much for food and fashion. The only other noteworthy event of the day (excluding the XT, of course) was the stir our colleague John Dvorak (editor of *InfoWorld*) caused with his NEC 8201 lap-sized computer. (This machine is not sold in the United States, but it is quite similar to Radio Shack's new portable, the TRS-80 model 100. As soon as the presentation was over, about half the room crowded around John to see the little battery-operated machine he'd been taking notes with. And at least half the bodies around John were wearing navy blue.

It's in the Box

Now it can be told. Authorized PC dealers were shipped an XT in advance of the machine's announcement, but they were cautioned to keep it under wraps. To wit: accompanying the XT's components were memos from the corporation labeled

IBM Confidential and stating that the XT must be stored in a locked room, that only the store manager could open the box, and that absolutely no mention could be made of the product's existence before it was announced by IBM.

Blissful Giving

The wedding season is upon us, and a new wrinkle in gifts for brides and grooms has appeared. Many contemporary couples are not registering for wedding gifts of the traditional sort, such as china, silver, and linens. Instead, they are signing up with their favorite computer dealer and letting friends and relatives know what electronic baubles they want, to celebrate their matrimony.

The good part of this new trend is that since both members of such couples are likely to be interested in their computer(s), neither will become a computer widow or widower. The bad part is that should they get divorced, there will be more high-tech property to fight over.

Big Blue's News

PCs Spread Out, Beef Up

IBM recently announced expansion of its network of authorized PC dealers to 770 stores, more than double the number of dealers doing business a year ago. And those stores will all be selling a technically new PC; the minimum configuration for a PC is now 64K of RAM, expandable to 256K on the motherboard (using 64K memory chips).

Looking for Mr. Goodchip

In a move predicted by industry observers, IBM has begun to offer on-site service for the PC. At present only large-volume users who buy their PCs directly from IBM may subscribe to the service; rates have not been announced. The service will be offered on a yearly contract basis and will cost approximately 25 percent more than the rates for courier pickup and delivery now available to IBM customers in major metropolitan areas. On-site service is currently offered in 38 cities where IBM maintains service and exchange centers; that number will be expanded to approximately 100 cities in the future.

In addition, IBM is reducing rates for courier, carry-in, and mail-in service for the PC by 10 to 18 percent, depending on system configuration. Both on-site and off-site service is available only for IBM components; non-IBM boards or peripherals will have to be fixed elsewhere. Thus, dealers who service all manufacturers' components and service-only organizations such as Sorbus (*PC World View*, Vol. 1, No. 2) are still likely to have plenty of fix-it business.

High School Giveaway

In an effort to improve computer education in secondary schools IBM will donate 1500 PCs to 84 public and private high schools in New York, California, and Florida. This $8 million program will offer grants to a dozen institutions in those states to provide computer instruction to teachers and students. IBM has named Educational Testing Service (the Princeton, New Jersey, firm best known for its Scholastic Aptitude Test) to help select the schools that will receive free computers.

IBM chose the three states for this program, a spokesperson said, because their schools include a broad cross section of ethnic and economic populations, and because IBM has major facilities in each of those states. The participating schools will be selected in coming months, and teachers will be trained in time for the program to begin next fall.

Higher Tech, Higher Ed

A relative newcomer on the PC products scene has been selected to supply add-in processor boards for a campus-wide computer system at Carnegie-Mellon University in Pittsburgh. The firm, Sritek, Inc., of

Cleveland, will manufacture and deliver its board, which includes both a 68000 microprocessor and the Xenix operating system, for use in several hundred IBM PC XTs slated for use at Carnegie-Mellon. At least 100 of the Sritek-enhanced XTs will be in operation at the university by this fall.

Carnegie-Mellon previously signed an agreement with IBM to develop and implement a "comprehensive computing environment" on the campus. The network of XTs with 68000 processors and Xenix (the Microsoft implementation of the Unix operating system) is intended to serve as an interim stage in this development process.

The XTs will be used in two ways at Carnegie-Mellon: as stand-alone computers and in small-scale networks that share a hard disk. The university will also allow faculty, students, and employees to purchase the enhanced XT at the bulk discounts it enjoys.

GE Rents

General Electric has seen the light, so to speak, and has begun renting computer systems to its business customers. At present GE has some 100 computers in circulation, including the PC and the XT, as well as three Apple and two Hewlett-Packard models. The company also provides peripherals and software for the systems it rents. Last year GE arranged to purchase $10.5 million in PC products from IBM; no doubt some of those machines have joined the rental fleet.

A General Electric spokesperson noted that the majority of rental systems will be placed with business and industrial customers, but individuals may qualify as renters if they pass a credit check. Additional information about the GE program is available from the company's headquarters in Schenectady, New York.

Instant Edification

In an appropriate demonstration of the virtues of electronic mail, *PC World* Contributing Editor Larry Magid recently spread the word about the IBM XT. Within hours of IBM's formal announcement and demonstration of the XT, Magid filed a 2000-word story about the new computer on The Source's *Real Times* electronic magazine. Magid garnered the details in San Francisco and sent his article by modem to the *Real Times* editors in Montreal, who immediately posted it in their electronic periodical on The Source. Although electronic publishing is not as lucrative as writing for the print media, Magid points out that he had the satisfaction of being the author of the first published information about the XT, and he got instant feedback from readers in his Source mailbox.

Computer Slanguage

It's hard to avoid reading, hearing, or speaking the words computers have added to everyday language, whatever your opinion of their impact. I still shudder every time I hear *access* used as a verb, though I take some comfort in the fact that the chief grammarian in my early life, my eighth grade teacher, is no longer around to shudder with me.

Still, computerese has produced a few amusing moments; we'd like to hear about them and pass them along. Here are two bits of slanguage that wended our way.

An old typing test has been updated for the computer age; the new version reads: Now is the time for all good men to come to the aid of the parity.

A civil court judge recently added a new phrase to the legal lexicon. It seems that a woman suffering from persistent errors and complications with the computer records of her Visa card sued for redress of the damage done to her credit rating, reputation, and personal life. In a laudable expression of solidarity with human beings harassed by computers, the judge awarded the woman $200,000 and described the episode as "computer-hearted" treatment of the victim.

Mystery of the Month

Michael J. O'Connor, owner of two PCs, contributes this fascinating and elusive tale.

When I recently purchased my second IBM PC, I was pleased to find that the newest model uses 64K RAM chips on the system board. This allows up to 256K of RAM to be installed without having to buy a RAM expansion card. My first PC, purchased nearly a year ago, uses 16K RAM chips, so the system board is limited to 64K.

The day the new system was installed, I loaded *VisiCalc* and was greeted by a singing worksheet. At first I thought there was a component failure in my Amdek V-300A monitor (the high-pitched whistle sounded like a TV set with a bad flyback transformer). Unplugging the monitor, however, did not discourage *VisiCalc*'s song. Further investigation pinpointed the sound as coming from the PC's built-in speaker.

Experimentation uncovered these clues:

Only *VisiCalc* sings. *dBASE II*, *WordStar*, *Typing Tutor*, and *TAX-CUT* are all mute.

VisiCalc sings only when a worksheet is on the screen. Scrolling with the cursor keys modulates the otherwise steady whistle to produce a chirping sound.

Moving the cursor using either the GOTO command or the Home key produces momentary silence. Likewise, *VisiCalc* is silent while the worksheet is being recalculated.

I visited a ComputerLand store and tried the program on several PCs. Those with 64K chips on the system board sing; those with 16K chips do not. The type of monitor, monochrome or color, makes no difference.

So there you have it—a mysterious interaction between software and hardware. It might be deduced from the fact that VisiCalc *can't calculate and sing at the same time that it sings a mindless song. Can anyone produce the culprit or a fix?*

PC World View *welcomes contributions from readers, and we'll pay up to $50 for the items we use. Please include your name, address, and phone number with your contributions. Send them to* PC World View, PC World, *555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107.*

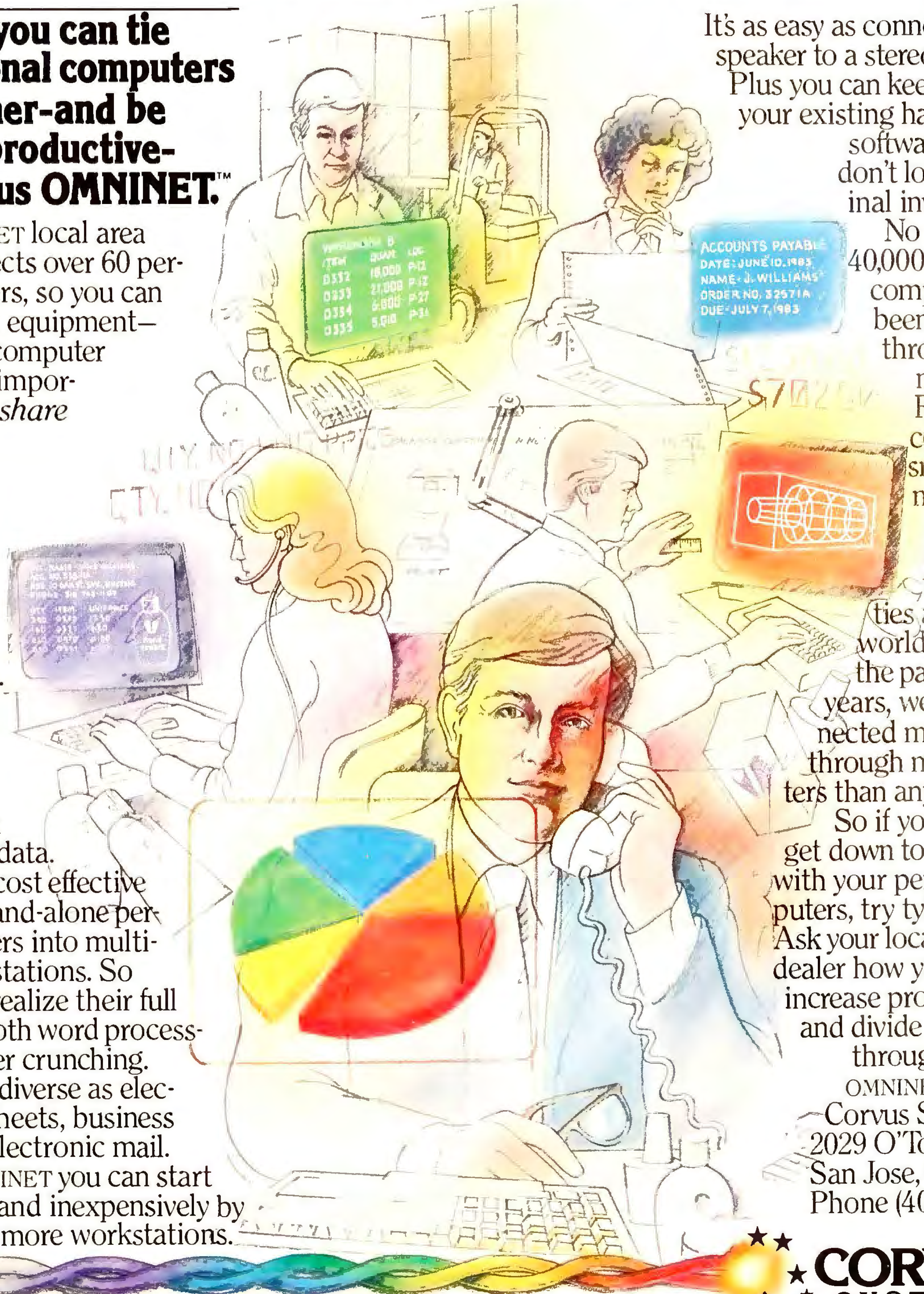
HOW TO GET MORE DONE BY TYING UP YOUR PERSONAL COMPUTERS.

Now you can tie your personal computers together–and be more productive–with Corvus OMNINET.™

An OMNINET local area network connects over 60 personal computers, so you can share common equipment—even different computer brands.* More importantly, you can *share the costs* of high-performance peripherals, such as printers and Corvus hard disks storing up to 80 million characters.

OMNINET also improves productivity by letting you share common programs and data. That makes it cost effective to turn your stand-alone personal computers into multipurpose workstations. So now they can realize their full potential for both word processing and number crunching. And things as diverse as electronic spreadsheets, business graphics and electronic mail.

With OMNINET you can start small, and expand inexpensively by simply adding more workstations.



It's as easy as connecting a speaker to a stereo system.

Plus you can keep on using your existing hardware and software, so you don't lose your original investment.

No wonder over 40,000 personal computers have been connected through Corvus networks in Fortune 1000 companies, small businesses, professional offices and educational facilities around the world. In fact, over the past three years, we've connected more people through microcomputers than anyone else.

So if you're ready to get down to business with your personal computers, try tying them up. Ask your local computer dealer how you can increase productivity—and divide your costs—through Corvus OMNINET. Or contact Corvus Systems, 2029 O'Toole Ave., San Jose, CA 95131. Phone (408) 946-7700.

CORVUS SYSTEMS

Tying it all together.

*OMNINET currently ties together Apple II, Apple II CP/M, Apple III, IBM PC, and the Corvus Concept,™ and soon the NEC PC8001, DEC VT180, Zenith Z89/90 and Z100, S-100 bus computers, and TI Professional Computer.

It took hundreds of years to build the world's most advanced spreadsheet.

Way back in 1534, a Venetian scholar wrote a text that standardized the techniques of modern bookkeeping. And up till 1979, there weren't a lot of real improvements in the way people did spreadsheets. You still had to enter all your figures by hand. Run all the totals yourself. And when you had to make a few changes, you had to run the totals all over again.

Then along came a program that let you create spreadsheets on a personal computer. Without touching a pencil. Or adding anything by hand. Best of all, this new program gave you the freedom to look at your balance sheet a dozen different ways if you felt like it. Because all you had to do was change one figure, and the computer would refigure everything else for you. Automatically.

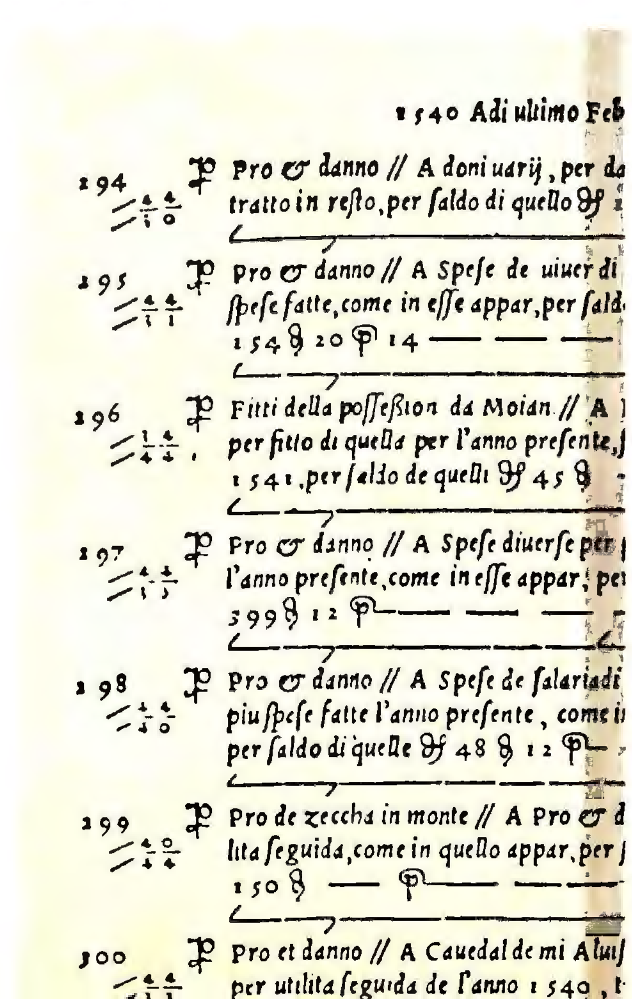
Like most breakthrough ideas though, this original spreadsheet program had a few things that definitely needed improvement. For instance, all the columns had to be the same width. And the entire system took about 20 hours to learn.

So we developed SuperCalc,® which was such a giant step in the right direction that it became a best-seller. Over 250,000 copies in only 18 months.

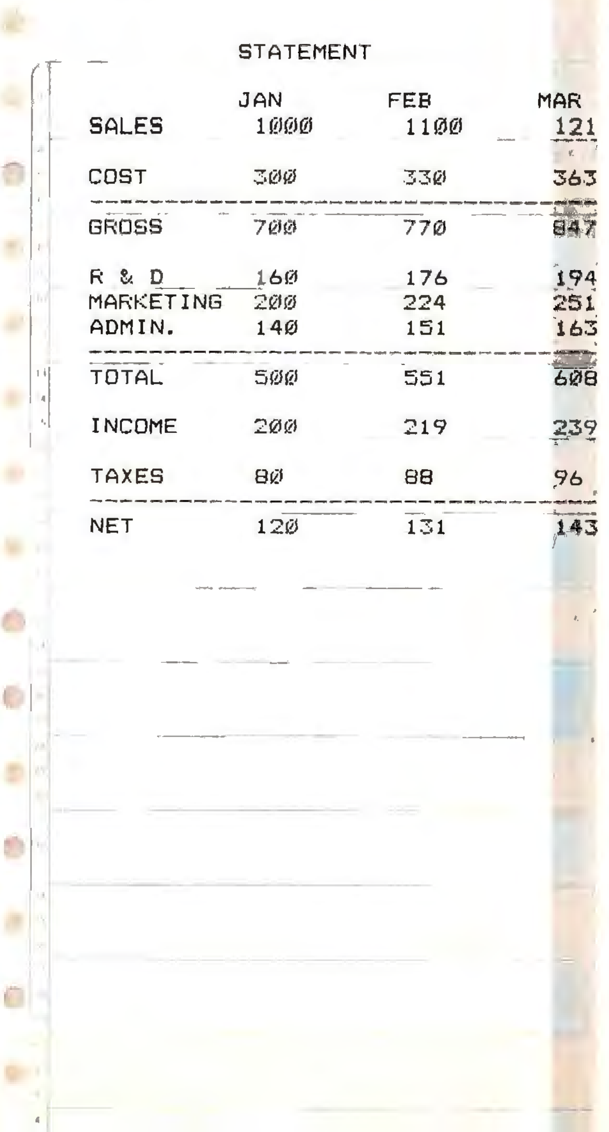
Today, we've gone even farther. After talking with thousands of customers, we've found a lot of important new features you'd like to have. And we've built them into the world's most advanced spreadsheet.

SuperCalc².

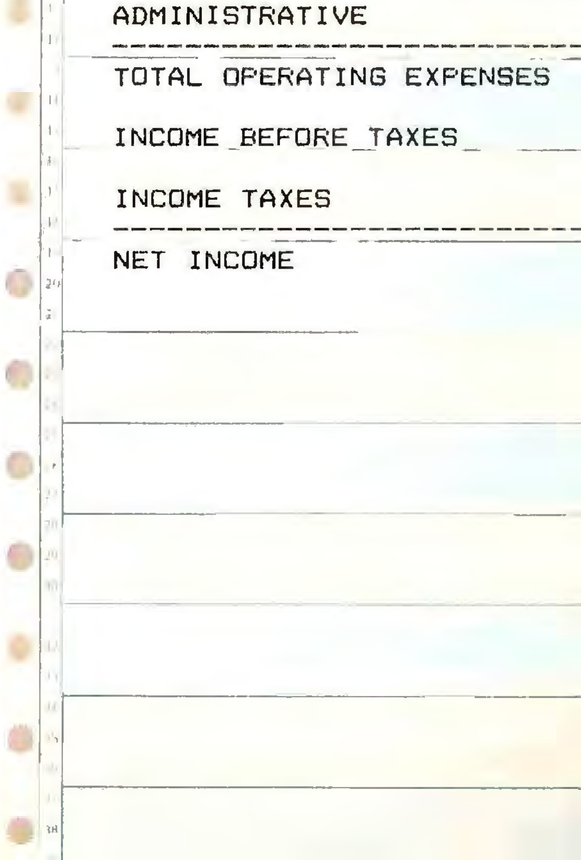
1534



1979



1981



Smith-Corona makes a good deal better. With a $50 rebate.

The Smith-Corona® TP-I™ daisy wheel printer with optional tractor feed.

Ever since the Smith-Corona TP-I was introduced, it's been a great success with critics and users. And it's been a good deal at its low price.

Now, it's a better deal than ever. Because now you can get this high-quality, low-cost printer for even less.

Buy a Smith-Corona TP-I letter-quality printer any time between June 1 and July 31, and Smith-Corona will send you a $50 refund.

Of course, what you'll be getting is more than a good deal. Because the Smith-Corona TP-I is a printer with the same excellent print quality as found on the finest office typewriters.

The TP-I handles letter and legal sized paper. And with the new tractor feed option, the TP-I can handle both fanfold and single sheet paper—without ever having to remove the tractor feed!

The TP-I is very simple to operate. It's compatible with most personal and home computers and available with either standard serial or parallel data interface. And, unlike many printers, the TP-I is made in America.

There's a choice of state-of-the-art daisy wheels to give you a wide variety of fonts. (At $7.95 each, you can easily afford several.)

So if you're in the market for a high-quality, low-cost daisy wheel printer, get the Smith-Corona TP-I. Get it now and make a good deal a good deal better—with a $50 rebate.

Please send me more information on the Smith-Corona TP-I daisy wheel printer.

Name__________ Title__________

Company Name__________

Business Address__________

City__________ State______ Zip______

Type of Business__________

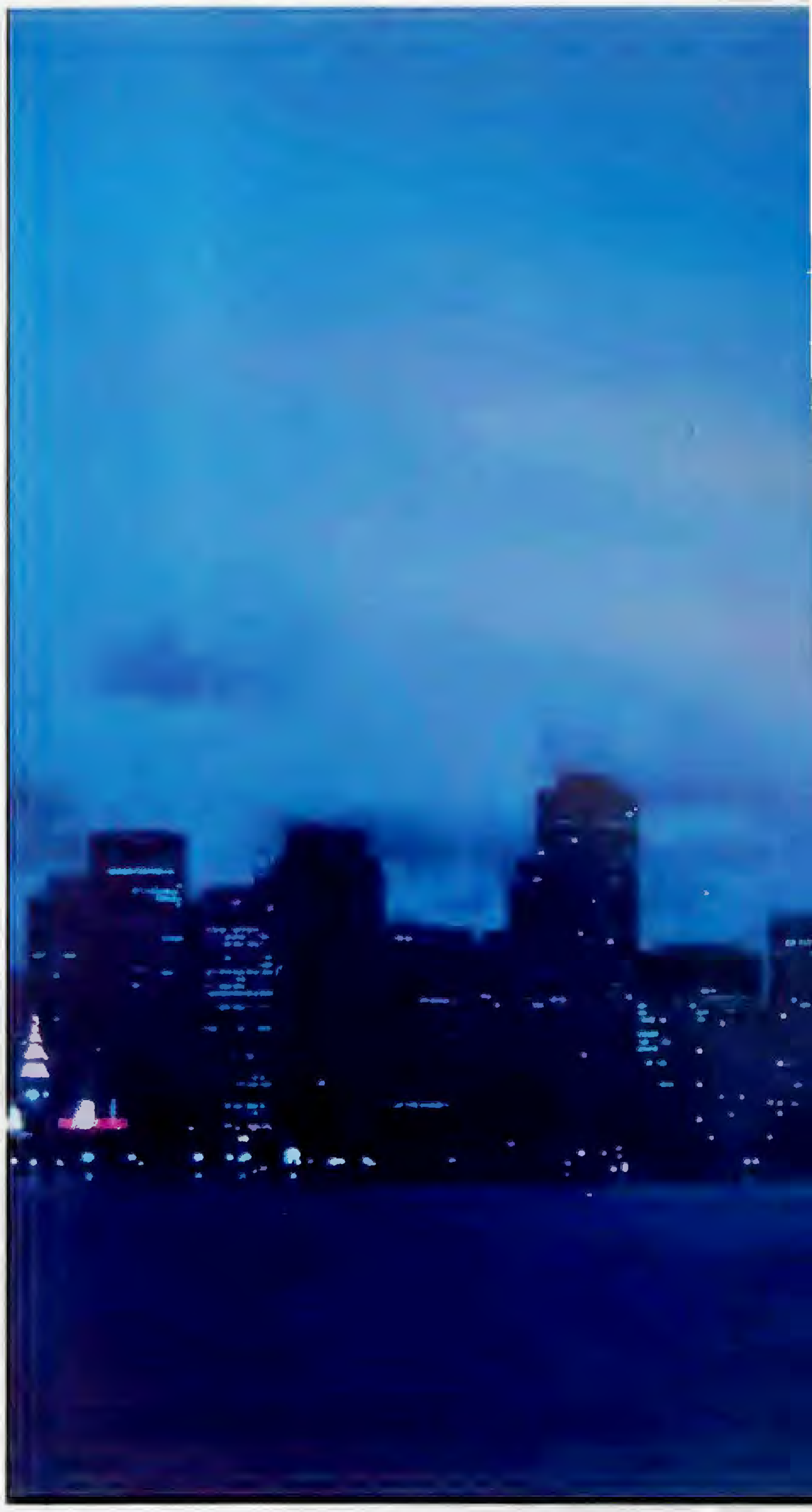
Mail coupon to:
Jerry Diener—V.P. Sales, Smith-Corona
65 Locust Avenue
New Canaan, Connecticut 06840

Smith-Corona

Faster than a Spinning Floppy

Steven Cook

One of the first objections voiced about the IBM Personal Computer concerned the capacity of the disk drives relative to the amount of RAM. "What are you going to do with more data in memory than you can store on a disk?" was a remark frequently heard from detractors intent on finding a Big Blue blunder. But the PC community was quick to answer that question, showing the critics that "excess" RAM has all kinds of uses. One of the most versatile uses is emulating disk drives.

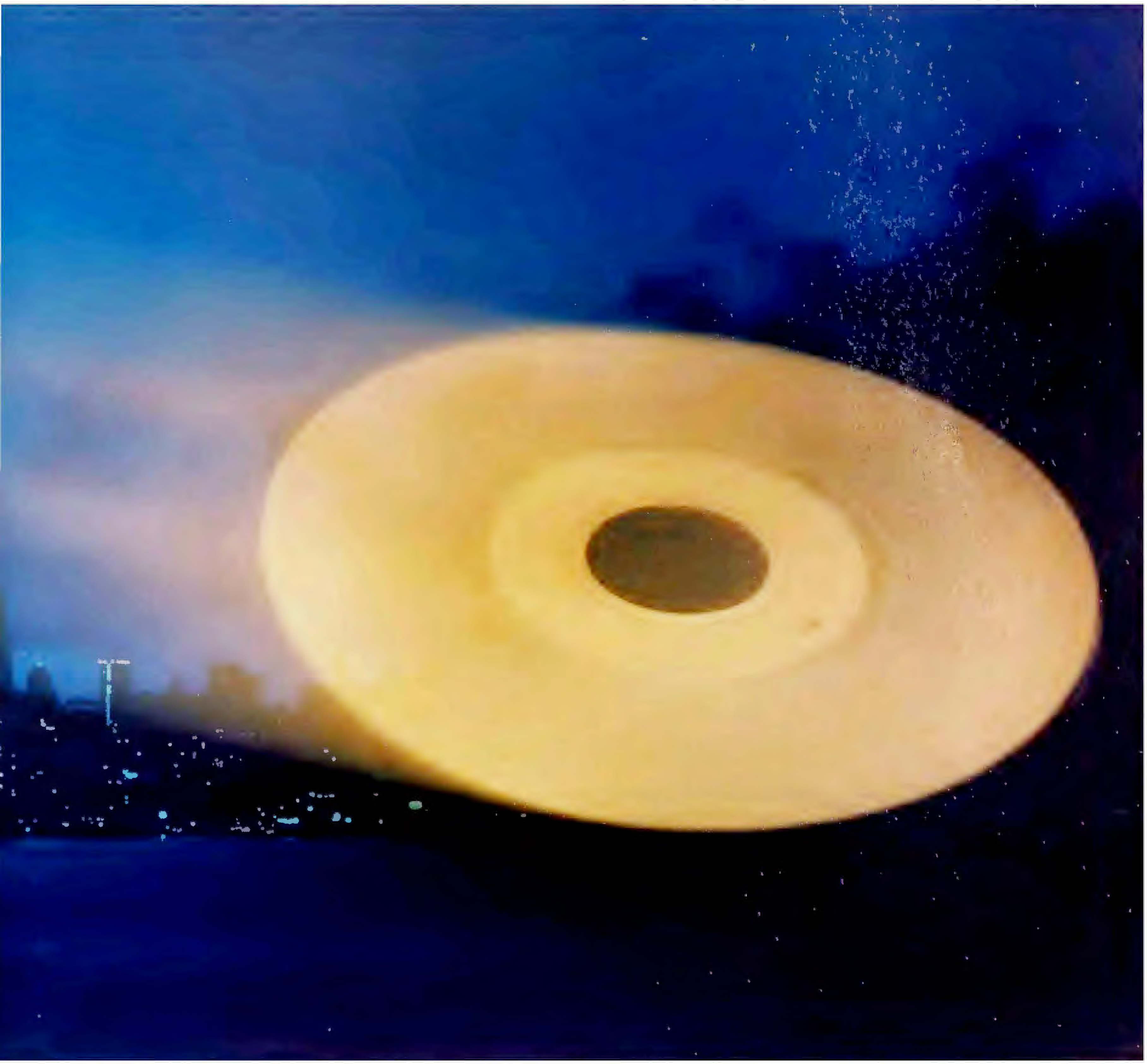


Disk emulation is implemented with a program that causes the DOS to treat an area of memory as if it were a disk drive. When the DOS writes data to the emulated disk, the data goes into memory instead. Likewise, when the DOS reads data from that disk, the data actually comes from memory, formatted to appear as if it came from a real disk.

Many terms are used to describe disk emulation programs; they are called RAM disks, E-disks, memory disks, C-drives, pseudodrives, and hyperdrives. The term E-(for emulated) drives will be used in this article. Regardless of the name, the result is the same: speed. Because no moving parts are involved, data exchanges between programs and E-drives occur almost instantly, typically 50 times faster than with floppy disk drives.

This tremendous speed advantage is partially offset by the potential for an equally rapid loss of information in the event of a power failure or system crash. In such cases data stored on floppy disk remains intact, but information in RAM is lost forever. Due to the proliferation of E-drives and the danger of losing data, battery operated standby power supplies are becoming increasingly popular (see "Battery Backup").

A number of E-drive programs are available for the PC. Some may be purchased as separate software products, while others are included with the purchase of a



RAM board. RAM board manufacturers offer the software as an incentive for buyers to select their product, and this can be a powerful inducement if the E-drive has more features than programs offered by competing companies. You should consider this when you select a memory board, but remember that you might be able to purchase an E-drive separately and obtain the same features at lower cost.

By nature, E-drive programs create a nonstandard version of DOS. Carefully written E-drive software minimizes the differences, but there is no way to avoid the fact that E-drive programs create incompatibilities. If you want to use a hard disk drive and an E-drive at the same time, you may be out of luck because the hard disk and E-drive programs are probably mutually exclusive. The only exceptions are E-drive programs provided by hard disk manufacturers. As discussed later, MS-DOS 2.00 is designed to prevent these incompatibility problems.

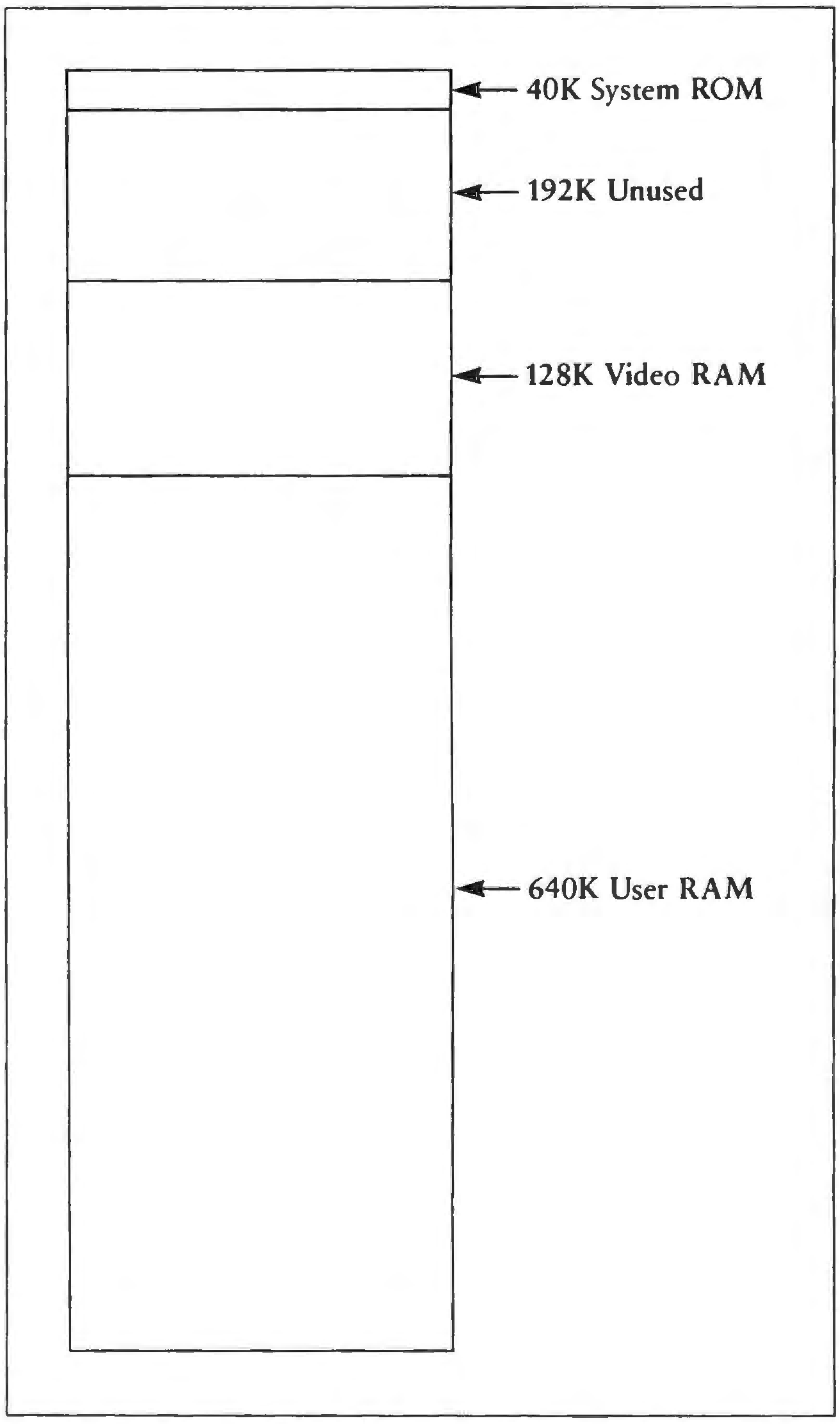


Figure 1: System Memory Map

Product	SuperDrive 3.0	PC Accelerator
Manufacturer	AST Research	SBT Systems
Drive designation	A–D	A–D*
Drive size (K)	4–640	10–320
User memory	Yes	No
Short drives	Yes	Yes
Max # of drives	4	1
Replace drive	Yes	No
Insert drives	Yes	Yes*
Modify DOS	No	No
Spooler	Yes	Yes
Autoexec	Yes	Yes
Low memory	Yes	Yes
High memory	Yes	Yes
Noncontiguous	Yes	Yes

*With the aid of SWAP program included
**Drive D will be replaced if present

Table 1: Comparison of E-drive Program Features

E-drive Features

Ideally, E-drive programs should be designed to operate on any PC, regardless of memory size or configuration. The fewer assumptions program designers make, the more flexible programs will be. Flexibility pays for itself each time you change the configuration of your PC or acquire new software, but it can also mean a lengthy and complex installation. The best programs have default conditions that are used unless you specify differently.

Following is a discussion of various E-drive features. For an overview of the features of several E-drive programs that were submitted to *PC World* for review, see Table 1.

Drive designation. In PC-DOS, disk drives are referred to by letters, usually *A* and *B* on a two-drive system. When additional drives are added they are assigned the next letter in sequence up to the letter *D*, which is the limit of DOS 1.10. A good E-drive program allows you to specify which letter will be used to refer to the E-drive, even beyond the normal DOS limit.

Drive size. DOS 1.10 supports two types of disk drives, single-sided and double-sided. Single-sided drives can store 160K bytes, double-sided drives 320K. In addition to standard single- and double-sided sizes, some E-drive programs let you specify the exact number of bytes to be allocated for disk emulation.

User memory size. When memory is used to emulate disk drives, it is no longer available for use by programs. You may want to reserve a certain amount of memory for use by programs and let the remainder be used to emulate disks. Some E-drive programs allow this (*JFORMAT*, for example), but most require that you specify the exact size of emulated disks, leaving the remainder available for program use.

QuadRAM Drive	RAM Drive	Ultrafast	Electronic Disk	JFORMAT	SpeedDisk	InstaDrive	PDQ
QuadRAM	Microsoft	Daystar Systems	Ensign Software	Tall Tree Systems	Tecmar	Persyst	Xebex
B–D	C–E	A–D	C–D	A–F	A–Z	C	B–E
32–320	64–320	5–322	4–320	64–2560	64–512	4–320	32–320
No	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	Yes	No
Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
1	1	4	2	1	2	1	1
Yes**	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No
No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No
No	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Opt.	No
Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No
Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No
No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
No	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	Yes

Short drives. This feature refers to a program's ability to emulate a disk even though the system might not have enough memory. Disk sectors that cannot be emulated due to lack of memory can be logically marked as in-use and will not be assigned to files you create. All the E-drive programs listed in Table 1 support short drives.

Number of drives. If your PC has enough memory, you may want to use two or more E-drives simultaneously. This would be especially handy if, for example, you needed to sort a file that was over 160K bytes long. With only one E-drive, there would not be enough room for two copies of the file (unsorted and sorted). The best E-drive programs can emulate more than one drive at a time.

Replace existing drives. Some applications programs require all data to be stored on drive B; no way is provided to inform the program to use an E-drive called drive C. In this situation, the ability to emulate a drive in place of drive B is very useful. Some E-drive programs allow replacement of physical drives, enabling you to trick an applications program into using an emulated disk.

Insert drives. This feature lets you logically place an E-drive between existing drives, changing drive designations automatically to make room for the new drive. For example, inserting an E-drive as drive B would cause the real drive B (the floppy drive) to become drive C. If the system had a third floppy disk drive, it would become drive D. You could also insert an E-drive to be defined as drive A.

Modify DOS. Some E-drive programs modify the DOS that is stored on the disk you use to start the computer. The major disadvantage of this technique is that you must place the nonstandard DOS on every disk you use to start the computer. Programs that do not modify the DOS stored on the disk allow you to start the computer using any standard DOS disk and execute the E-drive program, even if it is stored on a different disk.

By nature, E-drive programs create a nonstandard version of DOS.

Another problem with this kind of disk emulation program is that the E-drive is always present, using memory that might otherwise be available for your programs.

Print spooling. This feature has nothing to do with disk emulation per se, but it is a useful addition to the computer and is often included with E-drives. Print spooling software intercepts data sent to the printer and stores it in memory at high speed. It simultaneously forwards the data to the printer at the slower rate printers require. The result is programs finish "printing" very quickly, enabling you to use the computer for other tasks.

AUTOEXEC capability. The most practical way to use an E-drive program is to place the proper command into an AUTOEXEC batch file so that the E-drive is

A Short Course in Disk Emulators

Larry Press

The design of a computer system or program involves many trade-offs. One of the most fundamental trade-offs is between memory size and execution speed. Generally speaking, speed can be increased by using more memory, or memory can be saved by sacrificing speed.

Since memory prices are falling rapidly and the IBM PC is able to address more than 1 million bytes of memory, we can look forward to increased memory capacity and faster computers. In fact, multitasking operating systems such as Concurrent CP/M and *Visi/On*, and integrated software packages such as *1-2-3* and *MBA* are designed to achieve speed by using large amounts of memory. But these products are just arriving in the marketplace and they are largely untested. In the meantime, there is an abundance of software already on the market that was designed for relatively small memories.

While multitasking operating systems with dynamic memory allocation may become the standard in personal computers someday, disk emulators are with us today, and using them provides immediate results. Disk emulators not only improve the execution speed of individual programs, but also cut the time needed to make the transition from one task, such as editing a document, to another, such as running a spelling checker or updating a file.

Disk Emulators

A disk emulator is a program that modifies the operating system so that part of the computer's memory can be used as if it were a disk. The emulator divides the system's memory into two sections. One section holds the operating system and whatever applications program is running. The second section of memory is used to emulate a disk drive.

When a program needs to read or write a disk file, the disk emulator performs a little sleight of hand. The instructions to read or write the disk are intercepted and the data transfer takes place between the two sections of memory, rather than between the actual disk drive and memory.

This saves time because transferring a file from one portion of memory to another is faster than transferring a file between memory and a disk. Reading or writing a disk may seem fast, but since a mechanical operation is required, it is slow by computer standards. In contrast, moving information from one portion of memory to another requires no mechanical operation; it is purely electronic.

How Much Faster?

To get an idea of how much emulated disks speed up the operation of programs and the transition between tasks, I tried some simple experiments using a PC with 576K of RAM and several disk emulation programs. The following comparison shows the execution times for three jobs using disk emulators and conventional double-sided floppy disk drives.

Task	Floppy Disk (min./sec.)	Emulated Disk (min./sec.)
Pascal compile	6:38	2:42
File copy (84K)	0:14	0:01
Spelling check	2:34	1:07

As the results indicate, the disk cut execution time by more than 50 percent in each test. The Pascal program that was compiled was 306 lines long and consisted of ten short procedures. The file copying was done using the DOS COPY command to copy an 84,000-character file. The spelling check example was run using MicroPro's *SpellStar* program to proofread and mark a 19,328-character (2893-word) document. I repeated the tests several times using different disk emulators, but since the programs' differences were minor, only the average times are shown.

These times indicate the best results that an emulated disk can provide, because the amount of RAM allocated for the emulated disk in my system was large enough to hold all the files and programs used in the tests. For the Pascal compilation, the compiler, linker, library, source, intermediate, and object files all fit into the emulated disk space; for the spelling check it held the document to be checked, the spelling program, the dictionary, and the output document.

The disk emulator has another advantage not reflected in the test results. Since an emulated disk's storage capacity can be larger than a floppy disk's, several entire programs and files can be loaded into the RAM disk, thus eliminating the disk swapping that would normally take place if only floppy disks were used. Using a disk emulator saves time and the frustration of waiting while a floppy disk whirs and chortles through its operations.

On the Other Hand ...

Of course, nothing is free, and a disk emulator will require additional memory. In deciding how much memory you need, you will have to know how you will be using your PC.

If you will be using the system for word processing, a program such as *Wordstar* with spelling checker and dictionary will require about 225K of memory. Add to that the space for a document file, a backup copy, a buffer to be used during execution, and perhaps some data files, and you might need a 512K system.

Another possibility is to use the system for software development. In this case the IBM Pascal compiler, loader, and library total about 320K of memory. Add to that the memory required for the source and object programs, an editor, and intermediate files that the compiler produces, and you can easily exceed a 512K system. In short, you should make careful estimates of your program and file sizes when deciding how much memory to buy.

When you plug that extra memory into the PC, you will notice that the time delay between turning power on and the system's beep grows noticeably longer (assuming that you also changed the memory-size switches). This delay occurs because the PC automatically checks the installed memory (up to a maximum of 544K) for hardware malfunction. This slight inconvenience amounts to more than a minute on a fully loaded system.

Time is also required to copy the programs and files onto the emulated disk and to copy files back out after a job is finished. Of course, a batch file can often automate this copying. Furthermore, if some enterprising manufacturer produces a bubble memory board for the PC, this copying will be unnecessary since bubble memory does not lose its contents when the power is turned off.

Power fluctuations are another potential problem when you are using a disk emulator. If a storm or brownout causes the computer to lose power, the contents of memory, including everything on the emulated disk, will be lost. In a conventional system, files that have been saved on disk will still be there after a power failure. If power is unreliable in your part of the country, you will have to make precautionary backup copies of your disk files at frequent intervals. Another source of protection against power failures is a battery-powered backup power supply for the PC.

If the cost of additional memory and the possibility of power fluctuations do not dissuade you, a disk emulator will let you take advantage of large memory capacities, even if your software was designed with a smaller system in mind.

Within the next year, 256K memory chips should be widely available, and personal computers with a megabyte or more of memory will be common. If you select one of them, keep disk emulators in mind as a means of exploiting this memory power.

installed automatically when you start the computer. Most programs allow the various parameters to be entered on the command line next to the program name, but a few display a menu of choices and require the user to make the appropriate selections before the program continues. E-drives that modify the DOS on disk are permanently installed and cannot be installed with an AUTOEXEC batch file.

High memory, low memory, and noncontiguous memory. Think of the memory installed in a PC as divided into three groups, as shown in Figure 1. Low memory is RAM below the address indicated by the S2 switches on the system board. If more RAM is installed than the switches are set to reflect, the RAM above the address indicated by S2 is called high memory. High memory is not tested during the power-on self-test, but it may be used for disk emulation. The third area of memory is called noncontiguous memory because it is separated from the low memory by RAM that is dedicated for use by the video displays. Up to 192K of RAM can be installed in this otherwise unused part of the system memory and used for disk emulation.

> Ideally, E-drive programs should be designed to operate on any PC, regardless of memory size or configuration.

Some E-drive programs use low memory only, others use high memory only, and some make use of noncontiguous memory. The most versatile E-drives use all three memory areas. The design of the PC allows low memory to be used for any purpose, including disk emulation. The advantage of using high memory is that the computer starts faster because the S2 switches are set for less memory than is actually installed. Noncontiguous memory is designated "reserved" by IBM; using that area may someday cause a problem because that space might be allocated to a future product. If you want to use noncontiguous memory, be sure that another memory area is also available.

DOS 2.00 Considerations

Programs such as E-drives are called device drivers. DOS 2.00 has a new way for device drivers to be installed that allows E-drive programs to be used together with hard disk drives and similar peripherals. However, the programs must meet certain criteria. None of the programs listed in Table 1 meet those criteria yet, but hopefully they will soon.

Battery Backup

Christine Whyte

When using an IBM Personal Computer, especially one with electronic drives (where volatile RAM memory is used to simulate a disk drive), you run the constant risk of garbled or lost data resulting from problems with the computer's source of AC power. These problems may include a temporary reduction in power (brownout), a power failure (blackout), or short-term disturbances to the power line.

Power Troubles

In the case of a sudden blackout or even momentary brownout, you stand to lose any data that hasn't been saved by copying it from RAM to a disk. Even if you save files frequently, you may lose any data entered since the last save, or even worse, you may be caught unaware in the middle of saving a file.

Short-term voltage drops, often called dips or sags, may also result in lost or garbled files. Dips are usually caused during power load switching by the power company. The PC can accommodate a voltage drop less than 10 percent from normal, but any greater amount of undervoltage will cause problems.

Even if your power is free of dips or sags, your files may suffer from overvoltages. A short overvoltage lasting less than a microsecond is called a spike or a transient. A longer overvoltage is called a surge. The main causes of spikes and surges are lightning, power load switching, and even the starting and stopping of nearby air conditioners or refrigerators. "Noise" on the line occurs from high-frequency signal interference picked up by the power line. If the PC interprets noise signals as data signals, your files may be error ridden.

If you use the PC at home strictly for balancing your checkbook or other personal applications, losing data may not be a major crisis. But if your use of the PC involves extensive time and effort for preparing business reports (especially under tight deadlines), programming, or putting the finishing touches on the last chapter of your novel, you should seriously consider purchasing some means of power protection.

File Insurance

Different types of products for the PC offer varying degrees of "file insurance," and costs range accordingly. Choosing the right product for your needs means anticipating power supply problems and understanding how each product is designed to prevent harmful consequences.

One such product is an uninterruptible power system (UPS). Worthy of its name, a UPS delivers an uninterrupted supply of electricity via a battery and an inverter, rather than directly from an AC wall outlet. The inverter converts DC battery voltage to AC power. A battery charger keeps the battery sufficiently charged at all times so that it can run a PC by itself in the event of power failure.

An additional benefit of some UPS units is that they "condition" the power line to prevent any harmful effects to data from line disturbances. To do so means that the battery charger must always keep the battery charged as well as provide adequate power to run the PC. A typical PC system with 64K, two disk drives, and a monitor operating at full capacity requires from 120 to 200 watts of power. With a printer or extra memory, 200 watts is minimum.

Although this type of UPS provides sufficient power to run the PC, it does so even though AC power is also available to do the job. Some manufacturers regard this as an oversupply of power. To make lower cost, more efficient use of battery power, some UPS units, more accurately called standby power systems, route AC power directly from the wall outlet to the computer during everyday use. Only during power failure does the battery supply power to the PC.

The battery remains charged but idle until as little as ½ cycle (10 milliseconds) of AC current is missed. The PC can withstand up to 50 milliseconds without loss of data, so the battery provides some slack time. When the battery springs into action, it simultaneously switches on the inverter and relay mechanisms to power the PC for an extra 5 to 15 minutes. When the normal AC power supply resumes, the inverter and relay return to their off positions and the battery is recharged.

A standby unit, unlike a true UPS, usually does not condition the power line as well as provide battery backup. However, better standby units such as Cuesta Systems' Datasaver condition the line by filtering line noise and suppressing spikes or transients.

Datasaver in Action

The Datasaver unit is contained in a small, rectangular box that conveniently fits on top of your desk. No technical expertise is required for installation. Simply plug it into the wall outlet and connect the PC to the Datasaver.

An indicator light on the unit's front panel stays green as long as there is adequate AC power. An alarm buzzer, which can be heard in an adjoining room, warns you when the power fails, so that you will be aware that the PC is running on auxiliary battery time. The light changes to red and blinks every 5 seconds to indicate 2 to 15 minutes of remaining battery backup time. When the light blinks every second, less than 2 minutes remain—it's time to hustle and save those files.

To increase backup time by 1 to 3 hours, you can buy an ordinary car battery and hook it up to the Datasaver. Don't forget to check the water level, just like in your Chevy. Although the apparatus is somewhat inconvenient, this purchase can provide additional peace of mind.

Although the cost may seem unnecessarily high at the outset, a UPS or standby power system is your insurance policy for that unforeseen emergency. If you value your files, your time, and your labor, you may decide that this is one of the most useful products you can buy.

Datasaver
Cuesta Systems, Inc.
3440 Roberto Ct.
San Luis Obispo, CA 93401
805/541-4160
List Price: 200-watt model $695

Other manufacturers of standby power systems:

General Power Systems
1400 N. Baxter St.
Anaheim, CA 92806
714/956-9321

SAFT America
Portable Battery Division
931 Vandalia St.
St. Paul, MN 55114
612/645-8531

Topaz Electronics
9192 Topaz Way
San Diego, CA 92123
619/279-0831

If you are using or plan to use DOS 2.00, be sure you check the manufacturer's policy regarding software updates or you may end up buying useless software.

If you are not using DOS 2.00, you can make use of one of these programs immediately. Once you do, you'll wonder how you ever got along without it.

AST Research, Inc.
2691 Richter Ave. #104
Irvine, CA 92714
714/540-1333

STB Systems, Inc.
1701 N. Greenville #703
Richardson, TX 75081
214/234-8750

QuadRAM Corporation
4357 Park Dr.
Norcross, GA 30093
404/923-6666

Tall Tree Systems
1036 Los Altos Ave.
Los Altos, CA 94022
415/941-8748

Tecmar, Incorporated
23600 Mercantile Rd.
Cleveland, OH 44122
216/464-7410

Microsoft Corporation
10700 Northrup Way
Bellevue, WA 98004
206/828-8080

Daystar Systems, Inc.
10511 Church Rd.
Dallas, TX 75238
214/341-8136

Ensign Software
7337 Northview
Boise, ID 83704
208/378-8086

Xedex Corporation
Route 59
Suffern, NY 10901
914/368-0353

Persyst, Inc.
15801 Rockfield
Irvine, CA 92714
714/859-8871

TALLGRASS AND YOUR IBM® PC

Tallgrass Technologies is the industry leader in Winchester HardFile™ and streaming tape subsystems for the IBM® PC and related computers. Fortune 500 corporations, banks, governmental agencies, and small businesses throughout the world depend on Tallgrass HardFile subsystems for their mass storage and backup requirements.

Tallgrass offers formatted capacities from 6.25 Mb to 70 Mb with integral streaming tape back-up. Our proprietary disk/tape controller with integral 10K track buffer optimizes read/write activity and, coupled with our DMA host interface, offers high performance previously unavailable with 5¼" disk systems.

WHAT ABOUT DATA INTEGRITY?

Tallgrass offers backup on ANSI standard ¼" tape cartridges, instead of the usual floppies, video cassettes, or low-capacity removable Winchester devices. The Tallgrass 12.5 Mb formatted HardFile can back itself up on a $39.95 data cartridge in less than 10 minutes!

TALLGRASS IS UNSURPASSED

We've done our homework in engineering and building a reliable HardFile subsystem with remarkable performance and convenient backup for the most stringent on-line mass storage and off-line archival requirements.

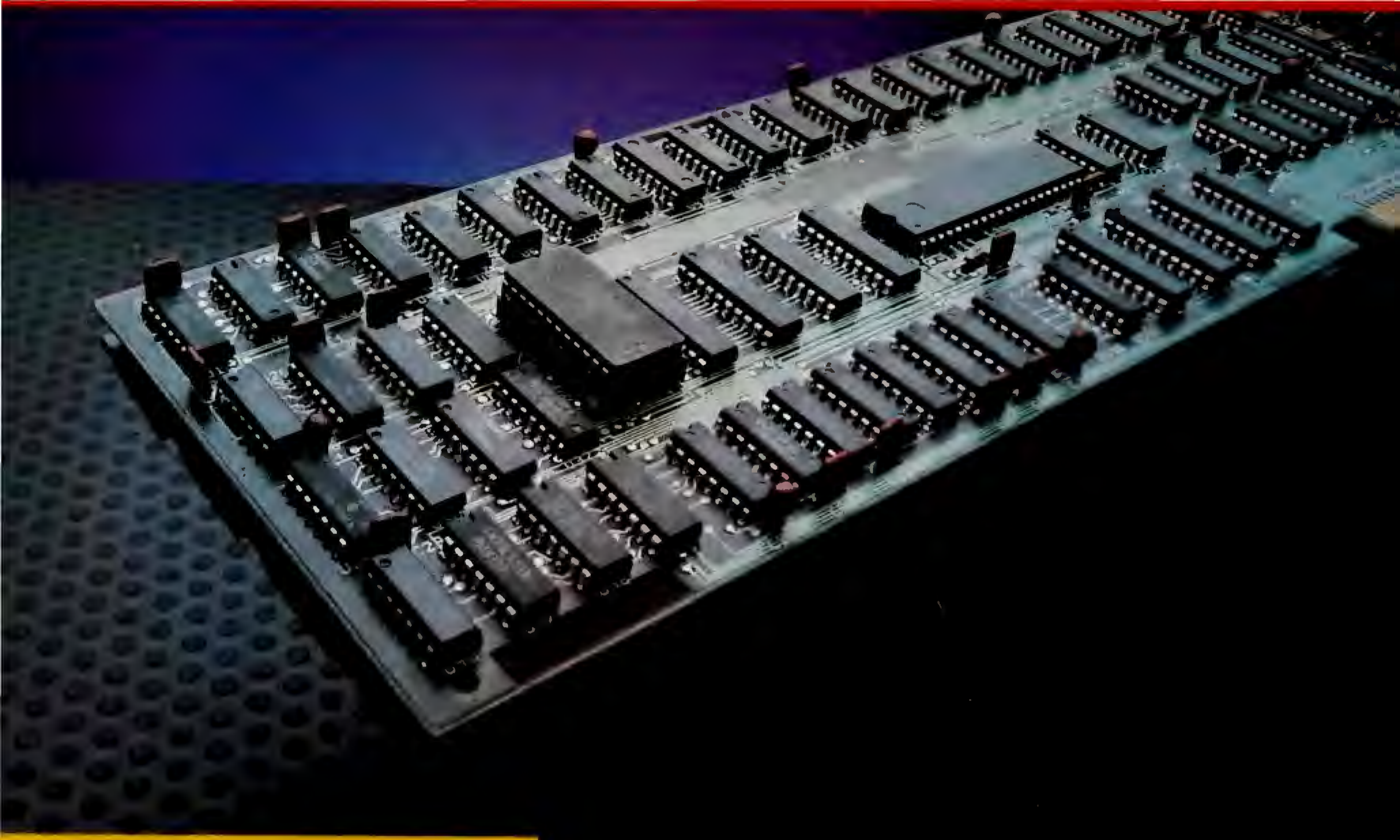
From $2,995 U.S. including integral tape back-up. Available from COMPUTERLAND® and other participating computer dealers.

Exclusive Canadian Distributor
Micro-Ware™
440 Phillip St.
Waterloo, Ontario N2L 5R9
(519) 884-4690

Exclusive European Distributor
CPS Computer Group, Ltd.
Birmingham,
England B27 6B H
(021) 7073866

Tallgrass Technologies Corporation

11667 W. 90th, Overland Park, KS 66214, (913) 492-6002
Telex: 215406 TBYT UR



The TK! Avant-Garde

TK!Solver: a new concept in problem-solving software

Edward Rodgers

VisiCalc and the electronic spreadsheet concept, introduced in 1978 by Personal Software (now VisiCorp), was innovation; it virtually spawned a new industry. Second-generation spreadsheets, such as Microsoft's *Multiplan*, while considerably enhanced and easier to use than *VisiCalc*, are but refinements of the original spreadsheet concept.

If you missed the hoopla in 1978 when *VisiCalc* entered the market, here comes a second chance for you to grab a little piece of computing history. *TK!Solver*, a package described as the algebraic equivalent of an electronic calculator, promises to be as big as *VisiCalc*.

OK!Whatizit?

TK!Solver (*TK*) is a tool for professionals who now depend on calculators to solve equations for analysis, design, and planning. Using this innovative program you can solve equations, convert units of measurement, plot graphs, and make tables, concentrating on the problem without being a master of the computer. In *TK*, which stands for tool kit, one or more equations, such as Profit = Sales-Expense, are entered into *TK*'s worksheets along with values for some of the variables. When the action key (!) is pressed, *TK* solves for the unknown variable(s) using whatever equations it finds necessary,

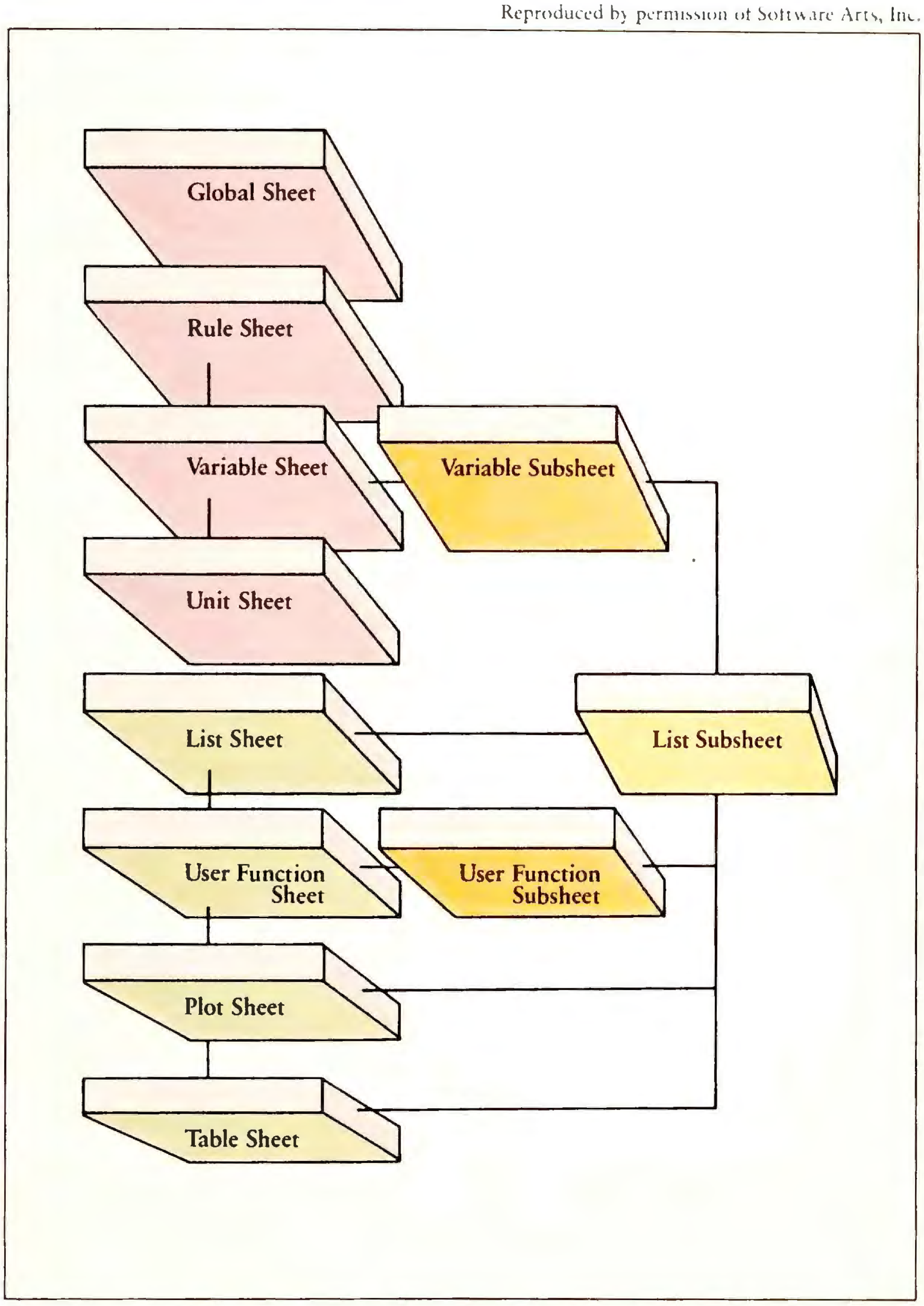


Figure 1: TK!Solver Sheets

or if it can't solve the equation, it tells you what information is missing. This innovation, so simple in concept yet so complex to develop, is what distinguishes *TK*.

TK!Solver Worksheets

Figure 1 shows the names and relationships of the various worksheets that can be used in the equation-solving process. To demonstrate *TK* I'll use several of these sheets to develop a model called "Travel" that finds the length and cost of an automobile trip by using three equations to define the relationships between mileage, speed, distance, gas price, and the total cost of the trip.

After *TK* is loaded, the screen is blank except for the headings of the Variable and Rule sheets, which divide the screen into two equal windows (see Figure 2). *TK*'s cursor, actually an inverse video bar, is positioned on the Rule sheet. You begin to construct the model by typing the formula mlg = d/gas (mileage = distance/gas) on the Rule sheet.

As the equation is entered, *TK* scans it, identifies the variable names, and posts them to the appropriate field on the Variable sheet as indicated in Figure 3. The *S* in the upper left corner of the Rule sheet heads the status column field, which indicates the status of the equation on each line. The asterisk by the equation on the Rule sheet indicates that the equation is unsatisfied because no values have been entered yet.

One of *TK*'s unique characteristics is its ability to interpret the equals sign as what it is, rather than as an assignment statement. *TK* can easily and correctly interpret the original mlg = d/gas equation as mlg*gas = d. Although *TK* can do much more than this, the ability to interpret and solve mathematical expressions as equations is the foundation on which the package is built.

The following equations are required to complete the Travel model: s(peed) = d(istance)/t(ime) and cost = gas*pr(ice).


```
(1r) Rule:
For Help, type ?
______________ VARIABLE SHEET ______________
St Input    Name   Output    Unit      Comment



______________ RULE SHEET ______________
S Rule
```

Figure 2: TK!Solver Screen

```
(1r) Rule: mlg = d/gas

______________ VARIABLE SHEET ______________
St Input    Name   Output    Unit      Comment
            mlg
            d
            gas

______________ RULE SHEET ______________
S Rule
*mlg = d/gas
```

Figure 3: Constructing the Equation

```
(7m) Multiply By: .44

______________ VARIABLE SHEET ______________
St Input    Name   Output    Unit      Comment
            mlg
            d
            gas
            s
            t
            cost
            pr

______________ UNIT SHEET ______________
From       To         Multiply By    Add Offset
mi         km         1.609
mi/h       km/h       1.609
mi/gal     km/l       .4251
gal        l          3.785
h          min        60
C          F          1.8            32
$          DM         .44
```

Figure 4: Defining the Unit Sheet

As with the previous equation, variable names are posted to the Variable sheet as the equation is entered. Before values are provided for any of the variables, however, the unit of measurement for each variable must be defined; otherwise, it is unclear from the model whether miles per gallon or kilometers per liter are being calculated, or whether US dollars or deutsche marks are the monetary unit. This unit information is supplied in two ways using the *TK* Unit sheet and Variable subsheet.

Deutsche Marks and Dollars

The Unit sheet is where the definitions that enable *TK* to convert values from one unit of measurement to another are entered. Since *TK* can display only two sheets at once, you have to replace one of the currently displayed sheets. Pressing the equals key followed by U causes the Unit sheet to overlay the Rule sheet (see Figure 4).

All fields on the Unit sheet are user defined, including the conversion factors. After the information on unit relationships has been entered, you can return to the Rule sheet by typing =R. Unit names can then be entered in the appropriate unit filed on the Variable sheet along with any comment you wish to include in the comment field.

The second of the two sheets required to define the unit of measure for listed variables is the variable subsheet (Figure 5). This subsheet is accessed from the variable sheet by typing the DIVE command (>). Of particular interest on this sheet is the ability to differentiate between display units and calculation units. This permits you to solve an equation in deutsche marks, for example, and to convert and display the result in dollars automatically, provided both unit types have been entered on the Unit sheet. You can return to the variable sheet by typing the less-than symbol (<).

After assigning and entering values for the mlg, cost, and pr(ice) variables, pressing the action key (!) produces the results displayed in Figure 6. Notice that on the Variable sheet the variables t(ime) and s(peed) have not been solved. Likewise, the asterisk in the status column on the Rule sheet indicates that the related s=d/t equation is underdefined. You correct the condition by supplying a value for one of the undefined variables in the equation.

```
(7i) Input: 1.19

_______________ VARIABLE SHEET _______________________
St  Input   Name   Output      Unit   Comment
    28      mlg                mi/h   mileage
            d      282.35294   mi     distance
            gas    10.084034   gal    amount of gas
            s                  mi/h   speed
            t                  h      time (hours)
    12      cost               $      cost of trip
    1.19    pr                 $      price of gas

_______________ RULE SHEET ___________________________
S Rule
  mlg=d/gas
* s=d/t
  cost=gas*pr
```

Figure 5: Variable Subsheet

```
(s) Status:
_______________ VARIABLE: mlg ________________________
Status:
First Guess:
Associated List:
Input Value:
Output Value:
Display Unit:          mi/h
Calculation Unit:      mi/h
Comment:               mileage

_______________ RULE SHEET ___________________________
S Rule
*mlg=d/gas
*s=d/t
*cost=gas*pr
```

Figure 6: Solution Results

The Plot Thickens

Extending the Travel model further, assume that you were interested in looking at the effect of different driving speeds on mileage and trip cost. Instead of inputting a single value for speed, you can input a list of speed values. To create the list put an *L* in the status field on the Variable sheet to define the mileage, speed, and cost variables as List variables. Then call up the List subsheet for the speed variable and fill in the slowest and fastest speeds (5 and 75 miles per hour, for example). With the Fill List command the intermediate speeds are entered automatically (see Figure 7). As the list of speed variables is evaluated, *TK* calculates corresponding variables for cost and mileage and places the values in cost and mileage lists.

You now have three ways to look at the Travel model data. You can, of course, look at each list (speed, cost, and mileage) individually, although correlating the significance of the results is hampered because you can display only one list at a time. You can also use *TK*'s Table sheet, which permits you to consolidate multiple List sheets and display them as a table (see Figure 8). Finally, the data can be viewed using the Plot sheet (see Figure 9), which is a graphic representation of the data points and relationships described on the Table sheet.

```
(15v) Value: 75

________________ LIST: s ____________________________
Comment:
Display Unit:          mi/h
Storage Unit:          mi/h
Element  Value
_______  _____
1        5
2        10
3        15
4        20
5        25
6        30
7        35
8        40
9        45
10       50
11       55
12       60
13       65
14       70
15       75
```

Figure 7: List Subsheet for Variable S (Speed)

Speed vs. Mileage and Cost

s	mlg	cost
5	4.7807175	49.7833223
10	10.23667	23.2497482
15	15.0879575	15.7741696
20	19.33458	12.3095511
25	22.9765375	10.3583928
30	26.01383	9.14897960
35	28.4464575	8.36659538
40	30.27442	7.86142228
45	31.4977175	7.55610307
50	32.11635	7.41055568
55	32.1303175	7.40733421
60	31.53962	7.54606428
65	30.3442575	7.84332917
70	28.54423	8.33793730
75	26.1395375	9.10498130

Figure 8: A Table Prepared Using List and Table Sheets

Algebraic Sleuthing

TK uses two methods to solve problems: Direct and Iterative. Each method, or "Solver," uses the given input values to find all the variables possible within one solution of a problem. According to Software Arts, *TK* always attempts to use the Direct Solver first. To be solved by the Direct Solver an equation must meet the following conditions: first, values must be given for all variables except the one you're solving for; second, the variable you're solving for must appear only once in the equation; and finally, the variable you're solving for cannot be what is know in mathematics as the argument of a function without a unique inverse.

If a problem doesn't meet these criteria, don't despair. For equations that can't be solved by the Direct Solver, *TK*'s Iterative Solver, which applies a kind of guessing technique to equation solving, can be applied to the task. A *G* (for Guess value) is entered for the unknown variable on the Variable sheet status field and then entered in the input field(s). The Iterative Solver starts when you type /!. Using the Guess input value as a starting point, *TK* repeatedly applies various numerical analysis routines in an effort to converge on an approximate solution to the problem. Iteration continues until the solution lies within the error range limits you specify or until the number of iterations you indicate has been exceeded.

Unlike the Direct Solver, *TK*'s Iterative Solver results can be somewhat ambiguous. More often than not, solutions derived using the Iterative Solver require careful interpretation. If, for example, you're working with polynomial equations of order 2 or higher (such as $ax^3-bx^2+cx+d=0$), it is helpful to know that more than one solution exists. Different solutions can be reached if you start with different Guess values.

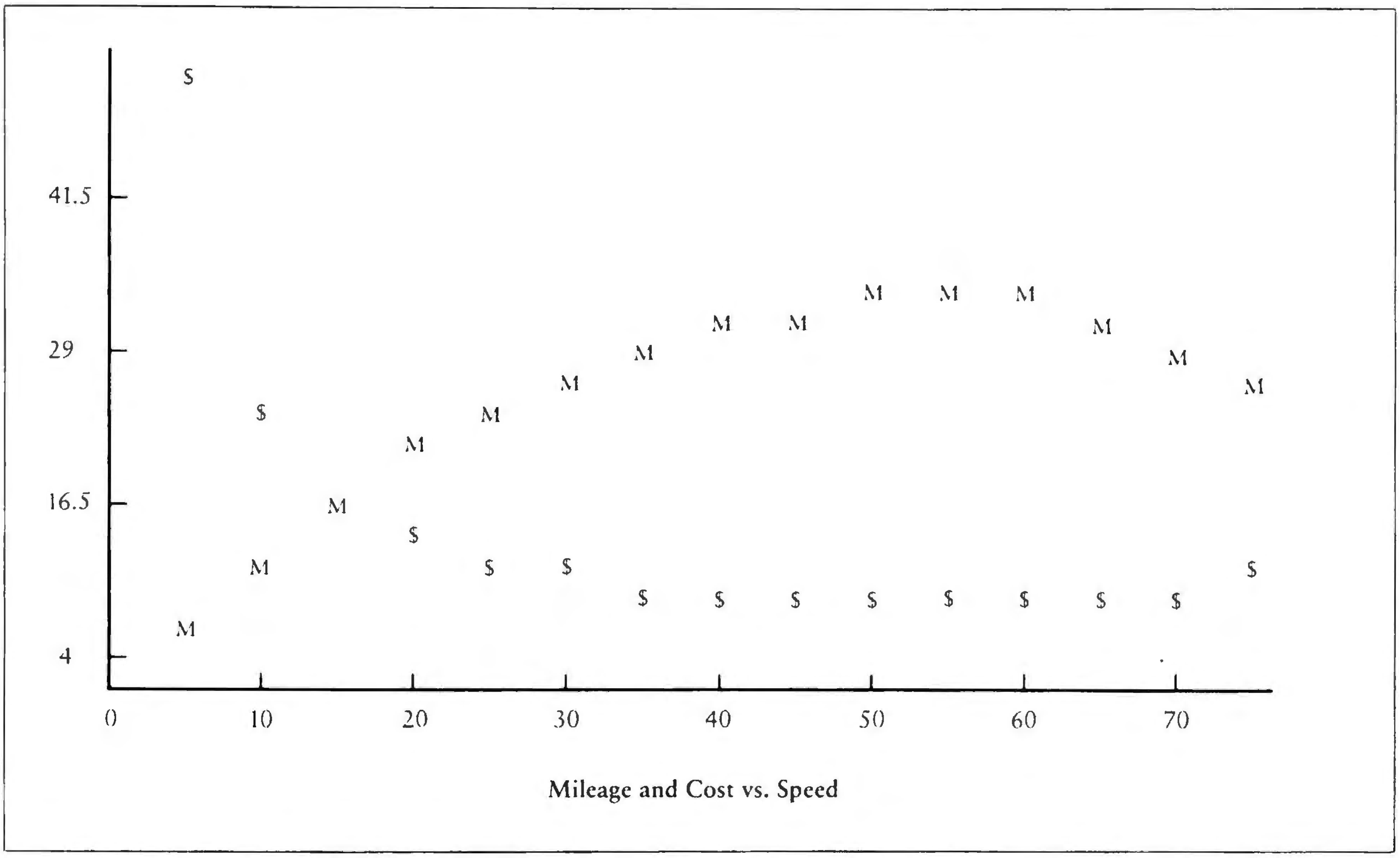


Figure 9: Mileage (M) and Cost ($) vs. S (Speed) as Plotted from Table in Figure 7

Human Factors

One of the least satisfactory aspects of *TK* is the user interface. Regrettably, Software Arts has repeated the mistake originally made when designing the *VisiCalc* command interface: only the first letter of any command is displayed on the screen. Users are left to grapple with yet another cryptic command alphabet (see Figure 10).

While the slash required before each command is consistent with other Software Arts/VisiCorp products, the differences among the applications and the variety of command names suggest that this consistency serves appearance only and lacks functional benefit. Like *VisiCalc, TK* is a brilliant crystalization of an innovative concept, but certain areas lack polish.

Unlike *VisiCalc,* however, there will probably be few imitators of *TK.* While *VisiCalc* is a relatively straightforward product in both concept and implementation, the implementation of *TK* is less obvious. Software Arts has developed proprietary artificial intelligence and numerical analysis algorithms especially for *TK.* As a result, the internal workings of *TK* cannot be easily deduced from its external behavior. Another problem with *VisiCalc* that plagued Software Arts and encouraged imitators was unavailability. *VisiCalc* simply wasn't portable to a variety of computers. To minimize this characteristic in *TK,* Software Arts has developed its own internal computer language, subsets of which are readily adaptable to different machines. Users will have access to the real McCoy well before the *TK* clones become available.

Documentation

What *TK* lacks in terms of a user interface, however, is partially offset by first-rate documentation in the form of a 2-inch-thick manual. It is appropriate that such care is taken in the preparation of documentation, especially when its purpose is to introduce a product that has little or no precedent. As in the early days of electronic spreadsheets, few users will be able to understand *TK* in terms of previous experiences with a similar package—there are few (if any) analogs.

Although lengthy, the manual has three well-structured sections: a 16-page introductory pamphlet that provides a high-level overview of some of *TK*'s concepts, an instruction manual that leads you through numerous examples with frequent screen diagrams, and a subsectioned reference guide providing command summaries, cross-references, and other reference information.

An interesting and useful addition to the *TK* documentation is a 2- by 3-foot poster that summarizes *TK* commands and built-in functions and displays the *TK* worksheet topology.

> Users are left to grapple with yet another cryptic command alphabet.

The poster is a learning tool that other manufacturers of complex software would do well to borrow.

The on-line help files are comprehensive but somewhat slow in responding. I used both a dual-sided, floppy-based IBM PC and a PC XT with a 10-megabyte fixed disk in evaluating *TK* and found that the search/retrieval mechanism used in the help files could use some tuning. Typical search/retrieval responses averaged 30 seconds per screen for the floppy-based system and 20 seconds for the PC XT. Although on-line help files can be useful, delays in searching for the help files drove me to *TK*'s well-indexed and logically arranged documentation every time.

```
(1s) Status: L
/ Command: B C D E I L M P Q R S W !
_______________ RULE SHEET _______________
S Rule
  mlg = d/gas
  s = d/t
  cost = gas*pr
  mlg = -1.27990+1.27259*s-.0120933*s^2

_______________ VARIABLE SHEET _______________
St Input   Name   Output      Unit     Comment
L          mlg    4.7807175   mi/gal   mileage
   200     d                  mi       distance
           gas    7.6512448   gal      amount of gas
L  5       s                  mi/h     speed
           t      2.6666667   h        time (hours)
L          cost   49.783322   $        cost of trip
   1.19    pr                 $        price of gas
```

Figure 10: Command Alphabet

Options and Amenities

A major feature that affects the usability of *TK* and user perceptions of its immediate applicability is the variety of *TK* applications packs. These add-on programs (priced from $50 to $100) are analogous to the templates available for electronic spreadsheet packages. *TK!SolverPack* programs contain all the necessary equations, variable lists, and supporting sheets to get you up and running on a variety of problems ranging from high school science to financial analysis to mechanical engineering.

A *TK!SolverPack* for mechanical engineering was provided with the copy of *TK* used for this evaluation. To better evaluate the usefulness of the *TK!SolverPack*, I sought a second opinion from a mechanical engineer. The verdict: standard and useful. The format of the mechanical engineering *TK!SolverPack* is relatively straightforward: 13 models with appropriate equations, variables, and units defined and provided on disk packaged in a slim volume containing basic instructions, sample problems, and the contents of each sheet used. If you ever need to analyze the natural frequency of vibration in rotational systems, you'll know where to look.

Another promising addition to *TK* and one that will provide both support and information to a growing *TK* community is *TK!SATN*, the *TK!Solver* user journal. Although I have not seen the journal, the concept is appealing. Just as users have stretched the capabilities of *VisiCalc*, they will explore the potential of *TK* in as yet unimagined ways; conceivably *TK!SATN* will spread the gospel.

A useful amenity often overlooked by many users of *VisiCalc* is the Data Interchange Format (DIF) developed by Software Arts. DIF is designed to provide a standard convention for the exchange of data between programs. Because DIF files store *TK* data as standard ASCII text files, they are easily moved between disparate systems via communications. Once the structure of a given data base is known, for example, an interface can be developed that allows you to download directly to the *TK* application for use in List, Table, and Plot sheets.

Final Estimate

TK is an intuitive piece of software once you have a handle on what it's trying to do. Consequently, I think that *TK* and subsequent packages like it will increase what I believe to be the logical consequence of computer literacy: enhanced analytical capacities.

Software Arts' conceptual innovation and software engineering excellence deserve high marks. Now, if we could only get them to produce their art as prolifically as Picasso.

Edward Rodgers is a staff consultant on information systems at a Fortune 100 corporation. He specializes in office systems and personal computers.

TK!Solver
Software Arts, Inc.
27 Mica Ln.
Wellesley, MA 02181
List Price: $299
Requirements: 96K, one disk drive

VisiCalc
VisiCorp
2895 Zanker Rd.
San Jose, CA 95143
408/946-9000

Multiplan
Microsoft Corporation
10700 Northrup Way
Bellevue, WA 98004
206/828-8080

shows... **Sign up now for EMCE**

The First Microcomputer Conference & Exposition that's as serious about personal computing as you are.

COMPLETE, 3-DAY EXHIBITION

The latest equipment and services for micros will be displayed in a professional setting, that means you won't have to compete with kids playing games. It's designed for you to see, touch and learn what you need to know about micros. **Your conference registration includes complete, 3-day exposition attendance.** Or you can sign up for the exhibits only. If you register in advance, using the form in this ad, you get two bonuses:

1. **Early admission** — only conference registrants and advanced registrants will be admitted to the hall between 11 a.m. and NOON on Thursday and Friday.
2. **$5.00 discount** on admission price at the door.

Register for EMCE now! The Sheraton Centre in New York City is the place; June 23-25, 1983 are the dates. Exposition hours: 11-7, Thursday and Friday; 10-6, Saturday. For more information on the conference and exposition, dial 1-800-225-4698 (In Massachusetts, 617-879-0700) and ask for Louise Myerow.

SPECIAL HANDS-ON WORKSHOP

In addition to the main conference program, EMCE will offer a two-day **Executive Microcomputer Workshop** for those professionals who wish to get hands-on experience with an Apple or IBM Personal Computer. The workshop will focus on four specific applications: spreadsheet analysis using VISICALC, data base management using dBase II, graphics and communications. An in-class network will be set-up to demonstrate the communications capabilities of personal computers. The two-day seminar will run concurrently with the EMCE Conference Program and will include admission to the exhibits and special feature sessions on Saturday, June 25. **The Executive Microcomputer Workshop** will be sponsored by the Personal Computer Learning Center of New York City and will be held at the Center, located at 1120 Avenue of the Americas, on Thursday and Friday June 23 & 24. **Enrollment is limited,** so please register early with your choice of hands-on using either an Apple or an IBM PC.

SPECIAL PROGRAM FOR EDUCATORS

For Educators and Administrators, EMCE will hold a special seminar on Saturday, June 25th entitled *Microcomputers in Education* which includes the following sessions designed to suit the unique needs of education:

- *Keynote: Computer Assisted Instruction in Education*
- *Computer Funding and Acquisition*
- *Logo: An Educational Language*
- *Teacher Training*
- *Administrative Applications for Educational Institutions*
- *Educational Computing at Home*

FREE SATURDAY FEATURE SESSIONS FOR ALL ATTENDEES

FREE Special Feature Sessions for exhibit and conference attendees will be held Saturday, June 25 from 9:00-1:00 p.m. The sessions will focus on professional applications for micros and starting your own home based business or office, and will also discuss the personal computers impact on family life, kids and recreation.

EXHIBIT ONLY REGISTRATION

SAVE $5 by Registering in Advance and Get Early Admission.
(Only advance registrants will be allowed into show between 11:00 a.m. and NOON on Thursday and Friday)

- ☐ Advance Pre-Paid 3 day exhibit registration $20 ($25 at door)
- ☐ Advance Pre-Paid 1 day exhibit registration $10 ($15 at door)

3-Day Exhibit Registration Includes Special Feature Sessions on Saturday, June 25 from 9:00 a.m. to 1:00 p.m.

YOU MUST ENCLOSE YOUR CHECK OR CHARGE INFORMATION. WE CANNOT BILL YOU OR TAKE YOUR EXHIBIT REGISTRATION OVER THE PHONE. EXHIBIT REGISTRATION IS NON-REFUNDABLE.

EMCE™
Executive Microcomputer Conference & Exposition

The UCSD p-System. With Speed.

The new NCI implementation of the p-System. For IBM personal computers and compatibles.

NCI now makes the UCSD p-System run 1½ to 5 times faster on the IBM Personal Computer, including the new XT and RX models and compatibles like Columbia, Compaq, Corona, Colby, Dot, Hyperion and Victor 9000. This speed is possible only with our new interpreter.

NCI includes more features for your PC.

NCI offers a wide range of software and hardware support that lets you tailor the p-System to your needs, including:

☐ HARD DISK SUPPORT compatible with most hard disk suppliers, including IBM Personal Computer XT, Davong, Corvus-Systems and Tallgrass Technologies.

☐ AUTOMATIC RAMdisk SUPPORT (up to 512K) stores files for much faster access.

☐ PRINT BUFFER (up to 64K) eliminates printing bottlenecks.

☐ 8087 SUPPORT speeds numeric and graphics applications.

☐ GRAPHICS SUPPORT with much faster Turtlegraphics software or Tektronix emulation for business and scientific applications.

☐ COMMUNICATIONS SUPPORT LIBRARY links computers across continents.

☐ NCI CUSTOMER SERVICE – we're there when you need us to support the most reliable p-System ever developed for the IBM PC.

For all the advantages of the NCI version of the UCSD p-System call or write:

Network Consulting Inc.
Discovery Park, Suite 110–3700 Gilmore Way
Burnaby, B.C., Canada V5G 4M1. (604) 430-3466

NAME____________________

COMPANY____________________

ADDRESS____________________

CITY____________ STATE________

ZIP____________

NCI

Portability. Reliability. Speed.

The Tailor-Made Editor

IBM's Personal Editor lets you create the right editor for the job.

Kearney Rietmann and Bill Grout

What do craftsmen who create their own tools and people who rearrange the furniture in their hotel rooms have in common? They know that comfort is a question of their own design.

No matter what your experience with computers, learning a new text editor or word processing program is uncomfortable until you grow accustomed to another person's idea of good design. The easiest program to learn and use is one you design yourself. While you may not feel you have the prerogative to rearrange the furniture in a hotel room or the know-how to design your own hand tools, the *Personal Editor* for the IBM Personal Computer, manufactured by IBM, is a tool you can craft to suit your editing needs. You can configure the program for special editing applications such as BASIC programming or word processing and, like an experienced craftsman, wield the tool that's right for the job.

The Editor's Window

The *Personal Editor* is suitable to both program editing and simple word processing tasks. Running the program requires 64K and one disk drive. The program provides screen editing so that you can enter and change text anywhere on the screen. You can search for and change text and move, copy, erase, and overlay blocks. Word processing features include tab and margin settings, word wrap, and text reformatting.

Two of the most interesting features of the program are the Define and Macro commands, which allow you to customize the program's use of the PC keyboard. With these commands you can assign keys to carry out specific functions. You can, for example, craft the features of your keyboard to fit programming tasks such as locating variables or moving blocks of code, or specific word processing applications such as formatting outlines or tables of contents.

The *Personal Editor* screen consists of text area, the command line, a status line, and a message line (see Figure 1). The text area takes up the first

22 lines of the screen, and the command line is a highlighted band on Line 23. The cursor moves back and forth between the text area and the command line with a press of the Esc key or the key you assign as the Command Toggle function key. The status line shows the name of the current file, cursor position, and whether you are using insert or replace mode (insert mode inserts characters while replace mode types over and replaces existing characters on the screen). The twenty-fifth line on the screen is a message line that responds to commands by displaying messages such as "Are You Sure?" when the Quit command is used.

You communicate with the program using any of 17 commands entered on the command line, such as Dir (to call a file directory), Edit (to open a file), Locate (to find a text string), and Save (to save a file). Sixty-three functions, all of which can be assigned to keys of your choice, carry out on-screen operations such as moving the cursor, centering lines, deleting text, and automatically changing text from upper- to lowercase and back again.

You can look at a directory of the files on drives A and B at any time during editing by typing the Dir command (see Figure 2). A 5-page help menu can be called using F4 (page 1 of the help menu is shown in Figure 3). The help menu shows the assigned function of the PC function keys, cursor movement keys, and keys assigned text marking functions.

A Personal Survey

Like a prefabricated house, the *Personal Editor* comes with many parts you must fit together. The program provides 29 cursor functions. The default version of the program has assigned 17 of these functions to the cursor pad, the Tab key, and to combinations of the cursor pad and the Ctrl key. The remaining 12 functions are left to you to assign (see Table 1). As with all *Personal Editor* functions, these can be reassigned to other keys.


```
    ===== Top of file =====

    10 INPUT "WHAT IS YOUR WEIGHT";R
    20 A = .166*R
    30 PRINT "YOUR WEIGHT ON THE MOON IS";A
    40 END

    ===== Bottom of file =====

 | QUIT                                              |
 program.bas                  4    7    Replace
 Are you sure?                Type y or n
```

Figure 1: The Personal Editor Screen

You might want to assign some of the 12 unassigned functions to keys when you begin using the program. Some of the more interesting unassigned functions are the Down 4 and Up 4 functions, which move the cursor up or down 4 lines, and the Tab Word and BackTab Word functions. These last two functions move the cursor across a line to the right or left, stopping at the first character of each word. The only problem with these operations is that the cursor stops at the end of the line and you have to use another key to continue tabbing by word into the next (or preceding) line.

The *Personal Editor* commands, generally used for file handling, are easy to use and remember. They are typed on the command line in upper- or lowercase letters, or combinations thereof. Commands are executed by pressing ENTER with the cursor anywhere on the command line, or you can assign the Execute function to a key and execute a command while the cursor is in text area.

Because the most recent command executed remains displayed on the command line, you can reexecute it repeatedly without having to type it again. When you want to save a file to disk during editing, for example, the reexecute feature enables you to avoid repetitious retyping of the Save command, the file name, and the drive designation. In another application of the function, you can reexecute the commands for locating and changing a string or variable that occurs in each file in a group of active files.

Assigning the most frequently used commands to the PC function keys makes for easy editing. In the *Personal Editor* default version four commands are already assigned to the function keys. F2 saves the current file, F3 saves the file and removes it from memory, F4 simply removes the current file from memory, and F7 prints the current file. When you press the function key for a command, the *Personal Editor* types the command on the command line. You type additional information such as the file name and then press ENTER. Or in the case of the Print and Quit commands you press ENTER to execute the command for the current file.

You can make quick changes in long programs and documents with the *Personal Editor*'s Locate and Change commands. The Locate command searches files for characters and strings of characters, be they letters, numbers, or special character symbols. Locate lets you search through a long program, for example, and quickly find a specific line number or subroutine. You can search both backward and forward from the cursor position.

The Change command, just as the name describes, replaces one character string with another. Change is useful for replacing variables in a section of code, or for changing names and addresses in a group of letters. You can make global changes (changing all occurrences of a string in a file), or you can selectively change some strings but not others. You use the Confirm Change function (assigned to Shift-F5 in the program default version) to indicate whether you want a particular change put into effect. As with the Locate command, you can search backward if you want, and the program ignores whether you type the string in upper- or lowercase.

In case your memory lapses, you can use the special question mark commands to check the status of the file you're working on. These commands give you information about tabs, margins, function assignments, and available memory. The commands ?Tabs and ?Margins display the current tab and margin settings on the command line. The ?Key command shows the functions given to a particular key. The ?Memory command provides information about the number of bytes available in memory. The information appears on the message line below the command line.

One problem with using the commands in the default version of the *Personal Editor* is that characters can only be erased one at a time with either the Delete or Rubout keys. Erasing long command strings takes time. To use the commands more efficiently, it's a good idea to assign the Erase to Beginning of Line function to a key or key combination when you first begin using the program.

=== Top of file ===

TEXT	DOC	122	1–01–80	1:13a
PROGRAM	BAS	98	1–01–80	12:25a
PAGE		2800	1–01–80	12:17a
PAGEINS		210	1–01–80	1:13a
REVIEW		2539	1–01–80	1:26a
BLOCKS		1336	1–01–80	12:13a
NEWDEFS		2764	1–01–80	1:02a
ADDRESS		225	1–01–80	12:17a
NEWFILE		64	1–01–80	12:34a
LETTER1		130	1–01–80	12:20a
LETTER2		131	1–01–80	12:24a
LETTER4		111	1–01–80	12:37a

=== Bottom of file ===

.dir 1 1 Replace

Figure 2: The Personal Editor Directory

Functions

The *Personal Editor* features a variety of functions to delete, insert, and move text. The five delete functions include Delete Character, Delete Line, Rubout (which deletes one cursor position backwards), and Erase Begin Line and Erase End Line (delete text from the cursor position to the beginning or end of the current line).

> The *Personal Editor* enables you to pick the right editing tool and create new ones.

Unlike some word processors that automatically open new lines at the end of text, the *Personal Editor* requires that the Insert Line function be used to insert lines for typing new text. Text below the current line is moved down one line when a blank line is inserted. If a word or phrase shorter than an entire line is typed, the text does not wrap back to fill up the space after the insertion. The Insert Line function works well in program editing when you want to insert a line (say Line 55) between two other lines (Lines 50 and 60). In word processing, however, this function doesn't work as well, because when editing documents, you often insert text to join lines that follow, such as adding an adjective or a phrase in the middle of a sentence. In this case, a feature is needed that wraps text back up to the insertion.

Another line editing feature is the Split function, which divides a line by moving text to the right of the cursor to the beginning of the next line. Similarly, two lines can be combined using the Join function to append the lower line to the current line. If the newly formed line is longer than 255 characters, however, extra characters at the end of the line are erased as the line is truncated to fit the space. Irksome as this is, the lost text of truncated lines can be recovered using a copy operation with a special file called the Unnamed file, which receives the last five changes in the current file.

For formatting tasks, the Center Line function centers text between the set margins, and Shift Right and Shift Left move marked blocks of text left or right. These last two functions are useful for shifting columns of information in charts or tables or for moving a program's displays on the screen.

Single lines too long for margin settings can be readjusted using the Reflow function. You must first mark a line before it can be reformatted, which makes for an awkward three-step procedure of marking the line, reformatting, and then unmarking the line. Lines too short for the current margins are unaffected by the Reflow function. Adjusting lines that fall short of the proper margins requires using the Join function to join two lines into one and then reformat using Reflow.

This tedious procedure has to be performed for every line of a paragraph. Fortunately, however, the default version of the *Personal Editor* provides an editing feature that reformats paragraphs automatically. The feature results from a combination of 11 functions assigned to the Alt-P keys and is a blessing considering that novices might spend an hour or two trying to devise this complicated feature themselves.

To smooth over editing goofs, the *Personal Editor* provides a bit of forgiveness in the form of the Undo function. As long as the cursor remains on the line undergoing changes, changed or erased words and even the entire line can be restored using Undo. In the default version, pressing Shift and F4 pops the original text back on the screen. Once the cursor moves out of the line, however, the original text cannot be restored with Undo.

The *Personal Editor* is good at hoisting sections of program code or text to different positions in a file. Blocks of text are marked at the upper left and lower right corners of the text. Once marked, the block lights up in inverse video. You can move or copy the entire block to a new position by putting the cursor in the desired spot and using the Copy Mark or Move Mark function. After the block is transferred, it remains marked and can be copied or moved again.

You can assign an editing feature for each of the 99 key combinations available on the PC keyboard.

Only one block of text can be marked at a time (this restriction applies to an entire group of active files), so the marked text must be unmarked before a second block of text can be transferred. Because you can transfer segments of text from one end of a file to the other and even transfer text between different files, the *Personal Editor* provides the Unmark function to save you from going back to the original position of the marked block to Unmark it. With the cursor in any position in a file, pressing Alt-U unmarks a block automatically, a feature that is as convenient as having two light switches for turning off a light from either end of a long hall.

Single characters, lines, and whole files can be marked and copied, moved, overlaid, or deleted. The *Personal Editor* also provides a special function called Fill Mark that fills an entire block with a selected character. For example, if a line is to


```
═══════  Top of File  ═══════

   Help Menu        p.1

 Function Keys

 F1  — Help Menu
 F2  — Save current file
 F3  — Save and Quit file
 F4  — Quit current file
 F5  — Erase contents of line
 F6  — Erase to end of line
 F7  — Print current file
 F8  — Switch active files
 F9  — Insert line
 F10 — Insert line indent

       s => Shift key

   s-F1 =      F4 = Exit

pe.hlp                     1    1     Replace
```

Figure 3: Page 1 of Personal Editor Help Menu

be entirely composed of periods across the screen, you can mark the line, initiate the Fill Mark function, and then type a period. Instantly the line fills with periods across the screen. Similarly, Uppercase and Lowercase change all capital letters to lowercase or vice versa within a marked block. This feature is helpful for hammering out inconsistencies in program screen displays or formatting headings and titles in word processing documents.

ASSIGNED		UNASSIGNED
Backtab	**Shift-Tab**	Backtab Word
Begin Line	Home	Cursor Command
Begin Mark	Alt-Y	Cursor Data
Bottom	Ctrl-End	Down 4
Bottom Edge	Ctrl-PgDn	First Nonblank
Command Toggle	Esc	Indent
Down	Down Arrow	Left 8
End Line	End	Left Edge
End Mark	Alt-E	Right 8
Left	Left Arrow	Right Edge
Left 40	Ctrl-left	Tab Word
Right	Right Arrow	Up 4
Right 40	Ctrl-right	
Tab	Tab	
Top	Ctrl-Home	
Top Edge	Ctrl-PgUp	
Up	Up Arrow	

Table 1: Personal Editor Cursor Functions

Printing

The biggest drawback to the *Personal Editor* is printing. With the Print command assigned to F7, the program default prints text exactly as it appears on the screen. The top margin begins with the first line of text, so blank lines must be inserted on screen to specify a top margin. The program continues printing until the end of the file without inserting page breaks in the text. When continuous-form paper is used, for example, text is printed to the bottom of the page, over the perforation, and onto the next page. This type of printing is unsatisfactory for printing out programs or documents in final draft form.

One way to overcome this printing inadequacy is to use the *Personal Editor* Escape function to type ASCII characters on the screen. By using the Alt-X and the numbers 012 (typed at the number pad) to insert the ASCII form-feed character throughout the text, you can signal the printer to begin printing on a new page.

Another possibility for improving the printing feature is to define keys to automatically set up margins at the top and bottom of pages. This procedure takes a little practice as you learn to count the number of lines on the screen, translate them to the corresponding number of lines on the page, and then insert lines in the text to create the right top and bottom margins.

Even though these methods work fairly well for breaking up program and document files into pages, printing out a single page or sequence of pages presents a real problem. Since you can't instruct the program to print out a particular section of a file, you can mark the block of text or code you want to print out and copy it as a new file. Of course, you'll have to carry out this copy procedure every time you want to print out any individual section of a file.

You can use Ctrl-NumLock to stop the printer temporarily so you can advance continuous-form paper to the top of a new page or insert a new piece of loose paper. Even though the program stops printing at the end of the current line, the stop print operation requires great hand-eye coordination, and the time spent watching the printer and trying to press the stop print keys at just the right moment builds a sense of anxiety similar to holding a nail that someone else is going to whack with a hammer.

Laying Out a Multilevel Keyboard

The *Personal Editor* enables you to pick the right editing tool and create new ones as well. Special features required for particular editing tasks can be created and assigned to individual keys on the keyboard. While word processing, for example, you may want the cursor to automatically skip two lines and indent when ENTER is pressed to end a paragraph. Redefining the function of the ENTER key is easy with the *Personal Editor.*

Whenever you are faced with a repetitive procedure consisting of a sequence of editing commands and keystrokes, the program provides the option of designing features to let the computer do the work. As another example, you might define a key to represent a period and two spaces, so you can begin a new sentence without spacing twice.

You can assign an editing feature for each of the 99 key combinations available on the PC keyboard. Features can range from simple insertions of letter combinations to complex procedures such as moving blocks of code or calling up help menus. Once defined, you can assign the new features to keys according to your own comfort and logic.

Features are created and assigned to keys with the Define command entered on the command line. After deciding on the feature (such as one to break a long program line into two lines) and the key to initiate it, you type Define, the key name followed by an equals sign, and the function words within brackets to represent the steps in the procedure as they are carried out manually (the *Personal*

Editor provides 63 function words that can be used as building blocks to create editing features). Pressing ENTER records the new definition in the Keydefs file, which acts as an electronic dictionary of key definitions, and the feature is ready to be used.

To define the ENTER key to insert a blank line automatically after a paragraph or a program line, for instance, you type

```
define enter=[insert line]
```

Key definitions are temporary and can be redefined any time during editing. To save the current key definitions permanently, the Keydefs file must be renamed and saved on disk.

Once you have defined a key such as ENTER, you can define features for combinations of ENTER, Shift, Alt, or Ctrl. After defining ENTER to insert a line, Shift and ENTER might be used to initiate a related feature, such as inserting two blank lines after a paragraph. A feature that uses the combination of Shift and ENTER is created as follows:

```
define s-enter=[insert line][insert line]
```

Notice that the *Personal Editor* Insert Line function is used twice to ascribe to the Shift-ENTER key combination the feature of inserting two blank lines.

Keys can also be assigned letter and number combinations so that words, numbers, program variables, or command statements used repeatedly need not be typed over and over. To have a word (or any combination of letters or numbers) appear on the screen every time a certain key is pressed, a definition is created using the word surrounded by single or double quotes. The following definition, for example, types the word *Print* when Alt-P is pressed:

```
define a-P='PRINT'
```

Although IBM BASIC already has a 22-word vocabulary that automatically prints command words during editing, the *Personal Editor* can contain a much larger command word vocabulary created by you to hold the commands most useful to you.

Key definitions can be up to 255 characters long and may use any combination of letters and *Personal Editor* functions. Creating long editing features has the flavor of programming since the exact keyboard procedure must be recreated using sequences of *Personal Editor* functions as code. A complex editing function using the F1 key and several *Personal Editor* features to call up the help menu looks as follows:

```
define F1=[cursor command][begin line]
  [erase line]'e PE.HLP'[execute]
```

When F1 is pressed the Cursor Command function first puts the cursor in the command line. Next, the Begin Line and Erase Line functions move the cursor to the beginning of the line and clear the command line of any commands or file names appearing there from previous editing. The Edit command and help file name ('e PE.HLP') are then typed on the command line, and the final Execute function enters the command. Creating editing features like this is easy, but sometimes requires a little trial and error to get the steps right.

> The ability to group three related functions around a single key offers a multilevel keyboard you can feel at home with.

The *Personal Editor*'s method of defining keys provides adequate flexibility in creating editing features. The constraint of having to pack the coding of a feature into 255 characters, however, puts a stiff limit on the complexity of the features you design. Creating a feature to draw a box around displayed text, for example, can easily require more than 255 characters of space for coding, depending on the size of the box. Half of an extended procedure could be assigned to one key and the second half to another, so that pressing two keys in a row completes the procedure, but fewer keys are then left for other editing features.

One feature the *Personal Editor* lacks is the ability to pause during a function to allow the operator to type information. Neither does the program conditionally test for keystrokes during a procedure, a capability of the WANG keyboard programming system, which enables the branching of a function to arrive at different results based on operator input. Without these abilities, you cannot create looping functions that might, for example, insert five blank lines and then ask if you want to insert five more by typing *y* for yes or *n* for no.

Despite these limitations, the key definition features of the *Personal Editor* offer more than they withhold. Because adding a personal touch is part of the joy of a craftsman, Personal is a good first name for this editor. The ability to group three related functions around a single key using the Shift, Alt, and Ctrl key combinations offers a multilevel keyboard you can feel at home with.

File Management

On a 64K IBM PC, the *Personal Editor* provides only 8K of work space for files. With more than 64K, this limitation is removed. Up to 20 files can be loaded into memory at one time, and you can quickly view any of the files in memory by pressing the edit command key (F8) repeatedly to bring a different file to the screen with each press. This switching between files is useful when you write documentation for a program. You can load the program and documentation files in memory active files, and as you write the documentation you can look back to the program easily and quickly to check on the features you're writing about.

Once made active in memory, files can be edited and then saved on disk again. An edited file is saved over the previous version of the file on disk, so if you botch the editing job on an active file, you can reload the original, unchanged version from disk and begin again.

With the possibility of working on 20 files in memory at once, you occasionally need to clear the work bench to concentrate on specific projects. The *Personal Editor* provides two options for erasing active files. The Quit command simply erases the current file from memory without saving it on disk. If the file has been changed while active, you are asked if you intend to erase it. The File command combines the Save and Quit functions by both recording the file on disk and deleting it from memory. Once all files are removed from memory using either Quit or File, the *Personal Editor* program ends, returning control to PC-DOS.

Saved files are recorded on disk in ASCII format. Extra blanks between characters are compressed to save disk space as the file is stored. These spaces are reinserted automatically when files are brought to the screen or printed out. The editor does not remove spaces after encountering a quotation mark on a line, preventing screen messages that appear between quotes in a program file from being garbled when the program is run. Files can be saved without compression of the extra spaces by specifying "Notabs" in the File or Save command. You might save a file in uncompressed format if, for example, you intend to telecommunicate it to another computer running a different editor that might not be able to read the compressed file.

You may be disappointed if you try swapping files between the *Personal Editor* and a word processor like *WordStar.* When read by the *Personal Editor,* a *WordStar* file appears on the screen in lines 255 characters long, with the carriage returns at the end of each line ignored. After resetting margins and reformatting the text, you see control codes embedded throughout the text. Editing this kind of file requires going through and deleting each code. Even using the Change command to globally replace these control codes, the advantages of exchanging files between the *Personal Editor* and a word processor like *WordStar* are probably few. *Personal Editor* files, however, can be read and edited by *Wordstar* without need for such changes.

For computer systems with limited memory, the *Personal Editor* has a spill file, which facilitates the creation of files larger than the computer memory can hold. When an active file becomes too large, the editor creates a temporary file named PE.TMP on disk to catch the overflow. A temporary spill file can be up to 128K long. When this type of extended file is saved on disk, the *Personal Editor* reassembles the spill file and the active file again. Memory limitations may restrict you to editing one file at a time, but with the spill file, it's as if the *Personal Editor*'s architecture enables you to raise the roof to fit the Christmas tree.

Internal Files

The *Personal Editor* uses three internal files: Dir, Keydefs, and Unnamed. The editor uses these files during an editing session, modifying and updating them in memory as you edit. You can look at the three internal files by calling them into active memory, but because they are continually updated while the editor is in use, you must rename them to save a permanent copy on disk.

The Dir file is used when you are displaying a directory of files. Using the familiar DOS DIR command, you can display a directory for a specific drive and compose directories of selected files. To create a directory of files related by file names or extensions, the Dir command is used with the wildcard asterisks. For example, to display a directory of all files with the extension .BAS, the command `DIR *.BAS` is entered on the *Personal Editor* command line.

The file names, sizes, and dates and times of creation are read into the Dir file and displayed on screen. The directory can be edited, for example, with comments about the contents of the files and then renamed and saved on disk or printed out. Although none of the internal files can be saved on disk under their original names, once displayed they are active files that take up memory and can be renamed and saved like other files being edited.

> *Personal Editor* files can be read and edited by *WordStar.*

The internal file Keydefs contains the blueprint for the keyboard layout. On starting up the *Personal Editor,* the default key definitions and any that you specify are stored in this file. The file can be displayed on screen when a reminder is needed about the function of specific keys. Any time a key is redefined using the Define command, the change is stored in the Keydefs file. Calling the Keydefs file into active memory, you can edit it with the definitions you've chosen and save it under a new name. The renamed file can then be recalled using the Macro command and this particular configuration of the keyboard reused.

Despite its rather tomblike name, the third internal file, Unnamed, is very useful. It is in this file that mistakes and editing changes are buried. The Unnamed file is the repository for the last five changes made during editing. The real benefit of this file comes when you have second thoughts and wish to restore deleted or changed sections of code or document text. By calling the Unnamed file to the screen, the original sections of changed text can be copied back into the file. The types of changes that go into the Unnamed file are deleted characters, words, and lines; lines that are too long; reformatted paragraphs; replacements made using the Change command; and parts of a file used in block moves.

Keep in mind that block moves of large portions of a file are stored temporarily in the Unnamed file and therefore take up memory space. If several large block moves are made, memory may be completely taken up by the Unnamed file. The temporary file must then be cleared by editing the file to delete its contents.

Another *Personal Editor* file called PE.PRO stores default key definitions and commands. When the program first starts up, the PE.PRO file is read, and the default key definitions are transferred to the Keydefs file and activated. Unlike Keydefs, the PE.PRO can be edited and saved with the same name again so that the *Personal Editor* comes up automatically configured the way you want it.

Any of the *Personal Editor* commands can be stored in PE.PRO, one per line, and as the file is read the commands are executed. For example, if you wish to automatically load a file of word processing key definitions, load files to be edited, and print a disk directory every time you load the editor, you simply enter the sequence of commands for these tasks in the PE.PRO file. With the ability to execute commands, the PE.PRO file can be used to take care of chores like setting up margins and tab stops before editing begins.

If one executable command file like PE.PRO is good, why not have many? You can. The *Personal Editor* reads any file loaded with the Macro command as a command file. If you often erase a current active file from memory and then call up a disk directory, create a command file to do the job.

You begin creating a command file by opening a new file with the Edit command. Next, type the Quit command to erase whatever file is on screen. On the next blank line beneath the Quit command, type the Dir command and a drive specification if needed. Last, save the file with a name that preferably identifies its function. Any time this file is loaded into memory with the Macro command, the current displayed file is erased and a disk directory is displayed. Assigning a function key to invoke command files makes using them even handier. Command files can be made using any of the *Personal Editor*'s 17 commands in the order you normally follow to do the task manually.

The internal file Keydefs contains the blueprint for the keyboard layout.

Documentation

Documentation for the program includes tutorial, reference section, reference card, keyboard guide, appendices, and index. No glossary is provided. Illustrations of screens and keyboard are neatly done using two colors, green and black. The general format of the text is appealing to look at, but the writing style has some rough edges. Text has been broken into many short, single-sentence paragraphs more often for how they look than how they read.

Toward the end of the tutorial a mysterious author emerges with sentences that begin "I." Explanations are a bit skimpy; in the section on changing margins, for example, you are told that the program "remembers" the margins set for each file, but are given no further information about the way the program keeps track of margins. On the next page of the tutorial in the section on changing tabs, you are told that margin and tab settings apply to the current active file and any file edited after that. You are left on your own to puzzle out whether the *Personal Editor* keeps track of specific settings as you switch between files.

After a little experimentation, you will discover that when a file becomes active, the *Personal Editor* uses the margin and tab settings previously set for that file, but when a new file is created, the margins from the last active file are applied. Several such instances of glossing over information occur, especially in the tutorial section on printing files.

Easy and Versatile

The *Personal Editor* is no substitute for a word processor, though it suffices for simple letter writing and short word processing applications. Despite a ready-made set of word processing key definitions supplied with the program, the *Personal Editor* is basically line oriented, which makes for awkward text processing.

The ease with which you can copy and move blocks, search and replace text, and switch between editing files makes the *Personal Editor* ideal for program editing. On-screen editing is simple, carried out by a variety of cursor movement functions; unlike the EDLIN program, with the *Personal Editor* there is no need for fussing with line numbers.

Editing multiple files in memory at once and transferring blocks between files is straightforward and easy to carry out. The *Personal Editor* also favors you with versatility by enabling you to define new editing features when a particular application calls for them. Being able to define the keyboard to behave the way you want it to, you are the one who dictates the editor's ease of use. The *Personal Editor* puts the design of your editor's features in the best hands—your own.

Bill Grout is a writer based in San Francisco who is currently working on a book about word processing. Kearney Rietmann is an Associate Editor at PC World.

Personal Editor
IBM Corporation
Systems Products Division
P.O. Box 1328-C
Boca Raton, FL 33432
800/447-4700, 800/332-4400 Illinois, 800/447-0809 Alaska or Hawaii
List Price: $100
Requirements: 64K, one disk drive

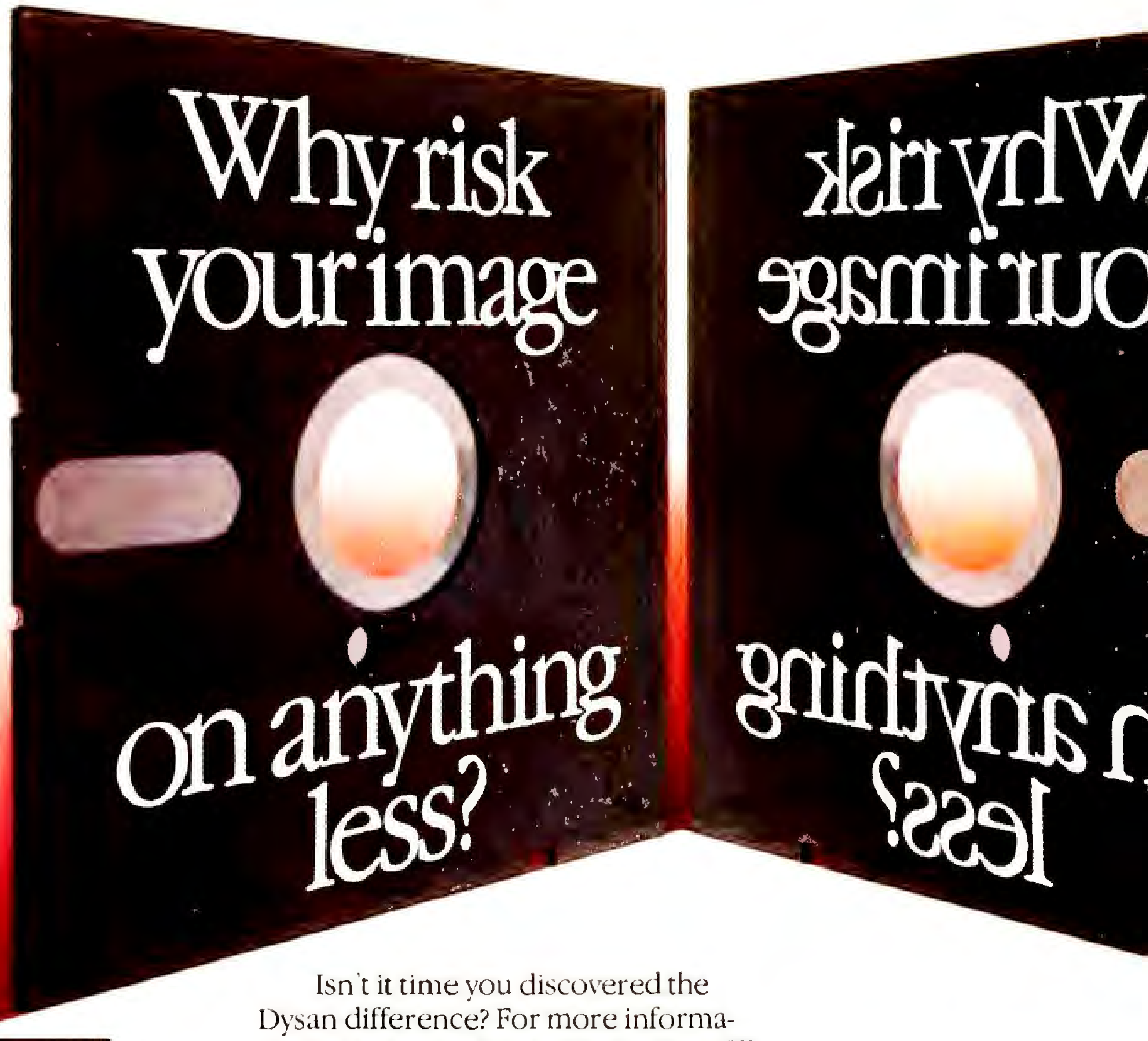
DISCOVER THE DYSAN DIFFERENCE

Dysan Software Duplication:

It's your name on the package label. And your company's reputation on the line. Whether your program retails for $40.00 or $400.00, or is for company internal distribution, the cost of duplicating it on diskettes is just a fraction of the value of your product. Doesn't it make sense to protect the time, money and talent invested in your software with the finest and most complete software duplication services available?

Quality Software Deserves the Quality Media.

Dysan's software duplication services are unsurpassed for fidelity of reproduction. Not only is your program copied unerringly onto the finest media made—the Dysan diskette—but it's also copied on proprietary equipment manufactured by Dysan, exclusively for Dysan. Plus Dysan offers you the widest variety of support services available—from software protection to serialization and packaging.



Isn't it time you discovered the Dysan difference? For more information on Dysan software duplication, fill out and return this coupon today, or call (800) 551-9000.

Dysan CORPORATION

Dysan Software Duplication Division
5201 Patrick Henry Drive
Santa Clara, CA 95050
(800) 551-9000
(408) 988-3472

Please send me more details on Dysan's Software Duplication Services.

Name: ____________________

Company: ____________________

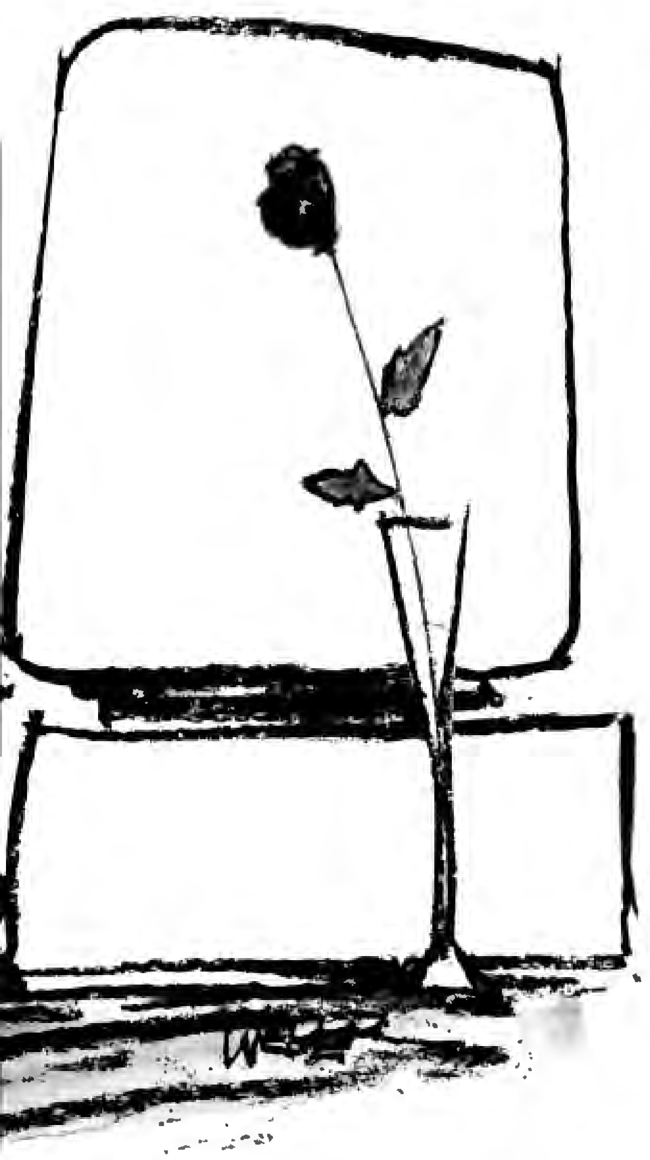
Address: ____________________

City: __________ State: __________ Zip: __________

Phone: ( ) ____________________


When Charlie
met IRMA, it was love
at first sight.

ISPLAY IT, PRINT IT.



And we mean anything. Diablo's 630 ECS is the only letter-quality printer on the market that can truly match IBM's PC character for character—all 256 of them.

Whether you work in a foreign language, or compile complex technical documents, Diablo's 630 ECS is the only printer for you. And since our printer runs over 4000 hours trouble-free, you'll have little opportunity to take advantage of Diablo's national service network. (It's the largest of all the printer companies.)

But these are just the beginning of a long list of reasons you should find out more about the Diablo 630 ECS.

Diablo understands IBM better than anyone. And after all, what's the point in owning an IBM if you can't put it in print?

Diablo, when every word counts.

*As a matter of fact, Diablo's 630 ECS also plays with Apple, Xerox, Osborne, Radio Shack and other popular micros. See your Diablo dealer for details.

Diablo

a Xerox company
24500 Industrial Boulevard
P.O. Box 5003
Hayward, California 94545

For the dealer nearest you, call operator 606 at (800) 842-7888, in CA (800) 852-7777.

Subscribe Now

Don't miss our Charter Subscription Offer:

- 3 Free issues of PC World
- Up to 55% off the newsstand price.

This is a limited time offer...act now to avoid disappointment!

CHARTER PRICES:
15 issues, $24.00
27 issues, $39.00
36 issues, $53.00

PC WORLD
Subscription
Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, NJ 07621

Toll-free order lines, for VISA and MasterCard orders: 800-247-5470 (in Iowa call 800-532-1272)

I ACCEPT! Please enroll me as a Charter Subscriber to PC WORLD.

☐ Bill Me ☐ Payment Enclosed

☐ VISA and MasterCard orders, call toll-free: 800-247-5470 (In Iowa: 800-532-1272)

Please send me:

☐ 15 issues/$24 ☐ 27 issues/$39 ☐ 39 issues/$53

These rates are for the U.S. and Canada. Foreign rates must be prepaid in U.S. currency, $48/15 issues (surface mail) $125/15 issues (air mail). Please allow 6–8 weeks for delivery.

Name ______________________

Company ______________________

Address ______________________

City, State, Zip ______________________

PC WORLD

Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, NJ 07621 J2047

I ACCEPT! Please enroll me as a Charter Subscriber to PC WORLD.

☐ Bill Me ☐ Payment Enclosed

☐ VISA and MasterCard orders, call toll-free: 800-247-5470 (In Iowa: 800-532-1272)

Please send me:

☐ 15 issues/$24 ☐ 27 issues/$39 ☐ 39 issues/$53

These rates are for the U.S. and Canada. Foreign rates must be prepaid in U.S. currency, $48/15 issues (surface mail) $125/15 issues (air mail). Please allow 6–8 weeks for delivery.

Name ______________________

Company ______________________

Address ______________________

City, State, Zip ______________________

PC WORLD

Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, NJ 07621 J2047

I ACCEPT! Please enroll me as a Charter Subscriber to PC WORLD.

☐ Bill Me ☐ Payment Enclosed

☐ VISA and MasterCard orders, call toll-free: 800-247-5470 (In Iowa: 800-532-1272)

Please send me:

☐ 15 issues/$24 ☐ 27 issues/$39 ☐ 39 issues/$53

These rates are for the U.S. and Canada. Foreign rates must be prepaid in U.S. currency, $48/15 issues (surface mail) $125/15 issues (air mail). Please allow 6–8 weeks for delivery.

Name ______________________

Company ______________________

Address ______________________

City, State, Zip ______________________

PC WORLD

Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, NJ 07621 J2047

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY CARD

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 63 BERGENFIELD, NJ

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

PC WORLD
Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, New Jersey 07621

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY CARD

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 63 BERGENFIELD, NJ

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

PC WORLD
Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, New Jersey 07621

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY CARD

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 63 BERGENFIELD, NJ

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

PC WORLD
Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, New Jersey 07621

Subscribe Now

Don't
miss our
Charter
Subscription
Offer

PC World Day on Tape

If you missed PC World Day at the West Coast Computer Faire, you're not out of luck! These five symposiums featuring 26 of the most highly respected professionals in the personal computing field were audio taped... and are available now.

The PC Phenomenon—#21–1

Listen to: David Bunnell, Publisher, PC World; Cheryl Woodard, Associate Publisher, PC World; Ronald S. Posner, Chairman, National Training Systems; Egil Juliussen, Chairman, Future Computing; and Martin Alpert, President, Tecmar

Second-Generation Software—#21–2

Listen to: Mitchell Kapor, President, Lotus Development Corp.; Jeffrey M. Harbers, Associate Manager, End-User Division, Microsoft; Gilbert H. Hoxie, President, Context Management Systems; Roy Folk, Division Marketing Manager, VisiCorp; Dr. Edward H. Currie, President, Lifeboat Associates; and Harry Miller, Associate Editor, PC World

PC Multiprocessing, Networking, and Communications—#21–3

Listen to: Drew Major, Software Systems Manager, Novell Data Systems; Steven T. Pomeroy, Product Marketing Manager, 3Com Corp.; Bruce Eisenhard, Omni Project Manager, Corvus; Harry J. Saal, President, Nestar; Knut S/C Ojermark, EDP Audit Manager, Wells Fargo Bank; and Steven Cook, Technical Editor, PC World

PC Add-ons—What Is Compatibility?—#21–4

Listen to: William H. Murto, President, COMPAQ Computer Corp.; Dr. Robert S. Harp, Chairman of the Board, Corona Data Systems; Martin Alpert, President, Tecmar; Karl Koessel, Contributing Editor, PC World; and Andrew Fluegelman, Editor, PC World

Systems Software for the PC—#21–5

Listen to: Gary Kildall, President, Digital Research; Chris Larson, Director of Marketing, Microsoft; David B. Hughes, VRI Associates; Gordon Bell, Quantum Software Systems; C.A. Irvine, Vice President of Engineering, SofTech Microsystems; and Kearney Rietmann, Associate Editor, PC World

Cassette Order Form

Name____________________

Address____________________

City/State/Zip____________________

Telephone____________________

☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard ☐ Exp. Date__________

Card No.____________________

Send $7.95 per session or $34.95 for all five. Include $.75 per cassette for shipping and handling, up to a maximum of $5.00.

Send me the following cassettes:

☐ #21–1 ☐ #21–3 ☐ #21–5

☐ #21–2 ☐ #21–4 ☐ All 5 tapes

Send check or money order to: Cassette Services Co., 19745 Oakmont Dr., Dept. PCW, Los Gatos, CA 95030.

HERE'S WHAT OUR NEW, 1200-BAUD, DO IT ALL, ONE STOP SHOPPING, DON'T BREAK THE BANK MODEM FOR YOUR IBM PC LOOKS LIKE:

Let Your Computer Do the Talking

Is it real or is it Supertalker II?

Jack Powers

Perhaps you too have been known to talk to your PC in moments of elation or frustration, but with *Supertalker II* you can have it talk back to you. We are used to seeing accessories such as joysticks, digitizing pads, and light pens connected to our machines. Now the microphone and loudspeaker are becoming common accessories. With *Supertalker II* you can enter segments of speech into PC memory, save them on disk, and play them back in any order.

Applications

Two of the most rewarding applications for this kind of device are aids for the handicapped and computer-assisted instruction. With suitable programming, a talking PC can benefit a voiceless person. Based on keyboard or joystick input, speech segments can be selected from storage and assembled into sentences, aiding personal communication and helping relieve the frustration of the speechless. Imagine the possibilities for teaching new skills to foreign students by speaking to them in a language they already understand.

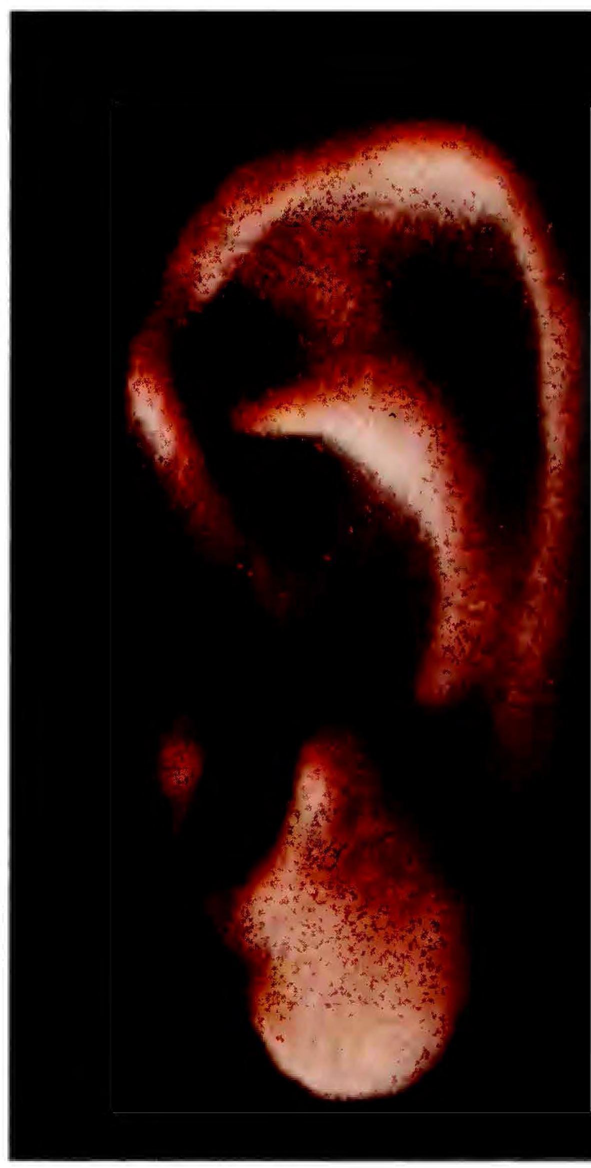
Once you start, you can't stop thinking of the many ways to use a programmable talking machine. What about word processors for the blind? Intelligent, vocal alarm systems? Sophisticated telephone answering (or maybe even calling) programs? Just thinking about it can be fascinating.

Supertalker II is a printed circuit board for the IBM PC or a compatible machine that converts audio input into digital form and back again under program control. Microphone input is converted to a stream of bytes that can be saved by the program for later use in reproducing the original sound through a loudspeaker. You can use the IBM PC's internal speaker, or you can plug in a larger one to replace or supplement it. The circuit board includes 32K of RAM available as standard memory that is not limited to speech applications.

Since the words and/or sounds you play back are the ones you recorded yourself, the emphasis and inflection are entirely your own. If your PC is monitoring the smoke and heat detectors in your theater, it can say "fire" in a way that is uniquely your own.

The package also includes an operator's guide, microphone, cable, loudspeaker, and a disk containing speech processing software. The programs may be used to record, save, and play back sound in units called phrases. Phrases are grouped in larger units called phrase tables, which may be up to 44,500 bytes long. Each table may contain many phrases, and the phrase tables may be saved as files on disk (you supply the file name; the extension is .SPT).

There is an upper limit to the duration of the speech content in a phrase table. The duration varies from about 10 to 70 seconds, depending on factors described below. Since the duration of single words averages about a half-second each, you probably won't encounter the limitation. Some planning is required, however, to record phrases such as *burglar alarm* or



supercalifragilisticexpialidocious.

Stored along with each phrase are values for the duration of silence periods before and after the phrase, a default output volume level, and the recording speed (quality) used. The *Supertalker II* software recognizes silent periods such as spaces between words of a phrase and codes them in a manner that saves storage space. During recording it also edits out silence preceding a phrase, so if you temporarily freeze in front of the mike, you won't waste storage space (as long as the silence occurs at the beginning of the phrase and is recorded in quiet surroundings).

The Coding Process

Coding a continuously varying signal like the output from a microphone is called analog-to-digital conversion. The input signal is chopped into slices of time called samples; each sample produces a binary value (a number), which is related to the magnitude of the signal at the time of the sample. The method used by *Supertalker II*, called delta coding, produces a single bit for each sample. This bit is a 1 if the amplitude of the signal has increased since the last time it was sampled, and a 0 if it has decreased. Where there is no change (as with silence), the output of the coder is a string of alternating 0's and 1's.

The quality of the coding process depends on the speed at which the input signal changes and the speed at which it is sampled. If the sampling is not fast enough for a rapidly changing signal, information is lost and reproduction is garbled and noisy. In general, the faster the sampling, the better the reproduction.

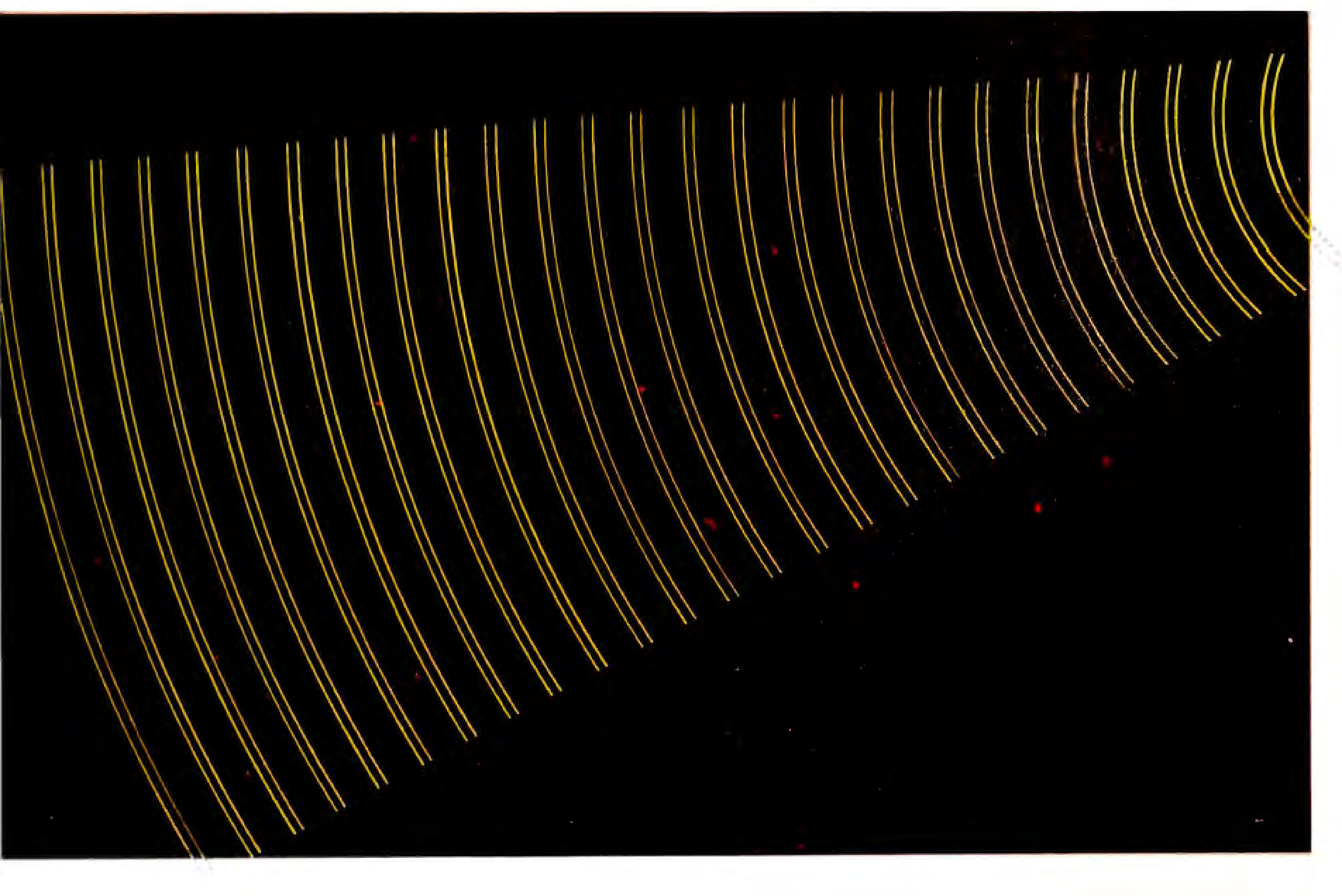
Supertalker II offers four sampling rates, of which three are supported by the software supplied:

Bits/ Sec.	Bytes/ Sec.	Quality
18,600	2325	Low
24,800	3100	Good
37,300	4662.5	Best
49,600	6200	(not supported)

The highest rate, while giving the best quality, is outside the specifications of some of *Supertalker*'s electronics, so proper operation at this speed, no matter how likely, cannot be guaranteed.

During recording the microphone input is sampled continuously, with the program accepting a byte of data (8 samples) every 214.48 microseconds at the best sampling rate. Since the easily detected alternating 0's and 1's of unchanging input (usually silence) carry no information, the program replaces these intervals in the phrase table with a silence code and byte count, which may save a great deal of storage space if there are pauses in the speech input.

Playback consists of supplying bytes of coded speech data at appropriate intervals to the *Supertalker II* decoder, which raises the amplitude of the output signal one unit for a 1 and lowers it by the same amount for a 0. When a coded silence interval in the data is detected by the output subroutine, the proper length sequence of silence bytes is passed to



the decoder instead of data from memory. The resulting high-frequency noise is filtered out by the output circuitry and you hear silence.

Quality of speech reproduction is a subjective thing. After hearing *Supertalker II* at all of its quality levels, I suggest you compare it to the telephone, which has a frequency response of approximately 300 to 3000 Hz.

If you are interested in the theory of delta coding and decoding, a good, graphic explanation of the subject may be found in *Speech Analysis, Synthesis and Perception* by J.L. Flanagan (2d ed., Springer-Verlag, New York, 1972).

Installation

The mechanical part of installing *Supertalker II* is easy if the well-illustrated instructions provided in the documentation are followed. One omission from early shipments and the instructions that go with the package is a card guide, a plastic slot that snaps into place in the PC cabinet, to hold the unsupported end of the circuit card in place. If you can't find a card guide of the proper size and shape, be sure that the loose end of the *Supertalker II* card is kept from contacting other cards in adjacent slots or parts of the PC cabinet, such as the bracket that holds the speaker.

The instructions for setting the various switches on the *Supertalker II* card might be a source of trouble. Most important is the fact that the

```
1     REM Listing 1:
10    REM BASICA PROGRAM TO DEMONSTRATE MOUNTAIN HARDWARE
20    REM SUPERTALKER 2, ADAPTED FROM SAMPLE ON MANUAL PAGE 16.
30    REM ---------------------------------------------------
40    REM Reserve 1st 20480 bytes for BASICA:
50    CLEAR ,20480
55    DEFINT A-Z
60    REM connect machine language driver
70    DEF SEG= 0:STIOSEG=PEEK(&H3C6)+PEEK(&H3C7)*256
80    STIO= PEEK(&H3C4)+PEEK(&H3C5)*256:DEF SEG
100   REM load phrase table (starting address=20480)
110   BASE=20480:BLOAD"DEMO.SPT",BASE
115   PRINT "Phrase Table Loaded."
120   REM Set stio operating parameters, coded as follows:
121   REM P1 (Mode)  P2 (Table) P3 (No.)  P4 (Volume)  P5 (Quality)
122   REM ---------  ---------- --------- ------------ ------------
123   REM  1= Play   (Phrase    Phrase #  -1= Recorded -1= Recorded
124   REM  2= Record  Table                0= Low       0= Good
125   REM             Start                1= Normal    1= High
126   REM             Address)             2= Loud      2= Best
127   REM
130   P1= 1:P2=BASE:P4=-1:P5=-1
140   REM Get time from system:
150   X$= TIME$
160   PRINT "The time is "+X$
170   HH= VAL(LEFT$(X$,2))
180   IF HH < 13 THEN PM= 0 ELSE PM= 1: HH= HH - 12
190   MTENS= VAL(MID$(X$,4,1))
200   MUNITS= VAL(MID$(X$,5,1))
210   REM Say the hour (1-12):
220   P3= HH+1: GOSUB 270
230   P3= MTENS+1: GOSUB 270
240   P3= MUNITS+1: GOSUB 270
250   IF PM THEN P3= 14: GOSUB 270
260   STOP
270   PRINT "Calling STIO with P3=", P3
280   DEF SEG=STIOSEG:CALL STIO (P1, P2, P3, P4, P5):DEF SEG
290   RETURN
300   ENDC
```

Listing 1

drawings of the switches show rectangular black spots indicating which end of the switch to press (not which end should be up). Mountain Computer uses rocker switches instead of slide switches. Another problem is that setup instructions are not supplied for systems with more than 224K of RAM.

If you have a copy of the standard diagnostic programs for the PC, running them to verify correct operation after installing *Supertalker II* is a good idea. Of special interest is the listing of installed features, for while the diagnostics can't be expected to test or be aware of the *Supertalker II* speech hardware, the additional 32K of storage should be reflected in any message listing the size of RAM.

When using the software (don't forget to make a backup copy first), be sure to use the AUTOEXEC.BAT file supplied or its exact equivalent. Failure to do so can result in "locking up" the PC so thoroughly that the only cure is to power it off (leave it off for about 10 seconds) and then on again.

Hearing, Writing, and Reading

In the 1930s Dr. Ben Wood developed the theory that children would learn reading more easily and quickly by writing first. One of his students, an educator named John Henry Martin, retired in 1975 to devote his time to proving Wood's ideas. The two men also held that the important part of writing had little to do with drawing the letters well, and that the perfectly formed characters produced by a machine served the purpose even better than hand printing.

In order to test these theories, Dr. Martin and his wife Evelyn designed a comprehensive lesson plan and asked IBM to lend them six Selectric typewriters (which don't jam when the kids press more than one key at a time). IBM, which has a tradition of supporting educational research, found the idea interesting, and a partnership was formed.

The partnership blossomed into a test project called Writing to Read, involving more than 300 learning stations with talking IBM Personal Computers equipped with *Supertalker II*, color displays, and typewriters. The equipment also includes 900 tape recorders, 2410 sets of earphones, almost 10,000 disks, 12,885 audio cassettes, and thousands of texts and workbooks. These went to over 100 schools in seven states.

This large investment is based on an excellent track record for the program that Martin started in 1977 with 17 borrowed typewriters. IBM found that the children in Martin's first program gained 26 percentile points in reading skills in a year, moving from the 44th percentile to the 70th; improvements in the program for the second year brought another group of first graders to the 82nd percentile. Other results were even more impressive, leading to the development of similar programs for older children.

Computers were the technical base for the next step in Dr. Martin's work. He developed newer, more flexible instruction sequences based on the ability of the computer to react to the students' actions.

The IBM PC equipped with voice output and color graphics plays a key role in the Writing to Read program, aided by other, more traditional tools. The voice output from the computer capitalizes on the typical 5-year-old's vocabulary of several thousand words. High-quality color graphics add to the impact of the new material in a way no child can ignore.

Much has been said and written about the promise of the computer in education, but measurable benefits have been slow in coming. IBM and Dr. Martin seem to have achieved the kind of synergy with Writing to Read that educators have been looking for. And the kids seem to be enjoying it too.

Dr. Martin with a student

Supertalker-equipped PCs

Trying It Out

Trying out *Supertalker II* is the fun part. After installing the loudspeaker and microphone, execute the *Supertalker II* Editor program (STE.BAS) using the AUTOEXEC.BAT file provided. This program loads the machine language service subroutines and allows you to build, edit, and save phrase tables. Phrases may be played back immediately after recording, and you will find yourself starting to plan speech programs in the back of your mind as you simulate their operation by controlling STE from the keyboard.

You may find it easy to fill up the 44.5K in a phrase table at the best sampling rate; if space becomes a problem, change to the next slower speed for experimenting.

There is little documentation on STE in the *Supertalker II* operator's guide, but the menu-oriented operation is easy to understand. If you are recording short phrases, don't worry about the amount of menu space (14 lines) reserved for phrase entries. The number of phrases is not limited to the entries that fill this space; the number is limited by the total size of the phrase table (44.5K bytes or 32 phrases, whichever occurs first).

Also not obvious is the fact that STE allows insertion of a new phrase between two existing phrases. Once you have completed an applications program for *Supertalker II* and need to revise it, this feature will be very useful.

Once you start, you can't stop thinking of the new ways to use a programmable talking machine.

Listing 1 shows a sample program for *Supertalker II*. The program is simple, but it points out a number of important things, most of them in the software area. SAYTIME uses a single phrase table containing the following phrases in the order listed:

(1)	Zero
(2)	One
(3)	Two
(4)	Three
(5)	Four
(6)	Five
(7)	Six
(8)	Seven
(9)	Eight
(10)	Nine
(11)	PM

The program gets the time of day using the BASIC pseudovariable TIME$ and then "says" it after adjusting for the difference between 12- and 24-hour notation (for hours greater than 12, subtract 12 from the hour and append PM to the spoken output). The output is a bit unrefined; instead of "five nine," for example, why not say "fifty-nine"?

The answer to why this program is not more clever lies more with the structure of *Supertalker II*'s software than anything else. Loading phrase tables from disk is slow, so you want to avoid it during speech output. Making SAYTIME clever enough to say "fifty-nine" instead of "five nine" would not make the program much longer or more complex, but the processing would be so slow when used with phrase tables on floppy disk that the listener might forget the hour while waiting for the minutes.

The lesson here is that complex applications of *Supertalker II* (especially at the best speech quality) either require large and fast hardware in which the supplied software is used, or need to be programmed using a different set of programming tools. No information is given in the operator's guide about how to program *Supertalker II* in assembly language or in another language that might offer more flexibility (along with greater programmer responsibility, of course). The buyer is not informed of such basics as the I/O addresses used (3E0-3EF are reserved, of which 3E8-3EC are used; there are no interrupts). Experienced programmers may find this a shortcoming and might resent having to ask the manufacturer for the kind of data they have learned to take for granted.

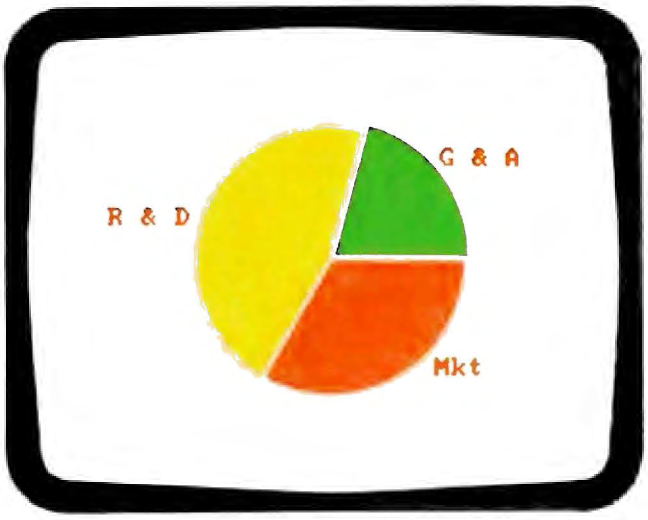
Supertalker II is an important and useful addition to the hardware options available to PC users. It is simple and easy to use with the software supplied. However, in order to construct systems of some size, large and fast random access storage such as hard disk may be required. The information needed to write one's own support tools would be most welcome to the serious programmer on a limited budget.

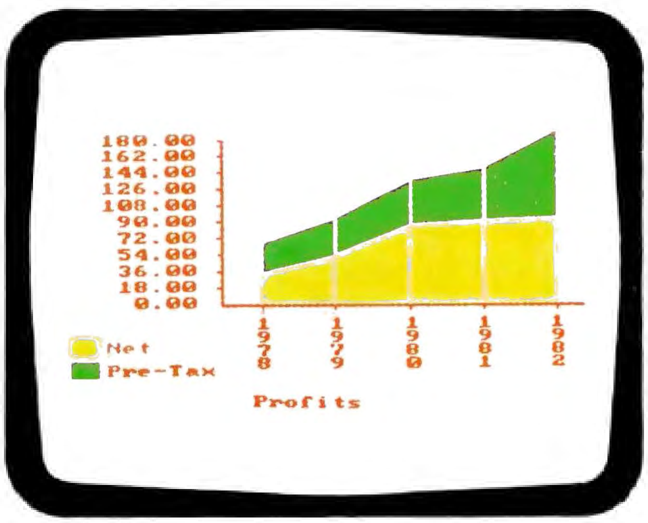
I found an interesting side effect resulting from installing *Supertalker II*. Engineers would say it was a fault, but with an earphone or an efficient speaker you can hear signs of your system operating. As this is being written, I can hear little bursts of sound that reflect both my input and *WordStar*'s (occasionally futile) attempts to process it. I like this kind of feedback; it reminds me of the days when we put a radio on the CPU and listened to work in progress.

Jack Powers is a communications systems programmer for a large research organization in the San Francisco Bay Area.

Supertalker II
Mountain Computer, Inc.
300 El Pueblo Rd.
Scotts Valley, CA 95066
408/438-6650
List Price: $565
Requirements: 64K, one disk drive

Good News for VisiCalc® Users





INTEGRATED GRAPHICS For Under $100!

In just a few keystrokes, transform the columns of figures from your Visicalc spreadsheet into a pie chart or any of 7 other types of charts and graphs. Without ever leaving VisiCalc!

That's only the beginning. The StretchCalc™ program also adds powerful spreadsheet management and user-convenience features. At a fraction of the price of comparable products.

- **GRAPHICS:** Eight kinds of charts and graphs allow you to uncover important trends and patterns behind that mass of numbers. View the graphics in your choice of color or monochrome. Or print them. Either way, you gain immediate impact from your data that those rows and columns just can't provide.
- **SPREADSHEET MANAGEMENT:** Need to examine your budget, portfolio, or sales forecast by relative value of spreadsheet entries? StretchCalc™ SORT commands automatically rearrange your spreadsheet based upon its contents. Would you like the convenience of obtaining a single page summary of a large spreadsheet with a single command? A REARRANGE command lets you instantly set the columns of your spreadsheet in any order.
- **USER CONVENIENCE:** Store a series of VisiCalc commands under a function key. One keystroke and the StretchCalc™ program executes them for you. Up to 66 sets of VisiCalc and StretchCalc™ commands can be stored in a single diskette file. No more memorizing the right sequence or recovering from costly keystroke errors.

The StretchCalc™ program is available now for just $99 [$49 without graphics]. A lot of added capability for your VisiCalc spreadsheet at a modest price. Ready to order? Need more information? Call **toll free** 1-800-322-4110. VISA and MasterCard orders accepted. Or write us at the address below.

Required hardware: IBM P.C. with 128 K RAM and at least one 5-1/4" diskette drive. For screen graphics: IBM Color/Graphics adapter and compatible color or monochrome display. For printer graphics: IBM or Epson printer with GRAFTRAX option. **Required software:** IBM DOS, version 1.1; VisiCalc, Extended Memory ("256K") Version.

StretchCalc is a trademark of Multisoft Corp.; IBM is a trademark of International Business Machines Corporation; VisiCalc is a VisiCorp trademark; GRAFTRAX is a trademark of Epson America, Inc.

MULTISOFT

MULTISOFT CORPORATION
14025 S.W. FARMINGTON RD., BEAVERTON, OR 97005

If you've been looking for the right accounting package for your IBM, we've got the answer… ACCOUNTING PLUS PC.

Our industry acclaimed business system, Accounting Plus, is now available for your IBM personal computer. Featuring finger tip control over all important financial functions, the Accounting Plus PC System integrates General Ledger. Accounts Receivable. Accounts Payable. Inventory Control and Payroll, as well as Sales and Purchase Ordering.

Our popular menu-driven design offers user friendly, screen oriented operation that makes data handling easy.

A seven module system. Accounting Plus PC tracks, reports, and summarizes transactions faster and more accurately than all other available business accounting packages.

Accounting Plus PC includes all of the innovative features you've

come to expect from Software Dimensions: extensive error checking, password security, complete audit trail, total system integration, and high speed processing.

Now, the system that's become the industry standard for microcomputers has gone to work for IBM. Versatile. Reliable. The Leader. Offering you the best in quality business application software.

Accounting Plus PC…it's got all the answers you've been waiting for.

See your dealer for a demonstration and further information regarding the new Accounting Plus PC system from Software Dimensions Inc.

Accounting Plus™ PC. The Answers You've Been Waiting For.

SOFTWARE DIMENSIONS

P.O. Box 1100
100 Blue Ravine Road
Folsom, CA 95630

Tailored to your microcomputer's storage needs.

With 5-120 MByte capacity, integrated backup, and shared disk networking.

Give your microcomputer the speed and capacity required to run today's application programs. It's easy with our family of custom-tailored hard-disk subsystems. We offer you a full range of Winchester storage capacities on 5¼", 8", or 10.5" disk drives, *plus* removable 8" and brand-new 3.9" Winchester cartridges or high-density floppy backup...fully integrated in a compact, attractive cabinet.

Application software support
SCS hard-disk subsystems are completely hardware and software compatible with your microcomputer, and transparent to most popular operating systems. What is more, they support virtually all application software packages originally designed for micros with floppy disk storage.

Networking capability
SCS can provide shared-disk networking capability for Apple, TRS-80, and IBM Personal Computers—even for a mix of different brand-name microcomputers! So now you can put one SCS hard-disk subsystem to work for a whole user network. The result is reduced per station cost; convenient, common access to programs and documents; plus centralized data backup on Winchester cartridges or floppy disks.

Innovative features
Compare our features with those of any other manufacturer, and you'll see why SCS has earned an industry-wide reputation for innovative product design. We offer you: removable Winchester disk (backup); multiple host networking; 16 MByte Apple DOS volume sizes; disk partitioning; electronic disk; Printer spooling; LED cylinder address display; status display; E.C.C., and more.

Full customer support
We'll supply everything you need to give your micro new speed and capacity: hard disk and backup, controller, power supply, host adapter, operating software, cable, cabinet, documentation, and shared-disk networking options. We'll supply it fast. And we'll stand behind it with our standard 90-day warranty or optional extended coverage for up to three full years!

Why wait? SCS hard-disk subsystems are tailored to your budget, too, with surprisingly low prices. For additional information, call or write us today!

Santa Clara Systems, Inc.

560 Division St., Campbell, CA 95008
(408)374-6972/Telex: 176309 SCS CMPL

Better Basics

Introductory books that provide organized instruction on running and programming your PC

Richard Cook

Are you tired of just reading about BASIC programming and anxious to try it instead? If so, pick up a copy of *BASIC Exercises for the IBM Personal Computer* by J.P. Lamoitier. You'll still have to read, of course, but you'll also be loading and running many new and challenging programs. Through this learning-by-doing method you'll learn programming faster, too.

Basic Exercises

BASIC Exercises for the IBM Personal Computer is not another sugar-coated beginner's introduction to BASIC; it is a straightforward, sharply focused textbook for the serious programming student. The book is divided into 11 chapters. Chapter 1 is an introductory lesson in BASIC. Chapter 2 explains flowcharting. The remaining chapters demonstrate how to set up programs to solve problems in math, geometry, data processing, science, finance, games, research, and statistics.

Each chapter uses an identical format. A problem is stated and analyzed, and the reader is challenged to devise a solution. Then a flow chart is presented, followed by the program and a sample run. Turn the page and the process is repeated.

While the writing is Spartan in the classic textbook tradition, it is correspondingly clear and well organized. Lamoitier never dwells on a point, but simply explains what needs explaining and moves on, an approach that works well for this often complex material.

The text is augmented by extensive use of examples and illustrations, mostly of flow charts, program listings, and printout results. You can type the programs provided in each chapter into your PC to see how they work.

As with any textbook, how much you learn depends largely on how much intellectual effort you expend, but be warned: algebra and calculus are used heavily in *BASIC Exercises for the IBM Personal Computer.* The concepts are not impossible for the lay person to grasp, but this book is written, as the author says, "for all readers who have a minimum scientific or technical background." Lamoitier's idea of minimum background may differ greatly from yours, so look carefully through a chapter or two before buying.

For those who have access to a PC *BASIC Exercises for the IBM Personal Computer* provides expert guidance in the hands-on method of learning how to program in BASIC. You'll like this book if you are the kind of person who prefers digging into things and figuring them out yourself rather than listening to someone explain how they work.

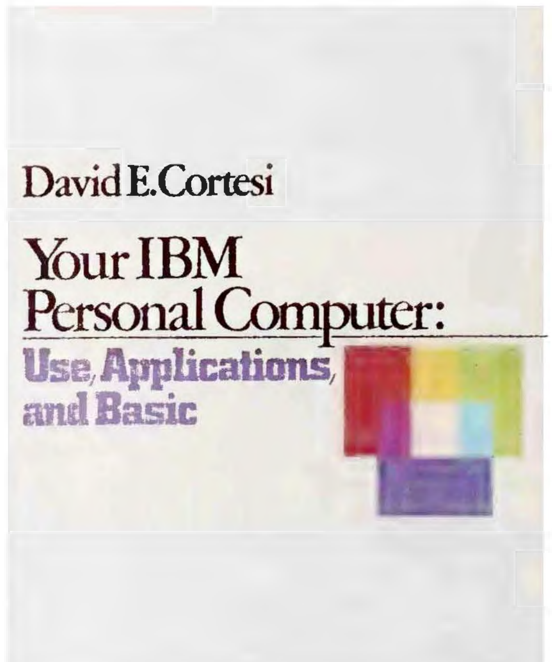
Your IBM Personal Computer

Everyone new to and curious about the world of computers faces the task of absorbing an ocean of obscure information. For many, it is easier on the psyche to ignore the entire subject than to plunge in and risk appearing a techno-peasant.

Too often those who do try to learn are inundated by a tidal wave of terminology or find themselves drowning in an attempt to learn computer operations, programming, and organization all at once. What is needed is a beacon to guide the beginner through the seas of confusion to the shores of knowledge. To that end, *Your IBM Personal Computer: Use, Applications, and Basic* by

David E. Cortesi can shine some much-needed light on the subject.

If you have just bought or are about to buy an IBM PC and find you know very little about how to use it or what to do with it, you will find *Your IBM Personal Computer* an excellent investment.



Designed as a step-by-step guide to be used in conjunction with the IBM *Guide to Operations*, the BASIC manual, and the software manuals, *Your IBM Personal Computer* provides an organized approach to setting up and using your PC.

Cortesi assumes you are new to computers and rightly begins by describing what a computer is, what it can and cannot do, and how software fits in. Next he identifies various hardware components and explains what they do and how they work with your system. Subsequent chapters cover hardware installation, the use of DOS and *VisiCalc*, and elementary BASIC programming.

You will also find a chapter on software—how it is made and sold and where to find information on it, and a chapter on creating and maintaining a disk library, including how to make and organize backup disks and how to use batch files. By the end of the book you should be able to use your PC effectively.

Your IBM Personal Computer is clearly written in everyday English with a light, friendly touch that will calm and reassure you during moments of confusion, frustration, or panic. Cortesi stresses the fact that your PC is not only a powerful tool, but is fun to use and not threatening. He's convinced that it's not difficult to master the computer if you are "willing to read software and hardware documentation, the *Guide to Operations*, and computer books and magazines," and if you "know your own work very well" so you can supply knowledgeable supervision to what your computer does.

Cortesi understands the importance of feeling at home with your PC in the physical sense too; the initial chapters provide many useful tips for setting up a well-organized, comfortable work environment.

Your IBM Personal Computer is easy to read and digest because the material is introduced in small, complete chunks that anyone can swallow. Terminology, for example, a common bogeyman for the novice, is introduced and explained as you work through the chapters, rather than dumped on you all at once. And each chapter has many examples and illustrations, including some simple programs anyone can load and run.

Books like *Your IBM Personal Computer* are greatly needed in the computer industry to provide introductory-level material for beginners who want to know about or even buy their own personal computers, and to tear away the layers of misinformation and confusion about computers that exist in the minds of many nonusers. If you are looking for a smooth road to computer literacy, *Your IBM Personal Computer* can get you well on your way.

BASIC Exercises for the IBM Personal Computer
J.P. Lamoitier
Sybex Inc., Berkeley, 1982
251 pages; $13.95

Your IBM Personal Computer: Use, Applications, and Basic
David E. Cortesi
CBS College Publishing, New York, 1982
253 pages; $16.95

GREAT PLAINS ACCOUNTING ☐ MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

Our books simplify yours!

Great Plains Software shows you how to appraise your business from every angle. Our books handle your accounting in expert fashion. They analyze your management policies and evaluate the profitability of your decisions. And our books give you the reports you need – so you can see where your business is making profits – and losing them, whether it's by salesman, product, territory or profit center.

Our new version of the Hardisk Accounting Series includes General Ledger, Accounts Receivable, Accounts Payable and two new modules – Payroll and Inventory with Point of Sale. Our programs are fast, powerful and efficient. Our books make it easy to operate and understand.

You can find Great Plains Software at your local computer store – or call us for more details. We'll be glad to show you how the Hardisk Accounting Series can simplify your books.

SPECIFICATIONS

OVERALL
- Password Privacy System
- Written in UCSD Pascal**
- Hard Disk Oriented
- Operates on Apple III, IBM PC

GENERAL LEDGER
- All entries on line entire fiscal year
- Flexibly formatted financial statements
- Comparative income statements and balance sheets

ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE
- Up to 32,767 customers*
- Profit by customer, customer type, salesman and state
- Open item or balance forward
- Automatically posts to G/L

ACCOUNTS PAYABLE
- Up to 32,767 vendors*
- Accommodates manual or generated checks
- Automatically posts to G/L

PAYROLL
- Up to 32,767 employees*
- Up to 20 deductions per employee
- Withholding computed
- Prints W2, 941 and checks

INVENTORY
- FIFO, LIFO, standard cost, weighted moving average and serial number valuation
- 5 price levels per part
- Concise report including profit by part and line
- Point of Sale for cash and credit sales
- Part numbers up to 15 characters
- Automatically posts to A/P and A/R

*depending upon disk storage space

** TM UC Regents

GREAT PLAINS™ SOFTWARE

123 15th Street North, Fargo, ND 58102-4292 • (701) 293-8483

PC-MATE BAK-PAK WINCHESTER BACK-UP 6.25 MEGABYTE DISK PACK $1595.00

The "Bak-Pak" System comes in an IBM-Compatible/**PC-MATE** Mini-cabinet complete with software, power supply, controller and cables. Features removeable media in packs with 6.25 megabytes of formatted storage per pack. Additional packs available at $95.00.

The controller substitutes for the IBM floppy disk controller, so no additional slots are necessary. Also can be used as primary high capacity storage system.

5 MEGABYTE REMOVEABLE CARTRIDGE WINCHESTER FOR BACK-UP $1995.00

Comes in IBM-Compatible/**PC-MATE** Mini-cabinet complete with software, power supply, controller and cables.

Can be used as the stand-alone primary high capacity storage device.

WATCH THIS SPACE

New! Tecmar Tape Back-Up Coming Soon

HIGH CAPACITY STORAGE 26 MEGABYTE WINCHESTER $3995.00

Comes in IBM Compatible/**PC-MATE** Mini-cabinet complete with software, power supply, controller and cables.

- Compatible with all Tecmar disk-expansion systems
- Allows disk sharing for up to four (4) IBM PCs

26 Megabyte Winchester is also availabe in IBM-Compatible **PC-MATE** Expansion Chassis which offers an additional five (5) expansion slots and independent power supply for $4295.00.

Other Winchesters From Tecmar:

- 10 Megabyte in Mini-cabinet - $2495.00
- 15 Megabyte in Mini-cabinet - $2895.00
- 10 Megabyte in **PC-MATE** Expansion Chassis - $2795.00
- 15 Megabyte in **PC-MATE** Expansion Chassis - $3195.00

Other configurations of fixed Winchester, removeable cartridge Winchester and 8" floppy disks are also available from Tecmar. Contact your local dealer or check Tecmar's full-line catalog for details.

BACK-UP SYSTEMS SOLUTIONS

HIGH CAPACITY STORAGE SOLUTIONS

Call or write for the latest catalog of **PC-MATE** peripherals from TECMAR. Updated continuously as new products come on-line.

**TECMAR
THE ONLY NAME
YOU NEED TO KNOW**

What's New, WordStar?

Except for a little cosmetic flash, the newest release from MicroPro is the same old WordStar.

Harry Miller

I was enthusiastic and hopeful as I opened the package. It looked new and different. The packaging had been completely redesigned. I knew that version 3.3 of *WordStar* would use memory-mapped video to increase the screen refresh speed (the rate at which the display screen is redrawn when you move the cursor more than a screen at a time). I could only hope that this updated version would include some sparkling new features that could make the most popular word processing program also be the best. I regretfully report that once I got past the well-designed installation procedure my hopes were not fulfilled.

C. Itoh/TEC Starwriter/F10	NEC 8023A matrix printer
Centronics 353	NEC Spinwriter 3550
Centronics 739	NEC Spinwriter specialty
Diablo 630	Okidata ML84A
Diablo/Xerox 1610/1620	Olympia ESW-102
Diablo/Xerox 1640/1650	Qume Sprint 5-9/45-11+
Epson MX80/100-no Graftrax	TI 810/820
Half line feed printer	backspacing standard
IBM Parallel printer	standard printer
MPI 88G/99G	

Figure 1: Printer Types Compatible with WordStar 3.3

Left margin	Initial help level
Right margin	Decimal point character
Number lines/page	Non-document mode
Page offset	Initial directory display
Form feeds	Initial insertion toggle
Data field separator	Justification toggle
Variable name symbol	Hyphen help toggle
System disk drive	Omit-page-numbering toggle
Function keys	Top page margin
Exit to INSTALLATION menu	Bottom page margin

Figure 2: Menu of WordStar Features

Installation

Version 3.3 includes a menu-driven installation procedure that makes it easy for any user to reconfigure the program to work with a variety of printers. This procedure also provides some flexibility in the operatior of some of *WordStar*'s features.

The installation menu covers three basic areas of configuration: terminals, printers, and *WordStar* features. Since the program comes preinstalled for the IBM PC screen and keyboard, the terminal menu is bypassed. The printer menu provides a one-key configuration of the program to be used with the specified printer. Figure 1 lists the printer options offered.

Features Menu

Certainly the most interesting and fun aspect of the installation procedure is the *WordStar* features menu. This menu provides facilities for adjusting the default values for 19 important features. The procedure for changing 17 of these features has been described in detail in Emil Flock's "WordStar Made to Order" (*PC World*, Vol. 1, No. 2). The two features not covered in that article involve the *MailMerge* program. That article also described a host of other useful changes, all of which can be patched on version 3.3. Those changes work so well because, it seems, very little of the actual code of the program has been altered to produce the new version.

The features menu (or the *PC World* patch procedure) makes a slight change in the assembly language code to change the conditions that are in effect when *WordStar* starts up. Using either method of making the changes, you could change the default settings for the program at any time. Alternatively, you could establish several versions, each set up and named differently.

The features menu in the 3.3 version lets you set the initial help level (from 0 to 3) that determines how much help information and which, if any, menus are displayed (see Figure 2). Any experienced *WordStar* user will tell you how annoying the menus are once you get used to the commands. You can also decide whether the disk directory should be displayed in the lower half of the screen when the "editing no file" (now called the "not editing") menu is shown. A related option allows you to preset the logged disk drive.

Another configuration option determines whether the program will start up in the non-document mode. The benefit of this feature is that you can type ws filename from the operating system and jump right into editing the file under the non-document mode. Similarly, you can change the defaults so that the insert mode and automatic justification are off. In the insert off mode new characters are typed over adjacent, existing characters rather than inserted before them. Automatic justification off means that the right margin will be ragged when words are wrapped around at the end of a line.

Another useful change is that the hyphen-help feature, which stops and suggests where the text might be hyphenated as a paragraph is being reformed, can be disabled. This is especially useful if you have turned justification off because the hyphen-help gets in the way and slows the operation down.

Other menu choices allow you to alter the default settings for the top (3 lines), bottom (8 lines), left (1 column), and right (65 columns) margins. You can even change the decimal character from a period to a comma to facilitate European notation.

In the area of print control, the features menu lets you set page numbering off (the equivalent of including an '.op' dot command in the text file), and change the default number of lines per page from 66 to whatever value the paper size you're using requires. In addition, the page offset can be set, indicating the number of columns to remain blank to the left of the zero setting of the left margin (the default value is 8 columns).

Very little of the actual code of the program has been altered to produce the new version.

The form-feed option allows you to establish the default condition of whether form-feed or multiple-line-feed characters are sent to the printer before page one and between pages. The normal default condition is to use multiple-line feeds (form feeds off).

Function Keys

Possibly the most significant improvement in efficiency results from the assignment of frequently used keystroke combinations to the dedicated function keys, F1 to F10. While earlier versions of *WordStar* for the PC came with those function keys predefined, the definitions may not have suited your individual needs. Before the information was released in "WordStar Made to Order" there was no simple way to change those definitions without buying a separate keyboard enhancer program. The new version includes a simple way to change those definitions as part of the features menu. Each of the function keys may be assigned a definition of up to 6 characters. It also provides a constant display of the current function key definitions at the bottom of the screen (on the 25th line).

The constant definition display could be more of an annoyance than a help, however, especially if you've been using a keyboard enhancer to redefine the function keys as I have. It's unlikely that your function key definitions are the same as the predefined ones. Of course, you could go into the features menu and redefine the function keys to match your keyboard enhancer version. But that means double work every time you want to change the definitions, and if you've been using a keyboard enhancer, you no doubt have defined each of the function keys to have extra meanings with Alt, Shift, or Ctrl key sequences. Since *WordStar 3.3* defines and displays only the ten single function keys (F1 through F10), two-thirds of the definitions can't be displayed.

The simplest solution to the function key definition display is to get rid of it. The patch to accomplish that was first published in Steven Cook's "WordStar Patches—P.S." (*PC World*, Vol. 1, No. 3). It allows you to display text on the 25th line of the PC screen. After typing

```
debug ws.com
```

respond to the DEBUG prompt ('-') by typing

```
F 248 L1 19 <ENTER>
```

Then type

```
w <ENTER> q <ENTER>
```

to save the change you just made and quit the DEBUG program.

The two *MailMerge* options on the feature configuration menu allow you to change the characters used to separate the data fields in a *MailMerge* data file (usually a comma), and to change the symbol used to denote a *MailMerge* variable when it occurs in a *WordStar* file (usually an ampersand).

Several of the useful patches described in the Flock and Cook articles are not addressed directly by the features configuration menu. In particular, the patch to shorten the redisplay delay (the amount of time the messages remain on the screen), serves to speed up the operation of the program. And the word-wrap toggle and line-spacing default setting add a satisfying dash of flexibility.

Color

MicroPro has also provided a little Advanced BASIC program to change the color of the background and the characters in both the text and the menus when *WordStar* is used with a color display monitor. The program (including source code) is supplied as a free addition to *WordStar.* You can run the program at any time so that you're not stuck with the choice you make at the first installation. The color choices for either background or foreground (characters) include none (black), blue, green cyan, red magenta, yellow, and white. In addition, you can decide to have the characters in the text or the menus highlighted. In fact, you can also use this program to change the highlighting on a monochrome display to make the normal text dimmer and the menus (and marked blocks) highlighted.

Editing

While the configuration of features from a menu makes the program easier to use and customize to your needs, the memory-mapped video feature makes *WordStar* significantly more pleasant to use. The program operates in the same manner as it always has, but everything happens faster.

It has often been said that perception of speed distorts when you start using computers. The first time you see the computer perform a time-consuming task, it seems like a miraculous accomplishment. It doesn't take long before you are impatiently waiting for the computer to complete the same task and asking how the process can be sped up. At any rate, while your perception of speed may be personal and subjective, one phenomenon is almost universal: once you've seen the computer perform quickly, accepting a slower pace is difficult.

This phenomenon is certainly borne out by my experience of the speed of *WordStar 3.3.* While I was quite satisfied with the speed of the old version running on an electronic disk, I am impressed by the speed increase of the new version. The memory-mapped version scrolls a screen at a time two to three times as fast, while a line-by-line scroll of a single page of text takes about 30 percent less time. Moving the cursor a screen at a time goes as fast as is useful—it's as close to instantaneous as a person can take advantage of.

Speed is especially important for writers. No longer will program execution interfere with the creative flow of ideas. (I guess I'll have to find some other excuses for occasionally losing my train of thought.)

Although I haven't had a chance to test it extensively, it looks like my least favorite *WordStar* bug may have been corrected in the new version. The problem came up in the old version when you tried to save a large file to an already full disk. Under some circumstances *WordStar* would impolitely kick you out to the operating system and send the fruit of your painstaking labors into text hyperspace. What it should do (and what it does now) is give you a warning message and force you back into the file you're editing while you change to a floppy disk that is not as full.

The only other difference you'll find when editing with the new version is that some of the menu entries and error messages have been revised to be a bit more understandable. For example, the cryptic "no file" menu is now called the "opening menu," and the toggles currently read "now ON" or "now OFF" instead of simply "ON" or "OFF."

Packaging

Although it may at first seem somewhat trivial or superficial, the new design of the manual and packaging will make a big difference in the way the program is perceived, especially by first-time users. The new package presents the manual in the standard IBM format (6- by 9-inch pages in a looseleaf binder that comes in a box).

The documentation, as always, includes a reference manual, a training manual, and an installation guide. The training manual, which has proven reasonably successful in past versions, has been reprinted in what seems to be a verbatim copy. It is now bundled as a section in the binder, rather than the flip-over chart format of earlier versions.

The reference and installation manuals have been completely rewritten and distributed in a typeset form printed on high-quality paper. Illustrations adorn almost every page. The *WordStar* manuals are finally usable. Some of the industry's most infamous documentation has been transformed.

The visual effect and the organization are significant improvements. Each page is indexed using a printed black bar at the edge of the page (much like a dictionary-style edge index). The subject headings are "outdented" in the left margin, and the page headers are specific enough to be useful. The new documentation package will make *WordStar* more accessible, especially to the novice.

The new manual also includes two important aids to understanding the program that were lacking in previous versions. A schematic diagram shows the relationships of the various menus, and a single page reproduces all the menus.

Although the new manuals are much better than their predecessors, my praise for them is not unrestrained. The reference and installation manuals both suffer from embarrassingly weak attempts at cartoon art, as well as from a hokey system of graphic attention getters. Different symbols are used to mark phrases where caution is required, where there is something you should remember, or where there is a phrase that you should keep in mind. The distinction between the last two categories was certainly not clear from the way they were used. Admittedly, these criticisms are vastly overshadowed by the magnitude of the improvement.

When you look behind the pretty packaging, you're left with some small improvements and some corrections of earlier bugs. If you're already using a keyboard enhancer to simplify the program's operation and have implemented some of the *PC World WordStar* patches, all that the latest version really offers is faster screen refresh. It doesn't offer split-screen capabilities, and it requires three steps to append part of one file into another file. *WordStar* still requires the purchase of extra software to do form letters or to create an index or a table of contents, and it still uses the high-order bit when it stores a character so that a separate program is required to convert a *WordStar* file to standard ASCII or vice versa.

And even though the speed is a nice upgrade to an already good program, it remains to be seen whether it's enough to maintain *WordStar*'s leading position in an increasingly competitive marketplace.

WordStar
MicroPro International Corp.
33 San Pablo Ave.
San Rafael, CA 94903
415/499-1200
List Price: Introductory price of $695 includes SpellStar, MailMerge, and Star Index; after September $895. Purchased separately WordStar 3.3 is $495, SpellStar $350, MailMerge $350, and Star Index $195. Update for previous version $85.

Powerbase for the powerhouse

At last: a completely new relational data base management system that fully utilizes and enhances the power of the best micro on the market today. And makes it available to those whose expertise is business, not computers.

We call it POWERBASE.™ Software clever enough to meet your information needs, easy enough to be mastered in half an hour. No fancy programming. No unnecessary computer jargon. You simply paint your screens and define the information you need. PowerBase does the rest. Pleasurably.

PowerBase introduces DATAZOOM™ and the exclusive Zoom Key which, at the touch of your fingertip, explodes data to deeper and deeper levels of revealing detail. Other features include ultra-fast b-tree access, multiple files, powerful editing and table look-up functions, flexible report writer, the ability to search, sort, and scan other files... and many more.

Master data without having to master computers. The power of the micro is now *fully* yours with PowerBase, the new breed of software that makes data management basically simple.

pæwer-base™
with datazoom™

Call or write for our free informative brochure.

gmssystemsinc.
12 W. 37th Street N.Y., N.Y. 10018
(212) 947-3590
Dealer inquiries invited.

POWERBASE and DATAZOOM are trademarks of G M S Systems, Inc.

You've got problems. Get an expert to help you. Get KnowledgeMan.

Why not dBASE II or 1-2-3? Because KnowledgeMan gives you the best of the data management and spreadsheet worlds...and much more—integrated to manage information like no other package can.

Designed to be **more powerful** and **easier to use,** KnowledgeMan has it all. Fast, efficient storage. Queries like IBM's SQL/DS. 3rd generation spreadsheet. Report writer. I/O screen manager. Statistics. Structured programming language. Security.

Introducing KNOWLEDGEMAN The all·in·one software package that "Out-Thinks" the competition

KnowledgeMan Is:

- **Easy to get to know.** Goes to work fast with easy-to-follow documentation.
- **Friendly and intelligent.** Interactive. English-like commands. Answers spur-of-the-moment questions.
- **Organized.** Keeps track of data in concise tabular form.
- **Efficient.** Supports B^+ tree indexing and virtual fields.
- **Neat.** Produces forms the way you want, on the screen or on the printer. Automatic editing and integrity checking.
- **Great with figures.** Statistics, including means and standard deviations. Square roots, logarithms, trig functions, random numbers, etc.

DO YOU NEED TO...	dBASE II	1-2-3	KnowledgeMan
Store and retrieve data?			
■ Max fields per record	32	256	**255**
■ Max tables open at once	2	1	**Unlimited**
■ Max records per table	65,535	2,048	**65,535**
■ Query multiple tables with a single command	No	No	**Yes**
■ Dynamic sort of query output	No	No	**Yes**
■ Multi-level control breaks	No	No	**Yes**
Use a spreadsheet?			
■ Rows by columns	0 x 0	2048 x 256	**255 x 255**
■ Cell can extract data from independent tables	No	No	**Yes**
■ Cell can be entire program	No	No	**Yes**
Make screens, forms attractive?			
■ Color, reverse video, blinking, half-intensity, bell	No	No	**Yes**
■ Form-at-a-time processing	No	No	**Yes**
Safeguard data?			
■ Passwords, data encryption	No	No	**Yes**
■ Field level read/write protection	No	No	**Yes**

The information in this table is believed to be correct based upon vendor documentation but cannot be guaranteed.

Introductory Offer—only $250.* Act now: After June 1, 1983 the price will be $500. First releases are for the IBM PC, Victor/Sirius, Altos. Call regarding other environments.

Send $250 plus $10 shipping/handling ($260). Indiana residents add 5% sales tax ($12.50).*

Micro Data Base Systems, Inc.

KnowledgeMan is a Trademark of Micro Data Base Systems, Inc., SQL/DS, PC of IBM, Victor/Sirius of Victor Business Systems, Altos of Altos Computer Systems, dBASE II of Ashton-Tate, 1-2-3 of Lotus Development Corp.

VISA and MASTERCARD orders may be placed by phone.

*Pre-orders (cash or equivalent) postmarked by June 1 are guaranteed introductory price.

Send check or money order payable to:
Micro Data Base Systems, Inc., P.O. Box 248
Lafayette, IN 47902, Attn: David Bartkus
(317) 463-2581

Name____________________

Address____________________

City__________ State_____ Zip______

Phone (   )________________

Operating System ☐ PCDOS ☐ MSDOS ☐ CP/M-86

Machine/disk format________________

☐5¼" IBM PC SS ☐5¼" Victor/Sirius ☐8" IBM 3740 SS-SD

☐ Check or money order enclosed (U.S. Currency)

☐ MasterCard/VISA No.________________

Expiration Date__________ Bank No. (if MC)__________

Signature____________________

Running Out to Buy a Computer?

Or some software, or a modem, or a printer?

Are you making the right decision?

Do you know who makes the best product for the price?

Are you sure the company supports its products?

How can you find all this out—soon enough to make smart buying decisions?

Simple . . .

Subscribe to InfoWorld, the only microcomputer newsweekly.

InfoWorld is the source of information for people who get the right equipment—every time they buy. They read InfoWorld's in-depth product reviews, the most respected and quoted reviews in the industry. They read weekly columns, like "Getting Started" and "Inside Track." They get the kind of insight that can save them thousands of dollars.
As an InfoWorld reader, you'll join an elite club of people who know what's hot and why—and buy accordingly.
So before you run out and buy that computer, make sure you're an InfoWorld reader. We'll give you the straight scoop every week.

InfoWorld
The Newsweekly for Microcomputer Users

If the coupon is missing, send your subscription request to: InfoWorld, Circulation Department, 375 Cochituate Road, Box 837, Framingham, MA, 01701. Please enclose a check for $31.00, to start your year's subscription to InfoWorld.
Or call toll-free from outside Massachusetts (800) 343-6474
From Massachusetts call (617) 879-0700

I want to be the first to know! Please start my subscription to InfoWorld, the newsweekly for microcomputer users.

Rates: U.S. $31.00; Canada, Central & South America $65; Europe $100; All Other Countries $170 (Air Mail)

☐ My check is enclosed
☐ Am Ex ☐ BofA/Visa ☐ MC

(MC Only list four digits above your name)

If charge, we must have cardholder's signature ______ Expiration Date: ______

NAME ______

(TITLE) ______

(COMPANY NAME) ______

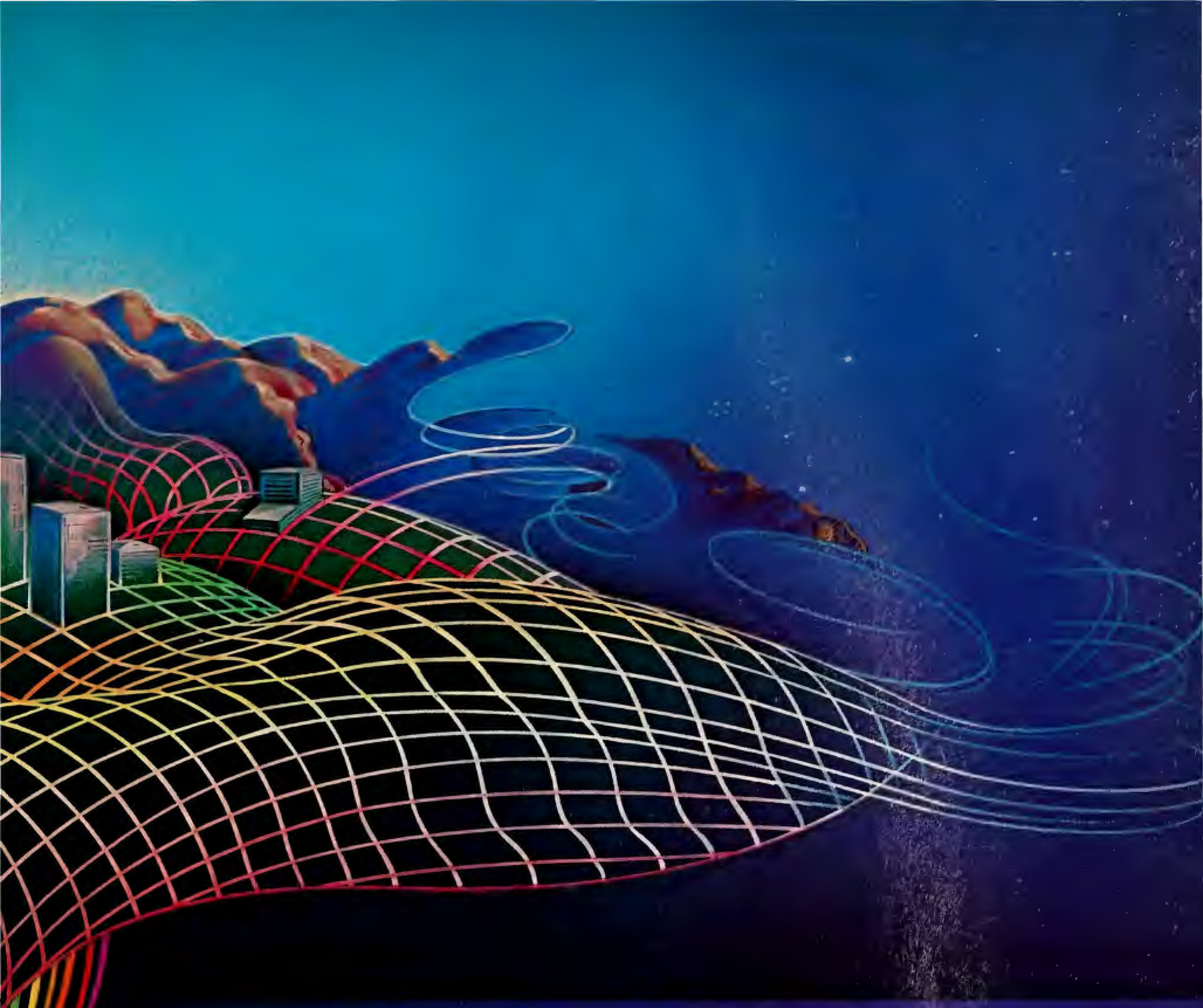
ADDRESS ______

CITY ______ STATE ______ ZIP ______

☐ Check here if you do not wish to receive promotional mail.

Send this coupon to: InfoWorld, Circulation Department, 375 Cochituate Road, Box 837, Framingham, MA, 01701.


From your mind's eye to the screen.
Bring images to life, with color, resolution, and the speed of thought.
Use CONO#GRAPH™— the intelligent color display graphics system for your IBM PC. CONO#GRAPH delivers the performance of a professional graphics workstation for the price of a business graphics system.
The modular CONO#GRAPH system lets you start with the CONO#COLOR™ Adapter for quality color and high resolution, and later add the optional CONO#GEN™ module for increased processing power and speed.
Choose from 256 colors.
The CONO#COLOR Adapter provides a spectrum of 256 colors. Select a palette of 16 colors for simultaneous on-screen display. Modify the palette dynamically to provide instantaneous color changes and special effects including motion.
Resolution to 640 x 400.
The CONO#COLOR Adapter supports IBM-compatible resolutions of 320 x 200 and 640 x 200, plus four other modes, up to 640 x 400, each with 16 of 256 on-screen colors. And up to four selectable pages of video memory let you modify one page while another is being displayed— for special effects like animation.
The CONO#COLOR Adapter gives you more.
The CONO#COLOR Adapter's 128K bytes of high speed memory and unique design will
IBM and IBM PC are registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp.



Optimizing for BASCOM

Dan Rollins

The Microsoft BASIC Compiler can improve the performance of almost any BASIC program. For many applications it is indispensable, increasing the speed of a program so that a task may be accomplished within an allotted time. There are many steps a programmer can take to help the compiler do its job. The steps described in this article are easy to implement, and all of them will be useful to those who must squeeze a little extra performance from their programs.

BASCOM, Microsoft's BASIC Compiler for the IBM Personal Computer, is a tool every serious BASIC programmer needs. A BASIC program may be written and debugged using the BASIC interpreter and then compiled into speedy, 8088 machine code. In addition to the speed advantage of compiled programs, the source code is protected; coding secrets remain the property of the software author. Also, compiled programs can take advantage of the expanded memory available with the PC.

Programmers who wince at the thought of BASIC, preferring more structured languages such as Pascal or C, should take a good look at Compiled BASIC. Many of the disadvantages of Interpretive BASIC do not apply to the compiled version. For example, you can leave plenty of remarks and clarifying spaces in the source code without causing a slowdown at run time. Program lines need not start with line numbers except when needed as labels for GOTO or GOSUB statements. Program lines are not limited in length, so nested IF...THEN statements can be formatted nicely and made clearly readable.

There are certain drawbacks to using the compiler: the generated code is often much larger than its interpreted counterpart, certain BASIC commands work differently when compiled, and the debugging process can be painfully slow. In cases where the compiler's speed advantage is needed and the only alternative is writing in assembly language, these disadvantages lessen in importance.

Speed is the essence of compiler programming. A short program I wrote to delete remarks and extra spaces from BASIC programs (to make them run faster with the interpreter) was taking 20 minutes to do its job. The same program, once compiled, did the same job in under 3 minutes. The program used a lot of string memory and was spending time doing string garbage collecting. Also, the interpreter was so slow to process an input line that the disk would stop spinning before the line was ready to be output. This caused a delay for each input as the disk drive was started and brought up to speed. The compiled version had neither of these problems.

A graphics-oriented game program I wrote would have been ridiculously slow in Interpretive BASIC. By compiling the code and CALLing assembly language routines at critical points, I was able to make it fast enough to be usable.

Programmers should take a good look at Compiled BASIC.

In the case of the game program, I needed to squeeze as much speed as possible from the compiled code. There also came a point when the program would no longer fit in a 64K system, and I needed to do some size optimization to make it marketable. This article describes some of the techniques I used to accomplish these ends, but first a few of the differences between Interpretive and Compiled BASIC.

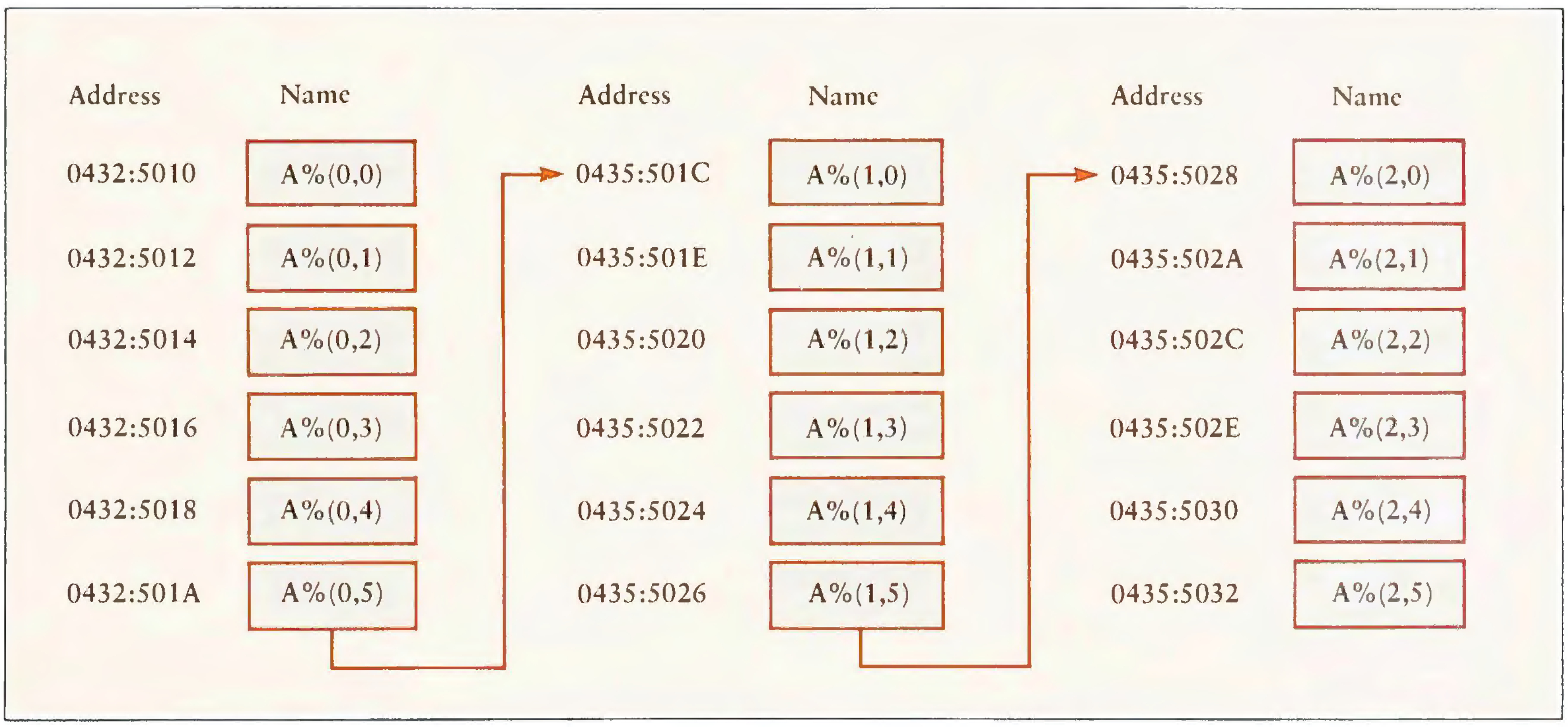


Figure 1: Conceptual Diagram of Array Storage in Memory

The BASIC Difference

Many BASIC programs can be saved in ASCII and compiled without change, but usually the file must be edited to conform to the restrictions described in the compiler manual. Notably, arrays must be explicitly dimensioned; nesting of FOR...NEXT and WHILE...WEND loops must be physical as well as logical; DEF FN and DEF type declarations must occur physically early in the source code, and the DRAW and PLAY statements must use VARPTR$ to locate any variable parts of their control strings. Also, the USR and CALL statements work differently in Compiled BASIC.

Certain BASIC commands are meaningless to the compiler. RENUM, LIST, SAVE, and NEW are examples. Some statements will only work when special compiler parameters are specified at compile time. For example, ON KEY(n) and STRIG(n) are only acceptable when the /V or /W parameters have been included in the BASCOM command line. ON ERROR GOTO will only work when a /E or /X parameter has been specified. The action of the CHAIN statement varies according to whether the /O parameter is used.

A careful eye is needed to convert the more subtle differences. One such difference is in the way Compiled BASIC handles numeric-precision conversions. Interpretive BASIC can make variable precision decisions on the fly, but the compiler must decide in advance which type of precision to use (see "Compiler Conversions Considered"). This makes overflow errors possible. For example

```
J% = -10000:K%=20000:L%=20000
A% = J% + K% + L%
```

will return an erroneous result. K% is added to L%, resulting in an overflow (an integer variable cannot exceed 32,767). Parentheses should be used whenever you expect that such an overflow might happen:

```
A% = (J% + K%) + L%
```

The compiler's line editor (used in INPUT and LINE INPUT statements) will only operate on one screen line at a time. Thus most of the cursor control keys don't work as expected. When an unacceptable key is pressed, the compiler makes an irritating beeping sound and ignores the key. Of course all the keys included in the extended ASCII character set may be read via the INKEY$ command and processed as desired. Ctrl-Break, for example, returns a key code of 03 and can be ignored to prevent the program from being stopped.

The PRINT function also works slightly differently. Compiled BASIC will ignore cursor control characters in a string. For example, Interpretive BASIC allows the printing of a multiline box:

```
CD$=CHR$(31) :CL$=STRING$(4,29)      'cursor down, left by 4
PRINT"—-";CD$;CL$;"I I";CD$;CL$;"—-";
```

Compiled BASIC does not support this technique.

Some of the PEEKs and POKEs mentioned in the BASIC manual will not work with the compiler. For example

```
DEF SEG :POKE &H4E,C
```

won't change the color of your medium-resolution character set and

```
DEF SEG :POKE &H6A, 0
```

won't flush the keyboard input buffer.

The compiler allows strings to be as long as 32,767 characters; this won't cause any problems in converting straight BASIC code, but it does affect the way a CALLed routine must handle string parameters. Also, string space is controlled differently with the compiler, making garbage collection much faster. This also means that any program that POKEs into string memory will likely confuse the system and cause a String Space Corrupt error.

> The most obvious way to speed up a program is to use integer variables whenever possible.

A couple of major differences are not mentioned in the compiler manual. First, the storage area for J% is the same 2 bytes as the storage area for J%(0). Generally, any variable is the same as the 0th element of the array with the same name. I spent hours debugging because of this problem.

The compiler apparently recognizes GO and SUB separately. The graphics program I was writing included an array for storing the location and various attributes of a submarine. I tried to name the array SUB%(), but that resulted in a syntax error.

Writing Faster Code

The following discussion gives samples of techniques that force the compiler to generate more efficient and faster-running code. When I explain why one method is faster than another, I'll be using terms that are familiar only to experienced 8088 assembly language programmers, but you can use these techniques even if you have only a little knowledge of BASIC.

Some of the following examples are accompanied by proof of the speedup—either a timed benchmark or a listing that counts the clock cycles required to perform a function. You can prove the validity of any of these techniques by using the following batch file:

```
REM —— TEST.BAT ——
BASCOM CON:,NUL,CON: /N/O/A;
```

This invokes the compiler specifying the keyboard as the input file. After you have entered some BASIC program lines, press F6 or Ctrl-Z to signal the end of the file. The compiler will immediately begin processing and then display the 8088 mnemonics of the opcodes that it generates. Be ready to press Ctrl-NumLock to halt the listing for inspection. You might also want to press Ctrl-PrtSc to obtain a printed copy of the display.

The most obvious way to speed up a program is to use integer variables whenever possible, because integer arithmetic operations are done rapidly within the 8088 registers. The following techniques are based on the arithmetic optimizations that the compiler performs only with integer variables. A simple example will make the point. The BASIC line

```
X! = Y! + Z!
```

compiles to

```
MOV   DI,OFFSET Z!   ;point to the operands
MOV   SI,OFFSET Y!
CALL  $FADA          ;invoke floating-point addition
                     routine
MOV   DI,OFFSET X!   ;point to the destination
CALL  $FASC          ;move the result to the destination
```

The same operation performed using integer variables,

```
X% = Y% + Z%
```

produces these lines when compiled:

```
MOV   AX,Z%          ;get the 16-bit Z% value into the
                     accumulator
ADD   AX,Y%          ;add the 16-bit Y% value
MOV   X%,AX          ;place the sum into X% storage area
```

Compiler Conversions Considered

Chris Gill

The Microsoft BASIC Compiler attempts to mimic the BASIC interpreter as closely as possible. There are, however, some variations due to the inherent differences between compilers and interpreters. A major portion of the *BASIC Compiler User's Guide* is dedicated to explaining these differences. One area where the differences are particularly subtle is discussed in the manual under the title "Expression Evaluation."

Because the interpreter is executing the user's program as it translates the program, the interpreter can be quite cagey in handling numeric overflow. Consider, for instance, the statement A=4*I%. If I% is equal to 10, the interpreter will perform an integer multiplication, convert the result to single-precision (since A is single-precision), and return the correct result of 40. If I% is equal to 10,000, the interpreter will attempt an integer multiplication, note an overflow condition (since 40,000 is too large to be expressed as a 16-bit integer), perform a floating point multiplication, and return the correct result of 40,000.

The compiler, however, faces an interesting dilemma here. Because translation is performed entirely before program execution is initiated, the compiler has no way of knowing how large I% will be. The compiler must therefore generate code to perform the necessary type conversions during compilation. In this case, the compiler can choose to always convert I% to a floating point number and perform a floating point multiplication (thereby penalizing all those programs in which I% is always a small number with very slow execution), or choose to always use an integer multiplication (thereby producing incorrect results when I% is larger than 8K).

Microsoft decided to support both requirements—efficiency and safety—but to allow the user to select which is more important for a given compilation. The compiler produces efficient code (using integer operations in this case), but it can also provide a check for incorrect results with the /D (debug) compiler option. Thus, for the above example without a /D the compiler would generate:

```
MOV    BX,I%    ;get I% into the BX register
SAL    BX,1
SAL    BX,1     ;multiply (BX) by 4 as efficiently
                 as possible
CALL   $CISA    ;convert the result to floating
                 point (for A)
```

This code is efficient, but possibly unsafe, since there is no overflow check. Using the /D option causes the compiler to generate extra code after each integer arithmetic operation to check for any overflow or underflow conditions. This additional code is expensive in terms of execution speed and memory requirements, but guarantees that these errors will be detected. We always advise liberal use of the /D option when first compiling and testing programs; the checks performed for arithmetic overflow, array bounds, and RETURNs without GOSUBs can considerably reduce debugging time later on.

Thus, we have two major recommendations for using the BASIC Compiler. First, be careful when using mixed mode arithmetic; second, thoroughly test programs with the /D option set before using them without the option.

Chris Gill is the manager of the BASIC Compiler for Microsoft Corporation.

The first example, using single-precision (floating-point) addition, takes over three times longer to execute than the second, which uses integer addition. Because of this, most of the following examples assume that a DEFINT A-Z declaration has defined all variables as integers.

Similar time improvements are obtained when an integer constant is added to an integer variable. In certain cases the performance for integers is even better. For example, when 1, 2, 3, or 4 is added to an integer, the compiler uses the efficient INC opcode to perform the math. (Likewise, DEC is used for subtractions and additions of small, negative values.) On the other hand, adding *any* value to a single- or double-precision number requires time-consuming calls to the floating-point arithmetic routines.

Comparing two values in a program is much faster if they are integer numbers. Many programs that use the keyboard to control an object use the INKEY$ function for keyboard input of one character. The following lines are typically used in this respect:

```
K$ = INKEY$ :IF K$ = " " THEN RETURN
IF K$ = "U" THEN Y = Y - 1
IF K$ = "D" THEN Y = Y+1
'..., etc.
```

This, however, forces multiple calls to $SCMA, the string compare routine. The following code is much more efficient:

```
K$ = INKEY$ :IF K$ = " " THEN RETURN
K = ASC(K$)
IF K = 85 THEN Y = Y - 1     'test ASCII value of "U"
IF K = 68 THEN Y = Y+1       'test ASCII value of "D"
'..., etc.
```

Doing some preprocessing in the CPU above your shoulders will save a great deal of processing at run time.

Constantly Slow

When writing in Interpretive BASIC, I like to avoid constants. Early in the program I define:

```
FALSE = 0 :TRUE = NOT FALSE
```

Then I can easily set or flip-flop the state of a flag variable while keeping the code from becoming too cryptic. Unfortunately, this technique slows down the operation when compiled. For example

```
MATCH.FOUND = TRUE
```

generates the 28-clock-cycle sequence

```
MOV    AX,TRUE%
MOV    MATCH.FOUND%,AX
```

The more efficient alternative method,

```
MATCH.FOUND = -1     'set it to true
```

generates the 20-clock-cycle opcode

```
MOV    MATCH.FOUND%,0FFFFH
```

Generally, you write more efficient (but possibly less readable) code when you use immediate, or constant, values wherever possible.

Faster Arithmetic

The 8088 microprocessor is blessed with hardware multiply and divide. Of course, the compiler uses this fact, and it shows up in speedy execution of all such arithmetic operations. Even so, an integer multiplication takes a minimum of 128 CPU clock cycles because the compiler always does 32-bit multiplication (two 16-bit operands). As experienced assembly language programmers know, certain multiplications and divisions can be accomplished in a fraction of that time. The speedy SHL and SAR instructions will respectively multiply and divide a number by a factor of 2 in only 2 clock cycles—a 600 percent increase in speed.

The programmers at Microsoft did not miss this point. The compiler takes advantage of shift instructions whenever possible. When it sees

```
X = Y*4
```

it generates the opcodes:

```
MOV   AX,Y%      ;retrieve the first factor
SHL   AX,1       ;multiply it times 2
SHL   AX,1       ;times 4
MOV   X%,AX      ;save the product
```

This optimization can only take place when one of the factors is a power of 2, and that factor must be a constant in the program. For example, both Z = 2 :X = Y*Z and X = Y*5 will use the slower IMUL opcode to perform the multiplication.

You can take advantage of this optimization in your own coding. Multiplication by 5 in the latter example can be replaced with

```
TEMP = Y*4 :X = TEMP+Y
```

Even with the extra variable manipulation and the extra addition operation, this multiplication is almost twice as fast as one that uses the 8088 IMUL instruction.

Speeding Array Operations

Programs that use multidimension arrays can be dramatically speeded up using this next tip. All variables stored in any type of array can be considered as a single list of values. BASIC string arrays are lists of pointers to string-descriptor blocks. Integer arrays are lists of 2-byte words containing the values of each of the array variables. A two-dimensional array is just two one-dimensional arrays stored one right after the other.

First we'll look at how the compiler works with a one-dimensional array. You can think of this type of array as a list of values, each of which is held in a 2-byte word of memory. The 8088 has powerful tools for manipulating arrays, namely its index registers. To access the *Xth* element of a one-dimensional array, you calculate the offset from the start of the array by multiplying X by 2 (the number of bytes in an integer array element) and place this value in an index register. The 8088 can automatically "look up" the address by adding the index register to the address of the start of the array. The address thus formed can then be used as a memory operand and manipulated as if it were a register.

The statements

```
DIM A%(20)
A%(X%) = Q%
```

generate these instructions when compiled:

```
MOV   DI,X%        ;index register becomes element to
                   access
SAL   DI,1         ;multiply by 2 to point to address of
                   A(X)
MOV   BX,Q%        ;set up register with new value
MOV   A%[DI],BX    ;transfer the data into the array
                   memory
```

This sequence will take exactly 60 clock cycles.

Figure 1 illustrates the way that BASIC stores a two-dimensional array of integers. The A%() array has been allocated with the statement DIM A%(2,5).

Therefore the computer has initialized a list of 18 locations to hold the array data (this includes the 0th elements of each dimension). Notice that the memory location for A%(1,0) is sequentially adjacent to the address of A%(0,5). Now consider the actions taken when you assign a value to an array element:

```
A(X,Y) = Q
```

1) Retrieve the value of Y
2) Multiply that by the number of rows of the array
3) Add the value of X
4) Use the sum as the index into the array
5) Move the value of Q into the address formed by adding the index pointer to the address of A(0,0)

In other words, move your pencil down the list to the start of the row indicated by Y, adjust it X more to point to element (X,Y), and then write a new value in that address.

If you enter these lines into the compiler using TEST.BAT,

```
DEFINT A-Z :DIM A(2,5)
A(X,Y) = Q
^Z
```

these opcode mnemonics will be generated by the compiler:

```
MOV   AX,0003H     ;get the number of rows
IMUL  Y%           ;calculate the start of this row
XCHG  AX,DI        ;set up index register
ADD   DI,X%        ;point to the element on this row
SAL   DI,1         ;multiply by 2 (bytes per element)
MOV   BX,Q%        ;get ready to store the new value
MOV   A%[DI],BX    ;store the new value in the array
```

The above operation requires a minimum of 212 and a maximum of 238 clock cycles. The IMUL calculation is by far the slowest component of the calculations needed to form the address. It also accounts for the possible variation in times—IMUL timing varies according to the bit patterns of the operands.

The calculation to form the offset address of any element of a multidimensional array must be performed, but it needn't be done by the time-consuming IMUL opcode. Consider what happens when the array has been dimensioned thus:

```
DEFINT A-Z :DIM A(3,5)
A(X,Y) = Q
```

The compiler generates:

```
MOV   DI,Y%        ;get the number of rows
SAL   DI,1
SAL   DI,1         ;calculate the start of this row
ADD   DI,X%        ;point to the element in this row
SAL   DI,1         ;multiply by 2 for bytes per element
MOV   BX,Q%        ;register must temporarily hold value
MOV   A%[DI],BX    ;store the new value
```

This sequence takes exactly 83 clock cycles. That is at least twice and possibly three times as fast! The difference is that IMUL has been avoided because the compiler knows that one of the offset factors will always be a power of 2. Therefore, even if your program uses only the first 3 columns of an array, i.e., (0,n), (1,n), and (2,n), it is wise to dimension the array with 4 columns, as in the latter example.

Generally, you should dimension arrays (string, integer, or floating point) so that the number of subscripts is a multiple of 2. Unless you use the OPTION BASE 1 statement, this means that the first subscript should be 1 less than a power of 2, i.e. 2^n-1. For three-dimensional arrays, declare the first two values using multiples of 2. For example, accessing elements of an array dimensioned DIM A!(3,7,20) is more than four times faster than if the array is declared DIM A!(2,5,20). As you might expect, there is a trade-off for this gain in speed. The unused array elements will take up storage area. In this example, you would be wasting a total of 1360 bytes (340 unused elements times 4 bytes per single-precision value.)

> The compiler takes advantage of shift instructions whenever possible.

Maximizing Compiler Optimization

IBM Pascal is an example of a two-pass compiler. After it has generated code, it checks back through the listing to find if it can generate more efficient code. BASCOM is a faster and smaller program, mainly because the folks at Microsoft chose to have it do everything in one pass. It therefore tends to create less efficient code.

BASCOM optimizes code, but only to a lesser degree. After it has generated the opcodes for a single source line, it checks back through that line to remove superfluous calculations. Among other things, it also tries to hold temporary values in registers, so as to avoid the more time-consuming storage and retrieval to RAM.

To get the most optimization, you should pack a lot of statements on one line.

```
100  Q = A(X,Y) :R = A(X,Y) + 1
```

will generate more efficient code than

```
100  Q = A(X,Y)
110  R = A(X,Y) + 1
```

simply because the address of A(X,Y) will be computed twice in the second example.

If you are willing to give up the advantage of debugging with the interpreter, you can write code that is highly optimized by using the /N compiler directive and placing line numbers only where they are needed as labels. This technique allows large blocks of code to be optimized by the compiler.

This gives you the added advantage of producing very readable source code. In my programming I have developed a line numbering convention that has proven very useful. Listing 1, which I'll explain in a moment, uses this convention. Notice that each line number label is on a line by itself followed immediately by a colon. This allows me to find that line number easily by using my text editor's global search capability (the search for 1000: will never stop at GOTO 1000).

Use PUT Not PRINT

One of the slowest operations of the PC is the PRINT command. When your BASIC program does a lot of printing to the screen, it is likely that compilation will not speed it up much. Word processing programs written in BASIC will be far too slow to be useful unless the author has coded a more efficient print routine in assembly language, but it is possible to print a string of characters in text mode at ten times the speed of even Compiled BASIC.

```
     '** compiled BASIC routine to time PRINT vs. PUT
     '** for 5-digit numbers
     '** Dan Rollins  3/12/83

defint a-z
dim c0(8),c1(8),c2(8),c3(8),c4(8),c5(8),c6(8),c7(8),c8(8),c9(8)

screen 1,0   'mid resolution graphics

     '** time an empty loop
10:
     print :print "timing the empty loop"
     t$=time$ :t1 = 60*val(mid$(t$,4,2))+val(right$(t$,2))
     '------
     for j=0 to 10000 :next
     '------
     t$=time$ :t2 = 60*val(mid$(t$,4,2))+val(right$(t$,2))
     empty.loop = t2-t1

     '** time the PRINT display
20:
     print :print "timing the PRINT function"
     t$=time$ :t1 = 60*val(mid$(t$,4,2))+val(right$(t$,2))
     '------
     for j=0 to 10000
          locate 1,1
          a$=str$(j) :a$=right$(a$,len(a$)-1)
          print right$("0000"+a$,5)          'add the leading zeros
     next
     '------
     t$=time$ :t2 = 60*val(mid$(t$,4,2))+val(right$(t$,2))
     prtime=t2-t1-empty.loop
     locate 5,1: print "using PRINT: ";prtime

     '** test the PUT display
30:
     print :print "timing the PUT function"
     gosub 1000    'define the digits
     t$=time$ :t1 = 60*val(mid$(t$,4,2))+val(right$(t$,2))
     '------
     for j=0 to 10000
          cx=0 :cy=0 :num=j
          gosub 2000          'display the number
     next
     '------
```

Graphics mode character printing is even slower than text mode printing, but coding a graphics print routine is more difficult and results in less time savings. In my graphics game I was updating the player's score (and the high score) at the end of every game cycle. This was slowing the game down to a crawl.

The first thing I did was skip the print when there had been no change in the score between cycles (an obvious step in retrospect). Later, I discovered a method of displaying the score without using PRINT at all. Listing 1 illustrates the method.

ASCII characters printed while in graphics mode are simply a collection of graphical dots arranged in specific shapes. Another way to display these shapes is to define a table of shape strings and use the DRAW command. A faster method is to use the graphics PUT command. The program in Listing 1 does a timing test of the normal printing of a 5-digit score compared against using a subroutine to display the same 5 digits by using the PUT command. Note that the program requires a color/graphics adapter and a suitable monitor.

The statements in Line 10 time an empty loop. The execution speed of the empty loop is saved and subtracted from the results of the following tests so that a valid percentage can be determined. Line 20 prints all five digits of scores ranging from 00000 to 10000 and displays the time it took.

Line 30 defines each of the 10 digits and GETS them each into an array. Then line 40 calls the subroutine to

```
      t$=time$ :t2 = 60*val(mid$(t$,4,2))+val(right$(t$,2))
      putime=t2-t1-empty.loop
      locate 9,1 :print "using PUT:   ";putime

      print :print"PUT is";100-int((100*putime)/prtime);"% faster"

 while inkey$="" :wend    '** examine the results
 end

       '$page
       '** subroutine saves the digits in PUT arrays
       '**
  1000:
       locate 1,1 :print"0" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c0
       locate 1,1 :print"1" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c1
       locate 1,1 :print"2" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c2
       locate 1,1 :print"3" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c3
       locate 1,1 :print"4" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c4
       locate 1,1 :print"5" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c5
       locate 1,1 :print"6" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c6
       locate 1,1 :print"7" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c7
       locate 1,1 :print"8" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c8
       locate 1,1 :print"9" :get (0,0)-(6,6),c9
  return

       '** subroutine displays a 5-digit number NUM, at CX, CY

  2000:
       n=num\10000            :gosub 3000 :tn=num-n*10000
       n=tn\1000   :cx=cx+8   :gosub 3000 :tn=tn-n*1000
       n=tn\100    :cx=cx+8   :gosub 3000 :tn=tn-n*100
       n=tn\10     :cx=cx+8   :gosub 3000 :tn=tn-n*10
       n=tn        :cx=cx+8

  3000:
       if n=0 then put (cx,cy), c0, pset :return
       if n=1 then put (cx,cy), c1, pset :return
       if n=2 then put (cx,cy), c2, pset :return
       if n=3 then put (cx,cy), c3, pset :return
       if n=4 then put (cx,cy), c4, pset :return
       if n=5 then put (cx,cy), c5, pset :return
       if n=6 then put (cx,cy), c6, pset :return
       if n=7 then put (cx,cy), c7, pset :return
       if n=8 then put (cx,cy), c8, pset :return
       put (cx,cy), c9, pset :return
```

Listing 1

display each of the 10,001 values and displays the required time.

The subroutine at 2000: displays all five digits of any number less than 32,767 starting at the pixel coordinate specified by *CX* and *CY*.

The timed results prove that using PUT to display these digits in medium-resolution graphics is 37 percent faster than PRINTing the same characters. Another advantage is that the digits can be displayed at any part of the screen, while printing is limited to 998 locations (you can't PRINT to location 24,40 or 25,40 without causing the screen to scroll). Incidentally, the series of IF...THEN commands in Line 3000: turned out to be slightly faster than a corresponding ON...GOTO sequence.

Optimizing Program Size

So far, my suggestions have been centered around optimizing the speed of a Compiled BASIC program. There may come a time when your code will become too large to fit in a 64K machine. This problem can be very difficult to solve. If you are compiling with the /O directive, there is a minimum code overhead of about 18K, and there is nothing you can do about it until IBM changes its licensing policy. Therefore, you must look to your program to find ways to get the job done in fewer bytes.

Use subroutines as much as possible for any code that is repeated. This may mean that you will need to generalize some procedures to use variables instead of constants so that they don't rely on specific values.

If your program contains a lot of DATA lines defining numeric values, you are using a lot of extra space. Because the compiler cannot be sure where the values will eventually be stored (or even assume that the values are numeric), it must store the entire DATA line as written in the source code. The lines

```
READ X%
DATA -12345
```

will require 6 bytes of static storage and 2 bytes for the variable X%. When you are reading an entire array of integers from DATA lines, you waste as much as 6 bytes per element.

One alternative is to read the array from a sequential disk file. A faster method is to write a short program to read in the array, and then BSAVE the values, starting at element 0 with a length of 2 bytes per element:

```
10   DIM A%(999)
20   FOR J = 0 TO 999 :READ A%(J) :NEXT
30   BSAVE "array.dat", VARPTR(A%(0)), 2000
```

The VARPTR function returns the starting address of the array. There are 1000 2-byte elements, so the length of the array is 2000 bytes. The applications program that uses the array can now avoid the lengthy READ and store process by directly BLOADing the values starting at the address of the 0th element:

```
DEFINT A-Z :DIM MY.ARRAY(999)
BLOAD "array.dat", VARPTR(MY.ARRAY(0))
```

If possible, avoid using the more exotic BASIC commands. Using DRAW, for example, will add almost 900 bytes to your program. The RND function will superficially cost about 300 bytes. By coding my own assembly routine to return a random number between two values, I was able to save 200 bytes, plus all the time required for the floating-point multiplications needed with BASIC's RND function.

This illustrates perhaps your biggest resource in code compression—writing custom routines with the assembler to avoid the bulky, generalized BASIC commands. If your BASIC program is written in clear-cut modules, you should be able to rewrite entire subroutines in assembly language.

The CALL command allows you to pass as many as 60 variables to a machine language subroutine. For example,

```
MIN = 0 :MAX = 20
CALL MY_RND(RND.NUM, MAX, MIN)
```

will pass three addresses to the random number generator I wrote. It does this by PUSHing the addresses of the variables onto the stack one at a time. You can shorten this process by placing the values in an array and passing only one address—that of the array's 0th element:

```
RND.NUM(1)=0 :RND.NUM(2)=20
CALL MY_RND(RND.NUM(0))      'or CALL MY_RND(RND.NUM)
```

The assembly language routine must assume that the address it receives points to 6 bytes of data and that the first 2 are for the return value, the next 2 are the minimum, and the last 2 are the maximum value. This saves time and code in both the compiled program and your own routine.

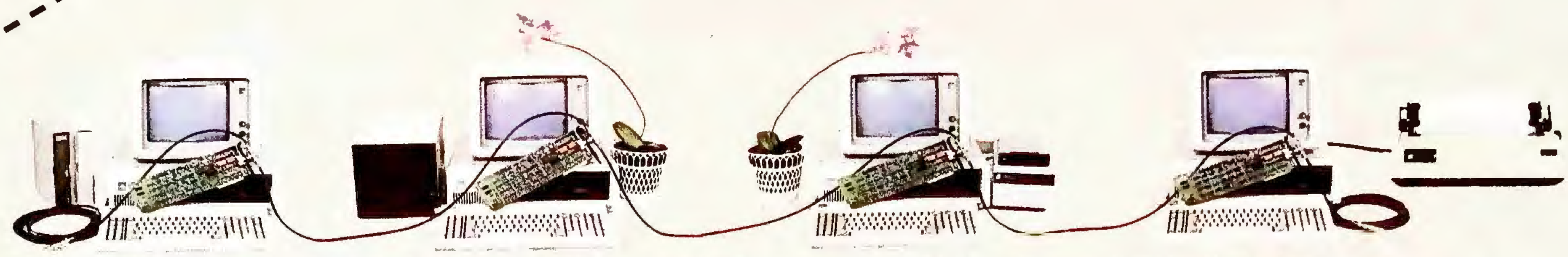
The IBM BASIC Compiler has limitations, but it is a logical choice over writing applications in assembly language. By studying the code that the compiler generates and taking advantage of its optimization techniques, it is possible to make faster running, more efficient programs. By doing some mental and programmatic preprocessing and using some ingenuity, you can squeeze the most value from this programming tool.

Dan Rollins is a freelance writer and programmer who has published articles in numerous magazines. He has extensive experience with the BASIC Compiler and is currently working for Adventure International.

Basic Compiler
IBM
P.O. Box 1328
Boca Raton, FL 33432
List Price: $300
Requirements: 64K, one disk drive

IMMEDIATE AVAILABILITY

ORCHID TECHNOLOGY



INNOVATORS IN LOCAL AREA NETWORK... FOR THE IBM PC

ORCHID TECHNOLOGY ANNOUNCES PCnet T.M. — the only Local Area Network designed specifically for the IBM PC and its MS-DOS operating system. PCnet provides low system cost, high performance, and a transparent MS-DOS interface that is powerful yet easy to use.

HARDWARE FEATURES

SINGLE SLOT PCnet adapter connects directly to the network cable.

STANDARD 75 ohm cable used (RG 59 B/U or equiv.).

TRULY DISTRIBUTED system using CSMA/CD; no central controller, or point to point wiring.

LENGTH of cable up to 7000 feet (over 2 km).

HIGH SPEED operation with DMA transfers and approximately 1 Mbps transmission speed.

LOW COST $695 per PCnet Adapter, (OEM discounts available).

HARD DISK COMPATIBILITY

The disk sharing interface is designed for compatibility with the following disks:

IBM XT
SANTA CLARA SYSTEMS
TALLGRASS
TECMAR
MICROCODE
QCS
DATAMAC
DAVONG
and many more

SOFTWARE FEATURES

DISK SHARING allows PCs to share hard disks installed in other PCs. Shared drives appear to be locally attached (e.g., as C:, D:, etc.) and file transfers between PCs are as simple as MS-DOS copy commands. Complete read/write protection by user and drive is provided. PCs can execute programs directly from shared drives. Orchid file server consists of a PC which is attached to a hard disk. The file server is not a dedicated PC (i.e. the server PC can still run its own programs in the foreground while serving disk requests from other PCs on the network in the background). PCnet supports multiple file servers as well as local or private hard disk at each individual PC.

FILE LOCKING system function calls enable single user applications to be easily converted to multi-user.

PC SHARING enables one PC to execute commands on another. This allows multi-tasking for printer, communication line, etc., sharing, and background execution of compilers and text formatters.

PRINT SHARING allows PCs to share printers installed in other PCs.

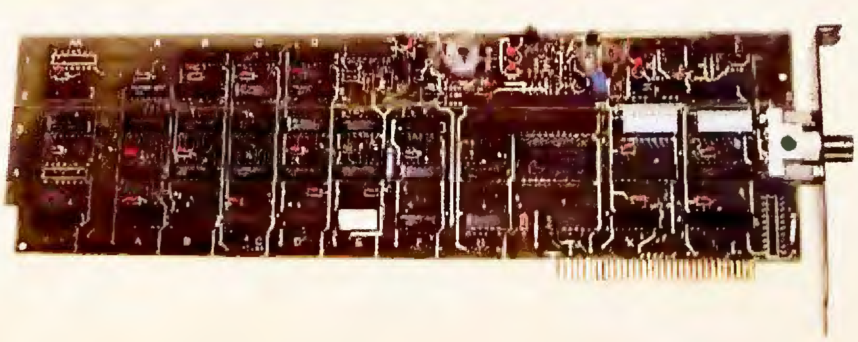
COMPUTER COMPATIBILITY

PCnet has been successfully tested on the following computers:

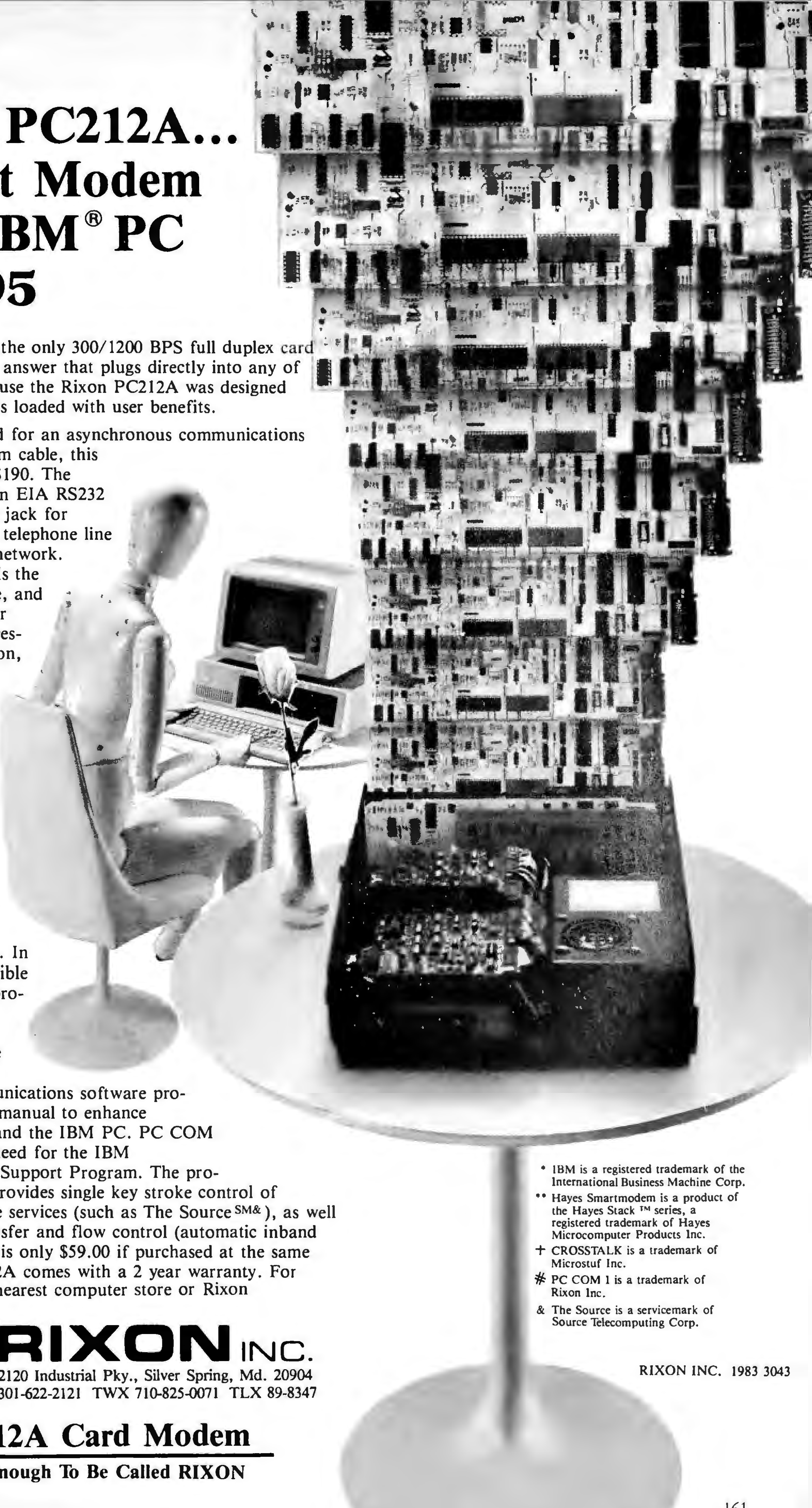
IBM PC
COMPAQ COMPUTER
COLBY COMPUTER
COLUMBIA DATA PRODUCTS

ORCHID TECHNOLOGY

487 Sinclair Frontage Road,
Milpitas, California 95035 • (408) 942-8660



The Rixon PC212A... The Perfect Modem For Your IBM® PC ...Only $495



The Rixon® PC212A offers you the only 300/1200 BPS full duplex card modem with auto dial and auto answer that plugs directly into any of the IBM PC® * card slots. Because the Rixon PC212A was designed specifically for the IBM PC, it is loaded with user benefits.

The PC212A eliminates the need for an asynchronous communications adapter card and external modem cable, this alone saves you approximately $190. The PC212A provides an extra 25 pin EIA RS232 interface connector, a telephone jack for alternate voice operation, and a telephone line jack for connection to the dial network. Without question, the PC212A is the most user friendly, most reliable, and best performing modem for your IBM PC. An internal microprocessor allows total control, operation, and optioning of the PC212A from the keyboard. A user friendly HELP list of all interactive commands is stored in modem memory for instant screen display. Just a few of the internal features are auto/manual dialing from the keyboard, auto dial the next number if the first number is busy and instant redial once or until answered. In the event of power disruption a battery back-up protects all memory in the PC212A. In addition, the PC212A is compatible with all of the communication programs written for the Hayes Smartmodem™** such as CROSSTALK.™+ Also available for use with the PC212A is the Rixon PC COM I,™ ※ a communications software program (Diskette) and instruction manual to enhance the capabilities of the PC212A and the IBM PC. PC COM I operates with or replaces the need for the IBM Asynchronous Communications Support Program. The program is very user friendly and provides single key stroke control of auto log on to multiple database services (such as The Source SM&), as well as log to printer, log to file transfer and flow control (automatic inband or manual control). PC COM I is only $59.00 if purchased at the same time as the PC212A. The PC212A comes with a 2 year warranty. For more information contact your nearest computer store or Rixon direct at 800-368-2773 and ask for Jon Wilson at Ext. 472.

RIXON INC.
2120 Industrial Pky., Silver Spring, Md. 20904
301-622-2121 TWX 710-825-0071 TLX 89-8347

* IBM is a registered trademark of the International Business Machine Corp.
** Hayes Smartmodem is a product of the Hayes Stack ™ series, a registered trademark of Hayes Microcomputer Products Inc.
+ CROSSTALK is a trademark of Microstuf Inc.
※ PC COM I is a trademark of Rixon Inc.
& The Source is a servicemark of Source Telecomputing Corp.

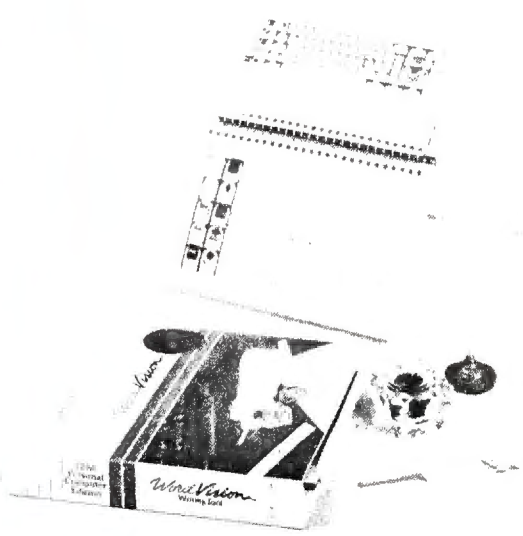
RIXON INC. 1983 3043

The Rixon PC212A Card Modem

Another Modem Good Enough To Be Called RIXON

WHY PIONEER BUYE
OUR NEW $49.9

by JIM EDLIN, PRESIDENT BRUCE



Pioneer customers for our new Wordvision™ writing tool program for IBM personal computers are telling us they love it. Here's a sampling of what they say:

"Three days ago your PIONEER WORDVISION came and it was like stepping from fog into sunshine."
MINISTER/PHOTOGRAPHER
MODESTO, CA

"I recently acquired [bleep] and I have had difficulty in mastering its multitude of commands. WORDVISION appears to supply all of the features that I would normally use, is much easier to learn to use, and costs 1/10 the price."
ENGINEER
DeKALB, IL

"I coordinate the acquisition of small computers for my company. I've been looking for a word processor that can run on the IBM PC yet be easy to learn. You may well have it! . . . WORDVISION is remarkably easy to use (especially after spending hours with [bleep] and all its infernal control keys). Your user friendliness and screen presentation does not have an equal in any other word processing software . . . [Bleep], [bleep], and [bleep] watch out—the new kid on the block is likely to take over."
SENIOR SYSTEMS ANALYST
ROCHESTER, MN

"My daughter is 14. She does much of her homework on the IBM now that WORDVISION is available. The simplicity of use is there but so is the depth needed to make the system valuable."
SALES REPRESENTATIVE
GARDEN GROVE, CA

"Once having discovered its many features and conveniences I doubt seriously that anyone would not make it their first choice of a word processor."
RETIRED BANK VICE PRESIDENT
SHREVEPORT, LA

"I LOVE WORDVISION (And I have both [bleep] and [bleep].)"
WRITER
BERKELEY, CA

"Overall, I am impressed with the quality of the package. Its current features are exceptional at this price and the way they are implemented is exceptional at any price . . . WORDVISION should surpass all competition."
SCHOOL SYSTEM ADMINISTRATOR
CINCINNATI, OHIO

"I really like the screen layouts. They are neat, informative and easy to read. The program is also very fast, and that is appreciated. The innovations . . . represent a real improvement over what I've seen in other programs."
COMPUTER CONSULTANT
CANOGA PARK CA

"The ease and logic of your program is first rate."
CONSULTANT
SAGAMORE HILLS, OH

"Perhaps the greatest feature of WORDVISION is the lack of control commands. Everything is done with excellent screen prompts and no evidence of the complexity of word processing left to diminish the enjoyment of seeing words appear before your very eyes."
IBM EMPLOYEE
HOPEWELL JUNCTION, NY

What the press is saying:

"The outstanding example of . . . the excellent low-cost software I saw at Comdex."
STAN VLIT
COMPUTERS & ELECTRONICS

"Microcomputer software is in the midst of taking a major step forward. Three new products are responsible: VisiCorp's VisiON, Apple's Lisa, and Bruce & James' WORDVISION."
STEWART ALSOP
ISO WORLD

"I state unqualifiedly that it is the most value you'll ever get for $50.00, and maybe for five times that amount as well!"
THOMAS V. BONOMA
MICROCOMPUTING

LOVE WORDVISION, WRITING TOOL.

MES, PROGRAM PUBLISHERS INC.

"We love it after only four days."

PHYSICIAN AND ADMINISTRATOR
TEMPE, AZ

"I am *very* impressed. You have the potential to scoop the word processing market. (P.S. Within 18 months, my company will purchase up to 500 PCs for word processing.)"

MANAGER
SANDY, UT

"WORDVISION is a SUPER program. In fact, $49.95 may not be the right price. I think it's worth more."

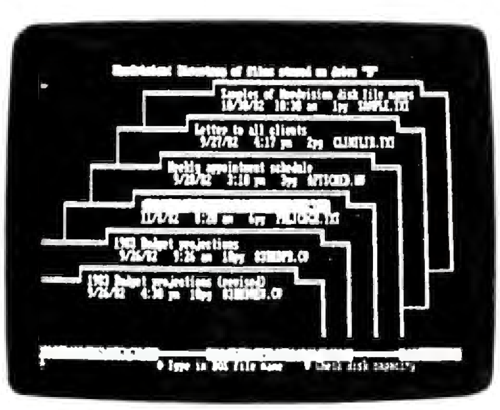
ACCOUNTANT
MONTICELLO, IL

"All in all this program is a great value, and I thank you very much for selling it at such a low price."

REAL ESTATE MANAGER
ROCHESTER, NY

"I was literally using it effectively after about 15 minutes . . . It is clear that it will be my standard PC word processor and that I will recommend it to my friends and colleagues."

COMPUTER CONSULTANT
PACIFIC PALISADES, CA



"Outstanding, versatile product."

ACTUARY
PASADENA, CA

"I like it very much since its simple, one-keystroke functions are so much better than the [bleep] program that I have used for about 8 months."

PHYSICIST
CHATSWORTH, CA

"With your approach to the market it should sell, sell, sell."

WRITER/TRANSLATOR/EDITOR
MADISON, WI

"I started being comfortable with the program after about an hour of 'hands on' and haven't had the manual back out since the 3rd or 4th hour. Frankly, my intention in ordering WORDVISION was . . . to tide me over until I could decide what I *really* needed. But . . . I'm going to have a hard time going elsewhere."

SECURITY MANAGER
FAIRPORT, NY

"I saw a demonstration of WORDVISION and would like to obtain a copy. I was told a copy costs $50, which I find hard to believe considering the capabilities of the program."

SYSTEMS SPECIALIST
HONOLULU, HI

"This is the first word processing program I have ever used. It was easy to learn to use, and the color made it seem like a game. I wake up thinking about what I can do with my WORDVISION rather than how to get through Zork III."

STUDENT/HOUSEWIFE/VOLUNTEER
BELLEVUE, WA

About WORDVISION and our Pioneers:

WORDVISION for the IBM Personal Computer is the first in a line of "people-literate" low-priced programs from Bruce & James. Our Pioneer Corps is a group of more than 900 customers who bought advance copies of WORDVISION under a special offer: Any Pioneer who first alerts us to a problem we fix, or makes a suggestion we use, gets a full refund.

We've received 209 replies from Pioneers as of this writing, most of them thoughtful and thorough, many running to a half-dozen pages or more. The comments here are drawn from them. (The writers' names, addresses and complete comments are on file at our offices.)

There are many good reasons for WORDVISION's low suggested retail price, but compromise is not one of them. Visit your bookstore or program retailer soon to see what our Pioneer's liked. And what they suggested. (If you can't find a copy in your area, call 614/766-0110 for the name of your nearest dealer or to order direct by credit card.)

BRUCE & JAMES

4500 Tuller Road
Dublin, Ohio 43017

Distributed nationally by
Simon & Schuster

now

SOLOMON

Accounting Software is available for your IBM Personal Computer®

Solomon offers the most sophisticated accounting software system for microcomputers.

Easily set up, the remarkable Solomon software package operates from a single database managed by the MDBS™ database management system utilizing the industry standard operating system—CP/M.™

Solomon is faster, more powerful, more flexible, easier to install and easier to use than other systems.

The Solomon I System handles general ledger, payroll, accounts payable and receivable, invoicing, fixed assets, cash receipts and disbursements and address list maintenance.

The Solomon II System includes all these functions plus a job management package that can be used by engineers, architects, consultants, contractors and other service businesses.

Now you can have instant information for wise business decisions—with Solomon Series Software by TLB—from Computech.

Hardware requirements:
- 64K RAM
- Baby Blue™ CPU Card
- 132 Column Printer
- Hard Disk Recommended

IBM Personal Computer is a registered trademark of IBM.
MDBS is a registered trademark of Micro Data Base Systems, Inc.
CP/M is a registered trademark of Digital Research.
Baby Blue is a registered trademark of Xedex.

For information write or call (215) S·O·L·O·M·O·N or (215) 644-3344.

COMPUTECH
COMPUTECH GROUP INCORPORATED
Main Line Industrial Park
Lee Boulevard
Frazer, PA 19355

Ask for Solomon's Tutorial Package. Master Solomon in just hours.

Hard Times

Some useful tips and techniques for using multiple- megabyte storage devices to manage files and programs

Lawrence J. Magid

I remember a 1950s TV show called "The Millionaire." Each week an anonymous donor would bestow $1 million on an ordinary citizen. For the next 30 minutes viewers from coast to coast would watch that person learn to cope with the sudden windfall. The typical recipient's first response was to think that everything would be wonderful. By the first station break, however, each one discovered that wealth creates almost as many problems as it solves.

That's similar to how I felt when my 27-megabyte MicroDisk hard disk arrived. I was a millionaire 27 times over. I loved the convenience, speed, and reliability of the hard disk but soon realized that I had to change my operating procedures to accommodate my newfound profusion of megabytes.

A hard disk has many advantages. Unlike floppies, hard disks come with no warnings about exposing them to fingers, magnets, or dog bites. Neatly tucked away in a sealed cabinet, a hard disk is immune to most hazards. Not only are you spared the "floppy shuffle" every time you want to find a program or data file, but most hard disks read and write at several times the speed of their floppy counterparts. I would no sooner give up my hard disk than a millionaire would part with his or her riches. Once you've experienced the convenience of a hard disk, you'll never want to go back to floppies.

Divide and Conquer

Before I could begin to use those millions of bytes of storage, I had to format the hard disk's surface. Because PC-DOS 1.10 does not include a way to utilize a hard disk, I had to use special software supplied with the hard disk.

PC-DOS 2.00 does support hard disks. As this article goes to press, all the major hard disk manufacturers are busily writing device driver software so that their products can be used with DOS 2.00. They are all promising that the software will be available before the end of 1983. Except where noted, the procedures and helpful hints offered in this article are to be used with DOS 1.10. If your disk manufacturer is slow in delivering the software, these procedures will surely save you time and energy in the interim.

Software supplied with a hard disk should provide several formatting options and utility programs for integrating the hard disk into your computer system. Most hard disks can be divided into several volumes, which are sections of the disk treated by DOS 1.10 as if they were separate—though much larger—floppy disks. Although I use 4 volumes only, my hard disk can be divided into up to 33 volumes that are labeled and addressed just like floppies.

I divided my disk into volumes C, D, E, and F. My word processing programs and files are stored on drive D, and my spreadsheet, data base, and communications programs are on drive E. Drive F is used for some data files, and I use Drive C to back up important data and program files. I did not use A and B as volumes of the hard disk; instead, I retained drive A for my one floppy drive and reserved drive B for an electronic simulated drive (also called a RAM disk).

The way you organize volumes is arbitrary. The organization should be functional, meaning you should know what programs and data reside on what volumes. The important idea is to establish procedures and stick to them.

With DOS 2.00, you don't have to divide the hard disk into separate volumes or logical drives when you format it. DOS 2.00 allows a single drive to be divided into many directory areas. Each new directory area contains files that are logically related to one another. ("The Path to UNIX" in *PC World*, Vol. 1, No. 3, includes a discussion of DOS 2.00's directory and hard disk facilities.)

Backup

By having all data on one piece of media—spinning at 3600 rpm—you run an obvious risk. If one of your floppies quits, damage is confined to that particular disk. If your one and only hard disk fails, or if you erase some vital data accidentally, you may be in serious trouble. If you need proof, type 'ERASE *.*' and see how quickly the equivalent of 16,000 typed pages of information can be destroyed.

> Most hard disks read and write at several times the speed of their floppy counterparts.

Of course, erasing the disk's entire contents is not recommended, even as an experiment, but that rather absurd suggestion does serve to emphasize one essential principle of computer use: No matter what storage media you use, make backups. Even the most reliable hard disks are subject to potential damage or theft. Failing to have a backup copy of important data and programs is about as smart as driving without auto insurance.

There are elaborate and simple ways to back up files. Some hard disk systems use videotape machines (often called mirrors) as a means of backing up the hard disk. Others use exotic copy programs that allow you to transfer files periodically from the hard disk to floppy disks, based on the time and date of file creation.

The method I use is simple. Every time I create or update a file, I copy it to the floppy disk in drive A. When that floppy is full, I replace it with another. This system is not fancy but it works.

As an additional precaution, I back up important data files on another volume of the hard disk. This doesn't protect the data against total disk failure, but it does guard against human error such as accidental erasure.

I also periodically back up the entire disk to floppies using *JET*, a program from Tall Trees Systems that transfers large blocks of data at a high rate of speed. Before using *JET* I had a primitive but effective method—I copied files alphabetically. I would place a formatted floppy in drive A and type 'COPY A*.*', which would transfer all files beginning with A to that floppy. I would then run CHKDSK (a utility on the PC-DOS disk) to see how much room was left; if enough space was available, I'd type 'COPY B*.*'. This method was slow and cumbersome, but after about 30 minutes, I had an alphabetical backup of 500 files. Storing the files alphabetically on floppies also makes locating individual backup copies easy.

Again, DOS 2.00 makes using a hard disk easier. The new version of DOS includes a backup program that allows you to selectively copy only those files that have been altered since the last backup or to copy all files created since a certain date.

The Name Game

After the need for backing up, the next major concern for hard disk users is figuring out what to call a particular file. With a floppy the directory (DIR) can always be displayed, giving a complete catalog of all files on the disk. The list is usually short enough so that files can be located easily. The directory of a hard disk can be displayed as well, but the list could be almost as long as a small town's phone book.

You may think that you'll remember the name of a precious file, but several months from now it may be a blur in your memory—and one of hundreds of names on your hard disk. And the file names are your only clues—there's no way to affix labels to the volumes of a sealed hard disk. That's why you should develop procedures to name, sort, and categorize files.

One simple and useful procedure is to make sure files are named in a logical, consistent manner. One method of naming files is to divide them into several categories, assign an extension to each type of file, and label them accordingly. I write a great deal and create enough word processing files to confuse an FBI cryptographer. My organizational scheme may or may not work for you, but it saves me from an eternal search.

I have divided my writings into several categories and labeled them as follows: proposed projects are labeled '.PRO', works in progress are coded '.DRA' (for draft), articles submitted for publication, '.PUB', and contracts and agreements '.CON'. When I need to locate a particular published article, '*.PUB', calls up a manageable list.

Some programs automatically produce extensions to file names. *SuperCalc* adds '.CAL' to all its files, and *dBASE II* adds '.DBF' to its data files and '.PRG' to its program files. Some word processing programs add '.TXT' to the end of file names. These automatically imposed extensions are a useful feature. I can obtain a quick review of my *SuperCalc* files, for example, by typing '*.CAL'.

If you have many such files, you may wind up with an unwieldy directory. In that case you should categorize by prefix. Data files that apply to your business, for example, can start with 'BUS'. Your business budget for 1983 could be labeled 'BUSBUD83.CAL' to distinguish it from your home budget ('HOMBUD83.CAL'). If you want a complete list of your business data files, you can get them by typing 'DIR BUS*.*'. Whatever scheme you choose, you can create logical file names based on your own particular needs.

Reaching the Limit

I may seem like a millionaire feigning poverty, but I do worry about running out of disk space. Depending on the capacity of a hard disk, the problem could be either lack of storage space or too many file names for the directory space of a volume on the disk. Each hard disk operating system sets a limit on the number of files that can be stored on a volume. One system I evaluated could handle 512 files on a single volume, while another had a limit of 208 files. Even with 512 files I had to develop a strategy to avoid reaching the limit.

> Once you've experienced the convenience of a hard disk, you'll never want to go back to floppies.

Before I developed this system of file organization, my hard disk was as cluttered as the trunk of my car, but a spring cleaning saved the day. I deleted unneeded files and rearranged needed ones among the disk's several volumes. I eliminated scores of files by combining all my correspondence files into one large archive file.

Like most business people, I write many letters. When I was using floppies, I had a separate file for each letter. If I wrote a letter to Mr. Collins, I'd call the file 'COLLINS', and if I wrote a second letter to the same person, I'd call it 'COLLINS2'. These files would be stored on a disk labeled Correspondence. When that disk was full I'd start another labeled Correspondence 2.

That system was fine for floppies but not for a hard disk. I developed two methods for filing correspondence on the hard disk; they are mutually exclusive, but both work.

At first I created an extension for each file, '.COR'. Looking for a correspondence file, all I had to do was type 'DIR *.COR', and my directory, though still long, was reduced to correspondence files only. An even better method is combining all your letters into one big file.

Concatenating Files

Concatenation is a seldom-used DOS command that allows you to combine files. Instead of having hundreds of small '.COR' files, I have one large file, 'LETTER.ARC' (the '.ARC' extension stands for archives).

For example, every time I write a letter, I name the file 'LETTER'. After printing it, I insert the letter file at the top of the 'LETTER.ARC' file. If the commands were typed in one at a time, the procedure would be tricky, but it is done with a batch file, 'ARCH.BAT', that is invoked by typing 'ARCH'. Once the batch file is created, it's a cinch to add a letter file to 'LETTER.ARC'.

On my system 'LETTER' is always on disk volume B (my electronic disk) and 'LETTER.ARC' on volume D. You can set yours up any way you want, as long as the batch file accurately reflects your arrangement.

My 'ARCH.BAT' file contains the following commands. The numbers in brackets are not part of the file but are for your reference as you read the explanation.

```
[1] COPY LETTER.ARC,LETTER.TEM <ENTER>
[2] COPY LETTER+LETTER.TEM,LETTER.ARC
    <ENTER>
[3] DIR LETTER *.* <ENTER>
[4] PAUSE CTRL 2 to ABORT ANY KEY TO
    CONTINUE <ENTER>
[5] ERASE LETTER
```

The file is invoked by typing 'ARCH'. When this is done, the following takes place:

[1] The file 'LETTER.ARC' is copied to 'LETTER.TEM' (if 'LETTER.ARC' doesn't exist yet, this step will not get in the way).

[2] This step appends the information in 'LETTER.TEM' to the end of the information in 'LETTER', and then overwrites the old 'LETTER.ARC' with the newly combined file.

[3] You are given a directory of all files beginning with 'LETTER'.

[4] The PAUSE command allows you to look at your files to be certain that's what you want to do. You can abort the batch file by typing Ctrl-2. Pressing any other key will take you to step 5.

[5] The file 'LETTER' is erased since its contents have been appended to the new 'LETTER.ARC' file.

The file 'LETTER.TEM' has not been erased and provides a backup of all correspondence except the most recent letter.

To check your handiwork, use your word processing program to examine 'LETTER.ARC.' If this is the first time you've used this system, 'LETTER.ARC' should contain only the file called 'LETTER'. If you've used this scheme before, your most recent letter should be at the top of the file above all previous letters.

Once this giant letter archive has been created, finding a piece of correspondence is easy. You can use your word processing program's Search or Find feature to locate a particular name, date, or key word. When I want to find that letter to Mr. Collins, I just search for the word *Collins* and within seconds it appears—that's using the computer.

Finding Filenames

If you've divided your disk into several volumes, you're likely to search for a file without knowing what volume it is on. The slow way to find it is to go to each volume and display the directory. For example, 'DIR

And the Winner Is...

The reader response cards from the second issue have been tallied and the results of the random drawing are in. One box of ten Maxell disks goes to each of the following winners:

M. Garner, Bala Cynwyd, PA; B. Wiegan, Stroughton, WI; T. Masengarb, Grapevine, TX; L. Askeland, Loveland, CO; R. Holts, Ventura, CA; P. Rice, Athens, GA; R. Perreault, Warwick, RI; B. Komanetsky, St. Louis, MO; J. Ovear, San Francisco, CA; D. Albanese, Cuyahoga Falls, OH.

A new drawing is held each month, but you must submit a new entry for each drawing. We appreciate your comments, even if you write them in the margins. Next month's questionnaire will have new questions and room for you to write. One last note: please do not staple the form! A small piece of tape over the long edge of the card is best; other sealing methods just frustrate the staff. Thank you and good luck!

E:FLOPPY.PUB' checks to see if the file named 'FLOPPY.PUB' is on drive E. If it isn't, you have to type 'DIR F:FLOPPY.PUB' and so on until you find the file.

A more effective way to locate files is to create a batch file that searches the directory automatically for a requested file on each volume of the hard disk. I call this batch file 'DIRALL':

```
DIR B:%1
DIR C:%1
DIR D:%1
DIR E:%1
DIR F:%1
```

This batch file is essentially a utility that checks each volume for '%1'; the percent sign is a variable used in a batch file, which is replaced by whatever is typed after the batch file's name ('DIRALL'). If 'DIRALL FLOPPY.PUB' has been typed, the file looks for 'FLOPPY.PUB' on all the volumes. Once that file is located, the file's name, location, size, and the time and date of its most recent revision are displayed. If the file is not located on a particular volume, DOS reports 'File not found'.

Develop procedures to name, sort, and categorize files.

This batch file can also be used with the '*.' and '*.*' parameters. Typing 'DIRALL *.PUB' locates all files with the '.PUB' extension on all volumes. Typing 'DIRALL BUS*.*' locates all files beginning with 'BUS' on all volumes.

Batch Files That Find Programs

Batch files can also be used to locate programs on various volumes. You may use volume D as the main drive, for instance, but you also need to store programs on other volumes.

Rather than having to remember the location of each program, you can create a series of batch files. Let's say that *SuperCalc* is located on drive E. You can have a batch file on drive D, 'SC.BAT', that you use to run *SuperCalc*. This utility not only saves you from having to remember where *SuperCalc* is located, but also from having to type 'E:' every time you want to run the program.

'SC.BAT' looks like this:

```
E:
SC
D:
```

When implemented with the command 'SC', the utility switches the logged drive from D to E and runs *SuperCalc*. When you finish using *SuperCalc*, the utility switches back to drive D.

You can write similar batch files for all your programs. This is especially helpful for BASIC programs. My copy of *PC-Talk* resides on volume F, but 'TALK.BAT' on volume D performs the following:

```
F:
BASIC PC-TALK
D:
```

Erasing Safely

Typing 'ERASE' directly from the keyboard increases the possibility that massive amounts of data will be lost. Typing 'ERASE *.*' will destroy an entire volume of data, and typing 'ERASE*.COM' will destroy all COM programs and the system won't even ask if you really want to do that (as some programs will). To protect my files, I created a batch file, 'ERA.BAT'. If I want to erase a file, 'STEVE', I type 'ERA STEVE', and the batch file does the rest.

The numbers in brackets to the left of the commands do not appear in the file.

```
[1] DIR %1
[2] PAUSE ANY KEY TO ERASE %1, CTRL 2 to
    ABORT CTRL G
[3] ERASE %1
```

[1] 'DIR %1' does a directory of the file(s) to be erased. (The '%1' is a variable that is replaced by whatever word is entered after 'ERA'. If 'ERA STEVE' had been typed, '%1' would be replaced by 'STEVE'.)

[2] The 'PAUSE' statement offers a chance to reconsider the procedure. Pressing Ctrl-2 (DOS will then ask if you are sure you want to abort) allows you to cancel the ERASE command. 'CTRL G' causes the PC speaker to beep as a gentle reminder that an important decision has to be made.

[3] If the ERASE command is not canceled, the file(s) is erased.

The whole process takes about 1 second longer than a regular ERASE command, and it is well worth the wait.

Copying Files

Copying files from one disk volume to another can become easier and less risky. Rather than typing 'COPY FILENAME A:', type 'B A:FILENAME'. This invokes a batch file, 'B.BAT'. Not only does it simplify copying, but it prevents accidental copying of a file over another file with the same name.

'B.BAT' is as follows:

```
[1] DIR %1:%2 REM DESTINATION DRIVE
[2] DIR %2 REM SOURCE VOLUME
[3] PAUSE CTRL 2 TO ABORT. ANY KEY TO
    CONTINUE CTRL G
[4] COPY %2 %1:
```

[1] This step searches the directory for the file on the destination drive, checks to see if the file currently exists, and if so, when it was last backed up. The variable '%1' is used for the drive name and '%2' for the file name.

[2] Searches the directory for the file on the source volume to see when it was last updated.

[3] Offers a chance to abort the backup, if necessary. The 'CTRL G' causes the PC speaker to beep.

[4] Copies the file from the source volume to the destination disk or volume.

Automatic '.BAK' Deletion

Several programs, including *WordStar,* create automatic backup files on the same volume as the main file. The files usually end in the extension '.BAK'. While such backup files can be useful, they can clutter up the

> Even with 512 files I had to develop a strategy to avoid reaching the limit.

disk, wasting space and possibly causing you to reach file limit.

To avoid this problem I use a batch file that erases all '.BAK' files. This procedure saves time and avoids the catastrophe-by-typo syndrome. Once, when I meant to type 'ERASE *.BAK', I accidentally typed 'ERASE *.BAT', which resulted in the destruction of about 30 valuable batch files. Fortunately, I had the files backed up, so the lesson was relatively painless.

Like other batch files that do erasures, this one first checks the directory and displays the file names, and then offers an opportunity to back out of the procedure. This batch file is as follows:

```
DIR *.BAK
PAUSE CTRL 2 TO ABORT, ANY KEY TO
  CONTINUE CTRL G
ERASE *.BAK
```

The Right Programs

The issue of copy-protected software has been argued from many points of view, and the controversy is likely to continue. Regardless of your opinion on this issue, you should be aware that most copy-protected programs cannot be copied to a hard disk.

When you shop for software, don't ask if it's copy protected (they'll think you're a pirate); ask if it can be copied to a hard disk. If the software is copy protected, it probably can't be transferred. Most copy-protected programs (like *VisiCalc*) allow you to write data files to the hard disk, but you still have to fish out the program disk every time you want to run the program.

Some programs automatically produce extensions to file names.

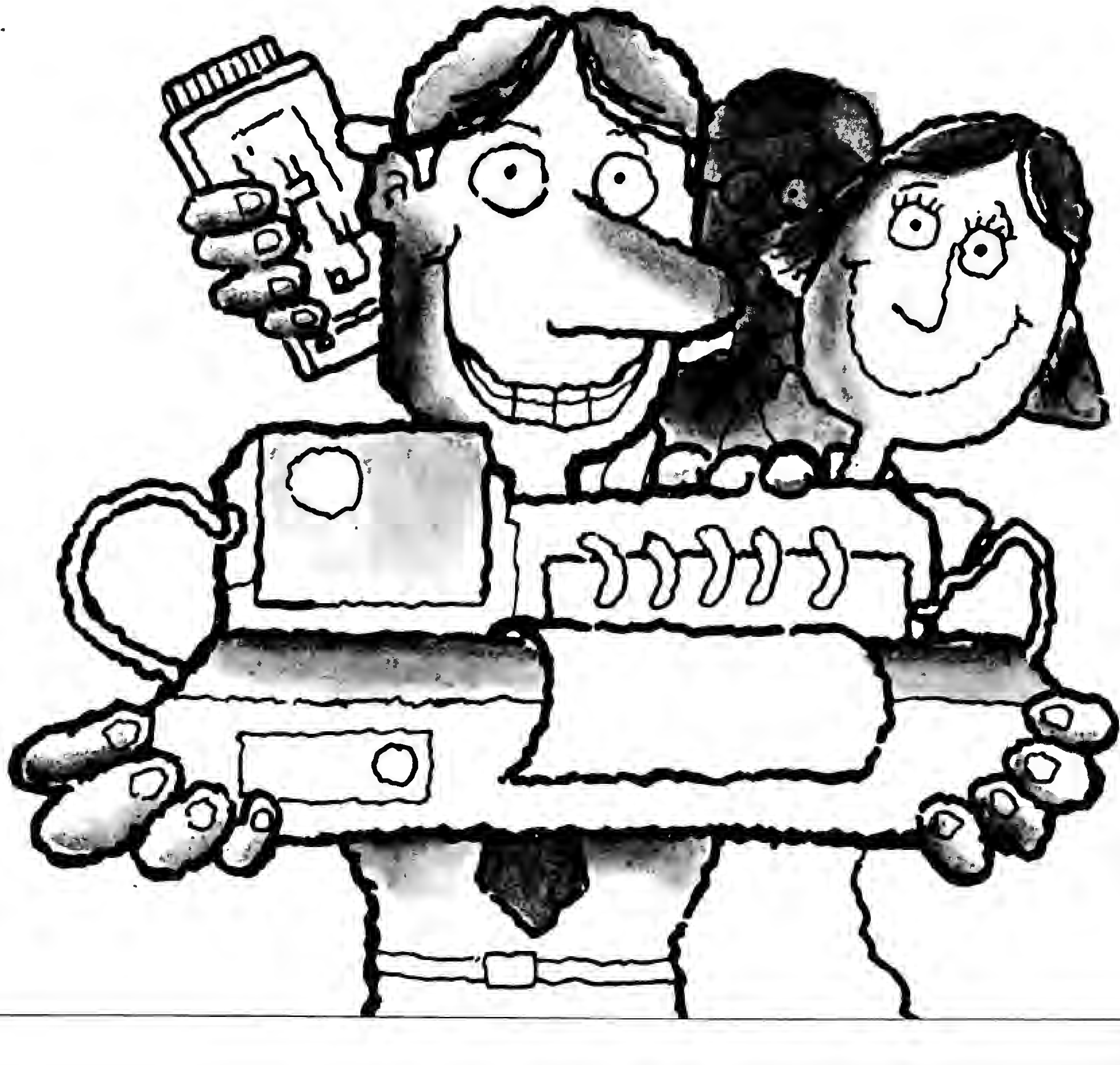
Though I haven't seen any examples, I'm told that some companies are developing antitheft techniques that allow the programs to be transferred to a hard disk without being copied in other forms. Until those programs are available, be sure to inquire about copy protection and the hard disk.

Relax

After all my precautionary procedures, you may wonder if installing a hard disk is worthwhile. It is. The benefits of a hard disk far outweigh the alternatives. Precautions are like door locks: although they don't always prevent catastrophes, they greatly minimize their likelihood. Take a few precautions and relax—you'll know that you've done all you can to protect valuable data. Like the lucky recipients on "The Millionaire," hard disks users must protect and learn to live with their newfound bounty.

MicroDisk
1422 Industrial Way
Gardnerville, NV 89410
702/782-8105

JET and JFORMAT
Tall Tree-Systems
1036 Los Altos Ave.
Los Altos, CA 94022
415/941-5500



Programming Sound in BASIC

You and your PC can make music together. This introduction takes you step-by-step from the creation of simple tones all the way to Bach minuets.

Lon Poole

The following excerpt is Chapter 14 of Using Your IBM Personal Computer *(Howard W. Sams & Co., Indianapolis), a comprehensive book that takes the user from turning on the power to advanced programming in BASIC. This guide to making music with the PC introduces the full range of sounds and tempos the computer can produce and provides listings for several melodies.*

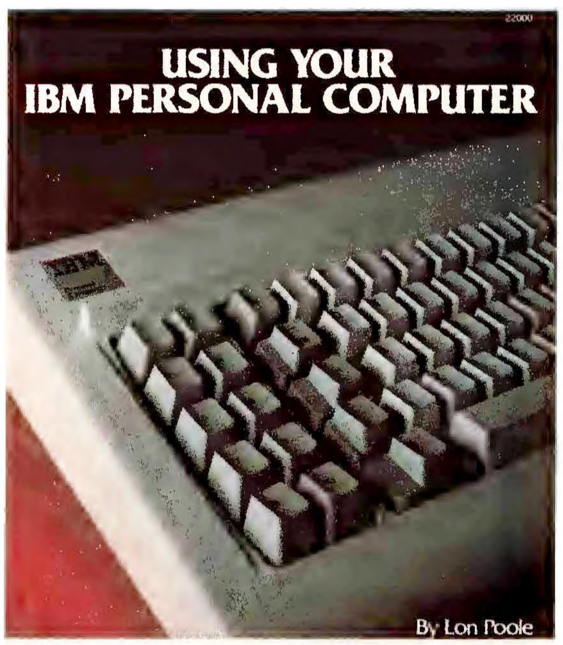
The PC can generate sounds and music through its built-in speaker using either of two BASIC statements, SOUND or PLAY. Both statements give you control over the frequency and duration of a tone, but neither statement can control loudness. Tones produced are always pure; there is no direct way to distort them for sound effects.

Generating Tones

The SOUND statement generates a tone of any frequency between 37 and 32767 hertz (cycles per second), lasting for any duration from a split second to a half hour. Here is an example:

```
SOUND 523.25, 18.2
```

The example above generates a tone that has a frequency of 523.25 hertz, which is the note middle C. Figure



14-1 illustrates the frequencies of the natural notes spanning two octaves below middle C and two octaves above it.

The second number in a SOUND statement determines the duration of the tone. Duration is measured in *clock ticks,* and there are 18.2 ticks per second. Table 14-1 compares selected clock tick values with typical music tempos and their equivalent number of beats per minute.

PC BASIC does not wait for a SOUND statement to finish before going on to the next statement. The following example demonstrates:

```
10  CLS:WIDTH 40
20  SOUND 440, 27.3
30  FOR K=1 TO 40
40  LOCATE RND(1)*23+1,RND(1)*39+1
50  PRINT CHR$(14);
60  NEXT K
70  LOCATE 24,1
```

After clearing the screen, the program above generates the note A below middle C for a second and a half. While it holds the note, PC BASIC executes the rest of the program, which displays musical note characters at random locations on the screen. In fact, the program finishes before the note stops.

PC BASIC will not overlap execution of two SOUND statements, however. If a second SOUND statement occurs before the end of a tone from a prior SOUND statment, the PC waits until the first tone finishes. For example, if the following line were added to the previous example, the note it generates (D above middle C) would not occur until after the earlier note lasted its 1½ seconds:

```
80  SOUND 587.33, 9.1
```

You can turn sound off at any time by executing a SOUND statement with a duration of zero, like this:

```
SOUND 1760,32767
Ok
SOUND 100,0
Ok
```

Tones above 25,000 hertz are inaudible; in fact most people cannot hear tones above 15,000 hertz. Therefore a SOUND statement that specifies a high frequency will generate periods of silence.

Sound Effects

You can use the SOUND statement to create some acceptable sound effects. Unfortunately, there are no rules or guidelines that apply; all you can do is experiment. Figure 14-2 lists some program lines that you can use as a starting point.

Music

While it is possible to play music using the SOUND statement, the requisite translation of notes to multi-digit numbers is awkward at best. In Advanced BASIC, you can use the PLAY statement instead. It has a special music language that makes it easy to program tunes. The music language consists of 19 subcommands, which are listed in Table 14-2. To play a tune, you make up a string value that contains the appropriate sequence of subcommands, as explained in the following paragraphs.

Naming Notes

There are two ways to specify notes in a PLAY statement subcommand string. You can name the note by letter, like this:

```
100  PLAY " C D E F G A B "
```

The example above plays a seven-note scale, starting with the C above middle C.

For sharp notes, suffix the name of the note with a # or + character. For flat notes, use the - character as a suffix. Sharps and flats that have no corresponding black key on a piano are not allowed, namely B-sharp, E-sharp, C-flat, and F-flat.

To change octaves, use the O subcommand. The PLAY command has seven octaves, three below middle C numbered 0 through 2, and four above it numbered 4 to 7. The following example plays all the notes, including half steps, in the octave starting with middle C:

```
110  PLAY " 03 C C# D D# E F F# G G# A
       A# B "
```

Altogether, there are 84 notes in the seven available octaves (Figure 14-3). Instead of designating them by octave and name, you can designate them by number, using the N subcommand. The following example generates the same scale as the last example:

```
PLAY " N37 N38 N39 N40 N41 N42 N43 N44
   N45 N46 N47 N48 "
```

Note Length

Notes in the examples so far have had the length of a quarter note. To change the length of the note, suffix it with a number, like this:

```
PLAY " 03 C1 C2 C4 C8 C16 C32 C64 "
```

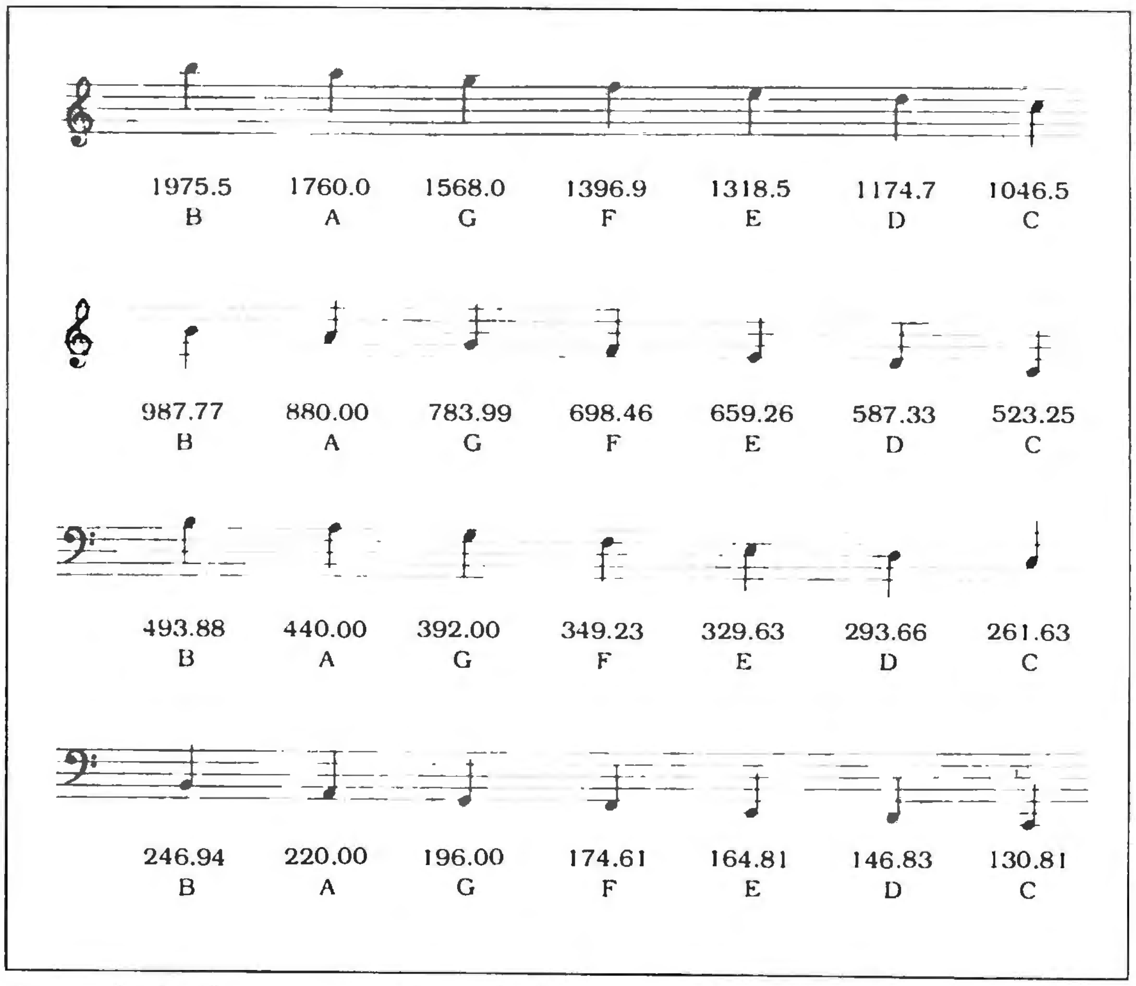


Figure 14-1: Frequencies of musical notes

Clock ticks	Tempo	Beats per minute
	Larghissimo	
27.30		40
	Largo	
18.20		60
	Larghetto Grave Lento	
16.55		66
	Adagio Adagietto	
14.37		76
	Andante Andantino	
10.11		108
	Moderato Allegretto	
9.10		120
	Allegro Vivace	
6.50		168
	Presto	
5.25		208
	Prestissimo	

Table 14-1: Musical Tempos

Hands On

The length of the note is equal to one divided by the number that follows the note. Thus a suffix of 1 designates a whole note, a 2 designates a half note, and so on. The example above plays seven middle C notes, the first one a whole note, the next a half note, then comes a quarter note, after that a sixteenth note, and the last two are thirty-second and sixty-fourth notes (Figure 14-4).

You can use the L subcommand to establish a note length that will be used by default. Just suffix it with a number as described in the preceding paragraph. The following example plays a descending scale of eighth notes:

PLAY " O2 L8 C B A G F E D "

To play a dotted note, suffix it with a period. You can use more than one period after a note; each period increases the note's length by 50 percent. Here is an example of a dotted half note and a dotted eighth note:

PLAY " C2. G8. "

Pauses (Rests)

The P subcommand establishes pauses (rests), with the length determined by a number the same as for the L subcommand (Figure 14-4). Here is an example:

PLAY " O3 C P1 C P2 C P4 C P8 C P16 C "

Tempo

The tempo of a musical composition (the rate of speed at which it is played) is indicated by notations like *allegro*, *andante*, and so forth, or by

```
10 REM '--Random noise----------------
20 SOUND RND(1)*300+440,RND(1)*RND(1)
30 GOTO 20

10 '--Bouncing-----------------------
20 FOR K=60 TO 1 STEP -2
30 SOUND 246.94-K/2,K/20
40 SOUND 32767,K/15
50 NEXT K

10 '--Falling------------------------
20 FOR K=2000 TO 550 STEP -10
30 SOUND K,K/4000
40 NEXT K

10 '--Siren--------------------------
20 FOR L=650 TO -650 STEP -4
30 SOUND 780-ABS(L),.3
40 L=L-2/650
50 NEXT L
60 GOTO 20

10 '--Hi-lo alarm--------------------
20 SOUND 987.7,5
30 SOUND 329.63,5
40 GOTO 20

10 '--Motor--------------------------
20 FOR L=50 TO 60 STEP 10
30 SOUND L,.002
40 NEXT L
50 GOTO 20
```

Table 14-2: PLAY statement subcommands

Subcommand	Interpretation
note	Play a named note (C, D, E, F, G, A, or B) in the current octave, either sharp (suffix + or #), flat (suffix -), or natural (letter alone)
O*oct*	Set octave number, 0 to 6 (middle C is octave 3)
N*nbr*	Play a note by number, 0 to 84 (0 means rest)
L*len*	Set the length of all later notes, from a whole note (*len* = 1) to a 64th note (*len* = 64); Optionally, *len* alone may suffix a single note to only affect that note
P*len*	Pause (rest): *len* as described for the L subcommand
dots	Each period that suffixes a note or pause subcommand holds the note or pause 1½ times normal
T*beat*	Set the tempo in beats per minute, 32 to 255
MF	Music foreground, program waits
MB	Music background, program continues
MN	Music normal, not legato or staccato
ML	Music legato
MS	Music staccato
X*s$*;	Execute subcommands from another string

Figure 14-2: Sample sound effects programs

metronome timing. The T subcommand sets the tempo using metronome timing. Table 14-1 compares tempo notations like *allegro* and *andante* with metronome timing.

Music Foreground or Background

Normally, Advanced BASIC will not proceed to the next note in a tune until the current note finishes playing. That is called *music foreground* mode. The MB subcommand tells Advanced BASIC to process up to 32 notes and store them in a memory buffer, and to play music from the buffer while it goes ahead with program execution. That is called *music background* mode. So for short tunes with 32 notes and rests or less, it is possible to have the computer do two things at once: play a tune and keep executing the remainder of the program.

Style: Staccato, Legato, Normal

The PLAY statement can play notes staccato, with distinct breaks between them; it can play notes legato, with no breaks between them; or it can play notes normally, with just enough pause between them to make them distinct. The MS subcommand produces a staccato performance by only holding each note for ¾ of its nominal length, and resting for the remaining ¼ beat. The ML subcommand creates a legato performance by holding each note for the full

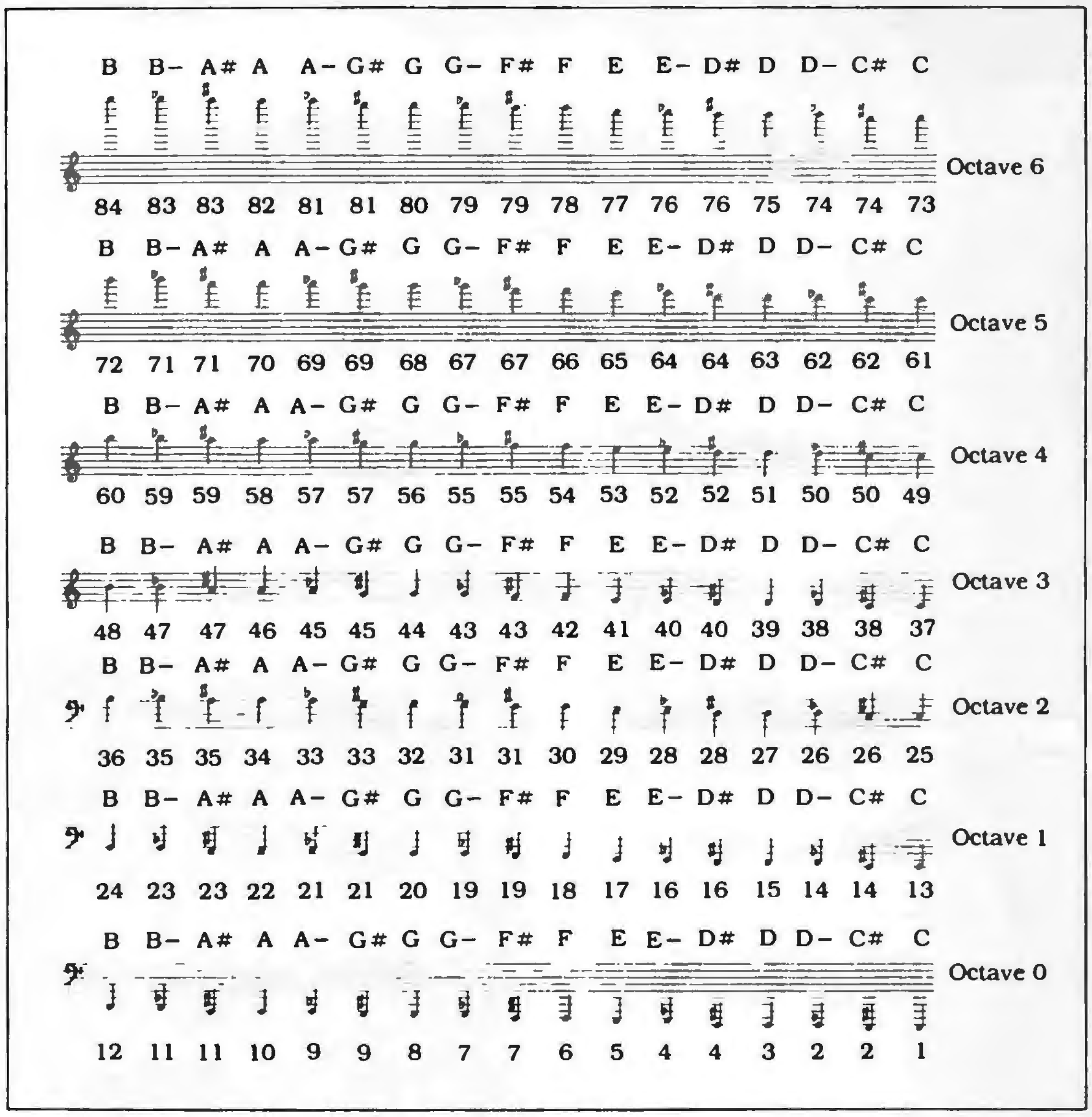


Figure 14-3: Notes available in the PLAY statement. (Numbers shown below notes are for the N subcommand.)

Figure 14-4: Note and rest lengths

length, so that succeeding notes seem to run together. Subcommand MN produces a normal performance by playing notes ⅞ of their nominal lengths, resting for the remaining ⅛ beat.

Playing Music

The PLAY statement does a credible job performing simple tunes, especially those written for keyboard instruments like the piano or organ. It is limited, however, to playing just one part. Two suitable compositions by Johann Sebastian Bach, the "Minuet" and the "Minuet in D Minor" from his *Anna Magdalena Notebook*, are shown in Figures 14-5 and 14-6. Programs that play them are listed in Figures 14-7 and 14-8. To make comparing the programs with the music easier, the name of each note is printed underneath it on the musical score. The following paragraphs briefly analyze how the programs work and how the musical scores were translated into subcommands.

Both programs work the same way. They store the PLAY statement subcommands in DATA statements starting at line 1010 and read the subcommand strings into string array TUNES one measure at a time.

Figure 14-5: "Minuet" from Anna Magdalena Notebook, by J.S. Bach

Hands On

Then, playing the tune stored in the array is simply a matter of using an X subcommand to incorporate each array element in turn.

The score for the "Minuet" specifies a tempo of *moderato* (Figure 14-5), which Table 14-1 says equals 108 to 120 beats per minute. The subcommand in the first measure (Figure 14-7, line 1010) sets the tempo at 110. It also establishes the default note length as an eighth note. The dot over the first note in the first measure means it is to be played staccato, so the MS subcommand designates that. The note itself is a D in octave 4 (the default octave), and it is a quarter note, so the subcommand D4 plays it. The next subcommand, MN, sets normal performance style, since the remainder of the notes in the measure are not marked staccato. The next note is in octave 3, and the O3 subcommand stipulates that. The G, A, and B subcommands play the appropriate eighth notes. The last

Figure 14-6: "Minuet in D minor" from Anna Magdalena Notebook, by J.S. Bach

note in the measure is C in octave 4, played by subcommands O4 and C. Each of the other 31 measures in the composition is similarly translated to a single DATA statement (lines 1020 to 1320).

The tempo in the second composition (Figure 14-6) is *andante*. The first subcommand (Figure 14-8, line 1010) sets the tempo at 90 beats per minute, which is within the range indicated by Table 14-1. The ML sub-

```
10 DIM TUNE$(4)
20 CLS:WIDTH 40:KEY OFF
30 LOCATE 11,17:PRINT "Minuet"
40 LOCATE 12,15:PRINT "J.S. Bach"
90 REM '--Read music from data----------------------------------
100 FOR MEASURE=1 TO 32
110 READ NOTES$
120 TUNE$(MEASURE\8)=TUNE$(MEASURE\8)+NOTES$
130 NEXT MEASURE
190 '--Play the tune----------------------------------------------
200 PLAY "xTUNE$(0); xTUNE$(1); xTUNE$(2); xTUNE$(3); xTUNE$(4);"
1000 '--Music, measure by measure---------------------------------
1010 DATA T110 L8 MS D4 MN O3 G A B O4 C
1020 DATA D4 O3 MS G4 MN G4
1030 DATA O4 MS E4 MN C D E F#
1040 DATA G4 O3 MS G4 MN G4
1050 DATA MS O4 C4 MN D C O3 B A
1060 DATA MS B4 MN O4 C O3 B A G
1070 DATA MS F#4 MN G A B G
1080 DATA B4 A2
1090 DATA O4 MS D4 MN O3 G A B O4 C
1100 DATA D4 O3 MS G4 G4
1110 DATA O4 E4 MN C D E F#
1120 DATA G4 O3 MS G4 G4
1130 DATA O4 C4 MN D C O3 B A
1140 DATA B4 O4 C O3 B A G
1150 DATA A4 B A G F#
1160 DATA G2.
1170 DATA O4 B4 G A B G
1180 DATA A4 D E F# D
1190 DATA G4 E F# G D
1200 DATA C#4 O3 B O4 C# O3 A4
1210 DATA A B O4 C# D E F#
1220 DATA MS G4 MN F#4 E4
1230 DATA MS F#4 O3 A4 O4 C#4
1240 DATA MN D2.
1250 DATA D4 O3 G F# G4
1260 DATA O4 E4 O3 G F# G4
1270 DATA O4 D4 C4 O3 B4
1280 DATA A G F# G A4
1290 DATA D E F# G A B
1300 DATA O4 C4 O3 B4 A4
1310 DATA B O4 D O3 G4 F#4
1320 DATA G2.
```

Figure 14-7: Program to play Bach Minuet (see Figure 14-5)

```
 0 DIM TUNE$(4)
20 CLS:WIDTH 40:KEY OFF
30 LOCATE 11,12:PRINT "Minuet in D minor"
40 LOCATE 12,17:PRINT "J.S. Bach"
90 REM '--Read music from data-------------------------------------
100 FOR MEASURE=1 TO 32
110 READ NOTES$
120 TUNE$(MEASURE\8)=TUNE$(MEASURE\8)+NOTES$
130 NEXT MEASURE
190 '--Play the tune---------------------------------------------
200 PLAY "xTUNE$(0); xTUNE$(1); xTUNE$(2); xTUNE$(3); xTUNE$(4);"
1000 '--Music, measure by measure--------------------------------
1010 DATA T90 ML L8 O3 A4 O4 F E D C#
1020 DATA D4 O3 A4 B-4
1030 DATA O3 C# E G B- A G
1040 DATA F4 E F D4
1050 DATA F4 B- A O4 D C
1060 DATA F4 E D C O3 B-
1070 DATA A B-16 O4 C16 O3 F4 E4
1080 DATA F2.
1090 DATA A4 O4 F E D C#
1100 DATA D4 O3 A4 B-4
1110 DATA C# E G B- A G
1120 DATA F4 E F D4
1130 DATA F4 B- A O4 D C
1140 DATA F4 E D C O3 B-
1150 DATA A B-16 O4 C16 O3 F4 E4
1160 DATA F2.
1170 DATA MS O4 A4 O3 F ML O4 A G F
1180 DATA E16 F16 G C2
1190 DATA MS F4 O3 D ML O4 F E D
1200 DATA C#16 D16 E O3 A2
1210 DATA A B O4 C# D E F
1220 DATA G E C# B- A G
1230 DATA F16 E16 D E4 C#4
1240 DATA D2.
1250 DATA MS A4 O3 F ML O4 A G F
1260 DATA E16 F16 G C2
1270 DATA MS F4 O3 D ML O4 F E D
1280 DATA C#16 D16 E O3 A2
1290 DATA A B O4 C# D E F
1300 DATA G E C# B- A G
1310 DATA F16 E16 D E4 C#4
1320 DATA D2.
```

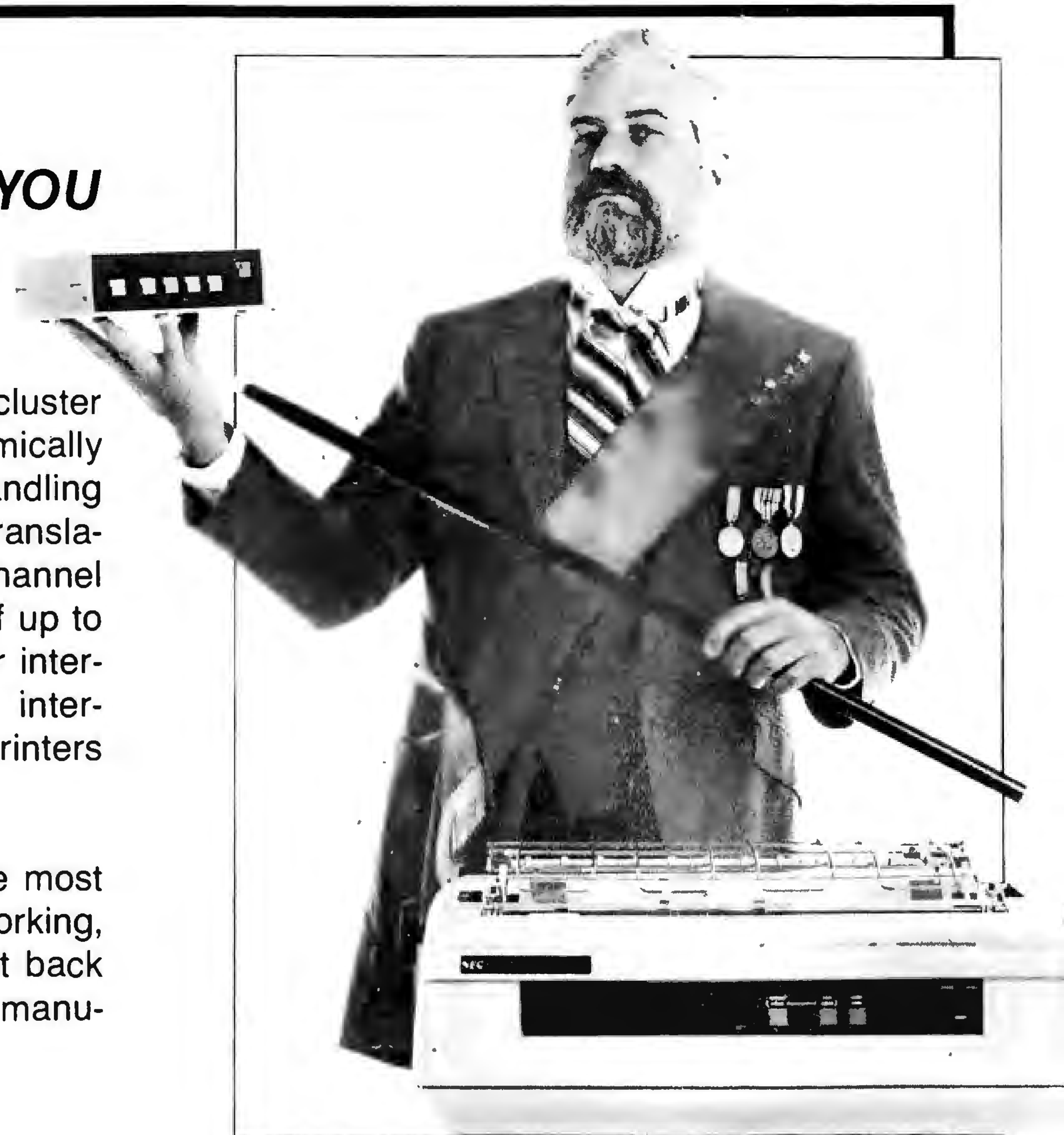
Figure 14-8: Program to play Bach Minuet in D minor (see Figure 14-6)

command then establishes a legato performance, as directed by the musical score. The rest of the DATA statements translate the composition into subcommands in a straightforward way.

Lon Poole lives in Oakland, California, and has been writing about personal computers since 1976. He is the author of such books as Some Common BASIC Problems, Apple II Users Guide, *and* Your Atari Computer.


Monte Carlo Card
The distinguishable card for the discerning user
The only true FIVE function card
for the IBM Personal Computer
• 64K to 1 Megabyte of Memory
• ONE IBM Compatible Centronics Parallel Port
• ONE IBM Compatible Asynchronous Communications Port
• Clock/Calendar (Battery Backed) with Alarm Features
• Dual-Port Joystick Interface
• Future Upgrade Option:
Direct Connect Plug-On Modem
Monte Carlo
MICROCOMPUTER
BUSINESS
INDUSTRIES
CORPORATION
MBI
ADMINISTRATIVE OFFICES: 1019 8TH STREET
TELEPHONE: (303) 279-8438
GOLDEN, COLORADO 80401 (U.S.A.)
TWX: 910-934-0191
For dealer information and pricing call:
1-800-821-9080.

The *DIPLOMAT*™ and *DM/T*™



THE DIPLOMAT GIVES YOU A COMMAND PERFORMANCE!

The ***DIPLOMAT*** is a Z-80 based cluster controller with 16K to 64K of dynamically allocated RAM and is capable of handling a variety of interfaces and protocol translation duties. It is a compact multi channel interface switch allowing a cluster of up to four devices of different protocols or interfaces to be linked together for intercommunications and co-sharing of printers and peripherals.

From the simplest interface to the most complex syntactic translation or networking, the ***DIPLOMAT*** with **DM/T**™ will put back the user friendliness your computer manufacturer promised you!

THE OFFICIAL AMBASSADOR OF COMPUTER PROTOCOL

THE *Diplomat* by INTEK™

- At last! An easy solution to your **interfacing** headaches!
- Z-80 based ***DIPLOMAT*** offers up to **64K** of **ingelligent spooling.**
- Give your software **networking** capability with **DM/T.**
- Finally! **Bundle** any combination of micro's and peripherals.

For "**AP Notes**" and specifications or the representative nearest you, contact Intek Manufacturing Inc.

(408) 946-9041

INTEK MANUFACTURING COMPANY

Integration for Tomorrow's Technology™

780 Charcot Avenue • San Jose, CA 95131

Inside the PC Keyboard

The IBM Personal Computer keyboard appears to be a sophisticated electronic typewriter but is actually a small computer in itself.

Peter Norton

The keyboard is at the heart of the connection between human and computer. The 83 keys of the IBM PC keyboard hold the codes that allow you to communicate with the computer. Inside the keyboard is a microprocessor, the Intel 8048, that handles the task of supervising the keys and reporting their activity. The 8048's tasks include carrying out diagnostic error checking (performed when the computer is powered on), checking for stuck keys, and debouncing (preventing one keystroke from being seen as two).

The 8048 also has the ability to buffer up to 20 key actions in case the PC system unit can't accept them. Normally this buffer is empty, for the PC system unit is rarely unresponsive to the keyboard's request for attention.

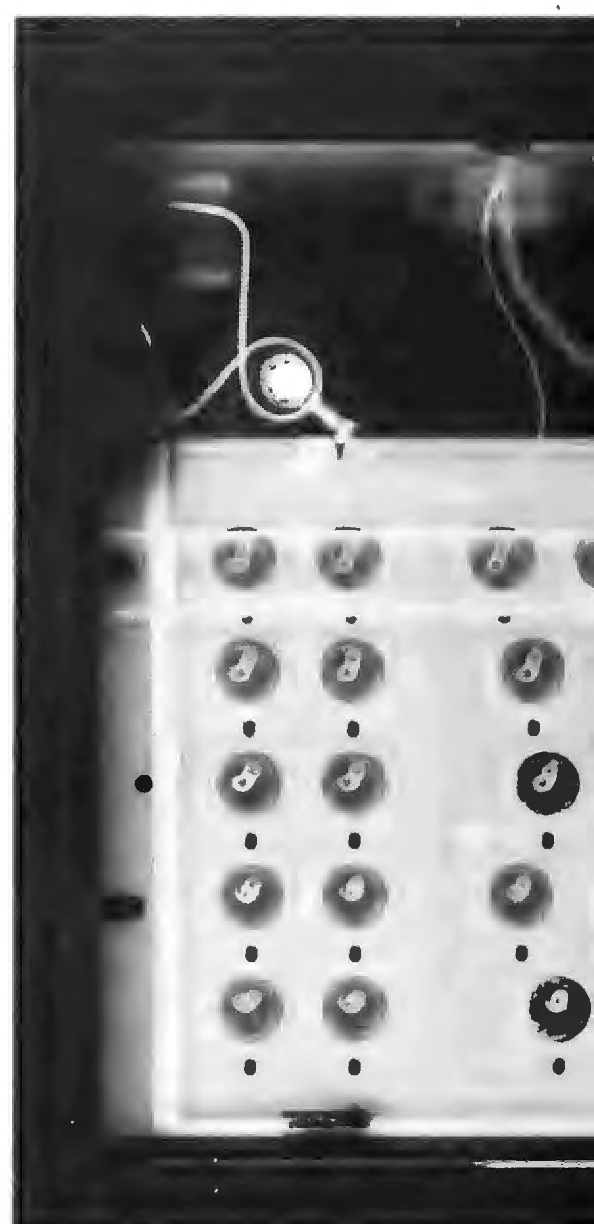
You have probably heard the PC beep when your keystrokes move ahead of a program's ability to accept them. This beep isn't caused by a full buffer in the keyboard unit; it sounds because the buffer maintained by the ROM BIOS routines that support the keyboard is full. While the buffer inside the keyboard unit holds 20 characters, the ROM BIOS buffer holds only 15.

Scan Codes

The keyboard microprocessor does not interpret the keys according to their common meanings (e.g., the A key doesn't mean *A*). Instead, the keyboard unit recognizes each key by an identifying number called the scan code. The scan codes of the keys are numbered from 1 through 83 (see Figure 1). When a key is pressed the keyboard unit reports the scan code to the system unit. When the key is released the keyboard unit reports again, this time with a released key code, which is the regular scan code plus 128 (hex 80). (For an explanation of hexadecimal notation, see "How the PC Thinks," Vol. 1, No. 1.)

Keyboard actions are reported to the system unit via interrupts and ports. When a key action occurs—when a key is pressed, released, or automatically repeated—the keyboard unit records the action in its buffer. The keyboard unit then generates a keyboard action interrupt (using interrupt 9). In response to the interrupt, the ROM BIOS routines read the scan code from the keyboard port (port 96) and send instructions back to the keyboard port to clear the key action from the keyboard unit's buffer. If the system unit doesn't respond to keyboard interrupts (this rarely occurs), the keyboard unit's buffer accumulates the scan codes. Scan code 255 (hex FF) is used to report that the keyboard buffer is full.

Since keystroke information passes from the keyboard to the system unit through a port, in theory any program with access to the ports can communicate directly with the keyboard. In practice this isn't the case because the keyboard unit generates interrupts processed by the ROM BIOS. However, a short BASIC program can be written to read the key-



board port and report when it encounters activity (see Listing 1).

The keyboard on the PC has repeat-key action, which IBM calls typematic. The keyboard unit is responsible for keeping track of the length of time a key is held down and for generating the repeat-key signals.

If a key is held down for a certain length of time, the keyboard unit automatically starts sending the key-depressed signal at regular intervals. You can't change the rate at which keys repeat because repeating is carried out at the hardware level inside the keyboard, and there is no practical way to change it with programming.

The ROM BIOS routines in the system unit tell the difference between a regular keystroke and a repeat key by keeping track of the scan codes for keys being released. If two key-pressed signals are received for the same key without a key-released signal in between, the key must be repeated. This scheme is used by the ROM BIOS to suppress repeat action for keys such as the Shift keys that don't use that action.

Most people are unaware that the PC keyboard actually signals when keys are released. You can see the signal in action by running the keyboard test in the PC diagnostic programs. If you pay close attention, you will see that the screen display changes when you press a key, release a key, or hold a key down long enough for the repeat action to work.

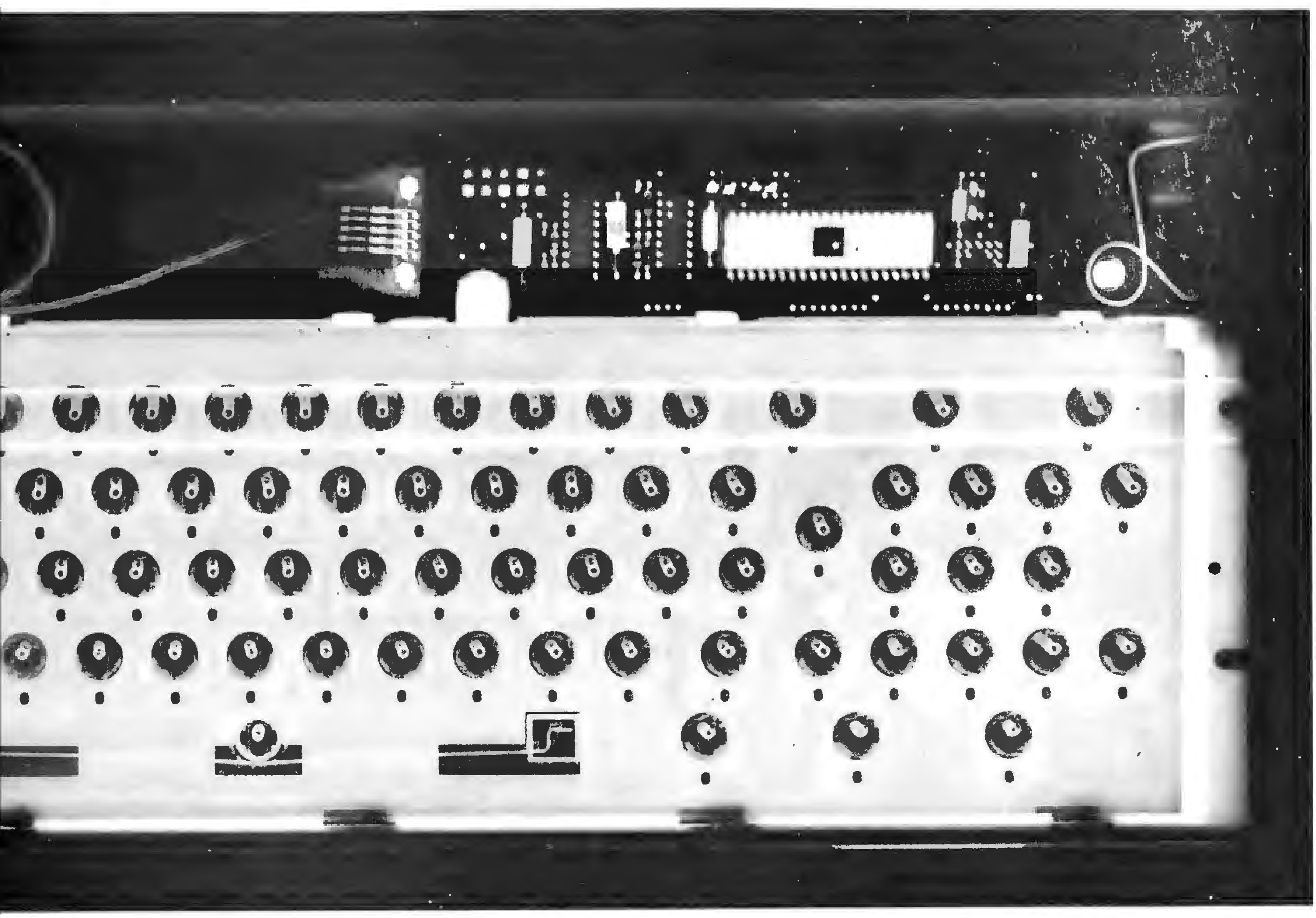
Shift Keys

The ROM BIOS service routine for the keyboard action interrupt (interrupt 9) is responsible for making sense of the key actions. This task includes keeping track of shift operations and translating keystrokes into the correct meaning, whether for a letter of the alphabet or a function key signal.

Part of the ROM BIOS's task in supervising the keyboard is to keep track of all the possible shift states. The PC keyboard and other keyboards have three kinds of shift operations: the normal action of the keys without shifting (e.g., to produce lowercase letters), the conventional shift (corresponding to a typewriter shift) that produces uppercase letters and usually anything written on the top half of a key top, and the two special shift keys, alternate shift (Alt) and control shift (Ctrl). These shifts work much like the regular shift key, but just as a lowercase *a* is different from an uppercase *A*, Ctrl-A and Alt-A also have different identities.

Not all the possible combinations of a shift key and an ordinary key represent legal PC keyboard functions. If you enter an incorrect combination, the ROM BIOS routine ignores it as if nothing had happened. Table 1 shows the legal combinations of shifted keys.

The PC keyboard has four special toggle keys that act like on-off switches for their particular func-

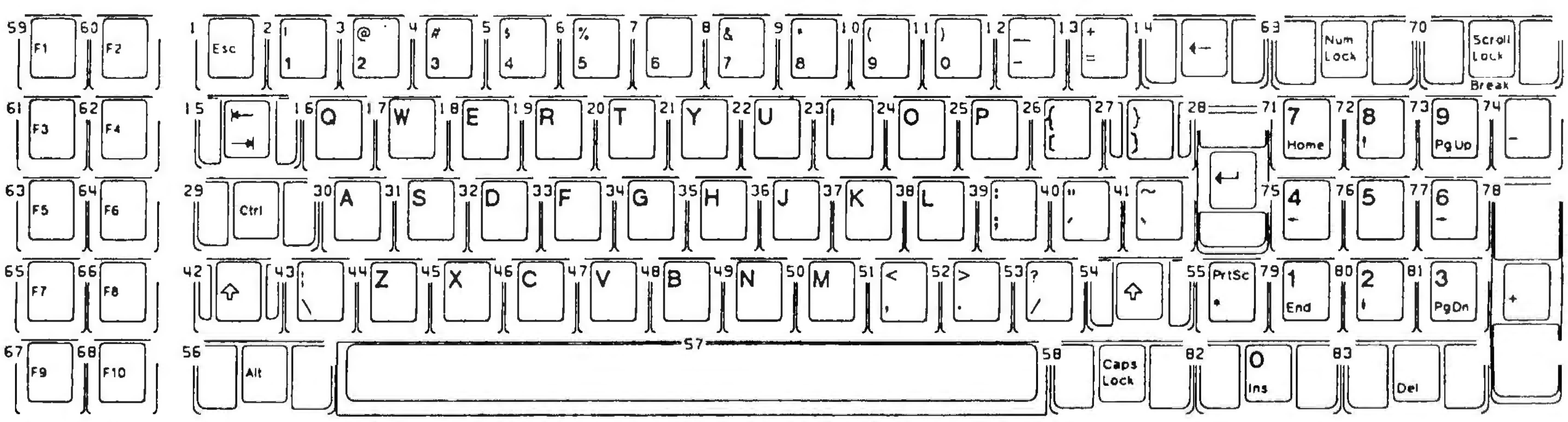


tions. These four keys are Ins (insert), CapsLock, NumLock, and the neglected ScrollLock. Two of these toggle keys, CapsLock and NumLock, are part of the keyboard shift mechanism, while the other two control their own special information.

For the three ordinary shift keys, which must be held down to be active, the ROM BIOS routine keeps track of whether they are pressed or released and makes appropriate changes in the interpretation of the keys. The ROM BIOS pays attention to the scan code sent only when a shift key is released.

lists the control bits for the keyboard, which you can see in action in Listing 2.

Several interesting features are revealed in Table 1. Note the parallelism in the first 4 bits of the 2 bytes for the four toggle keys. In the first byte, the current state is indicated,



Nomenclature is on both top and front face of keybutton as shown. The number to the upper left designates the button position.

Figure 1: Keyboard Diagram

```
100 REM              A BASIC routine to read the keyboard scan codes
110 X = INP (96)               ' read the keyboard port
120 THROW.AWAY$ = INKEY$       ' discard any keystrokes the ROM-BIOS read
130 IF X = 0 THEN GOTO 110  ' if no data, keep looking
140 PRINT
150 PRINT "Keyboard scan code ";X MOD 128;   ' report scan code
160 IF X > 128 THEN PRINT " key released";   ' report if key-released code
170 IF X < 129 THEN PRINT " key pressed ";   ' report if key-pressed  code
180 GOTO 110
```

Listing 1

The ROM BIOS keeps information on the state of the four toggle keys and whether the shift keys are held down in a dedicated location in low memory. Two bytes, located at memory addresses 1047 (hex 417) and 1048 (hex 418), are used during the operation of the PC to keep track of these shift- and toggle-key states no matter what programs are run.

The BASIC program shown in Listing 2 displays the two keyboard control bytes and demonstrates the action of the shift and toggle keys.

When the ROM BIOS receives a scan code for an ordinary key (other than a shift key), it checks the state of the various shift possibilities and translates the key into the appropriate meaning, which could be an ASCII code or a special key code.

Toggle Keys

The ROM BIOS routine keeps track of more keyboard functions than just the shift states. The status of the keyboard is kept track of in the first 13 of the 16 bits in the two keyboard status bytes at location 1047. Table 1

while in the second byte the 4 bits indicate whether the corresponding key is depressed. In the bits that indicate that the four ordinary shift keys (Alt, Ctrl, Shift left, Shift right) are depressed, the Shift keys on the left and right sides of the keyboard are treated separately.

Also, note that the ROM BIOS keeps track of the insert status as an on-off toggle function. This feature is generally ignored by programs such as word processors that make use of

```
1000 REM  Listing 2 -- A program to display keyboard status bits
1010 REM                 (C) Copyright 1983, Peter Norton
1020 REM
1030 GOSUB 2000                    '  TITLE
1040 GOSUB 3000                    '  MISCELLANEOUS INFORMATION
1050 GOSUB 4000                    '  DISPLAY KEYBOARD BITS
1060 GOSUB 5000                    '  CHECK FOR KEYBOARD INPUT TO END
1070 GOTO  1050                    '  CONTINUE DISPLAYING

2000 REM  Title subroutine
2010 KEY OFF : CLS : WIDTH 80 : LOCATE ,,0
2020 REM
2030 LOCATE 5,1
2040 PRINT "                Programs for INSIDE THE IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER"
2050 PRINT "                      (C) Copyright 1983 Peter Norton"
2060 PRINT
2070 PRINT "               Program 10-1: Display the Keyboard Status Bits"
2999 RETURN

3000 REM  Subroutine to display miscellaneous information
3010 LOCATE  11,28
3020 PRINT " Byte 1   Byte 2";
3030 LOCATE  12,28
3040 PRINT "12345678 12345678";
3050 LOCATE 17,10
3060 PRINT "To see the status bits change, press (and hold) any of";
3070 LOCATE 18,15
3080 PRINT "-- left and right shift keys";
3090 LOCATE 19,15
3100 PRINT "-- Ctrl, Alt, NumLock, ScrollLock, CapsLock, Ins";
3110 LOCATE 21,10
3120 PRINT "(beware the effect of the Shift and NumLock on the Ins key)";
3130 LOCATE 24,10
3140 PRINT "To return to DOS, press any normal input key...";
3999 RETURN

4000 REM     Subroutine to display keyboard control bits
4010 DEF SEG = &H40
4020 CONTROL% = PEEK (&H17)
4030 CHECK% = 128
4040 FOR I% = 1 TO 8
4050   LOCATE 14,27+I%
4060   IF CONTROL% >= CHECK% THEN COLOR 30,0 ELSE COLOR 7,0
4070   IF CONTROL% >= CHECK% THEN PRINT "1"; ELSE PRINT "0";
4080   IF CONTROL% >= CHECK% THEN CONTROL% = CONTROL% - CHECK%
4090   CHECK% = CHECK% / 2
4100 NEXT I%
4110 CONTROL% = PEEK (&H18)
4120 CHECK% = 128
4130 FOR I% = 1 TO 8
4140   LOCATE 14,36+I%
4150   IF CONTROL% >= CHECK% THEN COLOR 30,0 ELSE COLOR 7,0
4160   IF CONTROL% >= CHECK% THEN PRINT "1"; ELSE PRINT "0";
4170   IF CONTROL% >= CHECK% THEN CONTROL% = CONTROL% - CHECK%
4180   CHECK% = CHECK% / 2
4190 NEXT I%
4999 RETURN

5000 REM   Subroutine to check for ending keystroke
5010 K$ = INKEY$
5020 IF  LEN(K$) = 0 THEN RETURN   ' LOOP UNTIL KEYBOARD INPUT
5030 IF (LEN(K$) = 2) AND (CHR$(82) = MID$(K$,2,1)) THEN RETURN ' "Ins" key
5040 CLS : LOCATE ,,1
5999 SYSTEM

9999 REM   End of program Listing 2
```

Listing 2

the Ins key. Usually any program that uses the Ins key keeps its own record of the insert state, which might easily be the opposite of the insert state kept by the ROM BIOS. This situation means that when a program such as a word processor starts operating, it designates the insert state as off, even if the PC's own record of the insert toggle indicates that it should be on. Again, if you stop using a word processor with the insert state on and return control of the computer to PC-DOS, DOS interprets the insert toggle as reset to off, even though according to the record kept by the ROM BIOS the insert toggle is still on.

Finally, notice the hold-state bit, which is set when the ROM BIOS keyboard routine detects the Ctrl-NumLock combination. When the hold state is on, the keyboard ROM BIOS runs in a tight loop, waiting for a key to be pressed to break out of the hold state. The hold-state bit is used to keep track of whether the computer has been asked to pause, and during the loop any interrupts that occur are serviced. If the interrupt is a keyboard interrupt for an ordinary key, the hold state is ended, the keystroke is thrown away, and the ROM BIOS returns control to the program that was executing before the hold state was set. If an interrupt occurs from another device such as a disk drive, that interrupt is serviced and the hold-state loop continues, waiting for a key to be struck.

While the ROM BIOS keyboard service routine is processing key actions received from the keyboard unit, it constantly checks for four special cases, Ctrl-NumLock, PrtSc, Ctrl-Alt-Del, and Ctrl-Break, which are treated as commands rather than ordinary keyboard input.

Ctrl-NumLock is used to suspend the operation of the computer until the suspension is broken with a keystroke. PrtSc (print screen) is the command to send a copy of the screen contents to the printer. Since this operation is carried out at the most primitive BIOS level, it isn't af-

Byte	Bit	Subject Matter	Meaning when bit is 1
1	1	Ins	state active
1	2	CapsLock	state active
1	3	NumLock	state active
1	4	ScrollLock	state active
1	5	Alt	key depressed
1	6	Ctrl	key depressed
1	7	Shift (left)	key depressed
1	8	Shift (right)	key depressed
2	1	Ins	key depressed
2	2	CapsLock	key depressed
2	3	NumLock	key depressed
2	4	ScrollLock	key depressed
2	5	hold state	state active (from Ctrl-NumLock)
2	6	(not used)	
2	7	(not used)	
2	8	(not used)	

Table 1: Control Bits for the Keyboard

Special code value	Keys to generate it
3	Ctrl-2 (this is supposed to be taken as CHR$(0), the ASCII NULL)
15	Back-tab (shift tab)
16–25	Alt-Q through Alt-P (top row of letters)
30–38	Alt-A through Alt-L (middle row of letters)
44–50	Alt-Z through Alt-M (bottom row of letters)
59–68	F1 through F10 (function keys, no shift)
71	Home
72	CursorUp
73	PgUp
75	CursorLeft
77	CursorRight
79	End
80	CursorDown
81	PgDn
82	Ins
83	Del
84–93	Shift-F1 through Shift-F10 (regular shift function keys)
94–103	Ctrl-F1 through Ctrl-F10 (control shift function keys)
104–113	Alt-F1 through Alt-F10 (alternate shift function keys)
114	Ctrl-PrtSc
115	Ctrl-CursorLeft
116	Ctrl-CursorRight
117	Ctrl-End
118	Ctrl-PgDn
119	Ctrl-Home
120–131	Alt-1 through Alt-= (top row of the keyboard)
132	Ctrl-PgUp

Table 2: Legal Combinations of Shifted Keys

fected by DOS enhancements, such as those that redirect printer output to a communications line. The print-screen service is available to programs on an interrupt level if you provide access to assembly level interfaces with the ROM BIOS.

The Ctrl-Alt-Del key combination is used to request a restart of the computer system. When the keyboard service routine detects this key combination, it passes control to the same program used to test the computer and start up the operating system. Supposedly you can press Ctrl-Alt-Del at any time to restart the PC.

You may have already discovered, however, that this operation doesn't always work. Sometimes you have to turn the PC off and then on again to get it restarted. The most common cause of this problem is the disabling of interrupts. Ctrl-Alt-Del works only if the keyboard interrupt service is working. The clear interrupts instruction (CLI) suspends interrupts until a start interrupts instruction (STI) reactivates them. Normally a CLI is quickly followed by an STI, but if a program accidentally leaves interrupts disabled, keystrokes, including Ctrl-Alt-Del, go undetected by the microprocessor. (See "How the PC Thinks," Vol. 1, No. 2, for a more in-depth discussion of interrupts.)

The other situation that can disrupt a Ctrl-Alt-Del reset is a change in the keyboard interrupt vector. If memory locations 36 through 39 (where the keyboard interrupt vector resides) are changed, none of the keys will work, including Ctrl-Alt-Del.

Ctrl-Break is a command that is intended to stop the current operation. Unlike the other three special-status commands, Ctrl-Break can be controlled by program software. Interrupt 27 (hex 1B) is reserved for a routine that activates when Ctrl-Break is keyed. When a program makes use of this capability, it inserts the address of its interrupt service routine into the vector location for interrupt 27 (at storage location 108, or hex 6C).

You can experience this facility by using Ctrl-Break with either BASIC or the EDLIN editor that comes with PC-DOS. If a program does not insert the address of an interrupt handler into location 108, then the BIOS and DOS cooperate to break out of the current program or batch processing file.

Since the keyboard unit reports each key action separately and the ROM BIOS routines interpret the meaning of the key actions, programs are able to keep track of the exact action going on at the keyboard. Because programs rarely require more information than that reported by the ROM BIOS service routines, no special provision is made for a program to receive the exact key actions.

If you want more complete information about keyboard activity, your programs can replace the interrupt vector for the keyboard action interrupt located at memory address 36 (hex 24). When you provide your own keyboard interrupt program or use one of the popular keyboard enhancers such as *Keynote* or *ProKey* (see "The PC in a New Key" and "ProKey Chimes In" in Vol. 1, No. 1), the programs can either take complete charge of the keyboard or act as a front end to the regular ROM BIOS routine. A front-end routine can extract any information you need and pass control on to the regular ROM BIOS routine, thereby completing the regular keyboard processing.

ASCII and Special Characters

After the ROM BIOS processes the keystrokes, they are made accessible to programs in translated form. Two sets of characters are available. The first is the ordinary extended ASCII character set, the conventional characters described in the IBM PC manuals. This set consists of the 256 possible byte codes, except for one (the zero-value byte). The codes can be generated from the keyboard either by using the regular keystrokes (the A key for *A*, and so forth) or by using the Alt-numeric keys.

To generate ASCII codes by the Alt-numeric method, hold down the Alt key and key in the numeric value of the ASCII code. The value must be in decimal (from 1 to 255), and you must use the numeric keys on the right of the keyboard (not the numbers on the top row of the keyboard). The Alt-numeric method is handled specially by the ROM BIOS routines, since several keystrokes are interpreted as one keyboard input character.

Not all the possible combinations of a shift key and an ordinary key represent legal PC keyboard functions.

As long as the Alt key is held down, you can key indefinitely on the numeric keys. When you release the Alt key, an ASCII character is generated, corresponding to the numeric value you entered. If you have keyed in too large a number, the modulo-256 value is used. If you key in Alt-1000, for example, the character CHR$(232) is generated. Dividing 1000 by 256 leaves a remainder of 232, so CHR$(232) is the character code that is generated.

The one ASCII value that cannot be entered from the keyboard is the zero (or value CHR$(0)). There are some lame reasons for this situation (code 0 is defined in ASCII as the null character, which is supposed to be ignored), but the real reason is that zero is used by the ROM BIOS to indicate the presence of the second set of characters, the special characters.

Although IBM PC manuals indicate that the zero character can be generated by either Ctrl-2 or the Alt-numeric method, this is incorrect. If you hold the Ctrl key and press 2, one of the special characters is generated. The character is supposed to be interpreted as if it were CHR$(0) in the ASCII character set, but that isn't really the same thing as generating a true ASCII CHR$(0). And the Alt-numeric method doesn't work either, whether you key in Alt-0 or try to fool the ROM BIOS by keying in a modulo-256 equivalent, such as Alt-256 or Alt-512.

In addition to the regular ASCII characters are the special characters used to indicate special keys such as Home, End, and the 10 function keys (actually there are 40 function keys). These special character codes make available the use of the special keys without using up any of the 256 extended ASCII codes.

The coding mechanism used by the ROM BIOS to indicate the character keyed in (and whether the character is conventional extended ASCII or a special character), provides 2 bytes whenever a keyboard character is requested. If the main byte of the two is not zero, the input is extended ASCII and the character is stored in the main byte. If the main byte is zero, however, the keyboard character is a special character and the character is stored in an auxiliary byte. Common sense suggests that it would have been better to use 1 bit of the auxiliary byte to indicate the difference between conventional and special key characters. This method would have been simpler and would have allowed the zero character to be keyed in. But that isn't the way IBM designed the system.

While there are 256 extended ASCII codes (255 of which can be keyed in), only as many special codes exist as are needed for the intended purposes of the PC keyboard. For example, 40 codes exist for the function keys (10 regular codes, and another 30 for the three possible shift states, normal Shift, Alt-Shift, and Ctrl-Shift). Table 2 shows the special codes and the key combinations that create them. This is a hodgepodge of codes without a great deal of consistency. Some Alt-key combinations are allowed and others are not; the same is true for the Ctrl-key combinations. With all these special key codes available, programs have no shortage of codes to access for special purposes. All any program needs are the function keys and a few special-purpose keys such as Home and the cursor keys. If more special key codes are needed, you will find them in Table 2.

Ordinary keyboard input to programs is available in every language used on the PC, but using keyboard input always involves suspending the program to wait for keyboard action. For many purposes this procedure is adequate, but often programs have to keep track of keyboard input without being suspended.

Both BASIC and Pascal use keyboard input services that allow testing for input characters without suspending program execution. BASIC carries out the operations through the INKEY$ function, and Pascal does it by accessing the input buffer via a file pointer (for details on this, see the IBM Pascal manual, particularly page 12-7 in the first edition).

BASIC also provides access to the special input codes through the INKEY$ function. When LEN (IN-

KEY$) is 2, a special key is pressed, and INKEY$ has CHR$(0) for its first character and the special code value for its second character.

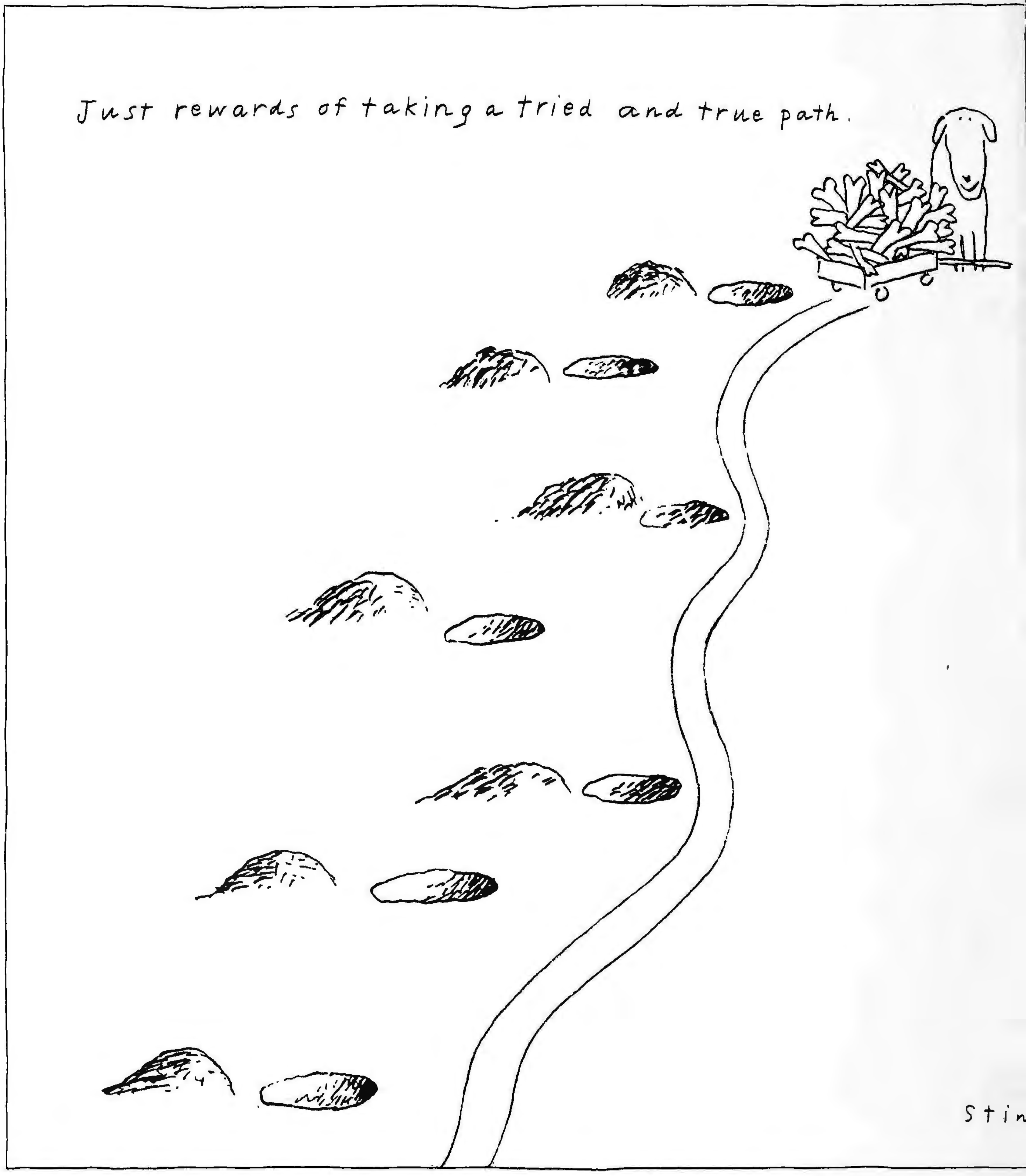
Pascal, however, does not provide full access to the special key codes. When the special key combinations are pressed, Pascal recognizes the keystroke but gives no indication whether the character is a special code or an ordinary ASCII character.

Both BASIC and Pascal use keyboard input services that allow testing for input characters without suspending program execution.

For Pascal programs to properly recognize the special codes, you need assembly language interface routines. (A full set of these routines is included in the disk program package that accompanies the book *Inside the IBM Personal Computer,* from which this article is taken.)

Access to the keyboard shift status bits is very important. The shift states can be accessed either through the ROM BIOS service code 2 or by direct memory access, as illustrated in Listing 2. From the keyboard microprocessor to the keyboard buffer and the ROM BIOS control routines, the IBM PC keyboard design is simple and elegant. Knowledge of this link between human and computer is essential for sophisticated programming in any language.

Peter Norton has worked in computing as a programmer, designer, and author. He wrote and produced The Norton Utilities. *This article will be included in his forthcoming book,* Inside the IBM Personal Computer: Access to Advanced Programming. *It is used with permission of the Robert J. Brady Co., copyright 1983, Peter Norton.*



WordStar runs on the IBM PC, Apple Computer with CP/M® card and all CP/M®-based computers. IBM, Apple and CP/M are registered trademarks of IBM Corp., Apple Computer Inc. and Digital Research Inc., respectively.

For the name of the dealer nearest you, phone (800) 227-2400, ext. 948; in California, (800) 772-2666, ext. 948. For more informa

WordStar® is used by more people, more often, to do more things than any other word processing software.

And you'll find it'll do more for you.

The only surprise you'll get with WordStar is how much you can do with it.

Ask Arthur C. Clarke. He used WordStar to write his best selling novel, 2010: Odyssey Two.

Ask Osborne-McGraw Hill. Where the editors use it to produce all the books.

Or, for that matter, ask any of over 400,000 others who swear by WordStar's reliability when it comes to making fast work of the written page.

And no wonder.

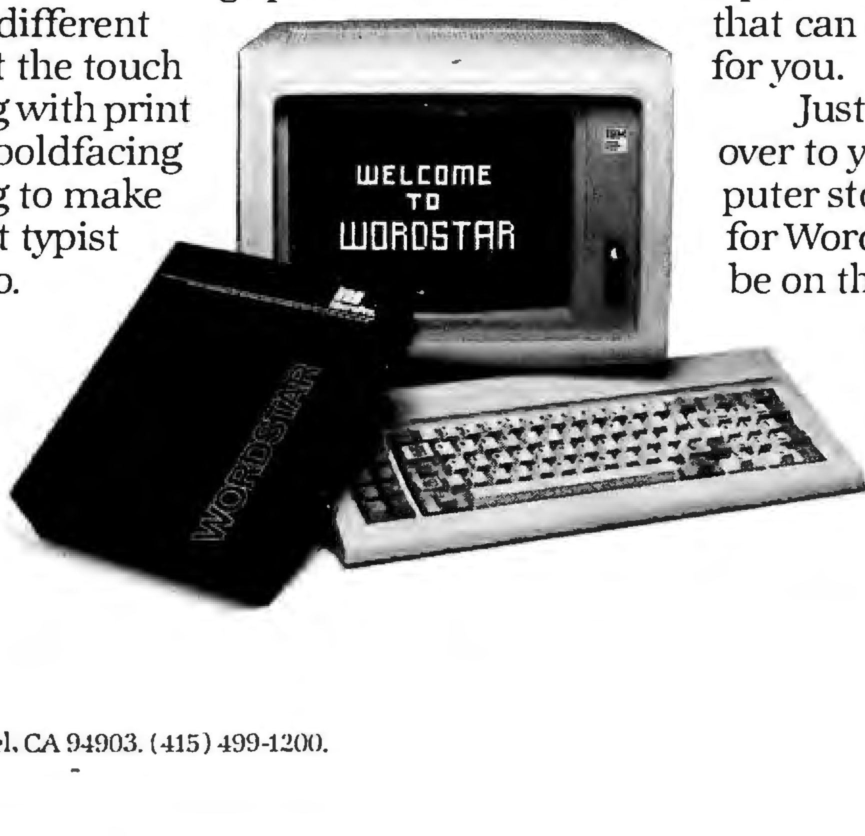
WordStar has more work-saving features to take the time and drudgery out of revising and retyping than any other word processing software. For instance, there are production typing features to let you move columns around and merge paragraphs from different documents at the touch of a key. Along with print features like boldfacing and centering to make any late-night typist look like a pro.

But that's not to say you have to be a pro. WordStar starts off by simply giving you a choice, and then guides you with menus every step of the way. Menus adjust to your proficiency. And of course, what you see on the screen is what you get on paper.

Then as your needs grow, WordStar can grow right along with you. With options like MailMerge,® SpellStar® and StarIndex™ to help you personalize form letters, correct spelling and create indexes. And with other MicroPro products like InfoStar™ and CalcStar™ so you can automatically insert business data and financial projections into WordStar documents.

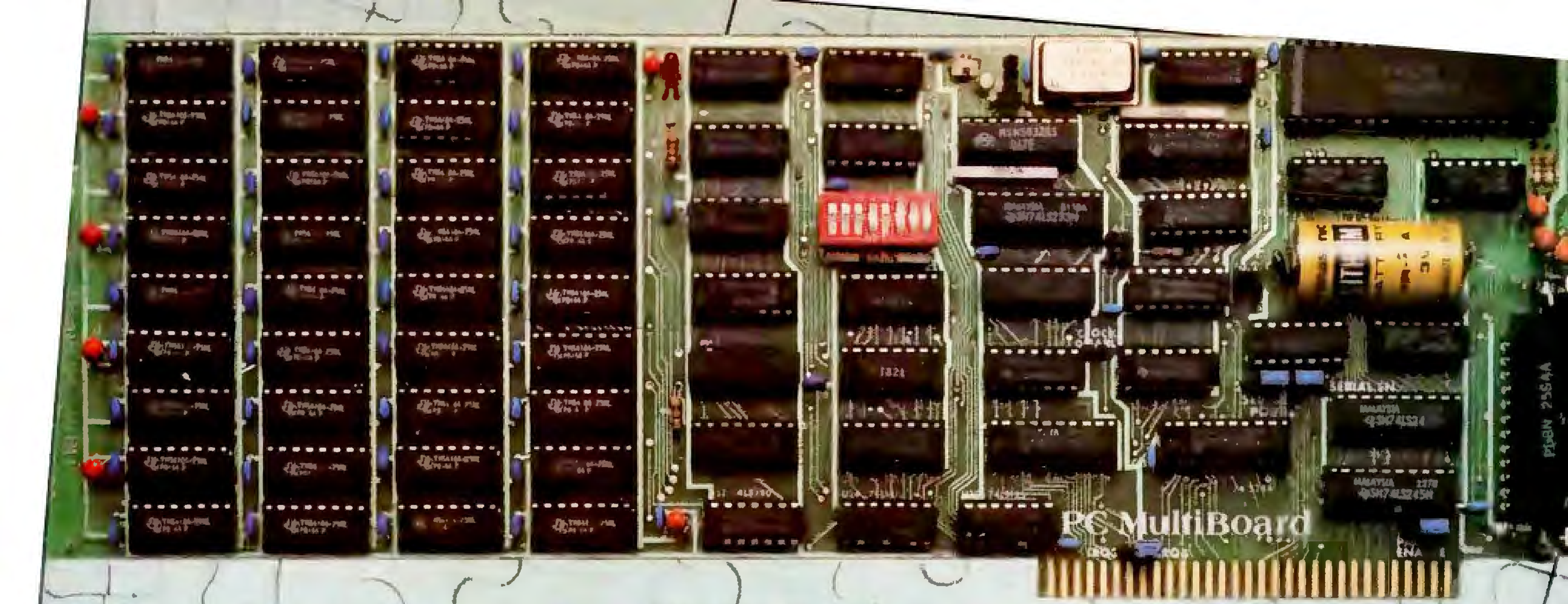
WordStar runs on almost every personal computer. Which means you don't have to go out of your way to find the word processing software that can do more for you.

Just take a walk over to your local computer store and ask for WordStar. You'll be on the right path.



MicroPro®
Software that means Business

MicroPro, 33 San Pablo Avenue, San Rafael, CA 94903. (415) 499-1200.



What's new in IBM PC multifunction expansion boards?

ndigo has put together the most versatile expansion product available for the new IBM PC and IBM PC / XT

he PC MultiPak™

4 most requested hardware functions

The PC MultiPak™ includes a serial communications port, a real time clock calendar with a 10 year lithium battery, 0 to 256K memory and optional parallel printer port. The PC MultiPak™ without the parallel printer port is ideal for users with the IBM monochrome/parallel printer adapter installed.

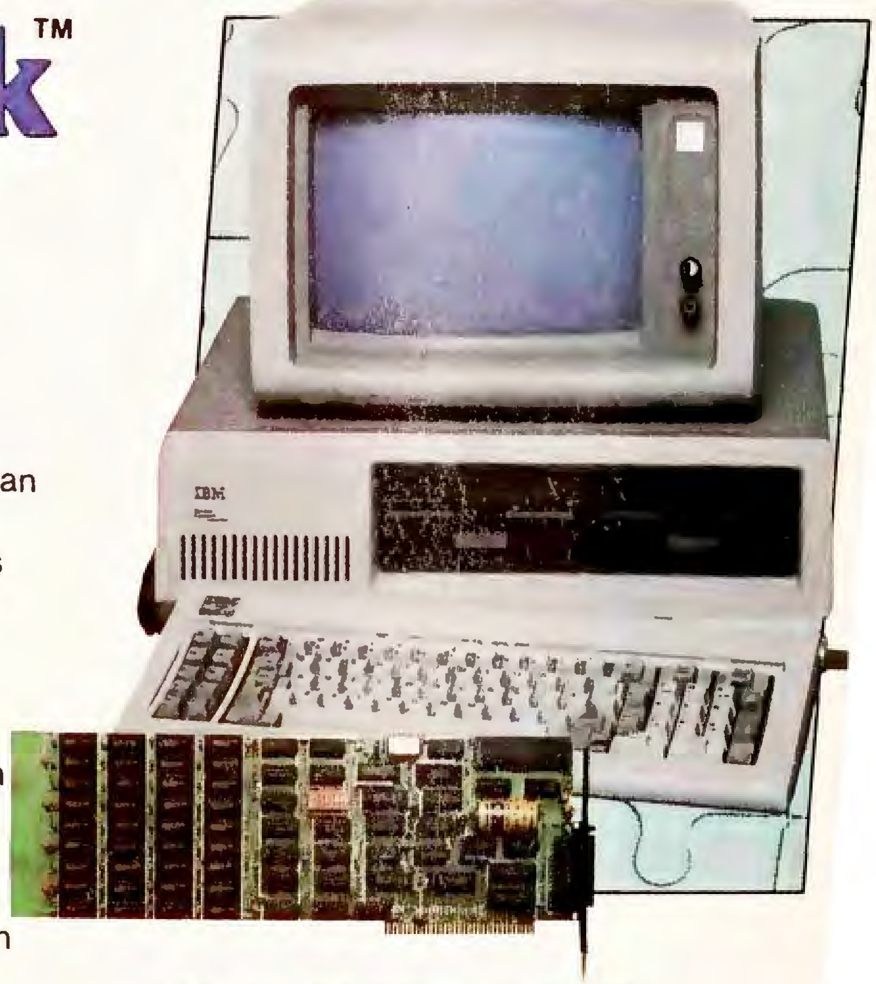
Zero memory option

The PC MultiPak™ is available with no memory installed so you can fill your I / O needs today and still have memory expansion capability to an additional 256K for your future needs. This makes the PC MultiPak™ the perfect mate for the new IBM PC and IBM PC / XT.

4 software packages

The PC MultiPak™ includes our four most popular software packages. **Drive-It™** converts 32K to 320K of extra memory into an ultra-fast drive. **Spool-It™** utilizes up to 64K of extra memory as a printer buffer and eliminates valuable time spent waiting on the printer. **Print-It™** prints any IBM text or graphics screen to Epson printers. **Color-It™** prints screens to IDS printers. Color images can be printed on IDS prism printers. These software programs have received critical acclaim in Infoworld, Softalk, PC Age and Creative Computing magazines. Thousands have been sold separately. This $200 retail value is included in the PC MultiPak™ at no additional charge. DOS 2.0 Compatible.

5 year warranty



$297

- ALL SOFTWARE INCLUDED
- NO INSTALLED MEMORY

64K-$365, 128K-$432, 192K-$499, 256K-$565

PARALLEL PORT OPTION ADD $30

64K MEMORY EXPANSION KIT $87

SOFTWARE AVAILABLE SEPARATELY
DRIVE-IT $59.95, **SPOOL-IT** $44.95

PRINT-IT $44.95, **COLOR-IT** $49.95

VISA

Indigo products may be found at **ComputerLand** and other fine stores.
Dealer And Customer Inquiries call TOLL FREE 1-800-231-9480
In Texas Call Collect (713) 488-8186

indigo data systems, inc.

Tracking Bulls and Bears

The stock market went up 10 points today. Do you know where your stocks are?

Andrew T. Williams

Owning common stocks means watching their movements like a hawk. Casting a sharp eye on each morning's financial page, you find out your stocks' current prices as well as how much the prices have changed since the previous day.

But the newspaper can't tell you how much you've made or lost since you bought the stocks. Nor can it tell you how much commission to subtract from the gross sale price if you want to sell a holding. You might also want to calculate the percentage change on an annualized basis so you can see how stocks you've owned for different periods of time are doing. And by the way, how long have you owned that stock? Does it qualify for treatment as a long-term capital gain?

> With a minimum of effort you can know just how well your stock portfolio is doing each day.

If you own a portfolio of common stocks, these important analyses should be made every day. With a calculator, portfolio tracking is tedious and time consuming. But with a PC and an electronic spreadsheet package, you can transform this task into a matter of few minutes of data entry and a push of the recalculation key.

By recreating the worksheets in this article you can easily monitor the performance of your stock portfolio. These worksheets are arranged on a single *SuperCalc* spreadsheet in three descending steps (see Figure 1). Table 1, which is dependent on Tables 2 and 3, is the main worksheet on which your portfolio is tracked. Table 2 is a work space where many calculations are performed and summarized. Table 3 contains five lookup tables: the top two are used when calculating the commission, and the bottom three are used when calculating the number of days between dates.

By constructing these worksheets separately, you can insert or delete rows and expand or contract column widths in any table without affecting entries in the other two tables. This layout demonstrates a cardinal rule of electronic worksheet construction: use the entire worksheet; don't be constrained by the small portion displayed on the screen.

The Electronic Worksheet

You can see how much you've invested in each of your stocks and how much they're worth each day with the help of the electronic worksheet in Table 1. The worksheet shows how much the value of each stock has changed since it was purchased and how much the stock's value has changed since you last evaluated your portfolio. The value of your holdings is summarized at the bottom of the worksheet, and the portfolio's performance is compared with the change in the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA) over the same period. With this worksheet you can track changes in your portfolio value quickly and easily, enabling you to act fast when required.

The worksheet shown in Table 1 uses several special features of *SuperCalc*, although you could duplicate the worksheet with other spreadsheet programs designed to run on the IBM PC. This worksheet uses *SuperCalc*'s ability to copy values from one part of the worksheet to another without copying the underlying formulas. It also uses *SuperCalc*'s variable column widths, which enable you to place as much material as possible on a single page.

Formulas

Before entering formulas into the worksheet, turn off *SuperCalc*'s automatic recalculation feature by typing /GM. With recalculation off, the computer won't calculate the formulas on the worksheet after each entry; type an exclamation mark when you want to recalculate the worksheet.

To create Table 1, position the cursor at cell AA45. Set column widths as indicated in row 45, and copy the title material and column headings in the lower rows. Set the dollars and cents format to the global format with the command /FG$. Set the columns AB and AE and the date cells (AA56 to AC56) to the integer format.

The formulas entered into each cell of row 62 of the worksheet and the formulas from cells AO55 and AO56 are listed in the lower left of the worksheet. Most of the formulas are straightforward. Those in AD62 and AJ62 calculate the value of each holding, while those in AK62 and AN62 calculate the difference between yesterday's value and the purchase price. The formulas in row 73 total the overall value of the portfolio.

Enter the formulas for columns AE and AF, even though these formulas are dependent on information from Table 2. Once we construct Table 2, the information in columns AE and AF will be calculated.

The four IF functions in cells AL62, AO62, AQ62, and AO55 prevent error messages from appearing on the worksheet when division by zero is attempted. These IF functions, like all other IF functions, consist of a comparison and two alternatives. If the comparison is true, the IF function calculates the first alternative; if the comparison is false, the IF function calculates the second alternative.

In cell AL62 the comparison "Is AH62 equal to zero?" is true if AH62 equals zero. In this case, 'Error' would be displayed if division by zero were attempted. To prevent this from happening, when the comparison is true the IF function calculates the first alternative, placing a zero instead of an error message in the cell. If the comparison is false, the second alternative performs the division.

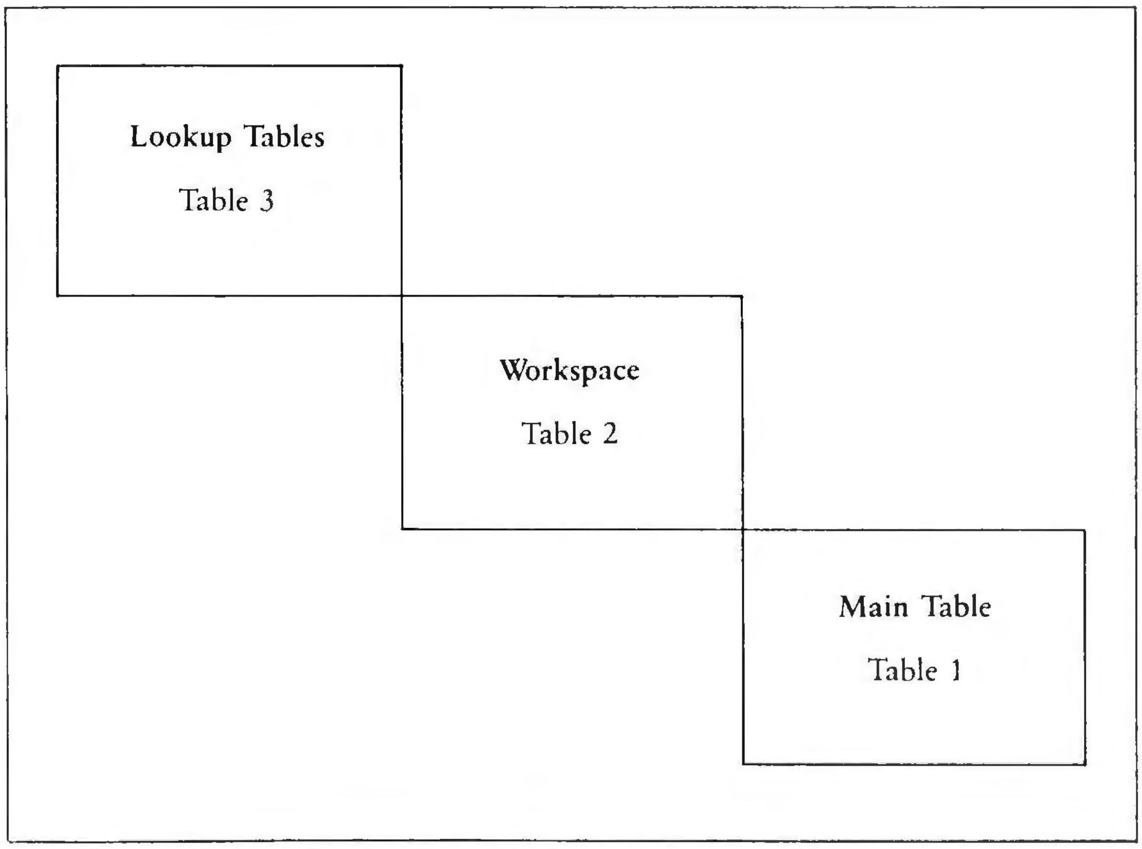


Figure 1: Arrange Tables 1, 2, and 3 in this stepwise manner.

Completing the Table

Complete the worksheet by replicating the formulas in the first row of Table 1 down their respective columns. Before you do the replication, however, enter dots (....) into those columns where you'll be entering information, move the cursor to AF62, and set the graph format by typing /F*. Enter percent signs into columns AM, AP, and AR. The dots remind you where you need to make entries when filling out the worksheet, and the percent signs signify the values that are percentages rather than dollars and cents. The columns containing the percent signs are so narrow that their column letters don't appear at the top of the *SuperCalc* screen, but the columns can be viewed by moving the worksheet cursor across row 62.

Replicate row 62 down the worksheet, allowing all the formula references to adjust, except the one in column AE that refers to cell X31. Today's Date is the same for each stock, so the reference in column AE to cell X31 is not relative. (Remember that until we construct Table 2, which contains the information for cell X31, column AE will contain zeros and AF will be blank.) Table 1 has ten rows for ten stocks, but you should make the table large enough to hold your portfolio, plus some room to grow.

The formulas in the Total line (row 73) are listed in the lower right of Table 1. These are simple summation functions and formulas to calculate percentage changes. Notice that the range of the summation functions includes the row of dashes at the top and the row of double dashes at the bottom. These are evaluated as zeros; using them means that you can insert or delete any row in the table—including the first or the last—and not have to worry about upsetting the range of a summation function.

Using the Worksheet

Constructing this electronic worksheet is an exacting task, but the result is worthwhile. You can update the table quickly and add new purchases and remove sales easily.

By the way, if you haven't saved a copy of the worksheet on disk, do so now.

```
    : AA :: AB::   AC  ::   AD  :: AE ::     AF    ::   AG  ::   AH  ::   AI  ::   AJ  ::  AK  ::  AL : :   AN   ::   AO  : :  AQ :
42:
43:                                                   COLUMN WIDTH SETTINGS
44:=================================================================================================================================
45:   6    5      9       9     6       11        9        9        9        9       8       7  1     10        9   1   7   1
46:=================================================================================================================================
47:
48:PRINT:AA50:AQ75   [CTRL]-[O]
49:WorkSpace IS LOCATED AT: J33
50:
51:                                         KEEPING TRACK OF YOUR STOCKS
52:
53:                                                                                 TODAY'S DJIA:                 1088.91
54:     TODAY'S DATE                                                                YESTERDAY'S DJIA:             1087.43
55:     MO  DAY YEAR                                                                % CHANGE  IN DJIA:                .14%
56:      2   17 1983                                                                % CHANGE  IN PORTFOLIO:           .97%
57:
58:                                                                                   CHANGE FROM     OVERALL  OVERALL  ANNUAL
59: STOCK # OF       PURCHASE       DAYS  LONG TERM     YESTERDAY'S           TODAY'S         YESTERDAY    $ GAIN OR       %        %
60:SYMBOL SHS.  PRICE      VALUE OWNED    ??????? PRICE      VALUE     PRICE     VALUE        $        %  LOSS (-)   CHANGE  CHANGE
61:---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
62:IBM     100    88.25  8870.00   41                98.875  9804.03  98.875  9804.03      .00     .00%     934.03    10.53%  93.74%
63:CSC     400   20.625   331.75  845  *******         21.5  8517.20     21.5  8517.20     .00      .00%    185.45     2.23%    .96%
64:UAL     125   29.875  3790.63  618 *******        31.75  3912.50       33  4068.75  156.25    3.99%     278.13     7.34%   4.33%
65:DEC     200  104.375 20965.00  104               123.75 24660.00   126.25 25160.00  500.00    2.03%    4195.00    20.01%  70.23%
66:BUD      75     51.5  3896.25  407 *******       64.875  4800.43   65.375  4843.95   43.52     .91%     947.70    24.32%  21.81%
67:AAPL    250    19.75  5003.13  105               44.375 11003.47       44 10910.00  -93.47    -.85%    5906.88   118.06% 410.41%
68:...     ...    .....      .00    0                  ...    .....      ...      .00     .00     .00%        .00      .00%    .00%
69:...     ...    .....      .00    0                  ...    .....      ...      .00     .00     .00%        .00      .00%    .00%
70:...     ...    .....      .00    0                  ...    .....      ...      .00     .00     .00%        .00      .00%    .00%
71:...     ...    .....      .00    0                  ...    .....      ...      .00     .00     .00%        .00      .00%    .00%
72:=================================================================================================================================
73:TOTAL                  50856.75                           62697.63          63303.93  606.30     .97%   12447.18    24.47%
74:


75:
76:CONTENTS OF                                          CONTENTS OF
77:CELLS  IN ROW 62                                     CELLS  IN ROW 73
78:
79:AD62   (AB62*AC62)+R38                               AD73      SUM(AD61:AD72)
80:
81:AE62   IF(AB62=0,0,X31-X38)                          AH73      SUM(AH61:AH72)
82:
83:AF62   IF(AE62>=365,7,0)                             AJ73      SUM(AJ61:AJ72)
84:
85:AJ62   (AI62*AB62)-W38                               AK73      SUM(AK61:AK72)
86:
87:AK62   AJ62-AH62                                     AL73      IF(AH73=0,0,(AK73/AH73)*100)
88:
89:AL62   IF(AH62=0,0,((AJ62-AH62)/AH62)*100)           AN73      SUM(AN61:AN72)
90:
91:AN62   AJ62-AD62                                     AO73      IF(AD73=0,0,((AJ73/AD73)-1)*100)
92:
93:AO62   IF(AD62=0,0,(AN62/AD62)*100)
94:
95:AQ62   IF(AE62=0,0,(AO62/AE62)*365)
96:
97:
98:CONTENTS OF
99:CELLS AO55 AND AO56
100:
101:AO55   IF(AO54=0,0,(((AO53-AO54)/AO54)*100))
102:
103:AO56   AL73
104:
```

Table 1: The Stock Tracking Worksheet

To use the worksheet the first time, enter the symbol, the number of shares, and the purchase price per share for each of your stocks into the first three columns of the table. Enter the day's date into cells AA56, AB56, and AC56. Enter today's DJIA into cell AO53, and the day before's DJIA into cell AO54. Enter yesterday's stock prices into the column labeled Today's Price, and press the exclamation mark to calculate the values on the worksheet. After the values have been calculated, move the entries in columns AI and AJ (Today's Price and Today's Value) to columns AG and AH (Yesterday's Price and Yesterday's Value). Do this by using the *SuperCalc* copy command (/C). When you are asked for the range of the cells you wish to copy, type

AI62:AJ71

When you press ENTER after the last cell address of the source range, *SuperCalc* asks for the cell address of the upper-left corner of the target range. Type AG62 , the first cell in the Yesterday's Price column, but don't press ENTER yet. Pressing ENTER transfers all the formulas in the source range, but you want to transfer only the values, so type a comma. *SuperCalc* asks if you want N (no adjust), A (ask for adjust), or V (values). To copy values only, type a V.

Now you're ready to enter today's prices into column AI and press the exclamation mark to evaluate your portfolio. Each day, when you update the table, all you have to do is enter the date, move the entries in Today's DJIA down to Yesterday's DJIA, enter the current day's DJIA, move the figures for Today's Price and Value into Yesterday's Price and Value, enter the current day's prices into the the appropriate cells, and press the exclamation mark to recalculate the worksheet. The updating procedure takes only a few moments.

The worksheet in Table 1 is changeable, so adapt it to your needs. You may want to calculate percentage distributions or compare a stock's value to certain predetermined values. Some experts, for example, recommend selling if a stock drops 10 percent. If you wish, dividends can be included and total returns (capital gains plus dividends) calculated for each stock.

Laying Out the Work Space

The work space in Table 2 is where commissions are calculated and numbers are assigned to the purchase date and to the current day's date so that the number of days between dates can be calculated.

Before laying out the work space, adjust the column widths as indicated at the top of Table 2. Copy the titles and row headings and the formulas listed at the bottom of Table 2 into the appropriate cells. Use /C to copy the list of stock symbols in column AA into column J, beginning with cell J38. Enter the purchase date for each stock into columns K, L, and M.

Days Owned

When the information in Table 2 is filled in, columns AE and AF in Table 1 will also be complete. Let's return briefly to that table to review the two simple formulas for these columns.

Column AE displays the number of days you've owned each stock. Look at the formula in cell AE62.

IF(AB62=0,0,X31-X38)

The last part, X31-X38, subtracts the purchase date number (cell X38) from the number assigned to Today's Day (X31). The IF function prevents the number for Today's Day from appearing whenever an entry is not made in a row. Instead, the IF function assigns a zero to the cell.

> Knowing the number of days since you purchased a stock can be helpful with your taxes.

With the help of an IF function and the graph format we set when we constructed Table 1, column AF sets a flag (a row of seven asterisks) if the Days Owned column value is 365 or greater. The formula that sets the asterisks in cell AF62 is

IF(AE62>=365,7,0)

This IF function asks, "Is the value in AE62 (the number of days you've owned a stock) greater than or equal to 365?" If the value is greater than or equal to 365, then the comparison is true and the first alternative of the IF function is executed. This alternative places a 7 into the cell, and the graph format converts the 7 into asterisks. If the comparison is false, the second alternative is executed and a zero is entered into the cell.

Calculating the Commission

For a better understanding of how to use the work space, look at how the commission rates are calculated. Stock commissions are made up of a combination of a flat fee and a percentage fee based on the value of the transaction. Each stock sale is subject to a minimum and maximum commission based on the number of shares traded. The commission schedule in Table 4 is for Charles Schwab and Co., Inc., the largest discount brokerage firm in the United States. Schwab's commission schedule is typical of what you would find at other brokerage houses. At Schwab the minimum commission is 8 cents per share on trades of up to 600 shares and 4 cents per share thereafter. The maximum commission, on trades of 100 shares or more, is 45 cents per share.

The easiest way to find a commission rate is to use the LOOKUP functions in this worksheet. Every LOOKUP function consists of a search argument and a range of cells that gives the location of the lookup table. The LOOKUP function in cell N38, for example, looks up the commission rate based on the value of the transaction.

LOOKUP (AB62*AC62,B10:B14)

In this formula, AB62*AC62 is the search argument and BIO:B14 is the location of the lookup table. The search argument is the value of the transaction. Check cells B10 to B14 in the lookup table in Table 3 for the search argument.

A LOOKUP function looks through a table to find the largest value that is less than or equal to the value of the search argument. After the largest value is found, the function returns the corresponding percentage value and puts it in the cell containing the LOOKUP function. In this case, the search argument is $8825 and the largest value in the lookup table less than or equal to this value is $7001. Thus, the LOOKUP function returns .003 and puts it in the appropriate cell in the Com. Rate column in Table 2. This means that for a transaction of $8825 there is a commission rate of 3 percent.

Once you've found the commission rate, you can calculate the total commission based on the value of the

```
  :   J   ::K:: L :: M ::  N ::   O   ::   P   ::   Q   ::   R   :: S ::   T   ::   U   ::   V   ::   W   ::   X   ::
21:
22:                                              COLUMN WIDTH SETTINGS
23:=====================================================================================================================
24:    9     3   5    5     6       9        9        9        9      6       9        9        9        9        9
25:=====================================================================================================================
26:          PRINT J28:X49   [CTRL]-[O]
27:          MAIN TABLE IS LOCATED AT:AA50
28:
29:                                                      WORKSPACE
30:
31:                                                                                # OF TODAY'S DAY:  2971
32:
33:                                    PURCHASE VALUES                          TODAY'S VALUES
34:                          ------------------------------------------  ----------------------------------------  # OF
35:STOCK     PURCHASE DATE  COM.    VALUE     MIN.     MAX.   CORRECT  COM.    VALUE     MIN.     MAX.   CORRECT PURCHASE
36:SYMBOL     MO  DAY YEAR  RATE    COM.      COM.     COM.     COM.   RATE    COM.      COM.     COM.     COM.      DAY
37:---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
38:IBM         1    4 1983  .003    83.48     8.00    45.00    45.00  .003    86.66     8.00    83.48    83.48     2930
39:CSC        10   23 1980  .003    81.75    32.00   180.00    81.75  .003    82.80    32.00   180.00    82.80     2126
40:UAL         6    7 1981  .006    58.41    10.00    56.25    56.25  .006    60.75    10.00    56.25    56.25     2353
41:DEC        12    3 1982  .003   119.63    16.00    90.00    90.00  .003   132.75    16.00    90.00    90.00     2867
42:BUD         1    3 1982  .006    59.18     6.00    33.75    33.75  .006    65.42     6.00    59.18    59.18     2564
43:AAPL       29    2 1982  .006    65.63    20.00   112.50    65.63  .003    90.00    20.00   112.50    90.00     2866
44: ...      .. ... ....     0        .00      .00      .00      .00    0        .00      .00      .00      .00        0
45: ...      .. ... ....     0        .00      .00      .00      .00    0        .00      .00      .00      .00        0
46: ...      .. ... ....     0        .00      .00      .00      .00    0        .00      .00      .00      .00        0
47: ...      .. ... ....     0        .00      .00      .00      .00    0        .00      .00      .00      .00        0
48:=====================================================================================================================
49:
50:          CONTENTS OF
51:          CELL...
52:
53:          N38     LOOKUP(AB62*AC62,B10:B14)
54:
55:          O38     LOOKUP(N38,E10:E13)+AB62*AC62*N38
56:
57:          P38     IF(AB62<600,AB62*.08,((AB62-600)*.04)+42)

59:          Q38     IF(AB62>0,AB62*.45,O38)
60:
61:          R38     IF(P38>O38,P38,IF(Q38<O38,Q38,O38))
62:
63:          S38     LOOKUP(AB62*AI62,B10:B14)
64:
65:          T38     LOOKUP(S38,E10:E13)+AB62*AI62*S38
66:
67:          U38     IF(AB62<600,AB62*.08,((AB62-600)*.04)+42)
68:
69:          V38     IF(AB62>100,AB62*.45,O38)
70:
71:          W38     IF(U38>T38,U38,IF(V38<T38,V38,T38))
72:
73:          X38     L38+LOOKUP(K38,B21:B33)+LOOKUP(M38,E21:E32)+IF(K38>2,LOOKUP(M38,H21:H32),0)
74:
75:
76:          X31     AB56+LOOKUP(AA56,B21:B33)+LOOKUP(AC56,E21:E32)+IF(AA56>2,LOOKUP(AC56,H21:H32),0)
77:
78:
```

Table 2: Calculations and Formulas for Stock Commissions

trade. Remember that each commission is made up of a flat dollar amount and a percentage of the value of the trade. Using a LOOKUP function, you can find the appropriate amount for each transaction. In Table 2 the formulas entered into column O under the heading Value Com. calculate this amount for each stock in your portfolio.

Recall that the Schwab commission schedule also specifies a minimum and maximum commission based on the number of shares traded. These commissions are figured in columns P (Min. Com.) and Q (Max. Com.). The following formula is entered in cell P38 and calculates the minimum commission for the first entry in the workspace table.

```
IF(AB62<600,AB62*0.08,((AB62-600)*0.4)+42)
```

The comparison in the IF function asks, "Is the number of shares in AB62 less than 600?" If the number of shares is less than 600, the comparison is true and the first alternative, which calculates the commission at the rate of 8 cents per share, is calculated. If the number of shares is 600 or more, the second alternative is calculated. This alternative adds $42 (the commission on 600 shares at 8 cents per share) to 4 cents times the number of shares over 600.

The maximum commission, listed in column Q under the title Max. Com., is calculated by a similar formula.

The Correct Commission

There are three commissions that might apply to the sale of a stock: the commission based on value, the minimum commission, and the maximum commmission. Use an IF function to find the correct one. The IF function entered into cell R38 is

IF(P38>O38,P38,IF(Q38<O38,Q38,O38))

In this formula O38 is the commission based on value, P38 is the minimum commission, and Q38 is the maximum commission. The comparison asks, "Is the minimum commission larger than the commission based on value?" If so, the first alternative is executed and the minimum commission is the correct commission. If the comparison is false, the second alternative is executed, in which case another IF function asks, "Is the maximum commission less than the commission based on value?" If so, this function's first alternative is executed and the maximum commission is the correct commission. If this comparison is false, the second alternative of this IF function is executed and the commission based on the transaction value is the correct value.

The work space must also calculate the various commissions that apply to each stock's current value. The formulas to do this are entered into columns S through W.

To complete this part of the work space, replicate the formulas in the first row of the table, columns N to W, down to the bottom of the table. Include enough rows to accommodate your current portfolio and, in anticipation of a bullish market, your future portfolio.

When replicating the formulas, keep all references except the ones to the locations of various lookup tables relative to their current locations. Ask *SuperCalc* to specify each reference individually, or the program will automatically make all references relative.

Days Between Dates

For tax purposes, a stock held for more than 1 year is a long-term capital asset. Gains on long-term assets are taxed at substantially lower rates than ordinary income, while long-

:	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1:									
2:									
3:									
4:			LOOKUP TABLES FOR STOCK TRANSACTIONS						
5:									
6:		COMMISSION RATE			DOLLAR COMMISSION				
7:									
8:			COM.		COM.	$			
9:		AMOUNT	RATE		RATE	AMT.			
10:		0	0		0	0			
11:		.001	.012		.003	57			
12:		3001	.006		.006	36			
13:		7001	.003		.012	18			
14:		56001	N/A						
15:									
16:				LOOKUP TABLES FOR DAYS BETWEEN DATES					
17:									
18:	MONTHS TABLE				YEARS TABLE			YEARS TABLE	
19:									
20:	MONTH	#	DAYS		YEAR	# OF DAYS		LEAP YEARS	
21:		0	0		0	0		0	0
22:	JAN	1	0		1975	0		1975	0
23:	FEB	1	31		1976	365		1976	1
24:	MR	2	59		1977	731		1977	0
25:	APRIL	3	90		1978	1096		1978	0
26:	MAY	4	120		1979	1434		1979	0
27:	JUNE	5	151		1980	1799		1980	1
28:	JULY	6	181		1981	2165		1981	0
29:	AUG	7	212		1982	2530		1982	0
30:	SEPT	8	243		1983	2895		1983	0
31:	OCT	9	273		1984	3260		1984	1
32:	NOV	10	304		1985	3626		2062	0
33:	DEC	11	334						
34:									
35:									
36:									
37:									
38:									
39:									
40:									

Table 3: Lookup Tables

Reprinted with permission of Charles Schwab and Co., Inc.

Dollar Range Per Transaction	Commission Rates
$ 0–3000	$18 + 1.2% of principal amount
$3001–7000	$36 + 0.6% of principal amount
$7001–56,000*	$57 + 0.3% of principal amount

*Over $56,000 principal amount the commission charge is 72% below fixed rates in effect prior to 5/1/75 but not less than $225.

The above rates are subject to minimums and maximums. Minimum charge is 8 cents per share for the first 600 shares and 4 cents per share thereafter. Maximum commission is 45 cents per share for orders of 100 or more shares.

Table 4: Charles Schwab and Co., Inc., Stock Transaction Commission Schedule

term losses result in substantially less tax savings than their short-term counterparts. Consequently, knowing the number of days since you purchased a stock can be helpful with your taxes.

Before examining the formula that assigns a number to a specific date, review the numbering system in the bottom half of Table 3. The Months Table shows the numbers assigned to each month (e.g., January, 1; February, 2). Beside the month numbers are the numbers of days that have elapsed since the first of the year up to the first day of each month (e.g., February, 31; March, 59).

The value of your holdings is summarized at the bottom of the worksheet, and the portfolio's performance is compared with the change in the DJIA over the same period.

The Years Table indicates the number of days that have elapsed each year. In the example, the numbering system begins with zero on January 1, 1975. Start this part of your lookup table with the year in which you purchased your oldest stock.

Finally, to make amends for leap years, there is a leap year lookup table. Next to each year listed is a zero or a one; zeros indicate normal years and ones indicate leap years.

Once you understand the numbering system, you can examine the formula in cell X31 of Table 2 that assigns the number to Today's Day.

```
AB56+LOOKUP(AA56,B21:B33)+LOOKUP
  (AC56,E21:E32)+IF(AA56>2,LOOKUP(A
  C56,H21:H32),0)
```

This formula is made up of a series of simple LOOKUP functions. The number assigned to Today's Day is the sum of the number of the day of the month, the number of days between the first day of the current year and the first day of the current month, the number of days elapsed since the beginning of the numbering system and the first day of the current year, and the leap year adjustment.

On Your Own

The worksheet in this article uses IF and LOOKUP functions extensively and can serve as an example of how to use these functions to make other electronic worksheets. Once the worksheet is constructed, it can perform a large number of calculations quickly and easily. With a minimum of effort you can know just how well your stock portfolio is doing each day.

Use this worksheet as a starting point for your own modifications. One of the great strengths of electronic worksheets is that they can be modified to suit the user's needs. Take advantage of this flexibility to build in the comparisons you need and to omit the ones you don't need.

Then, with the help of this worksheet, just keep on trackin'.

Adapted from the forthcoming book WHAT IF...A Guide to Using Electronic Spreadsheets on the IBM Personal Computer *by Andrew T. Williams, copyright 1983, to be published by John Wiley & Sons.*

If you want a copy of this worksheet but don't feel like constructing it yourself, send your address and a check for $10 to cover the cost of a disk, postage, and handling to Andrew T. Williams, Keeping Track of Your Stocks, P.O. Box 9563, Berkeley, CA 94707. Please specify whether you would like the model in SuperCalc *or* VisiCalc *form. To use the worksheet disk you'll need your own copy of the appropriate spreadsheet program.*

SuperCalc
Sorcim Corporation
2310 Lundy Ave.
San Jose, CA 95131
408/942-1727
List Price: $195
Requirements: 64K, one disk drive

HARD.

The world's first no-risk hard disk.

As if buying your computer wasn't a tough enough decision in the first place, now you've decided to upgrade to a Winchester.

So you're faced with the same old problem all over again: Which make? Will it work properly? What if it breaks? Do I really need it? What if I make the wrong choice?

DATAMAC answers these questions. We're pioneers in peripherals for the IBM® P.C. We've developed internal and external Winchester Disk Drive Systems that eliminate uncertainty.

With Error Checking and Correction, the accuracy of your data is guaranteed, automatically. And each Winchester comes with variable formating capability that lets you use the disk the way you want, not the way the manufacturer dictates. For safety and convenience the DATAMAC Winchester and your IBM P.C. power on and off with the same switch.

Your drive comes with a *two year warranty*, not the usual 90 days. Plus, the controller has a *lifetime warranty*.

And the best reason to buy is on the next page.

IF YOU'RE CONFUSED ABOUT BUYING A PERSONAL COMPUTER, HERE'S SOME HELP.

Computers come in two parts.

One part is the "hardware," the machinery itself. The other is the "software," which tells a computer what to do, the way a driver tells a car what to do.

Without software, a computer can't do anything. And vice versa. You have to buy both.

Buy the software first.

Since the reason you're buying a computer is to get the capability the software gives you (remember it's the software that tells the computer what to do), it makes good sense to pick the software first.

Start by making a list of the things you want the computer to do. Possibilities include word processing, inventory control, accounting, graphics, recordkeeping—you name it, there's probably software that does it.

Next take your list into a computer store and ask the salesperson to demonstrate software that will do the things you want.

Even though you'll need a computer for the demonstration, keep in mind the computer is just a vehicle. The software is the driver. Once you've decided on software, picking the rest of the computer system will be that much easier.

The simpler the better.

Some people will tell you that software has to be complicated to be powerful. Nothing could be further from the truth.

Good personal software should be, as the computer people say, "friendly." Meaning that it helps you do what you want to do without getting in the way.

Good software keeps the complications in the computer, where they belong. And keeps the capability at your fingertips. It's that simple.

Simply see for yourself.

You can read any number of interesting books and magazines about personal computers. You can ask your friends who have them.

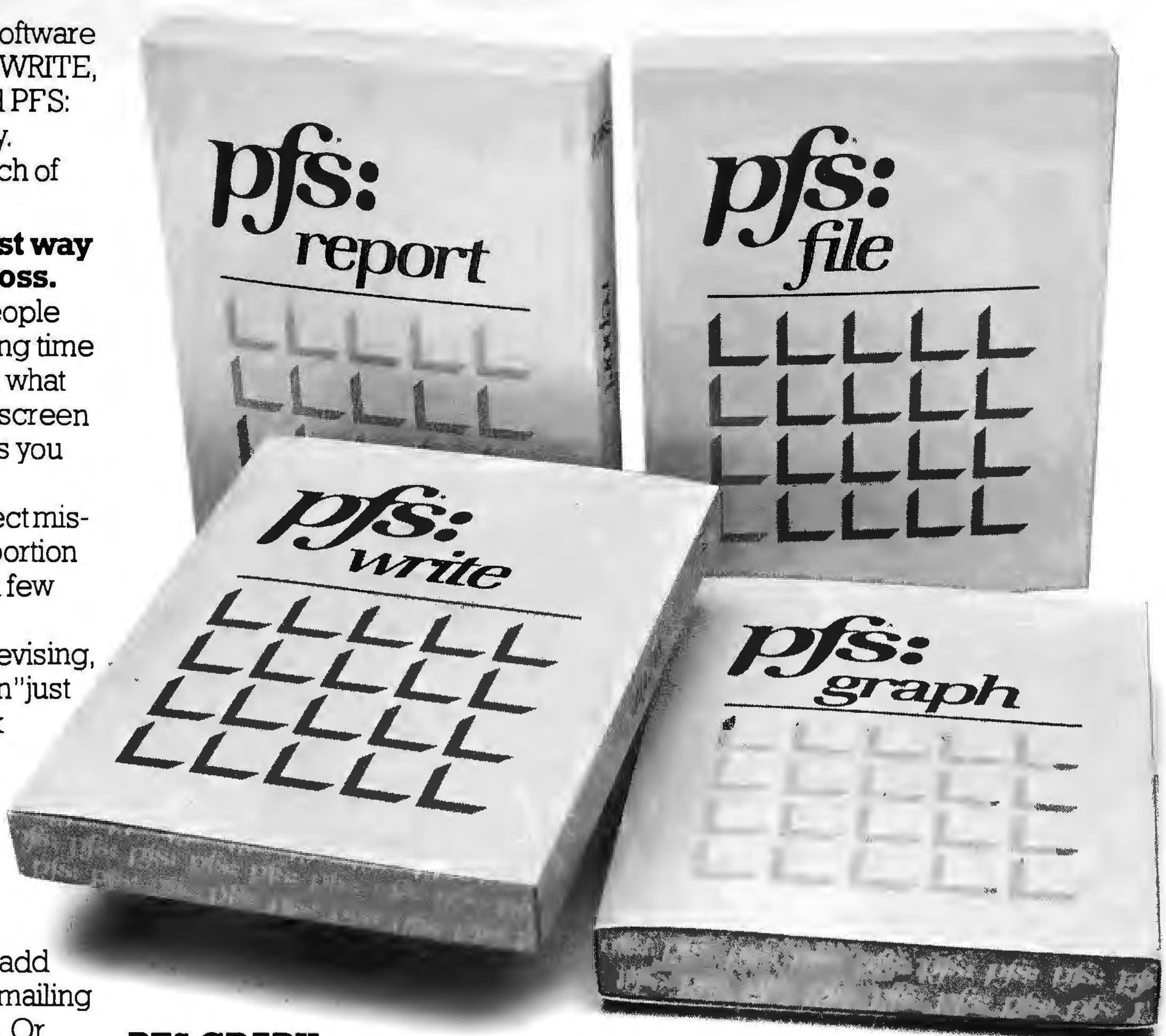
Or look at all the sales literature you can get your hands on.

But as helpful as that can be, there's no substitute for a live demonstration.

When you do go shopping, we recommend you take a look at the PFS® Family of Software.

Designed the way we think a software family should be: simple, straightforward and powerful.

Currently there are four software packages in the family: PFS:WRITE, PFS:FILE, PFS:REPORT and PFS: GRAPH, with more on the way. Here's a little more about each of them.



PFS:WRITE. The simplest way to get your message across.

PFS:WRITE is ideal for people who want to make their writing time more productive. It displays what you write on your computer screen so you can make revisions as you compose.

With WRITE, you can correct misspellings or substitute one portion of text for another, with just a few keystrokes.

And when you're through revising, WRITE shows you "on-screen" just how your document will look when it's printed. So there are no surprises afterwards.

WRITE also works with most popular software programs, including the PFS Family of Software.

This feature allows you to add names and addresses from mailing lists to generate form letters. Or combine columns of numbers or graphs with your text.

PFS:FILE. The simplest way to get organized.

FILE is basically a paper filing system without the paper. So you can record, file, retrieve and review information in a fraction of the time it takes with a conventional filing system.

With FILE, you arrange your information on a "form" you design yourself. And when you need to track something down, FILE sorts through your records electronically. It lets you retrieve information in a variety of ways so you can be as selective as you want.

PFS:REPORT. The simplest way to sum it all up.

REPORT is a powerful analysis tool that works with FILE.

REPORT sorts through your files and retrieves the information you're looking for. Then assembles it all into one report, so you can analyze, plan and make better-informed decisions.

REPORT is also good at math. It quickly sorts through columns of numbers and performs calculations, so you won't have to.

PFS:GRAPH. The simplest way to spot trends.

GRAPH is ideally suited for professionals who need charts or graphs in a hurry.

All you do is specify the kind of graph or chart you want and enter the information. GRAPH does the rest.

GRAPH transforms columns of facts and figures into pie, line and bar charts so you can spot trends quickly and make better-informed decisions.

GRAPH works with PFS: WRITE, PFS:FILE, VisiCalc® files or data entered directly into the computer. And supports most popular printers and plotters.

Send for our Free PFS Software Catalog.

It'll tell you more about the PFS Family of Software and how to use it.

It's free. And all you have to do to get one is return the coupon below or see your participating PFS dealer.

The PFS Family of Software.

We've already made computers simpler to use.

Now we're making them simpler to buy.

FREE

PFS SOFTWARE CATALOG

Name ____________

Address ____________

City ____________

State ________ Zip ________

I plan to use a personal computer:
☐ at home ☐ at work ☐ both

Mail to: **PFS, 422 Aldo, Santa Clara, CA 95050**

Subscribe Now

Don't miss our Charter Subscription Offer:

- 3 Free issues of PC World
- Up to 55% off the newsstand price.

This is a limited time offer...act now to avoid disappointment!

CHARTER PRICES:
15 issues, $24.00
27 issues, $39.00
36 issues, $53.00

PC WORLD
Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, NJ 07621

Toll-free order lines, for VISA and MasterCard orders: 800-247-5470 (in Iowa call 800-532-1272)

I ACCEPT! Please enroll me as a Charter Subscriber to PC WORLD.

☐ Bill Me ☐ Payment Enclosed

☐ VISA and MasterCard orders, call toll-free: 800-247-5470 (In Iowa: 800-532-1272)

Please send me:

☐ 15 issues/$24 ☐ 27 issues/$39 ☐ 39 issues/$53

These rates are for the U.S. and Canada. Foreign rates must be prepaid in U.S. currency, $48/15 issues (surface mail) $125/15 issues (air mail). Please allow 6–8 weeks for delivery.

Name ____________________

Company ____________________

Address ____________________

City, State, Zip ____________________

PC WORLD

Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, NJ 07621 J2047

I ACCEPT! Please enroll me as a Charter Subscriber to PC WORLD.

☐ Bill Me ☐ Payment Enclosed

☐ VISA and MasterCard orders, call toll-free: 800-247-5470 (In Iowa: 800-532-1272)

Please send me:

☐ 15 issues/$24 ☐ 27 issues/$39 ☐ 39 issues/$53

These rates are for the U.S. and Canada. Foreign rates must be prepaid in U.S. currency, $48/15 issues (surface mail) $125/15 issues (air mail). Please allow 6–8 weeks for delivery.

Name ____________________

Company ____________________

Address ____________________

City, State, Zip ____________________

PC WORLD

Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, NJ 07621 J2047

I ACCEPT! Please enroll me as a Charter Subscriber to PC WORLD.

☐ Bill Me ☐ Payment Enclosed

☐ VISA and MasterCard orders, call toll-free: 800-247-5470 (In Iowa: 800-532-1272)

Please send me:

☐ 15 issues/$24 ☐ 27 issues/$39 ☐ 39 issues/$53

These rates are for the U.S. and Canada. Foreign rates must be prepaid in U.S. currency, $48/15 issues (surface mail) $125/15 issues (air mail). Please allow 6–8 weeks for delivery.

Name ____________________

Company ____________________

Address ____________________

City, State, Zip ____________________

PC WORLD

Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, NJ 07621 J2047

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY CARD

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 63 BERGENFIELD, NJ

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

PC WORLD
Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, New Jersey 07621

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN
UNITED STATES

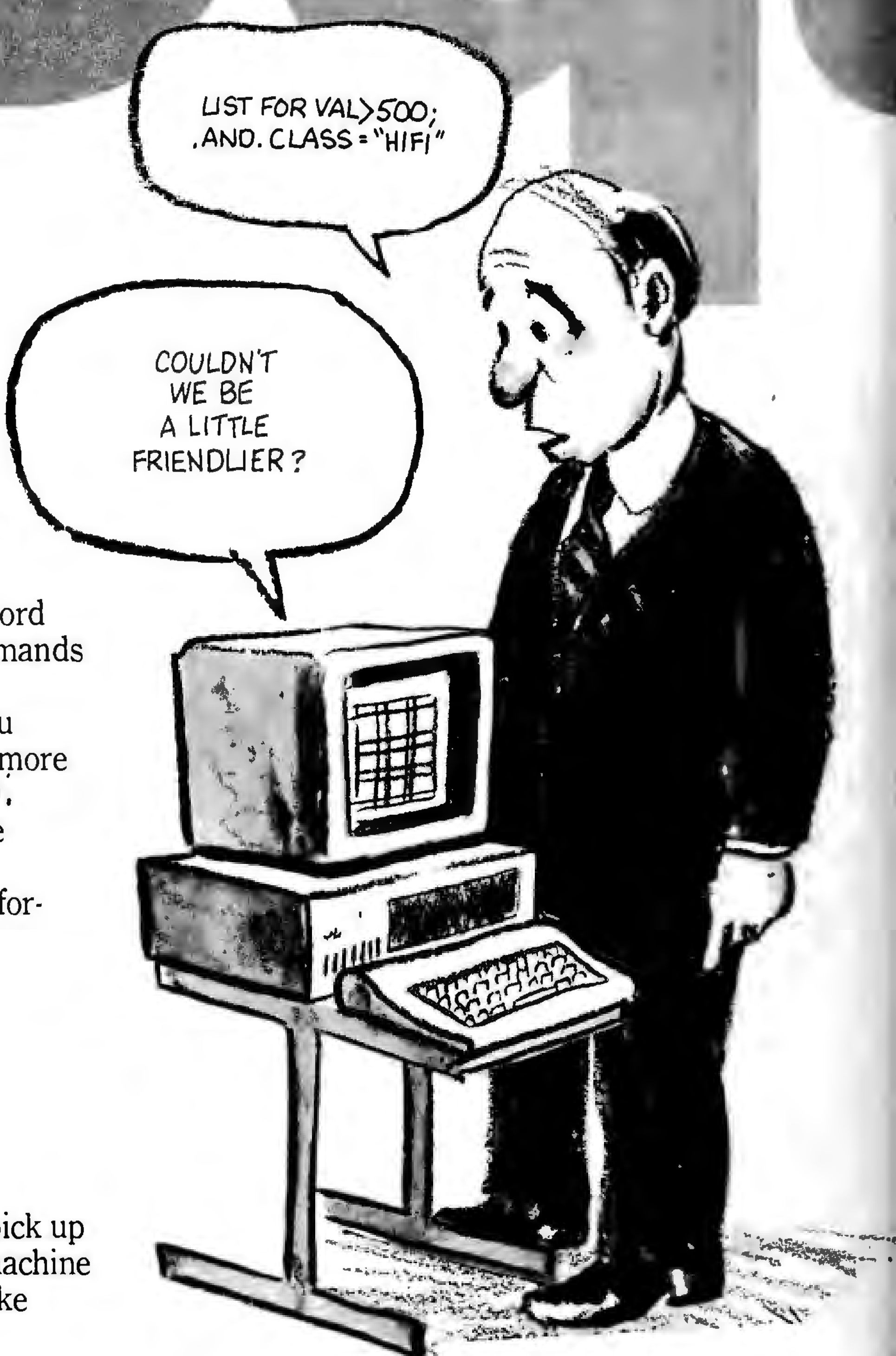
BUSINESS REPLY CARD

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 63 BERGENFIELD, NJ

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

PC WORLD
Subscription Department
P.O. Box 6700
Bergenfield, New Jersey 07621

Seq



An IBM PC database system that's easy to learn.

It could be the easiest database system yet.

Sequitur combines a relational database with a word processor and eliminates the arbitrary codes and commands that clutter other systems.

Consider the command in the cartoon. It's how you might ask dBASE II for a list of stereo systems worth more than $500. If you forget one of the periods around .AND. or the " = " or the quotes around "HI FI" your machine won't know what you're talking about.

Sequitur is another story. If you want the same information, you see this on the screen.

ITEM	VALUE	CLASS

You fill in

ITEM	VALUE	CLASS
	>500	HI FI

And Sequitur takes it from there. Anybody can pick up the Sequitur operating manual, sit down in front of a machine and start organizing data. Even unassisted, it won't take more than a few hours of exploring.

If you're new to database management, Sequitur couldn't be easier.

itur™

An IBM PC database system that's easy to live with.

As you become familiar with your database system, you tend to forget how easy or how hard it was to learn. You become far more concerned with its capabilities.

On the IBM PC, Sequitur shines. On the new IBM PC XT, it shines even more.

You'll be impressed with Sequitur's editing capabilities, efficient data storage and fully-integrated word processing.

You'll like the way Sequitur moves effortlessly from data entry to database management to word processing, report generation, preprinted forms, mailing lists and document management.

But if you spend a good part of your life with your database, you'll come to appreciate Sequitur's flexibility more than any other feature. A rigid database structure annoys you in little ways, like chopping the last couple of letters off the long addresses in your mailing list. It also annoys you in big ways, like making you reprogram your entire database in order to add extra information. Modifying your database is as easy as typing another entry in a table.

When you compare Sequitur feature-for-feature with other IBM PC database systems, it's no contest. Yet Sequitur is priced reasonably—just a bit higher than dBASE II.

For the name of your nearest Sequitur dealer call us. Or, ask your IBM PC or Fortune 32:16 dealer. The rest is easy.

Sequitur. There's never been an easier way to organize data.

Pacific Software Manufacturing Company, Tenth and Parker, Berkeley CA 94710 (415) 486-2070.

Sequitur is a trademark of the Community Memory Project. dBASE II is a trademark of Ashton-Tate, Inc.

Getting to First Base

A tutorial for beginners that explores the purposes and fundamental concepts of data base management systems

David Frankel and Michael Guttman

All organizations and most individuals have to keep track of information that must be systematically organized for easy retrieval. Most people keep track of appointments, correspondence, and personal budgets. Businesses need records of inventory, creditors, and customers.

Many software packages for the IBM Personal Computer are designed to make effective record keeping easier. These programs are called data base management systems (DBMSs) or data base managers. A data base is simply information collected on disk. A DBMS is a set of programs that organizes and provides easy access to a data base.

Before using a DBMS you need to understand basic record-keeping concepts common to both manual and computerized systems. A hypothetical example of a manual record-keeping system used in a typical small business will help illustrate these concepts.

Manual System

Imagine you are running the business office of a small retail auto parts store that does not have a computer. You maintain two sets of records: one set contains information on every parts supplier your company does business with, and the second set lists the items in your company's inventory. You keep each set of records in a separate file cabinet drawer.

The set of supplier records is made up of folders, each of which contains information on a different supplier. Each folder contains the supplier's name, street address, city, state, and zip code. You label the folders with the suppliers' names and arrange them alphabetically.

The set of inventory records has one folder for each inventory item. Each folder contains the stock number used to identify the item, a title or description of the item, the quantity in stock, the quantity on order, the cost, the list price, and the supplier's name. The folder label lists the stock number, so you arrange the folders in numerical order.

DBMS Terminology

The manual record-keeping system just described makes understanding standard data base terminology easier. In the office, each set of records is contained in one file drawer; in a data base, each set of records is called a *file*. In this case you have a supplier file and an inventory file.

Each folder in a file drawer is represented in the data base by one *record* in a file. For example, the folder labeled Amalgamated Auto Supplies might be one of many records in the supplier file. The information in this record pertains solely to this supplier. Similarly, each data base record in the inventory file represents a folder with information regarding a particular inventory item.

In a data base the categories of information in each record are called *fields*. The list of fields for a file defines the structure for every record in the file. In other words, each record in a data base file has the same fields and uses the same field names. For example, each record in the supplier file includes the fields for name, street address, city, state, and zip code. The fields for each record in the inventory file are stock number, title, quantity in stock, quantity on order, cost, list price, and supplier's name. Figure 1 illustrates the hierarchy of files, records, and fields.

One field in each file plays a special role. The purpose of this field, called the *unique key*, is to unambiguously identify each record. The unique key for the supplier file is the supplier's name, because each supplier will probably have a different name. The unique key for the inventory file is the stock number, because only this field precisely identifies each record.

Related Files

A DBMS avoids repeating the same information in two different files whenever possible. Instead, files are related so that you can refer to a secondary file when you require further information on a field in the first file. Although the simplest DBMS software does not allow you to define relationships among files, we will assume the use of a slightly more sophisticated package as we continue with the office example to explain how this feature works.

An inventory record contains the field for a supplier's name, but the rest of the information about that supplier is in a record in the supplier file. Because the unique key for the supplier file (supplier's name) is included as a field in the inventory file, the inventory file is said to be related to the supplier file.

> A DBMS is a set of programs that organizes and provides easy access to a data base.

Suppose you decide to keep a file of all inventory item purchases. You create a purchases file that contains a record for each purchase. Each record shows the purchase number, the stock number, the quantity purchased, and the date purchased. In this file the purchase number is the unique key.

The purchases record does not have to contain information about the purchased inventory item (price, supplier's name, etc.) as long as it does contain the stock number of the inventory item. Remember, the stock number is the unique key for the inventory file, so you can use the purchases file to call on the inventory file if you need more information about an item. Figure 2 illustrates how the supplier file, the inventory file, and the purchases file are related.

Unique keys are very important in a system that uses related files. If an inventory record contained only the supplier's zip code instead of the supplier's name, the system could not precisely identify the supplier when looking at that record because many suppliers may have the same zip code. Without precise identification of a particular supplier you could not refer to the supplier file for further information.

A DBMS that uses related files performs a number of other special functions. For example, in the parts store when you enter a stock number into a record in the purchases file, the DBMS instantly determines whether a record in the inventory file has that stock number as its unique key. If the number entered is not found in the inventory file, a screen message appears to that effect and you have to enter the correct number. If the DBMS finds the stock number in the inventory file, other information, such as the description of the item, can be displayed on the screen.

Types of Files

The purchases file differs in some important respects from the supplier and inventory files. The purchases file contains data relating to business transactions. The supplier and inventory files contain background information useful to the organization. New records are added to the purchases file whenever a purchase is made, which may be several times per day. In contrast, new records are added to the supplier file infrequently—only when the company does business with a new supplier. Similarly, you would create a new record for an inventory file only when the company stocked a new item.

Although new records are frequently added to the purchases file, existing records are rarely altered. The information about a purchase would change only if the original entry contained an error. On the other hand, records in the inventory and supplier files change all the time. You must alter inventory records when the cost, the list price, the quantity in stock, or the quantity on order changes for an item. Whenever a supplier has a change of address you alter the supplier record.

A *master file* is a type of file that contains background information and has new records added to it infrequently, but whose existing records need to be revised routinely. The supplier and inventory files are master files. A *transaction file* is a file like the purchases file, which contains information about business transactions and has new records added to it frequently, but which has records that rarely change. A transaction file is almost always related to at least one other file, whereas master files are often not related to any other files.

Using a DBMS

In using almost any DBMS, whether simple or sophisticated, the first step is to define the files. You then define the fields contained in the file records. The DBMS prompts you to supply these specifications. To define a file you enter a title for the file, the maximum number of records for the file, and the total number of fields.

To define each field, you enter a title, the type, and the maximum length. The title is an identifying name for the field, such as address or stock number. The most common types of fields are numeric, character, logical, and date. A numeric field contains only numeric data, such as quantity or price. A character field, also called an alphanumeric field, may hold any characters, whether they are numbers, letters, or other symbols. One example is an address field. A logical field may be used whenever a simple yes or no answer is sufficient. The field type is important because the DBMS stores each type of data differently.

Specifying the length of a field means choosing the number of digits (whether letters or numbers) the field can hold. To specify the maximum length of a field, decide what the largest piece of data will be for any record in the file. For example, if no address will ever exceed 40 characters for any supplier record, then the

One field in each file plays a special role.

maximum length of the address field should be 40. If you will never keep more than 200 of any inventory item in stock, then the maximum length for the quantity in the stock field should be 3. A maximum length of 3 allows for a quantity up to 999. A quantity larger than 999 requires a field length of 4 digits or more. Careful choice of field lengths will result in the most efficient use of disk space. You don't need to specify the maximum length for the date field because it is always the same.

To finish defining the files, indicate the unique key field for each file. Figure 3 shows typical prompts and responses for defining the attributes of a file.

Data Entry

Once you define the files and fields, you can enter information into the files. When you select the data entry function, the DBMS prompts you to enter the name of the file that will hold the data. After the video screen clears, a new screen will appear that lists the titles of all the fields in that file. Next to each field title is a space, marked by beginning and closing brackets, for entering data. Figure 4 shows a sample data entry screen for the supplier file.

As part of the data entry function you may choose to enter new records or to list (display), edit, or delete an existing record. If you are entering a new record, the cursor moves to the beginning of the space next to the name of the first field. After typing in the data for the first field, you press ENTER and the cursor moves to the beginning of the space next to the name of the second field. When you

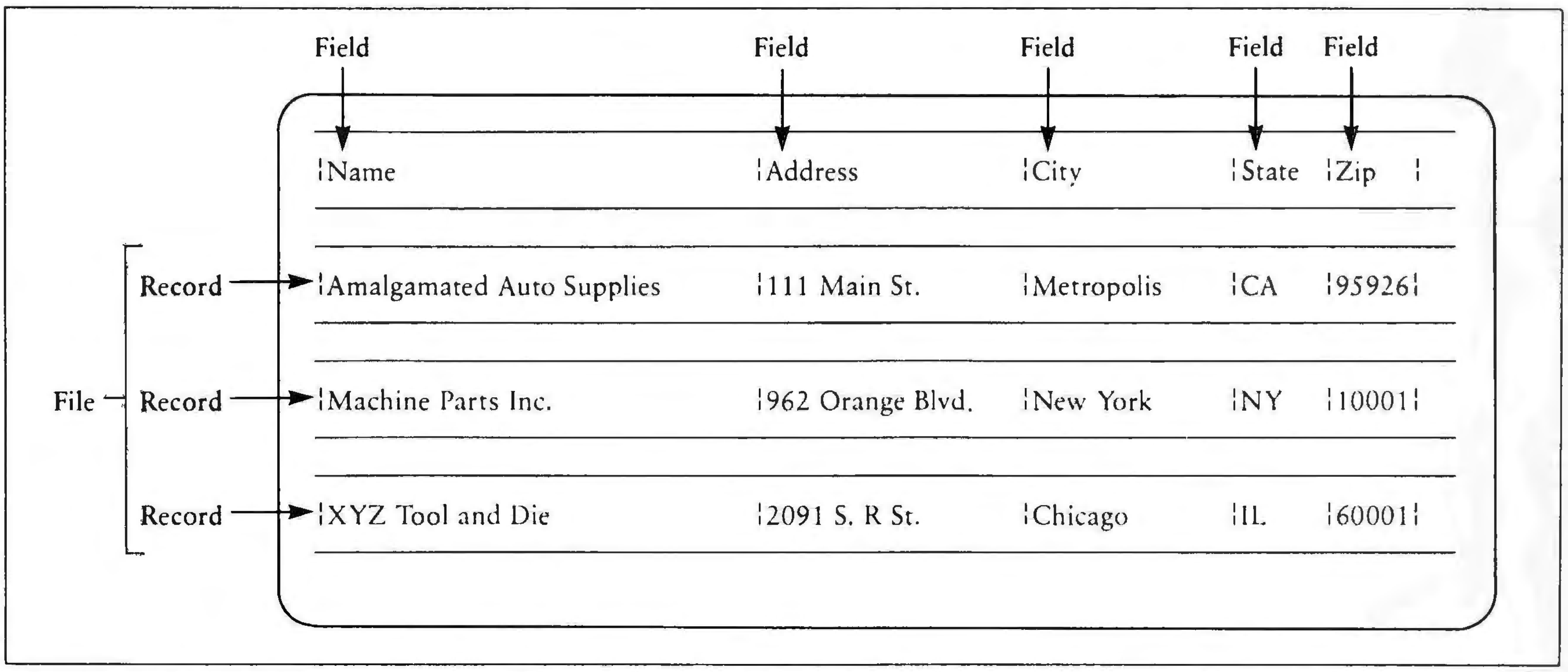


Figure 1: Fields, Records, and Files. The fields define the structure for each record in a file. A file consists of records that conform to the structure defined by the fields.

have entered information for each of the fields, one record for the file is complete. The spaces for entering data are then cleared and you repeat the process for the next record. Pressing a designated function key indicates that you will not enter any more records at that time.

For each field the DBMS checks that the data entered conforms to the field type. For example, if 'Amalgamated Auto Supplies' is entered for the zip code, a screen message tells you that the zip code is a numeric field. You then have the opportunity to reenter the zip code.

If you choose the list option for an existing record, the cursor moves to the unique key field. You enter the information that identifies the record you want to see. To display the supplier file, for example, you enter the name of a supplier. If the DBMS finds the record you've asked for, the information appears in the spaces next to the field names. A screen message informs you if the DBMS does not find the record.

If you choose to edit the record, a designated function key moves the cursor to the field you want to change. After entering the new information, you move the cursor to the next field you want to edit. Pressing a function key indicates the editing is complete.

If you select the delete option, a screen prompt asks you to confirm this request. The record is then removed from the file.

Think of the data entry screen as an electronic business form. When entering data you are essentially filling out a form on the screen. A well-designed DBMS should make data entry easy and efficient.

Reports

The DBMS functions described so far would be of little use unless you could easily get an overview of the information you've collected. A report is an overview of a selected portion of data.

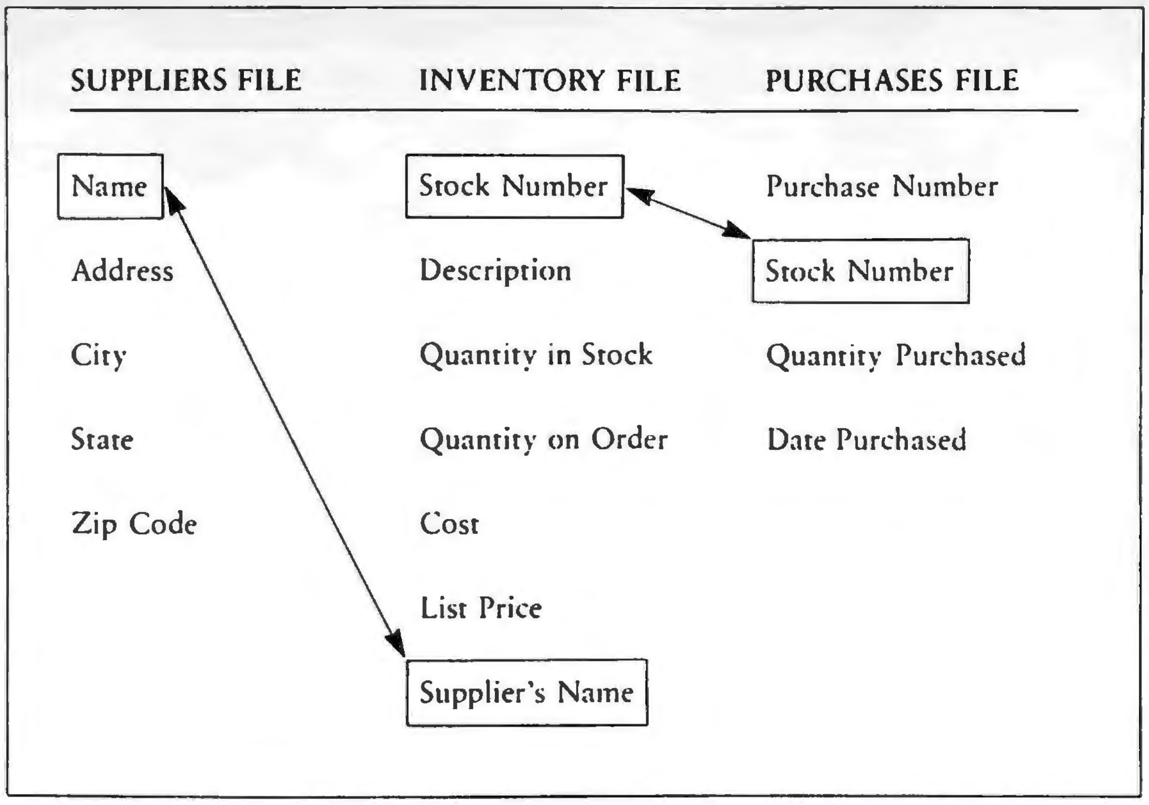


Figure 2: Related Files

```
ENTER FILE NAME          : SUPPLIER FILE
MAXIMUM NO. OF
  RECORDS                : 150
NO. OF FIELDS            : 5

FIELD #1
  TITLE                  : NAME
  TYPE                   : CHARACTER
  MAXIMUM LENGTH         : 25
FIELD #2
  TITLE                  : ADDRESS
  TYPE                   : CHARACTER
  MAXIMUM LENGTH         : 15
FIELD #3
  TITLE                  : CITY
  TYPE                   : CHARACTER
  MAXIMUM LENGTH         : 13
FIELD #4
  TITLE                  : STATE
  TYPE                   : CHARACTER
  MAXIMUM LENGTH         : 2
FIELD #5
  TITLE                  : ZIPCODE
  TYPE                   : NUMERIC
  MAXIMUM LENGTH         : 5

WHICH FIELD IS THE UNIQUE KEY? 1
```

Figure 3: Defining a File for the DBMS

Hands On

Reports can be either displayed on the screen or printed out. The DBMS allows you to specify the portion of the data you want for the report and the format in which you want it to appear. A screen prompt asks you to give the report a title and to supply the name of the file you wish to view.

You may specify the order in which the records appear on the report by designating a field as the *sort key*. For example, you may want a report from the supplier file that orders the records according to zip code. In this case the zip code would be the sort key. The sort key may be the unique key or another field. You may request that totals for numeric fields appear at the end of the report. Once you have defined the report format, the report can be recalled by name at any time to display or print out the current contents of the file.

> The most common types of fields are numeric, character, logical, and date.

A *master list* is a common type of report that shows the records contained in a master file. The master list is divided into columns, one column for each field. The names of the fields appear above the columns at the top of the page. Each horizontal line on the report represents one record. Figure 5 shows a sample master list of the supplier file that is in alphabetical order by supplier name (the sort key is the unique key in this case).

Another type of report is a transaction log. This report shows the records in a transaction file in much the same way that a master list shows the records in a master file. Figure 6 shows a sample transaction log for the purchases file. The records are ordered by date (sort key) and a total appears at the bottom of the quantity purchased column.

```
                    SUPPLIER FILE

NAME      : AMALGAMATED AUTO SUPPLIES
ADDRESS   : 111 MAIN ST.
CITY      : METROPOLIS
STATE     : CA
ZIPCODE   : 95926

1) ENTER NEW RECORDS
2) LIST RECORD
3) EDIT RECORD
4) DELETE RECORD

ENTER OPTION NUMBER: 1
```

Figure 4: Sample Data Entry Screen for Supplier File

Other Features

In addition to defining related files, sophisticated DBMSs include the following features.

Index file. A simple DBMS can produce a master list of an inventory file ordered by stock number, by description, or by any other field. To do this, however, the DBMS must perform a time-consuming sorting procedure.

Some DBMSs have an indexing feature that avoids this delay. An index file is an auxiliary file that specifies the order of the records in the main file. The *index key* is the field from the main file that you select to determine this order.

The index key doesn't have to be the unique key. For example, a transaction log of purchases could be ordered by date, which is not the unique key for purchases records. Every time a new record is added to the main file, the index file is immediately updated. When you request a report to display or print the records

SUPPLIERS MASTER LIST
JOHNSON'S AUTO SUPPLIES
3/1/83

NAME	ADDRESS	CITY	STATE	ZIP CODE
AMALGAMATED AUTO SUPPLIES	111 MAIN ST.	METROPOLIS	CA	95926
MACHINE PARTS INC.	962 ORANGE ST.	NEW YORK	NY	10001
PRECISION PARTS CO.	8976 BROADWAY	LOS ANGELES	CA	90001
SUPERIOR ELECTRIC MOTORS	1007 91ST ST.	SAN FRANCISCO	CA	94001
TECHNOLOGICAL MACHINE CO.	14 JASPER AVE.	BROOKLYN	NY	11001
XYZ TOOL AND DIE	2091 SO. R ST.	CHICAGO	IL	60001

Figure 5: Supplier File Master List

in a particular order, the index file produces the report without any sorting delay.

A DBMS may also allow more than one index file for a main file. Several fields can serve as index keys so that a file can be reported in a variety of orders, all without sorting.

Electronic form. An advanced DBMS allows great flexibility in designing an electronic form for data entry. You can create this form using a word processor. The field names, along with the spaces for entering the data, can be placed anywhere on the screen. You can include instructions and borders as well. Data may be entered into many files on the same screen. Figure 7 shows an example of a complex electronic form.

Report functions. In generating reports, a DBMS can do subtotals, show totals and subtotals without displaying individual records, select subsets of a file for reporting, produce counts of the number of records that fall into certain categories, and perform arithmetic on numeric fields, such as multiplying cost by quantity purchased to produce an extended price column on the report.

A DBMS can also locate information on related files via unique keys when producing reports. For example, a transaction log for the purchases file could display an item description from the inventory file for every purchase.

Updating files. Some DBMSs provide means other than direct data entry for updating the information in files. Returning to the office example, you might want a field in the supplier file called total purchased. This field records the total dollar value of all purchases made from each supplier. Upon entry of each record to the purchases file, an advanced DBMS can calculate the dollar value of the sale and add that amount to the total purchased field in the correct supplier record. To calculate the dollar value of the sale, the DBMS multiplies the

PURCHASES LOG
JOHNSON'S AUTO SUPPLIES

PURCHASE NO.	STOCK NO.	QUANTITY PURCHASED	DATE PURCHASED
1001	191	30	3/1/83
1002	2806	10	3/1/83
1003	1561	15	3/1/83
1004	2902	25	3/2/83
1005	1798	25	3/2/83
1006	909	20	3/3/83
1007	887	10	3/3/83
1008	1172	30	3/3/83
1009	2135	20	3/3/83
1010	1986	15	3/4/83
1011	540	20	3/4/83

TOTALS 220

Figure 6: Transaction Log for Purchases File

```
                    INVOICES ENTRY

                     **INVOICE**

INVOICE NO.       |      |
CUSTOMER NO.      |      |      NAME |                  |
DATE              |        |
TOTAL AMOUNT      |          |
---------------------------------------------------------
                    **LINE ITEM**

INVENTORY STOCK NO. |      |
  DESCRIPTION       |                |
  PRICE PER UNIT    |        |
QUANTITY SHIPPED    |     |  QUANTITY BACKORDERED |    |
EXTENDED PRICE      |        |
```

Figure 7: Complex Electronic Business Form

JOHNSON'S AUTO SUPPLIES
MAIN MENU

1) SUPPLIER FILE DATA ENTRY
2) INVENTORY FILE DATA ENTRY
3) PURCHASES FILE DATA ENTRY
4) SUPPLIER FILE MASTER LIST
5) INVENTORY FILE MASTER LIST
6) PURCHASES FILE LOG

ENTER SELECTION NUMBER: 3

Figure 8: Menu

quantity purchased data from the purchases record by the item cost contained in the inventory record.

Menus. Some DBMS systems allow you to construct menus of frequently used procedures. For each option on a menu you specify the wording and the function that is performed when that option is selected. Instead of having to enter several DBMS commands, you choose one menu option to perform the desired procedure.

> Think of the data entry screen as an electronic business form.

For example, a simple DBMS might require that you call the data entry program first and then specify the file that will contain the data. These two steps could be performed automatically with a menu. Figure 8 shows a sample menu. By choosing option 3 you can call the data entry program and the purchases file in one step. A menu allows anyone to operate a DBMS, even if they don't know the DBMS commands or how to define files and fields.

The Changeover

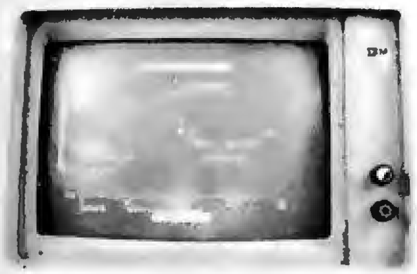
Before the advent of the personal computer, DBMS packages were tools available only to the software houses that developed them. Using a DBMS enabled programmers to produce custom software more efficiently for their clients. Often these DBMSs were not well integrated and lacked documentation.

Eventually, some software houses realized that general-purpose DBMS programs, carefully integrated and properly documented, were marketable products. These DBMS packages were sold mostly to other software houses or to corporate data processing departments. IBM developed a line of DBMS products for its mainframe computers.

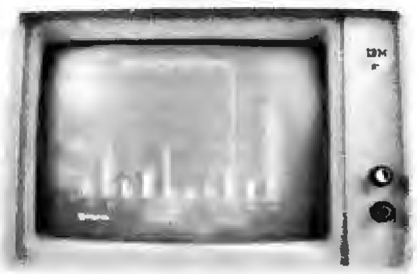
After the personal computer appeared on the scene, DBMS products became available to everyone. Today these products range from simple, inexpensive packages to more sophisticated, costly models. The right one for you depends on your computer experience, your budget, and what you want a DBMS to accomplish (see "The DBMS Match Game"). With a general understanding of DBMS features and capabilities, you're better prepared to make the changeover from manual to computerized data management.

David Frankel and Michael Guttman are freelance software developers based in Chico, California, who also teach computer courses.

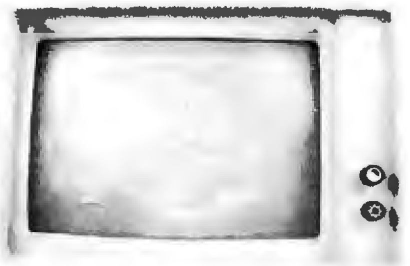
GRAPHICS
FOR THE
IBM MONOCHROME DISPLAY
WITH FULL SOFTWARE SUPPORT FOR ONLY $395.00



CURVE FITTING



BAR GRAPHS



PIE CHARTS

SPECIAL TYPE FONTS

ORCHID TECHNOLOGY now offers low cost/high resolution graphics for your IBM PC's Monochrome display using the ORCHID Monochrome Graphics Adapter (MGA). The MGA gives you high resolution graphics (720h x 350v) without having to give up the high quality text you are used to with your Monochrome display. With 64K. bytes of on board RAM (2 pages x 32K.) you get fast scene changes and can display text and graphics independently or simultaneously. This is because the MGA works in conjunction with the IBM monochrome/printer adapter.

TWO LEVELS OF SOFTWARE SUPPORT are available for the MGA. MS-DOS users get ORCHID'S HALO™ graphics software package written by Media Cybernetics. HALO provides a full range of LINE, ARC, PIE, BAR, HATCH, FILL, FLOOD and special type fonts. HALO is compatible with several languages including BASIC interpreter, BASIC compiler, PASCAL, and MACRO ASSEMBLER. HALO also has an interactive program called "Learn HALO" which provides direct access to all HALO routines, and allows you to learn to use HALO while sitting at your PC. The HALO package is included in the price of the MGA.

CP/M-86 users can use Digital Research's GSX-86™ graphic system interface to the CP/M-86 operating system. Several CP/M-GRAPHICS applications packages will be available from Digital Research.

APPLICATIONS are the Second level of software support provided with the MGA.

* The CADD System currently under development by Schierle Associates is designed as a modular computer aided design/drafting system.

* Special type fonts are a snap using Picturegraph from Comsis. You can use one of Picturegraphs many type styles or foreign language character sets or design your own using the Font make utility.

ORCHID
TECHNOLOGY

487 Sinclair Frontage Rd.
Milpitas, CA 95035
(408) 942-8660

The DBMS Match Game

Some hints on matching your needs with the right data base management system

David Kruglinski

My phone rings for the twentieth time.

"Hi, I'm desperate. How do I get my Microsoft parallel parking simulator out of Van mode?"

"Are you one of our customers?"

"No, but I saw your ad in the yellow pages."

"Sorry, but you'll have to call the guy you copied the program from. Try turning off the power. Good luck."

The twenty-first call.

"Hi, I just bought a copy of your book *Data Base Management Systems, A Guide to Microcomputer Software*. I really like the book, but tell me, what is the best data base management system?"

"Give me your Visa number and I'll tell you."

As you would expect, the last caller's question is comparable to "What's the best microcomputer?" If you already own a data base management system (DBMS) or a microcomputer, the answer is "The one I bought," but otherwise, there is no easy answer. For both DBMSs and microcomputers, the best choice depends on three things: your skills and aptitude, what you need or want to do, and how much money you are willing to spend.

From conversations with first-time users, software developers, and everyone in between, I've been able to classify users as subjectively as I've been able to classify DBMSs. Undoubtedly you will be able to fit all your associates into one of these groups, but not yourself.

Anyway, here's a crash course in data base theory. If you need more, you know which book to buy. (Also see "Getting to First Base" in this issue for an introduction to basic data base concepts.)

A data base is a collection of data on disk, organized to provide easy access by people and by computer programs. A DBMS is a set of programs controlling access to the data base. These definitions are sufficiently broad to cover all packages that are called DBMSs, from simple file managers to sophisticated applications development tools.

The DBMS Family

The simplest DBMS is a file management system (FMS), one that stores data in individual disk files composed of records and fields. In contrast to ordinary disk BASIC data files, FMS files have extra information attached. This includes a description of each field (data dictionary) and one or more indexes that keep the file in order by key fields.

FMS programs allow effective use of the video terminal for data entry, sometimes permitting design of forms directly on the screen. All FMSs provide a report generator for organized printed output. The fancier FMSs provide multifile capability, allowing simultaneous access to data in more than one file.

The relational data base management system (RDBMS) goes one step beyond the FMS. It is based on mainframe DBMS theory, in which the file is replaced by a mathematical concept called a relation. A relation is really a table with horizontal rows corresponding to records and columns corresponding to fields. Operations are performed on these relations, or tables, according to mathematical rules, producing new relations useful in data base management.

The important point is that relationships between fields and files are not inherent in the data base, but are defined only when you use commands to access the data base. For example, assume that you have two relations, one with records representing your employees and another with records representing known computer criminals. If there is a common field for social security number, a simple Join operation will show which of your employees to keep an eye on. In general, single commands operate on entire relations at a time, rather than on individual records.

The network/hierarchical data base management system (NDBMS) is a breed apart, with parents in the mainframe world. It's probably the most powerful, the most difficult to use, the most expensive, and, consequently, the rarest DBMS. Only one NDBMS package worthy of the name is currently on the market for the IBM Personal Computer: *MDBS III* distributed by International Software Enterprises. More are on the way, however, notably from the mainframe software companies.

Ordinary data base features such as field length definition and alphanumeric type common to all DBMSs are discussed in "Getting to First Base." One feature, language interface, is not. Some DBMSs have no language at all (which makes them nonprogrammable), others have their own built-in language, and still others link to established languages such as BASIC, Pascal, or COBOL. Using a DBMS with a language interface is a distinct advantage; the DBMS will then perform functions such as formatting a report or a data entry screen in a unique and useful manner.

Home users need low-cost, easy-to-use DBMS packages.

Also consider whether you need a DBMS to be menu driven or command driven. Menu-driven systems are easier to learn, but later become tedious to use. Commands, on the other hand, are more concise and flexible but are more difficult to learn. Most command-driven systems, however, allow you to create menus to assist less experienced users.

The User Society

Identifying user needs is an essential part of evaluating the suitability of a DBMS. I've defined four user categories to facilitate this purpose.

Individuals with PCs at home. The personal computer was made for those who work at home. Because there are many more homes than offices, home users represent a mass market well served by software marketeers. Home users need low-cost, easy-to-use DBMS packages that are generally single-file, menu-driven, no-language FMSs. One package is available for $35, at one-twentieth the cost of the popular RDBMS, *dBASE II*.

Most low-cost DBMS packages have a data dictionary that defines a series of fixed-length fields. Screen layout, data entry, querying, sorting, reporting, and sometimes indexing functions are included. Some packages, such as *VisiDex* by VisiCorp, depart from this model by storing text with keyed access, which is similar to an index card system.

Home users usually don't have massive amounts of data to worry about, contenting themselves with Christmas lists, phonograph record catalogs, and the like. DBMSs often support hobbies such as coin collecting, animal breeding, and sports statistics— anything that requires the organization of more than about 50 similar items.

As for hardware, two 320K disk drives are the minimum needed for meaningful data base management. Even though you may calculate a low number for quantity of records times record size, that's not the whole story. Often you'll need disk space for work files, backups, indexes, and Murphy's Law.

As a home computer user you are not likely to hire a consultant if you have a problem, so be sure that either your dealer or the software publisher is available for questions. Better yet, make sure you can understand the DBMS user manual.

Small-business owners and volunteer committees. For this group of people the PC may be the only computer used. Strict budgets require that the PC pay for itself; the benefits of using a DBMS make the PC a more worthwhile investment. Because software is a tax-deductible business expense, more money is usually available for a costlier DBMS package than when buying one for home use. In considering a DBMS for business purposes remember that the data volume is higher than for home use, and relating data from multiple files is often necessary.

As an example of a typical user in this group, imagine a restaurant that serves about 1000 banquets per year. The management needs a record of each banquet, mostly to remind regular customers to return. In addition, statistics on room utilization, average number of guests served, and average check amount should be available. The old manual system kept banquet data on a form with entries for: customer name, customer address, banquet date, room number, number of guests, items on the menu, and total check.

The DBMS automates the restaurant's record-keeping by defining a field for each of the entries and allowing for retrieval, sorting, and reporting of data. A single-file system is adequate, but if there are sufficient repeat customers, a separate customer file is necessary.

An FMS can handle this simple application, but if the restaurant management wants to expand the system to handle accounts receivable, the DBMS should have language (programming) capabilities. Ashton-Tate's *dBASE II* would do well here, but would require either *Quickcode,* a program generator for *dBASE II,* or programming to format the data entry screens. *DataStar* by MicroPro would also work by providing direct multifile lookup so that special programming isn't necessary.

The restaurant system is a typical DBMS application; however, if you need an integrated accounting system, it's best just to buy one. A new alternative is to buy a DBMS that comes with a built-in accounting system. You can then modify the accounting system as required, add new modules such as payroll or inventory, and create new reports. *Sensible Solution* by O'Hanlon Computer Systems in Bellevue, Washington, is a welcome first attempt.

Concerning hardware for this group's needs, high data volume and the "time is money" effect often dictate the use of a hard disk and a printer that is faster than an Epson MX-80.

If you are a one-person company, then you have to be the DBMS programmer. If the organization is larger, the "Hal Effect" takes over. This effect is not named for the HAL in *2001: A Space Odyssey,* but for Hal Glatzer, the book author who discovered it. The Hal Effect says that in every organization there is at least one person with a remarkable aptitude for learning about computers. That person should be sought out to develop the DBMS.

Large-company management. In this situation the PC is not the only computer used. There is a mainframe or minicomputer that does the "real work" and a data processing (DP) department jealously guarding its turf. The PC is classified as an executive work station dedicated to electronic spreadsheet work or to some special application such as executive payroll. If a large volume of data requires processing, the DP department usually takes care of it.

The latest trend in PC software is the integration of the DBMS function (and graphics) into the spreadsheet. Context Management's *MBA* and Lotus Development's *1-2-3* are two examples of integrated programs. Unfortunately, the DBMS capabilities of these programs are less than those of stand-alone DBMSs, but I'm sure that situation will change. Meanwhile, using either a DBMS/spreadsheet program such as *1-2-3* or a non-programmable DBMS will solve almost any data management problem. If an executive takes on a language-driven DBMS, he or she may spend far more time programming than managing.

Software developers. Mainframe DBMSs were originally developed to aid programmers. Many mini/mainframe applications software systems have been built using NDBMS-style packages. With few exceptions, microcomputer DBMSs haven't been around long enough to spawn successful, proven applications packages.

One of those exceptions, *Solomon Series Software* from Computech, Inc. of Frazer, Pennsylvania, uses the NDBMS *MDBS III,* which has proven successful as an 8-bit package for over a year. It will shortly be released to run on the PC. *The Champion* from Data Base Research in Lakewood, Colorado, is a newly released accounting package written in *dBASE II.* The fact that this package took four person-years to produce illustrates that a DBMS doesn't necessarily make instant software. By using *The Champion* with *dBASE II,* you can produce additional modules tailored to your needs. The source code (original program code that can be modified) is scheduled to be released sometime next year.

The *Sensible Solution* DBMS with optional accounting system from O'Hanlon does offer source code, however. The authors claim that their source code is 1/12 the volume of the BASIC source in a predecessor system, making it that much easier to work with. A centralized data dictionary brings this system closer to the DBMS ideal of total shared data usage, in which all modules (accounts receivable, payroll, inventory, etc.) can automatically access the central data base.

Mainframe DBMSs are oriented to multiuser applications. The addition of multiuser hardware options to the PC should spur the development of applications packages for the PC that will use these DBMSs.

The twenty-second ring.

"My computer won't work."

"Switch the printer on line."

"Thanks."

David Kruglinski is president of a Seattle-based company that distributes data base management software for business applications.

Data Base Management Systems, A Guide to Microcomputer Software
David Kruglinski
(OSBORNE/McGraw-Hill, Berkeley, 1983)
260 pages; $16.95

WESTICO –The Software Express Service that really delivers:

IBM PC SOFTWARE

16 Bit software for IBM PC, Victor 9000, CP/M-86 and MSDOS.

Westico has good news for owners of the new 16 bit microcomputers — a full selection of quality software. Programs for businesses, professionals, and software developers. Westico can provide its CP/M-80 programs for "Baby Blue" and similar 8 bit hardware options. And there's more good news. We deliver more than quality software fast. We deliver Westico. That means you receive Westico's outstanding technical support and expertise when you need it.

MicroGANTT — Sophisticated project planning system which uses Critical Path Method analysis. Visually oriented system makes it easy to interactively define task and project parameters. Budget costs and work hours are also calculated and displayed. Percentage allocation of resources to tasks and partial completion of tasks on the critical path are other features. $395/$25.

STATPAK — Statistics software library in Microsoft BASIC designed to give users an effective alternative to timesharing. Performs probability calculations, independent variable statistics, discrete & continuous distribution functions, regression analysis, means testing, survey data/contingency tables and more. Includes plotting and data management. $500/$40.

MINIMODEL — Does big financial planning jobs at micro prices for cash flow projections, financial forecasting, venture analysis, and risk analysis. Model limited to 32,000 by 32,000 cells. Report content and format totally under user control. $495/$50.

VERDICT — For law offices with up to 25 attorneys and a total of 35 timekeepers (including paralegals, secretaries, etc.). All time and expenses are distributed to client or other designated overhead accounts. Analysis of billings, aging of receivables, and analysis of each timekeeper's work effort. Produces monthly client review sheets and ready to mail itemized bills. $995/$50.

BILLKEEPER — For professional offices — architects, accountants, engineers, consultants, ad agencies — with all of the features of VERDICT. $995/$50.

MICRO-TAX — Accepts information, summarizes data, computes tax, and prints returns required by the Internal Revenue Service. LEVEL 1 for individuals produces 14 schedules and forms. $195. LEVEL 2 for professionals produces 33 schedules and forms. Includes depreciation, state tax interface, integrated data base for year to year data storage. $1000. LEVEL 3 is a Partnership & Corporate package which produces 19 schedules and forms. $1000.

POSTMASTER — Mailing list system to maintain name and address files. Produces everything from mailing labels to customized letters. $150/$25.

FINALWORD — Full screen interactive word processor with tables of contents, automatic indexes, simultaneous printing and editing. $300/$40.

ASCOM — For telecommunications between micros or micro to main frame. Easy to use full menu mode or expert command mode. Built-in commands for auto-dialing modems and tables for character translation, and suppression. Remote mode for controlling other micros. $175/$30.

C86 — C language compiler for 8088/8086 machines. $395/$35.

CBASIC/86 — Standard microcomputer BASIC language. $325/$30.

JANUS/ADA — Compiler for useful subset of ADA language. $650/$75.

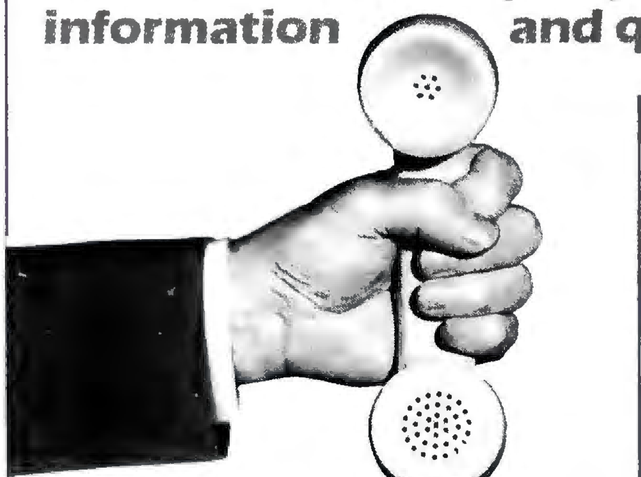
PASCAL/MT + 86 — Compiler generates machine language. $800/$40.

SID-86 — Symbolic debugging tool for CP/M-86. $150/$15.

EM80/86 — Emulates execution of CP/M-80 programs. $100/$10.

UT-86 — Utility programs for PC DOS and MS DOS. $180/$20.

The Westico 24-Hour Computer Hotline for 300 baud modems (203) 853-0816 for detailed information and quick access ordering.



4 Ways to order

- **Write** Westico, Inc., 25 Van Zant Street, Norwalk, CT 06855.
- **Call** (203) 853-6880.
- **Telex** 643-788
- **Dial-up** our 24-hour computer (300 baud) (203) 853-0816.

COD, MasterCard and VISA accepted.

Prices do not include shipping and are subject to change. In CT add 7½% sales tax. All sales final.

Manual price may be credited toward purchase of software.

Dealer inquiries invited.

WES-61

•Westico has more than 250 programs that work on a wide variety of microcomputers including ADDS Multivision, Altos, CPT, Cromemco, DEC, Dynabyte, Eagle, Exxon, Facit, Hewlett-Packard, IBM, Intertec, Kaycomp, Monroe, NEC, North Star, Northern Telecom, Ohio Scientific, Otrona Attache, Radio Shack, Sirius, Televideo, Vector Graphic, Victor, Xerox, Zenith. We're working hard to be your software company.

Call for FREE catalog.

WESTICO

The Software Express Service

25 Van Zant Street • Norwalk, Connecticut 06855
(203) 853-6880 • Telex 643-788

PCnet is the first local area network designed specifically for the IBM Personal Computer. It consists of the necessary hardware and software to set up a powerful, yet cost effective local area network for the IBM PC. While others make claims, PCnet is a local area network proven to be successful by hundreds of installations in IBM Personal Computers.

AST communication PRODUCTS

AST RESEARCH INC.
2372 Morse Avenue, Irvine, CA 92714
Telephone (714) 540-1333
Call or write for immediate response.

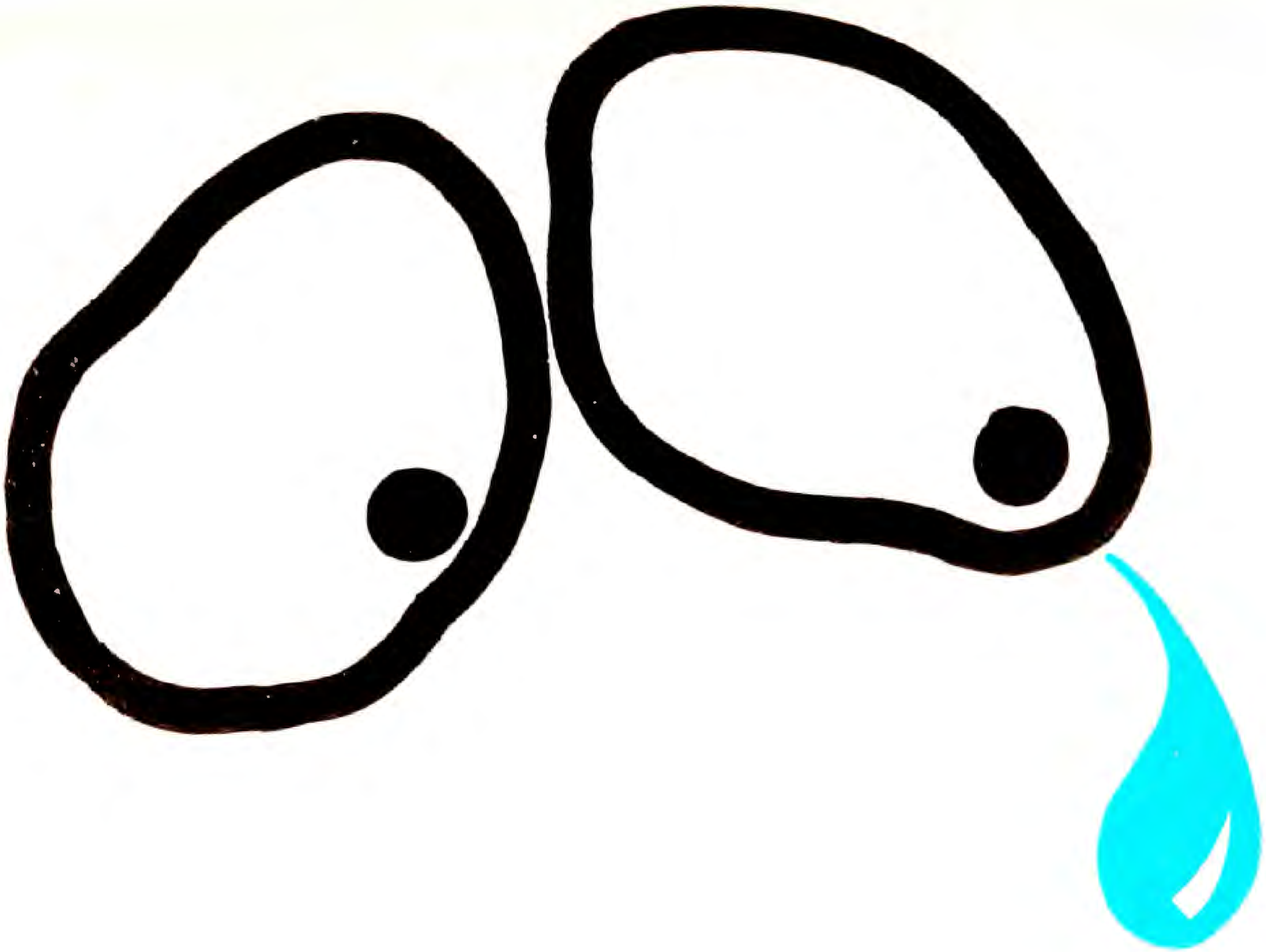
AST & PCnet Hardware:
- CSMA/CD LAN technique
- 7000 feet max. distance
- Low cost CATV Coaxial cable as medium for transmission
- 1 Megabit per second transmission
- Optional Mainframe connection (e.g., AST-SNA; AST-5251; AST-3780 etc.)

AST & PCnet Software:
- Disk Sharing Unlike other networks, PCnet does not demand expansive file server or proprietary hard disk systems for disk sharing. Almost any PC-DOS compatible hard disk including IBM's can be used for disk sharing
- File locking Provides locking to common data files so that common files are only accessed by one user at a time
- PC Sharing (Multi-tasking) Allows user on 1 PC to run command on another PC in the same network as if the command had been entered on that PC's keyboard
- Printer Sharing Allows PCs to share printers installed in other PCs.

AST & PCnet Future Products:
- Universal File Server
- Gateway

Other AST Products
- I/O Plus II
- MegaPlus
- ComboPlus
- PlusModem
- Etc.,...

PCnet is a trademark of Orchid Technology, Inc. IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.



HOW TO SUCCEED IN BUSINESS WITHOUT REALLY CRYING.

Personal computing without personal anguish. That's the easy path to success in business, whether you're an aspiring president of your own company or an aspiring writer working on the great American novel.

And success is what EasyFamily™ programs promise you because we've built our business on making personal computers as convenient to use as pressing a key.

INTERACTION. MAKES OUR FAMILY EASY TO KNOW.

Interaction is the key to the keys that let you do it all. The keys and commands that are similar from one compatible program to another. So you can quickly merge an EasyWriter II™ report with an EasyPlanner™ financial statement with the EasyFiler™ mailing list you want to send them to. And see what your document looks like before you print it. Because, with our EasyFamily, what you see on the screen is what you get on the paper.

USE THE KEYBOARD, NOT CODE. IT'S EASY TO DO.

Not only do we give you the keys to interactive success, we make sure you don't need six of them to open one door. For example, do you want to underline a word? Push one key and it's done. (Other programs required you to learn a code to do just this simple function.) Want to move a paragraph from one section of your document to another? A few keys will do it, not a ten- or fourteen-key code.

...AND EASY TO LEARN.

Learning to use the commands is Easy. Because our manuals are written in English, not engineering. And there's toll-free subscription PhoneSupport.™ With a genuine human being on the other end to answer all your questions in clear, easy-to-understand terms.

AVOIDING FATAL ERRORS IS EASY, TOO.

With the EasyFamily, it's difficult to make killer errors, like erasing every name in your New York file when you just wanted to change a zip code number. For example, with EasyWriter II, if you press a wrong key, the program will give you an error message and ask you to press a specific key to continue. It's like having a built-in safety net.

NOW, ABOUT HOW TO SUCCEED...

It will probably take you longer to read this ad than it will to get started on an EasyFamily program. So if you want to succeed in business without really crying, do it the Easy way. Ask your dealer for a demonstration. Or call or write for full information.

Remember, Easy does it. All.

EasyWriter II
EasySpeller II
EasyFiler
EasyPlanner

EasyWriter™
EasySpeller™

EasyBusiness Systems™
General Ledger and Financial Reporter
Accounts Receivable
Accounts Payable
Order Entry
Inventory Control and Analysis

Information Unlimited Software, Inc.
2401 Marinship Way, Sausalito, CA 94965, (415) 331-6700

EasyFamily

MAKE IT EASY ON YOURSELF.

Graphics in Motion

Learn the BASIC tools for animating simple figures.

Dan Illowsky and Michael Abrash

Drawing points, lines, and figures is easy to do on the IBM Personal Computer, as shown in our previous graphics articles (see issues 2 and 3). But like a hammer, nails, and wood, these drawings are only the tools needed to build something even more useful. With the IBM BASIC commands BSAVE and BLOAD you can save an entire screen to, and restore it from, a disk file, helping to create graphics slide presentations. With the PUT and GET commands, you can move the simple figures you've learned to draw around the screen quickly enough for use in video games.

Saving the Screen

Saving an image to disk requires having a figure on screen to save, so draw two concentric circles with CIRCLE (160,100), 50,2 and CIRCLE (160,100), 30, 1

Save the screen in medium- or high-resolution graphics mode with the BSAVE command

```
DEF SEG = &HB800:BSAVE "FILENAME.
  TYP",0,&H4000
```

where 'FILENAME.TYP' is any valid file name you want. If there's enough space on the disk, the screen is contained in a 16K file called 'FILENAME.TYP'. To save the screen in text mode, enter the command

DEF SEG = &HB800:BSAVE "FILENAME.TYP",0,*scrlen*

In this command *scrlen* is &H1000 in 80-by-25 text mode and creates a 4K file; in 40-by-25 text mode *scrlen* is &H0800 and creates a 2K file. To save the monochrome screen into a 4K file, issue the command

```
DEF SEG = &HB000:BSAVE
  "FILENAME.TYP",0,&H1000
```

Animation using the PSET command with the PSET option

Restoring the Screen

Once a file has been created with BSAVE, the screen may be restored within seconds using the BLOAD command

```
DEF SEG = &HB800:BLOAD "FILENAME.TYP"
```

where 'FILENAME.TYP' is the name of the file created with BSAVE. The screen must be in the same mode (text, medium resolution, or high resolution) it was in when the file was created, and, in medium-resolution mode, the palette selection must be the same as the original screen's. The screen takes several seconds to be completed with BLOAD because of the time needed to read 16K of memory from the relatively slow floppy disks.

To restore the monochrome screen, issue the command

```
DEF SEG = &HB000:BLOAD "FILENAME.TYP"
```

Run the program in Listing 1 to create a screen image, save that image to disk, clear the screen, and then load the saved file back onto the screen.

The IBM BASIC manual is a good resource if you have any questions about the BSAVE and BLOAD commands.

Animation from BASIC

The graphics commands discussed so far have speed limitations that make them impossible to use directly for the kind of rapid drawing needed for animation. What's needed is a command that stores an image in a BASIC memory variable and another command that puts the image back onto the screen. GET and PUT are just these commands.

The GET statement transfers a rectangular area of the screen into an array. The statement is in the form

GET (*x1,y1*)- (*x2,y2*),*arrayname*

where *x1*, *y1*, *x2*, and *y2* are the coordinates of opposite corners of the rectangular area and *arrayname* is the array into which the contents of that area of the screen are to be put. The coordinates may be absolute or relative, but all these parameters are required.

The array may be of any numeric data type, but it is easiest to use arrays of type INTEGER. For INTEGER arrays the formula is

INT((*x*/8) + 1)*y* + 2

where *x* = *x2*- + 1 and *y* = *y2*- + 1. This formula will roughly calculate the required size of the array in medium-resolution mode, while leaving a little extra space. In high-resolution mode, the formula

INT((*x*/16) + 1)*y* + 2

allows adequate space in the array for the image you are GETting.

For example, if we were to execute

GET (10,10)-(19,29),PIC1

in medium-resolution mode, the integer array PIC1 would have to be dimensioned to INT((10/8) + 1) 20 + 2 = 42 elements using the statement DIM PIC1(42) . The GET command section of the BASIC manual describes the method for calculating the exact minimum allowable size of the array, but unless you're running out of memory, it's best to make a rough estimate.

If the array is too small to hold the image, or if the GET command references a point off the screen, an 'Illegal Function Call' error results when the GET is performed.

PUT is the companion command to GET but is not strictly GET's re-

> The PRESET, OR, and AND options have few practical applications and often result in undesirable color effects.

verse. In fact, there are five ways in which the image may be PUT into the screen and each has a different application.

The PUT statement is

PUT (*x1,y1*),*arrayname,action*

Coordinates *x1* and *y1* define where the upper left corner of the image will be placed, *arrayname* is the array in which the image has been saved, and *action*, the only optional parameter, selects one of the five ways in which the image may be put onto the screen. Valid values for *action* are PSET, PRESET, XOR, OR, and AND, with XOR the default if no value for action is selected.

The last point referenced is (*x1,y1*), and the coordinates may be specified in either absolute or relative terms. Like GET, an 'Illegal Function Call' error results if PUT references a point off screen.

The Five PUT Options

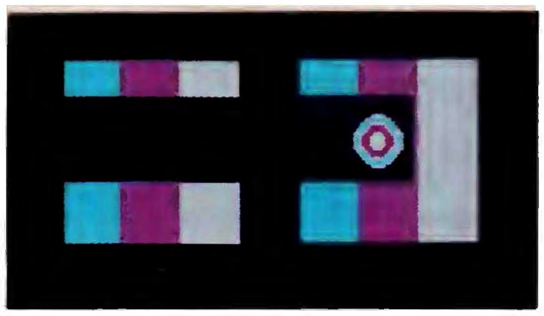
The most useful of the five PUT options are PSET and XOR. The PRESET, OR, and AND options have few practical applications and often result in undesirable color effects.

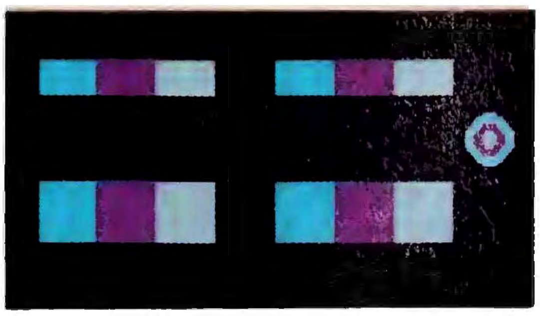
PUT with the PSET option is nothing more than the reverse of GET. The image stored in the array with the GET command is displayed on the screen with PUT/PSET, erasing what was there before. The PSET option is useful for copying an image drawn with the PSET, LINE, CIRCLE, and PAINT commands to a new screen location without laboriously redrawing the image.

The PRESET option is similar to the PSET option but puts a negative of the image onto the screen. In medium-resolution mode colors 0 and 3 are reversed, as are colors 1 and 2; in high-resolution mode colors 0 and 1 (white and black) are reversed. It's easier to describe the PRESET option than to imagine a use for it.

The XOR option is the default action for the PUT command. XOR causes the pixels in the image that are not the background color to be inverted. The effect of one PUT with the XOR option against the background color is to place the image on the screen; the effect of another PUT with the XOR option with the same image in the same location is to erase it. Therefore, the XOR option can be used to erase an image as well as to draw it.

The OR option to the PUT command superimposes an image over whatever image is already on the screen. Unlike the PSET and PRESET





options, the portions of the second image that are background color (color 0) do not erase the previous image. Basically, the second image is placed in front of the original.

The AND option, the least useful for our purposes, puts an image onto the screen only where there's already an image.

For a demonstration of the five PUT options, run the program in Listing 2. This program puts an image onto the screen against each of the four colors. Note the various color and background effects produced. For more details on the various options, refer to the tables under the PUT command in the BASIC manual.

```
100 REM demonstration of saving a screen image to a diskette
110 SCREEN 1,0:CLS:COLOR 0,1     'set to med-res pallete 1
120 REM draw squares inside squares of different colors
130 FOR I=0 TO  5
140   LINE(I*20,I*20)-(319-I*20,199-I*20),I MOD 4,BF
150 NEXT I
160 LOCATE 24,14:PRINT"Remember this"
170 REM save the screen image in a disk file
180 DEF SEG=&HB800:BSAVE "screen.scn",0,&H4000
190 REM clear the screen
200 CLS
210 REM restore the screen image from the disk
220 DEF SEG=&HB800:BLOAD "screen.scn"
230 REM wait for a key to be pressed before ending
240 IF INKEY$="" GOTO 240:END
```

Listing 1

Animation

Animation is the process of putting a rapid succession of images onto the screen to produce the illusion of motion, just as a movie consists of a series of frames, each differing slightly from the last. The image on screen must be moved only a short distance each time so that the motion seems continuous, and the previous image must be removed from the screen or the new image will have a trail in its wake.

The animation program in Listing 3 repeatedly PUTs an image on screen with the PSET option and then PSETs a blank area to erase the image before redrawing it in a new location. Lines 140 to 160 draw a colored ball using the CIRCLE command, and line 180 saves the image in memory. Line 200 GETs a blank area of the same size, while lines 230 to 260 create the impression of movement by drawing, erasing, moving, and redrawing the ball across the screen.

Animation is the basis for all video games. Arcade games and some computers use specialized hardware to perform animation, but the PC is a general-purpose computer, so animation must be done in software. In BASIC we use the PUT command to animate.

Animating with XOR

The XOR option, the simplest way to perform animation in a complex screen, is used in creating most games on home computers. The great virtue of XOR is that it draws and then erases an image but never changes the background, even if several images are moving past each other at the same time. Unlike the XOR option, PSET always destroys the background.

When erasing and redrawing an image to animate, the brief period when the image is not on the screen produces a distracting flicker. Using XOR to erase and the XOR to redraw as subsequent operations minimizes such flicker.

When a figure drawn with the XOR option is drawn over another figure, some odd color effects may occur where the two images overlap. This effect is normal and disappears when the overlap ceases. As mentioned, such color effects occur with all PUT options except PSET.

The program shown in Listing 4 demonstrates animation using PUT with the XOR option. Notice the color interaction, the flicker of the moving ball, and the preservation of the background.

Animating with PSET

When we created animation with the PSET option, we PSET the image initially, PSET a blank area of equal size over the image to erase it, and then redrew the image in a new location. This method is not as efficient as using the XOR option, but there is a good way to use PSET for animation.

First, GET an image with a border that's wider than the distance the image jumps each time it's moved, and then PUT the image onto the screen with the PSET option. These commands will erase the previous image and replace it with the new image all

```
100 REM demonstration of the five options to the PUT command
110 SCREEN 1,0:CLS:COLOR 0,1:KEY OFF  'set screen mode
120 REM draw circles inside circles of different colors
130 CIRCLE(25,25),25,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),3
140 CIRCLE(25,25),20,2:PAINT STEP(0,0),2
150 CIRCLE(25,25),15,1:PAINT STEP(0,0),1
160 CIRCLE(25,25),10,0:PAINT STEP(0,0),0
170 REM save the image of the circles just drawn
180 DIM IMAGE(364):GET(0,0)-(50,50),IMAGE
190 REM clear the screen
200 CLS
210 REM put in labels for the five options
220 LOCATE 14,1
230 PRINT "****PSET***PRESET**XOR*****AND*****OR***"
240 REM set up a background of different colors so that
250 REM   the various color effects can be observed
260 FOR I=0 TO 62
270   LINE(I*5,120)-(I*5+5,180),I MOD 4,BF
280 NEXT I
290 REM put the saved image on a black background and
300 REM   on the colored background using each of the
310 REM   options to the PUT command
320 PUT(20,125),IMAGE,PSET:PUT(20,50),IMAGE,PSET
330 PUT(80,125),IMAGE,PRESET:PUT(80,50),IMAGE,PRESET
340 PUT(140,125),IMAGE,XOR:PUT(140,50),IMAGE,XOR
350 PUT(200,125),IMAGE,AND:PUT(200,50),IMAGE,AND
360 PUT(260,125),IMAGE,OR:PUT(260,50),IMAGE,OR
370 REM wait for a key to be pressed before ending
380 IF INKEY$="" GOTO 380:END
```

Listing 2

```
100 REM demonstrate animation using the PUT command with
110 REM   the PSET option to repeatedly draw and erase
120 CLS:SCREEN 1,0:COLOR 0,1    'initialize the screen
130 REM draw a colored ball
140 CIRCLE(12,12),8,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),1,3
150 CIRCLE(12,12), 6,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),2,3
160 CIRCLE(12,12),2,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),3,3
170 REM save the ball
180 DIM BALL(144):GET(0,0)-(23,23),BALL
190 REM save a black area the size of the saved ball image
200 DIM BLANK(144):GET(50,50)-(73,73),BLANK
210 REM repeatedly erase and draw ball at slightly different
220 REM   positions to create the illusion of motion
230 FOR X=8 TO 288 STFP 2
240   PUT (X-2,60 ),BLANK,PSET:PUT(X,60),BALL,PSET
250   FOR I=1 TO 20:NEXT I  'wait to eliminate some flicker
260 NEXT X
```

Listing 3

The Graphics Programmer's Notebook

The BSAVE, BLOAD, PUT, and GET commands can be used without understanding how they actually work; one of the strengths of IBM BASIC is that the user can ignore the hardware of the machine and concentrate on programming. But many people enjoy understanding how the PC works and can happily spend their time exploring the screen, the basic input/output system (BIOS), DOS, and so on. Further, many arcade-style games are written in machine language, in which there are no conveniences such as the PUT command; programmers must design their own equivalent of the PUT command. To do this they must know their way around the PC.

Memory-Mapped Video

The IBM PC's memory-mapped screen is linked to an area of the computer's memory that is scanned constantly by the circuitry on the color/graphics adapter to generate the video signal that makes the image appear on the screen. The contents of this memory are the basis for whatever appears on the screen; each memory location corresponds to a screen location. In text mode, for example, a value of 65 in the first memory location of the graphics adapter's screen map would cause the character *A* to appear in the upper left corner of the screen.

There are separate memory map locations for the monochrome display and color/graphics adapter screens, and these addresses are given in hexadecimal (base 16) notation. The monochrome screen begins at address B000:0000; the graphics adapter screen begins at address B800:0000. In BASIC, hexadecimal numbers are preceded with '&H'. For example, the B800 cited above would be represented in BASIC with &HB800.

The two numbers separated by a colon in the addresses indicate the manner in which the 8088 microprocessor chip specifies a memory location. In order to address the PC's 1 megabyte of memory (that is, to specify a memory location from among the 1 million or more available in the PC), the 8088 uses two values. One is a base value, which defines a segment, and the other is an offset from that base value. The offset value can address a maximum of 64K (about 65,000 characters) of memory relative to the segment value (which can point anywhere in the 1-megabyte memory space). This is why BASIC can use only a 64K work space: a segment register is set when the program is started and is left unchanged, so only the 64K addressable via the offset value is available.

Accessing Memory from BASIC

With BASIC the user can set both the segment and offset values to get data into and out of any location in memory. The DEF SEG = command sets the segment pointer to the named value. `DEF SEG = &HB800`, for example, sets the working segment to the beginning of the graphics adapter screen memory map. This is the command we used when saving and restoring the screen.

The PEEK and POKE commands access a specific memory location relative to the defined segment. PEEK(*x*) returns the value of the memory location *x*, where *x* is an offset value relative to the defined segment. For example,

```
DEF SEG = &HB000:PRINT PEEK(9)
```

prints the value of the memory address B000:0009, or the ninth location in the monochrome memory map. `POKE` *i, j* puts the value *j* into the memory location *i*, where *i* is relative to the defined segment value and *j* is in the range 0 to 255. For example,

```
DEF SEG = &HB800:POKE 0,66
```

puts the value 66 into the first location in the graphics adapter memory map, which is the upper left corner of the screen. In text mode, this command produces the letter *B* on your screen.

For general purposes, however, just remember that `DEF SEG = &HB800` sets the segment pointer to the beginning of the graphics adapter memory map.

Incidentally, PEEKing around the PC with various segment values is a great way to learn the workings of the machine. For instance, the interrupt vectors (which control input, output, and disk functions) start at 0000:0000. The BIOS variables start at 0000:0040. They select which display text goes to, Caps-Lock state, disk parameters, and cursor location. The BIOS itself, with all input/output functions, starts at F000:E000. Check the

IBM Personal Computer Technical Reference manual for more details on the interior of the PC.

The memory location indicated by a segment:offset address is determined by multiplying the segment by 16 and then adding that product to the offset. This process is equivalent to putting an additional zero at the end of the segment value and adding it to the offset. For example, 0100:0050 points to 01000 + 0050 = address 1050 (all in hexadecimal), just as 0000:1050 and 0105:0000 address 1050 (hexadecimal). You can use many combinations of segment:offset to point to the same address.

Screen Memory Organization

Each memory location is 1 byte (8 bits) in size. What this byte causes to be displayed on the screen depends on the mode the screen is in. For example, in text mode each even-numbered byte in the screen memory map defines a specific character (see Appendix G in the BASIC manual or Appendix C in the *Technical Reference* manual for details). Each odd byte defines the color of the character and its background, and controls blinking. There are 2000 characters on the screen in 80-column mode, and because each character takes 2 bytes, 4000 bytes are needed for the screen memory in text mode.

In the graphics modes the necessary 16,000 bytes of screen memory can be provided on the color/graphics adapter. In text mode the 12K to 14K of extra screen memory can be used to create eight separate pages, or screens, any of which may be displayed or altered at any time.

In medium-resolution mode there are 64,000 (320 x 200) pixels, or dots, on the screen. Each pixel may be 0 for background or 1 through 3 for the colors in the selected palette. Two bits are required to represent values 0 through 3, which means that four pixels can be represented by a single byte. Therefore, the medium-resolution screen memory map requires 16,000 (64,000/4) bytes.

Similarly, high-resolution mode needs only one bit per pixel to represent its two colors. In high resolution, however, there are 128,000 (640 x 200) pixels on the screen, so that once again 16,000 (128,000/8) bytes are required for the screen memory map.

Samples of PEEK and POKE

PEEK and POKE are ideal tools for exploring the screen memory map. First enter medium-resolution graphics mode with `SCREEN 1,0` and then select palette 1 on a black background with `COLOR 0,1`. Next set the current segment to point at the beginning of the graphics screen with

```
DEF SEG = &HB800
```

Now whatever you POKE into memory in the address range B800:0000 to B800:3FFF immediately affects what is displayed on the screen. For example,

```
POKE &H1030,3
```

causes a white dot to appear toward the right of the screen.

```
POKE &H1032,255
```

causes all four pixels controlled by the byte at B800:1032 to be white. Entering

```
FOR I = &H1080 TO &H1180:POKE I,3:NEXT
```

will draw several dotted lines. Similarly,

```
POKE &H1800,255:PRINT PEEK(&H1800)
```

puts the number 255 into memory location 1800 (hexadecimal) and then reads that value back out on the screen.

You may have noticed that when several dotted lines are drawn they appear on every other line in the screen. Strange as it seems, all the even screen lines are stored in the first 8K of the screen memory map, and all the odd screen lines are stored in the next 8K. This occurs because the screen controller draws all the even lines first and all the odd lines second, a practice known as interlacing. If you plan to do graphics from a language with no graphics commands, such as FORTRAN or assembly language, you must account for interlacing when plotting points.

Experimenting with POKE will make this clearer. For example,

```
DEF SEG = &HB800:POKE 800,3:POKE
  800 + &H2000,3
```

plots two points, one directly above the other. The 8K difference between their locations is the offset between the even and odd sections of the screen memory map.

You'll probably never need PEEK and POKE to do graphics, since Advanced BASIC plots dots and checks pixel values with the PSET and POINT commands. But a fundamental understanding of the screen memory organization can be helpful in learning and applying the BASIC graphics commands.

```
100 REM demonstration of animation using XOR option
110 REM   to the PUT command
120 CLS:SCREEN 1,0:COLOR 0,1  'intialize screen
130 REM draw a colored ball
140 CIRCLE(12,12),8,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),1,3
150 CIRCLE(12,12), 6,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),2,3
160 CIRCLE(12,12),2,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),3,3
170 REM draw a series of colored stripes for ball
180 REM   to move over
190 FOR I=4 TO 12
200 LINE(I*20,50)-(I*20+19,100),I MOD 4,BF
210 NEXT I
220 REM save the image of the ball
230 DIM BALL(144):GET(0,0)-(23,23),BALL
240 REM put the image on the screen in its first
250 REM   position so that the next PUT will
260 REM   erase it
270 PUT(6,60),BALL,PSET
280 REM repeatedly erase and then draw the ball
290 REM   moving it 2 pixels right each time
300 FOR X=8 TO 288 STEP 2
310   PUT (X-2,60 ),BALL,XOR:PUT(X,60),BALL,XOR
320   REM wait to eliminate some flicker
330   FOR I=1 TO 20:NEXT I
340 NEXT X
```

Listing 4

```
100 REM demonstrate animation using the PSET command
110 REM   with the PSET option and a border around the
120 REM   image to erase the old image
130 CLS:SCREEN 1,0:COLOR 0,1  'initialize the screen
140 REM draw a ball
150 CIRCLE(12,12),8,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),1,3
160 CIRCLE(12,12), 6,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),2,3
170 CIRCLE(12,12),2,3:PAINT STEP(0,0),3,3
180 REM draw a series of colored bars for ball to
190 REM   moved through
200 FOR I=4 TO 12
210   LINE(I*20,50)-(I*20+19,100),I MOD 4,BF
220 NEXT I
230 REM save the image of the ball and some of the
240 REM   black border
250 DIM BALL(144):GET(0,0)-(23,23),BALL
260 REM repeatedly move the ball right by two pixel
270 REM   positions allowing the black border to
280 REM   wipe out the part of the old ball image
290 REM   not covered by the new image
300 FOR X=8 TO 288 STEP 2
310   PUT(X,60),BALL,PSET
320   FOR I=1 TO 20:NEXT I  'delay a bit
330 NEXT X
```

Listing 5

in one step. Since an image is always on the screen, the animation produced is smooth and flicker free. Also, because there is only one PUT performed, less time is used to create the animation.

The program in Listing 5 demonstrates animation with the PSET option. Note that the moving ball now flickers less than when it was animated with the XOR option.

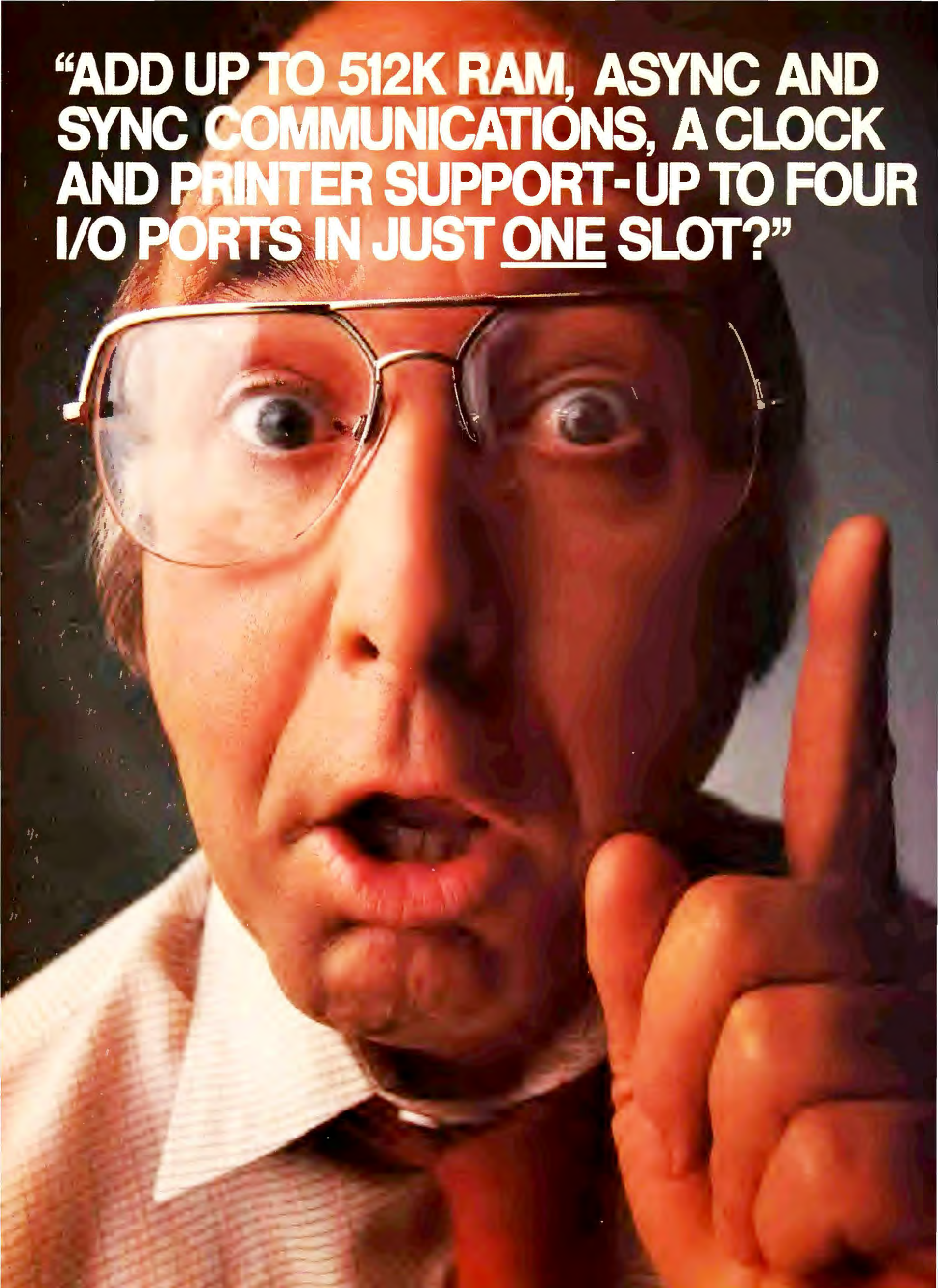
You'll also see that the PSET option does not preserve the images on the screen as it passes over them. The background can be restored with appropriate redrawing in the wake of the moving object, but this is difficult to do. The XOR option, on the other hand, does not require redrawing. If there is no background landscape, the PSET option works well; if there is a landscape, PSET can cause more problems than it solves. Care must also be taken that the blank border of the image does not go off the screen, as it will cause an error even though the figure appears to be fully on the screen.

Selecting between XOR and PSET depends on the complexity of the animation task; in general though, XOR is simpler and more widely used.

Until Next Month

Now that you have most of your drawing and animation tools in order, you're ready to do some designing, so next month we'll show you how to design and program an animated video game. Until then, work with the commands you've learned so far, particularly PUT and GET; next month we will put them to good use.

Dan Illowsky and Michael Abrash coauthored the Snack Attack II *video game for the IBM PC. Illowsky, author of the original* Snack Attack *for the Apple II, is president of Funtastic, Inc., in Drexel Hill, Pennsylvania. Abrash has written several video games and is an energy consultant with Delphi Energy Group in Philadelphia. The authors are planning to adapt the information in this article for a future book.*


"ADD UP TO 512K RAM, ASYNC AND SYNC COMMUNICATIONS, A CLOCK AND PRINTER SUPPORT-UP TO FOUR I/O PORTS IN JUST ONE SLOT?"

"YOU CAN WITH PERSYST."

The Persyst Time Spectrum. It's the most powerful and expandable multi-function PC board you can buy.

A Persyst Time Spectrum™ multi-function board can make any personal computer work better.

Whether you own an IBM PC or XT. Or the IBM compatible Compaq or Columbia.

There's even a Time Spectrum board for the Texas Instruments PC.

With Time Spectrum, you can combine up to six powerful functions—plus two advanced software programs—on just one board. And get performance and features like nothing else.

For the IBM PC, Compaq and Columbia, maximum capability in minimum space.

For example, Time Spectrum is the only multi-function board that lets you expand your IBM PC from 64K up to 512K RAM. Add a calendar clock. Add as many as two RS-232 asynchronous communications ports, or two synchronous and one asynchronous communications port. Plus print spooling and as much as 320K of RAM disk memory.

Up to four I/O ports—in just *one* slot.

How did we do it?

With the Cliffhanger.™ A unique, RFI-shielded connector system that solves the problem of tying two or more I/O ports to peripheral equipment like a printer or modem, without consuming two or more slots.

And only Persyst has it.

The Time Spectrum Cliffhanger.™
So ingenious, it's patented.

What's more, expansion functions can be plugged right onto the Time Spectrum board. Or added with Versapak™ piggyback modules. So you can add exactly the capability you need, when you need it.

Extra flexible expansion for the IBM XT.

For the IBM XT, Time Spectrum not only delivers exceptional one-board expansion capability, but extra flexibility, too.

First, we designed Time Spectrum so you can add the RAM you want without having to fill the memory rows on the XT mother board.

And with Time Spectrum plug-in expandability, you can continue to add functions as you add requirements.

Start with basic memory and a calendar clock. Then add another asynchronous communications port. Parallel printer port. Additional memory. Or any combination of functions.

With Persyst, the choice is yours.

And now, one-slot capability for your Texas Instruments PC.

Now there's even a Time Spectrum multi-function board for your TI PC. With it, you can add up to 512K RAM, two serial ports, calendar clock and light pen port—capability to handle even the most complex and difficult computing functions.

And still only consume *one* slot.

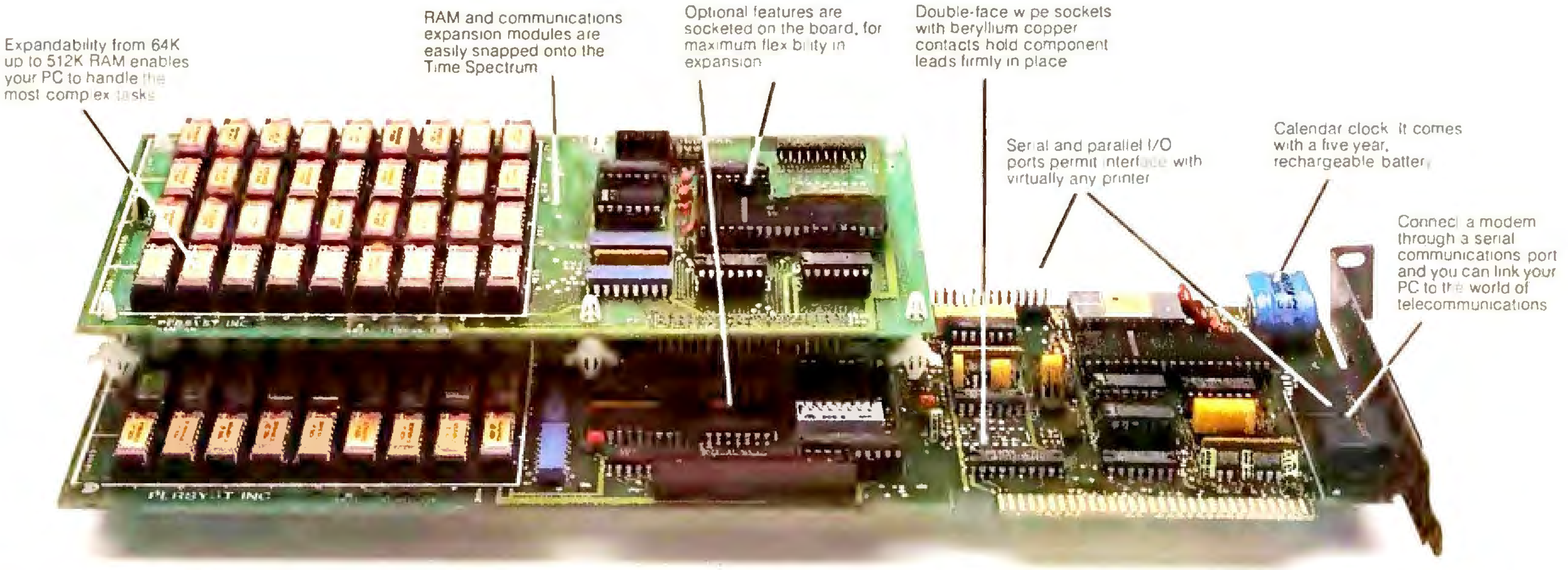
The Persyst Time Spectrum board.

Maximum expandability now. And quality and versatility so you can keep on expanding later.

See your IBM or TI PC dealer and insist on Persyst.

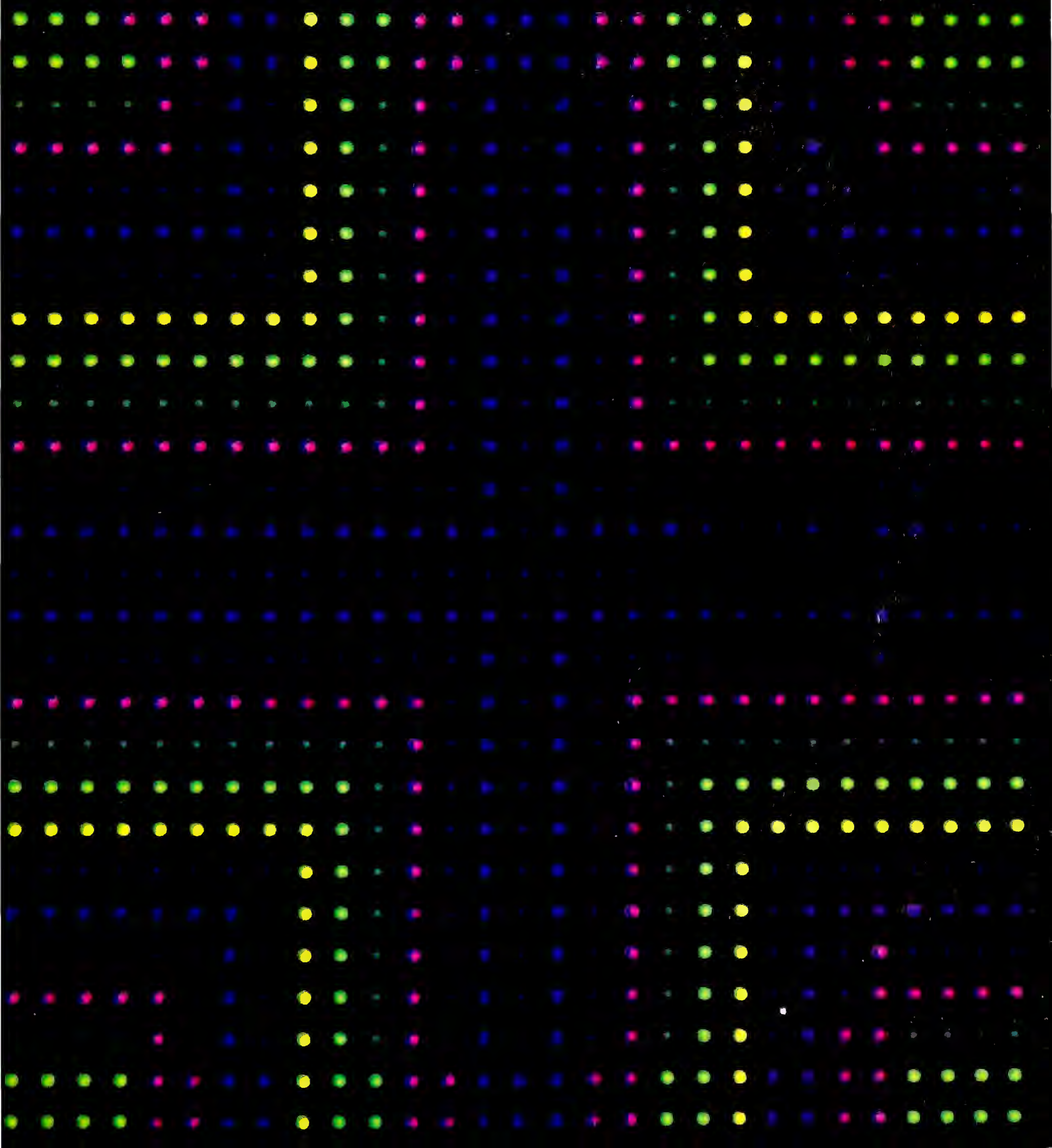
PERSYST™

Persyst Products, Personal Systems Technology, Inc., 15801 Rockfield Blvd., Suite A, Irvine, CA 92714. Telephone: (714) 859-8871. TWX: 467864.



THE TIME SPECTRUM™ BY PERSYST.

Announcing The PC World Software Review written by the readers of PC World



You can be part of the most useful reference tool ever compiled for the IBM PC and compatible computers. In the process you may get your name in print and win up to $1500 worth of software.

With the assistance of our readers, *PC World* is compiling a guide to the most useful software products available for the IBM PC. The *PC World Software Review* will be published in fall 1983 and will be followed in the spring by the *PC World Hardware Review*.

The *Software Review* will list and evaluate all categories of software available for the IBM PC. From spreadsheets and communications programs to operating systems and games, the *Software Review* will be a user guide to the complex software marketplace. The *Software Review* will reflect the experience of the community of PC users, with selections and evaluations based on insights acquired through hands-on testing.

Contributors will be credited for each evaluation published in the *Software Review*, and published contributors will be eligible to win a grand prize of $1500 worth of software or five prizes worth $500 of software each. Contest winners will be selected in a drawing and their names will be announced in the *Software Review*.

Anyone who has used a product on the IBM PC or a compatible computer can write an evaluation of that product and submit it for inclusion in the *Software Review*. Manufacturers are invited to write about their own products, but they must credit the submission to an individual within the company. There is no limit to the number of evaluations that may be submitted. *PC World* must receive all materials by July 1, 1983.

Once received, submissions will be checked for accuracy, edited, and compared. If *PC World* receives more than one submission for a product, the most useful evaluation will be selected on the basis of completeness, clarity, and insight into the product's features. *PC World* reserves the right to edit reviews to conform to the magazine's format and style. A review form for the submission of evaluations is provided with this announcement.

If you have found a software product especially valuable, this is an opportunity to help your fellow users learn about it. We invite you to be a part of this exciting collaborative venture.

Form Instructions

Use the attached form for each evaluation you wish to contribute to the *Software Review*. The form may be photocopied to submit more than one evaluation.

• *Provide general product information.* Write the product's name with the spelling, capitalization, and punctuation used by the manufacturer. Check the box next to the category name that best describes the product. If you check the box for integrated applications, you must also check the applications that are integrated. Describe the minimum system requirements in terms of RAM (in K), number of disk drives, interface cards, and any other hardware or software needed by the user to effectively operate the program. Don't include the monochrome monitor, keyboard, DOS, or BASIC.

• *Describe and evaluate the product by its features.* Give a one-sentence summary of general features. Briefly explain two features that distinguish the product from its competitors. Describe two relevant limitations of the product (what the product doesn't do that users might ideally expect from a product in that category).

Describe the type of user for whom the product is intended. For example, is the product best suited for business, programming, personal use, or some other activity? The section for comments may be used for remarks that elude the review format but are essential to understanding the product.

• *Provide consumer information.* Include the product's list price and the price for the various available configurations and options. Give the manufacturer's complete name, address, and telephone number. A Source or Telex number can be included if available.

• *Tell us who you are!* List your name so we can publish it (unless you want your review to be anonymous). Include your address and telephone number in case you are a winner in the contest or we need to contact you for more information.

Check whether you are the product manufacturer. If you are, we encourage you to send us press information and a black and white, glossy photo for publication.

Please avoid advertising hyperbole, wordiness, and ambiguity. Identify concrete product features rather than making sweeping remarks. *PC World* reserves the right to edit submitted materials, all of which become the property of *PC World* magazine.

The PC World Software Review Form

I. Product Information

Product name ______________________________

Category (check one)

A. SYSTEMS SOFTWARE

1. ☐ Operating systems 2. ☐ Languages 3. ☐ Utilities

B. APPLICATIONS SOFTWARE

1. ☐ Spreadsheets
2. ☐ Word processing
3. ☐ Data management
4. ☐ Business graphics
5. ☐ Communications
6. ☐ Educational
7. ☐ Entertainment (games)
8. ☐ Financial and accounting
9. ☐ Business management
10. ☐ List management
11. ☐ Design graphics
12. ☐ Job and industry specific
13. ☐ Personal management
14. ☐ Integrated applications

System requirements ______________________________

II. Product Features

General features: ______________________________

____

Two distinguishing features: 1. ______________________________

____

2. ______________________________

Two limitations of the product: 1. ______________________________

2. ______________________________

Intended user: ______________________________

Comments: ______________________________

____

III. Consumer Reference

List price: ______________________________

Manufacturer's name: ______________________________

Address: ______________________________

Telephone: ______________________________

Source and/or Telex: ______________________________

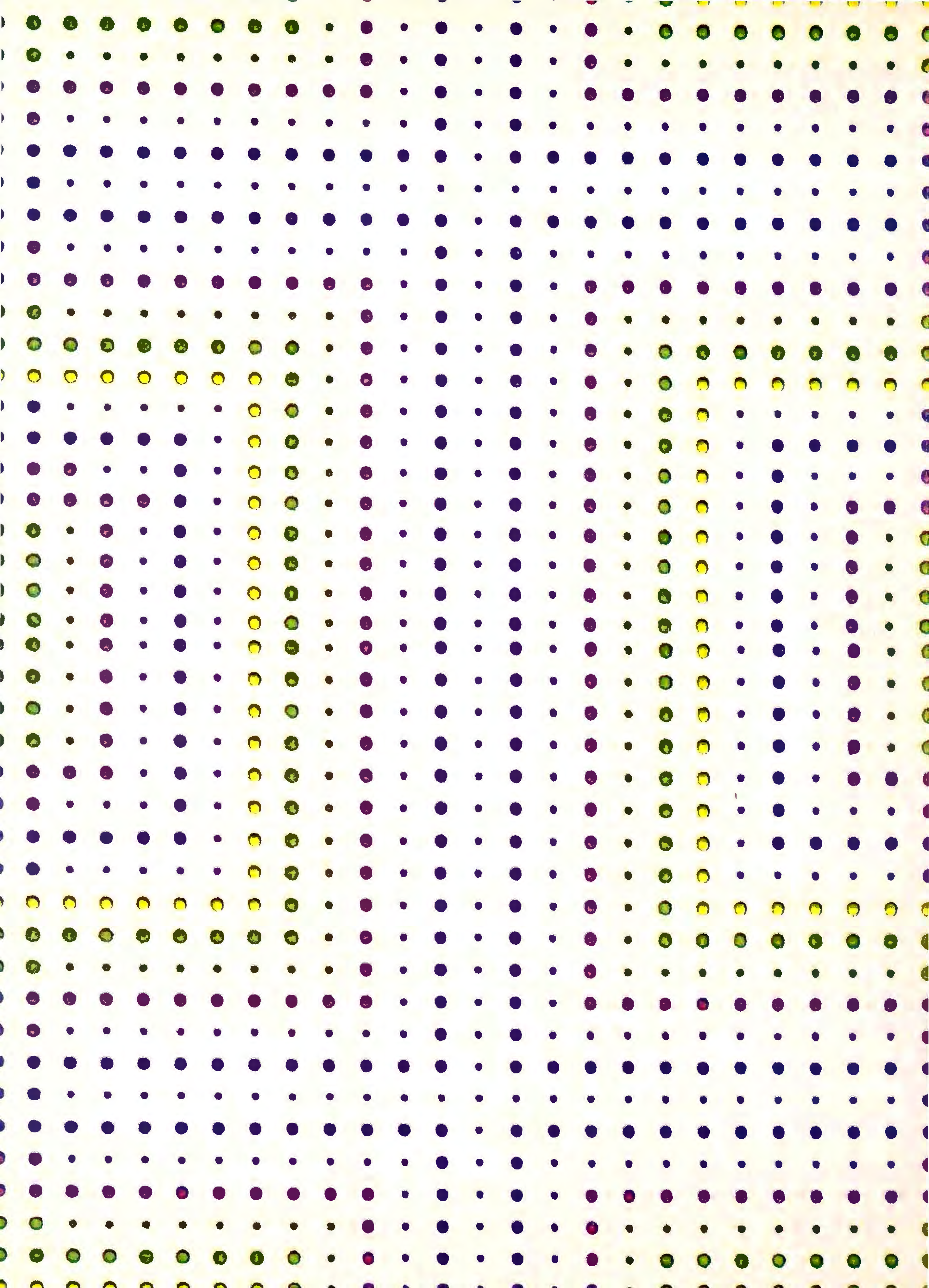
Contributor's name: ______________________________

Address: ______________________________

Telephone: ______________________________

☐ Manufacturer

Send to *PC World Software Review*, 555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107



The PC World Software Review Form

I. Product Information

Product name ________________________________

Category (check one)

A. SYSTEMS SOFTWARE

1. ☐ Operating systems   2. ☐ Languages   3. ☐ Utilities

B. APPLICATIONS SOFTWARE

1. ☐ Spreadsheets
2. ☐ Word processing
3. ☐ Data management
4. ☐ Business graphics
5. ☐ Communications
6. ☐ Educational
7. ☐ Entertainment (games)
8. ☐ Financial and accounting
9. ☐ Business management
10. ☐ List management
11. ☐ Design graphics
12. ☐ Job and industry specific
13. ☐ Personal management
14. ☐ Integrated applications

System requirements ________________________________

II. Product Features

General features: ________________________________

____

Two distinguishing features: 1. ________________________________

____

2. ________________________________

Two limitations of the product: 1. ________________________________

2. ________________________________

Intended user: ________________________________

Comments: ________________________________

____

III. Consumer Reference

List price: ________________________________

Manufacturer's name: ________________________________

Address: ________________________________

Telephone: ________________________________

Source and/or Telex: ________________________________

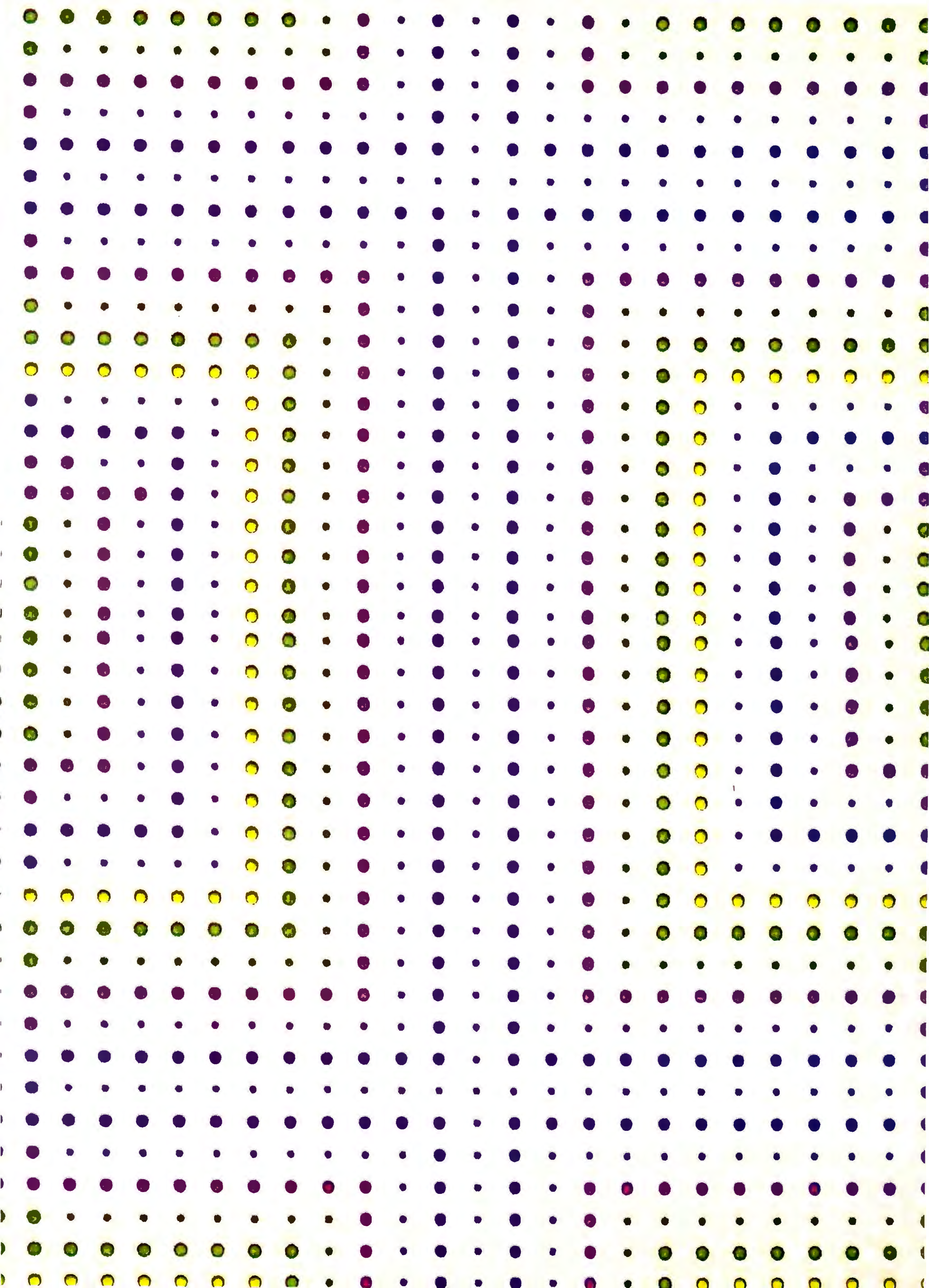
Contributor's name: ________________________________

Address: ________________________________

Telephone: ________________________________

☐ Manufacturer

Send to *PC World Software Review*, 555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107



The PC World Software Review Form

I. Product Information

Product name ______________________

Category (check one)

A. SYSTEMS SOFTWARE

1. ☐ Operating systems 2. ☐ Languages 3. ☐ Utilities

B. APPLICATIONS SOFTWARE

1. ☐ Spreadsheets
2. ☐ Word processing
3. ☐ Data management
4. ☐ Business graphics
5. ☐ Communications
6. ☐ Educational
7. ☐ Entertainment (games)
8. ☐ Financial and accounting
9. ☐ Business management
10. ☐ List management
11. ☐ Design graphics
12. ☐ Job and industry specific
13. ☐ Personal management
14. ☐ Integrated applications

System requirements ______________________

II. Product Features

General features: ______________________

____

Two distinguishing features: 1. ______________________

____

2. ______________________

Two limitations of the product: 1. ______________________

2. ______________________

Intended user: ______________________

Comments: ______________________

____

III. Consumer Reference

List price: ______________________

Manufacturer's name: ______________________

Address: ______________________

Telephone: ______________________

Source and/or Telex: ______________________

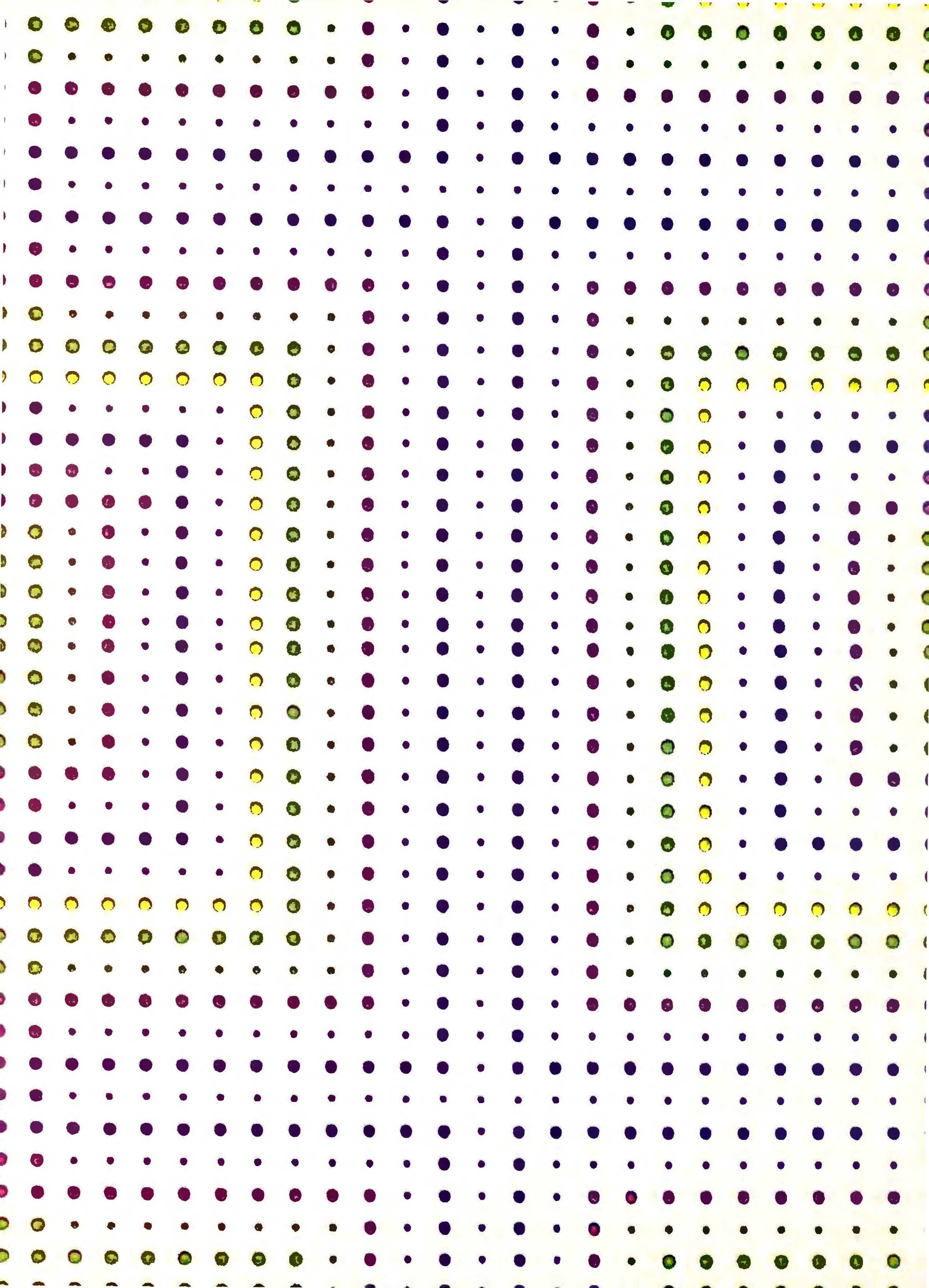
Contributor's name: ______________________

Address: ______________________

Telephone: ______________________

☐ Manufacturer

Send to *PC World Software Review*, 555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107



The PC World Software Review Form

I. Product Information

Product name ______

Category (check one)

A. SYSTEMS SOFTWARE

1. ☐ Operating systems 2. ☐ Languages 3. ☐ Utilities

B. APPLICATIONS SOFTWARE

1. ☐ Spreadsheets	8. ☐ Financial and accounting
2. ☐ Word processing	9. ☐ Business management
3. ☐ Data management	10. ☐ List management
4. ☐ Business graphics	11. ☐ Design graphics
5. ☐ Communications	12. ☐ Job and industry specific
6. ☐ Educational	13. ☐ Personal management
7. ☐ Entertainment (games)	14. ☐ Integrated applications

System requirements ______

II. Product Features

General features: ______

______

Two distinguishing features: 1. ______

______

2. ______

Two limitations of the product: 1. ______

2. ______

Intended user: ______

Comments: ______

______

III. Consumer Reference

List price: ______

Manufacturer's name: ______

Address: ______

Telephone: ______

Source and/or Telex: ______

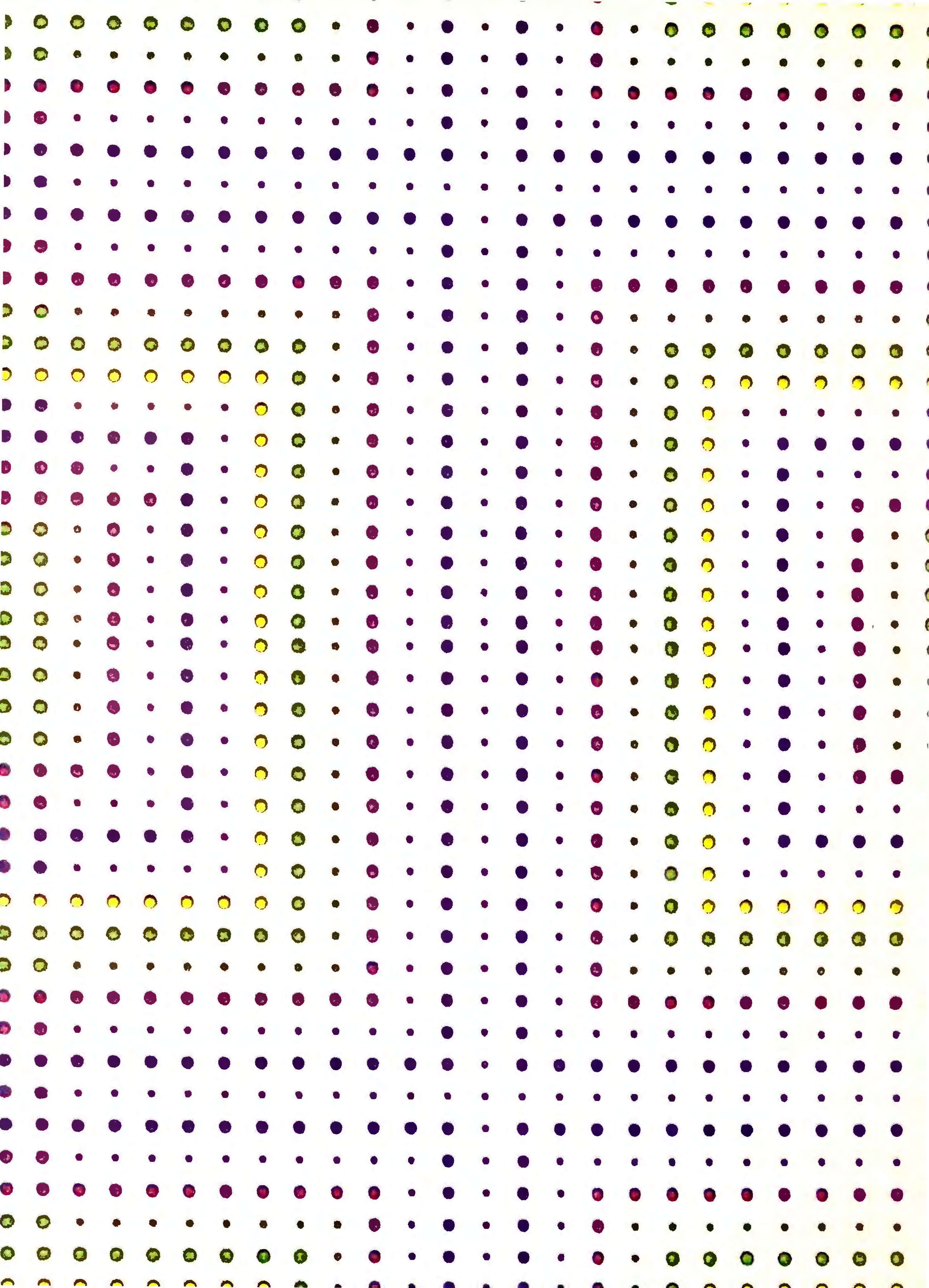
Contributor's name: ______

Address: ______

Telephone: ______

☐ Manufacturer

Send to *PC World Software Review*, 555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107



TAKE THE NEXT STEP

The IBM* P.C. was your first step.

Now. . . it's time to take the NEXT STEP

Breakthroughs follow each other. The IBM P.C. and now the NEXT STEP from Execuware. IBM gave you the Personal Computer to meet your business needs. NEXT STEP gives you the power to make it happen. NEXT STEP allows you to solve your problems without the limitations of pre-packaged software. Create your **own** solutions. State the problem—Execuware's NEXT STEP will solve it!

NEXT STEP stores and retrieves information in the format **you** devise, then electronically programs itself! Once programs and reports are developed by NEXT STEP, its editing capabilities and help screens assure that others use them consistently. . . productively.

Automate to fit **your** needs. Use NEXT STEP to improve your business. Improve cash flow. Strengthen sales efforts. Improve production efficiency. Give management the information it needs to run your business more profitably. . . **Your** way.

Until now, no software product for the IBM P.C. could tackle the multitude of business problems that affect your bottom line.

. . .Take the NEXT STEP.

EXECUWARE

MICROCOMPUTER SOFTWARE FOR EXECUTIVES FROM AERONCA, INC.

7415 Pineville Matthews Road, Intercontinental Plaza, Suite 300, Box 10, Charlotte, North Carolina 28211 (704) 541-1199

*IBM P.C. is the trademark of International Business Machines

EASIBOARD™

THE EASIEST™

1985 technology in 1983. It took longer than expected for our Research and Development Department to meet its challenge: create the most advanced multifunction board for the IBM PC – ahead of present day technology, and more advanced than the original multifunction boards introduced with last year's technology. And above all, make it simple and make it easy. The result: Easiboard by Easitech.™

Nine distinct functions in just one IBM PC or XT slot. After surveying business executives and other personal computer users, we discovered that nine computer functions were most desired. We merged them all together, and made Easiboard as simple as plugging in your tv at home.

Memory, Spooler, Printer and Modem Connections, Three Electronic Disks, Chronograph and More. Easiboard gives your IBM PC or XT more memory (up to 256K), three high-speed solid state electronic disk emulators, a printer connection, a communications port for modems or additional printers, a buffer-spooler so you can compute and print at the same time (part of the Easiboard memory becomes a memory for your printer), a battery-backed real time chronograph (an extremely accurate clock-calendar), and the ability to switch between two printers when both are connected to one PC. All on just one simple plug-in board.

IBM quality plus Easitech Excellence exclusively at IBM PC dealers worldwide. Easiboard is only available at authorized IBM PC dealers. You'll find Easiboard at the same place you find the IBM PC – quality retail stores you can depend on to carry only the best microcomputers and enhancements.

Easy to find the best price, too. Try $325 for Easitech Excellence and a two year guarantee. No need to search through dozens of magazines for low prices. Our lowest prices are at IBM PC dealers. Not anywhere else. And we back our product with a two year guarantee. If your IBM PC dealer does not carry Easitech products, ask him to call us at (404) 923-3186.

SPECIFICATIONS
EASIBOARD WITH EASIMASTER™ SOFTWARE

- Socketed for 64K to 256K of Random Access Memory.
- Three high-speed solid state electronic disk emulators, each many times faster than normal disk drives.
- Centronics-compatible parallel port for printers or other parallel devices.
- Serial RS232 async communications port for modems, printers or other serial devices.
- Extremely accurate chronograph (computerized clock/calendar in real time with Nicad battery back-up).
- Buffer/spooler which allows use of the computer while printing is underway, eliminating the usual waiting.
- Easiswap™, a feature which allows switching from one printer to another, as when both a dot matrix and a letter quality printer are connected to the same IBM PC. Or use it for switching communications devices.
- Ultra high-speed Motorola RAM chips, the gold ones.
- 100% IBM PC and XT compatible.

Easiboard with 9 functions. $325 (socketed for 256K). **$395** (64K installed, socketed for 256K). **$595** (256K installed).

IBM PC DEALERS

ALASKA • Computerland, Anchorage Fairbanks Microage Computer Store, Anchorage. • **ALABAMA** • Computerland, Anniston, Birmingham, Mobile Anderson Computers, Inc., Florence, Huntsville Olensky Brothers Computers, Mobile. • **ARKANSAS** • Computerland, Fayetteville, Fort Smith, Jonesboro, Little Rock. • **ARIZONA** • Computerland, Mesa Phoenix Tucson, Data Place Computer Stores, Inc., Phoenix Tempe, Photo & Sound Company, Phoenix • **CALIFORNIA** • Computerland, Anaheim Bakersfield, Belmont, Burlingame, Capitola Carlsbad, Concord, Dublin, El Cerrito, Fairfield Fremont, Fresno, Glendale, Hayward, Laguna Hills Lawndale, Long Beach, Los Altos, Los Angeles Monterey, Newhall, Newport Beach, Novato Oakland, Pasadena, Redding, Sacramento, San Bernardino, San Diego, San Francisco San Gabriel San Jose, San Leandro, San Rafael, Santa Barbara Santa Clara, Santa Maria, Santa Rosa, Stockton Thousand Oaks, Torrance, Tustin, Ventura, Visalia Walnut Creek, West Covina, West Los Angeles Woodland Hills, Computer City, Brea, Orange San Diego, Santa Ana, Gateway Computer Center, Cerritos, Huntington Beach, Photo & Sound Company, Costa Mesa, El Monte, Fresno Sacramento, San Diego, San Francisco, San Jose, Exectec, Los Gatos, Napa, Computer Ware, Inc., Modesto, Macys Computer Solutions, Palo Alto San Francisco, San Mateo, Microage Computer Store, Pleasant Hill, Santa Ana, Businessland, Inc., San Jose, Rac Computers, Inc., San Jose Computer Plaza, Santa Barbara. • **COLORADO** • Computerland, Arvada, Boulder, Colorado Springs Denver Englewood, Fort Collins, Grand Junction Greeley, Lakewood, Compushop Inc., Aurora. • **CONNECTICUT** • Computerland, Danbury, East Hartford, Fairfield, Hamden, Stamford, W Hartford Microage Computer Store, Danbury, Greenwich, Computerease, East Hartford, Milford, Entre Computer Center, Glastonbury, Orange Computerworks, Westport. • **D.C.** • Computerland, Washington, The Math Box, Inc., Washington. • **DELAWARE** • Computerland, Newark, Wilmington, • **FLORIDA** • Computerland, Altamonte Springs, Boca Raton, Clearwater, Coral Gables, Fort Myers, Ft Lauderdale, Jacksonville, Lakeland, North Miami Beach, Orlando, Sarasota, Seminole Tallahassee Tampa, West Palm Beach, Entre' Computer Center, Altamonte Springs, ICS, Coral Gables, The Computer Factory, Inc., Miami, •**GEORGIA** • Computerland, Athens, Atlanta, Compushop • Computerland, Athens, Atlanta, Compushop, Atlanta, Chamblee, Lenox-Davison's, Atlanta, BAS Inc., Waynesboro, • **HAWAII** • Computerland, Aiea Honolulu, Kaneohe, Photo & Sound, Honolulu • **IOWA** • Computerland, Cedar Falls, Cedar Rapids Davenport, Des Moines, Marion, Omni Computer, Des Moines, Team Electronics, Waterloo. • **IDAHO** • Computerland, Boise, Golden W Idaho Falls, Inc., Idaho Falls, Silver Creek Irrigation, Picabo. • **ILLINOIS** • Computerland, Arlington Heights Bloomington, Champaign Chicago, Downers Grove, Elmhurst, Evanston, Joliet, Mundelein Naperville, Niles Northbrook, Oak Lawn, Oak Park Peoria, Rockford, Schaumburg, St Charles, Compushop, Inc., Buffalo Grove, Chicago, Midlothian, Morton Grove Oak Park Rolling Meadows, Computermart, Carbondale, Main Street Computer Company, Decatur, Computer Corner, Edwardsville, Illinois Valley Irrigation, Inc., Havana Microage Computer Store, Orland Park Computers Etc., Inc., Posen Computerland/Springfield Corp., Springfield. • **INDIANA** • Computerland, Anderson, Evansville, Fort Wayne, Indianapolis Merrillville Mishawaka, West Lafayette, General Microcomputer, Inc., Elkhart, Michigan City, South Bend Chester Inc., Francesville, Microage Computer Store, Indianapolis, The Computer Room, South Bend, Hoosier Electronics Computer Center, Terre Haute, • **KANSAS** • Computerland, Hutchinson, Lawrence, Leawood Topeka, Wichita Amerisource, Prairie Village, Microage Computer Store, Salina. • **KENTUCKY** • Computerland, Bowling Green, Lexington, Louisville, CBM Lexington, CBM Computer Center, Louisville. • **LOUISIANA** • Computerland, Baton Rouge Lafayette, Metairie, New Orleans, Computer Concepts, Lake Charles • **MASSACHUSETTS** • Computerland, Boston Reading Springfield Wellesley Entre' Computer Center, Dedham, North Darmouth, Neeco, Needham, Microsource Financial, Inc., Watertown, The Computer Place, Inc., Worcester • **MARYLAND** • Computerland, Annapolis, Lutherville Entre' Computer Center, Baltimore, Timonium, The Logical Choice Baltimore Pikesville HLA Inc., Beltsville Frederick

The Complicated Way

Five Cables
Seven Instruction Books
Serial Board
Parallel Board
Chronograph
Memory Board
Buffer/Spooler
Three Disk Drivers
Print Switcher
Several Days

The Easiboard Way

One Easy Board
Ten Seconds

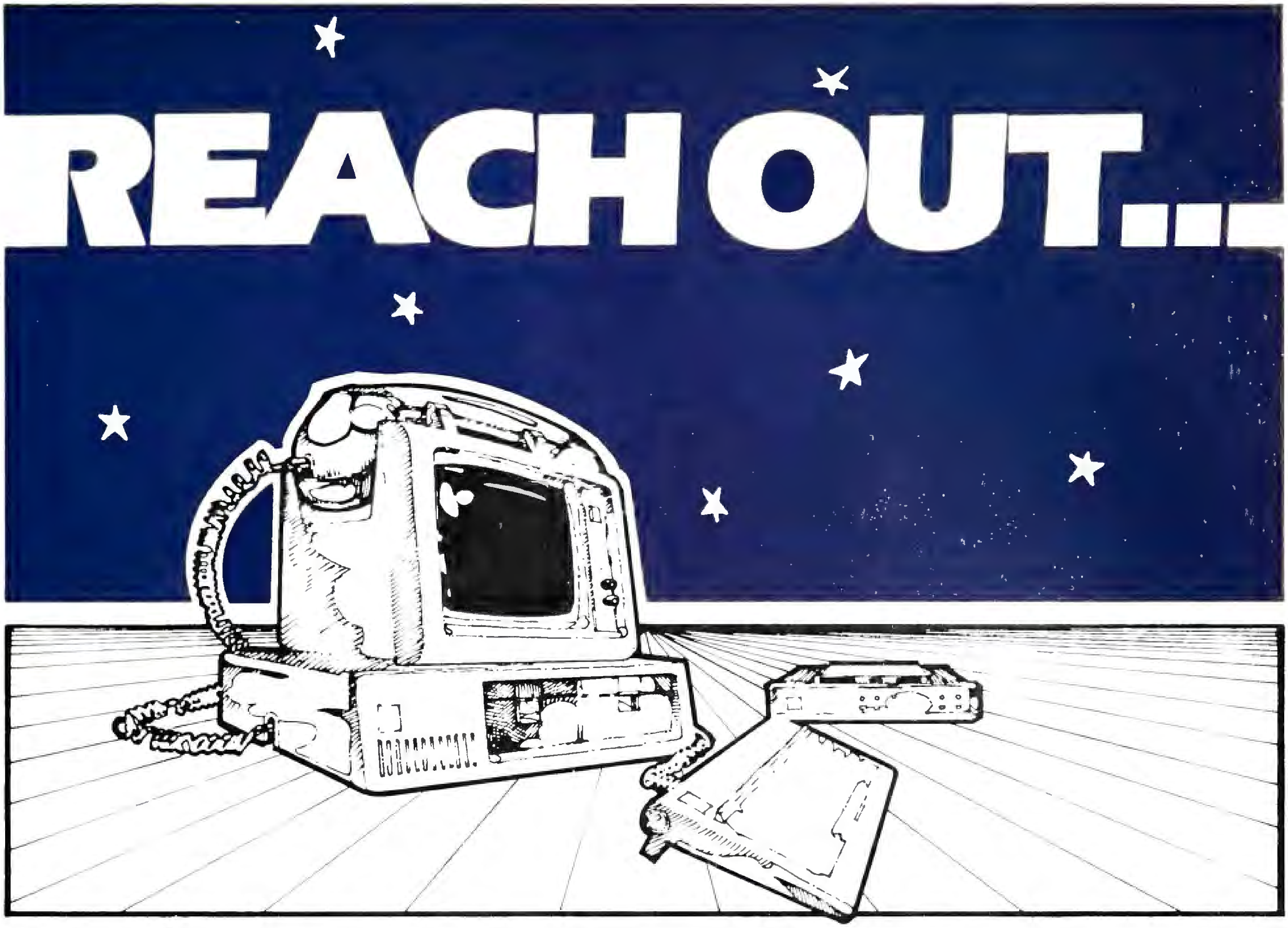
EASITECH
CORPORATION

EASITECH EXCELLENCE

Exclusively at IBM PC Dealers

4357 Park Drive, Norcross, Ga. 30093 (404) 923-3186

Flint. Grand Rapids. Kalamazoo. Saginaw The Computer Room, Grand Rapids Kalamezoo The Computer Mart, Inc., Troy • **MINNESOTA** • Computerland Bloomington. Hopkins Minneapolis Rochester Waite Park Computer Depot (Daytons Comp Ctr), Burnsville. Edina Minneapolis Minnetonka Computer Depot (Daytons St Paul), St Paul, Microage Computer Store, Minneapolis • **MONTANA** • Computerland Billings Great Falls Triangle Irrg Co , Great Falls • **NORTH CAROLINA** • Surveyors Supply Company. Apex, Computer South Charlotte Winston-Salem, Computerland Charlotte Durham Greenville. Entre' Computer Center, Greensboro, Raleigh • **NORTH DAKOTA** • Computerland, Bismarck. Fargo Grand Forks Minot • **NEBRASKA** • Computerland Lincoln Omaha. Abacus, Omaha. Microage Computer Store, Omaha • **NEW HAMPSHIRE** • Computerland, Manchester Nashua • **NEW JERSEY** • Entre Computer Center. Allamuchy. Marlton Paramus Pine Brook, Computerland, Cherry Hill Eatontown, Lawrenceville. Morristown, Northfield. Paramus Somerville, Totowa, Union, Computer Mart, East Hanover Green Brook. Iselin, Lawrenceville. Midas Data Systems, Marlton, Vineland Vista Computer Center. Matawan Bamberger's Garden State Plaza, Paramus, Computer Encounter, Princeton • **NEW MEXICO** • Computerland, Albuquerque. Santa Fe Photo & Sound Company, Albuquerque. • **NEVADA** • Computerland. Las Vegas. Reno • **NEW YORK** • The Computer Room Ltd., Albany Glens Falls Computerland, Carle Place Commack Ithaca Johnson City. Little Neck Massena. New York Rochester, Syracuse Tonowanda. White Plains Future Visions Computer Store, Melville, Datel Stores of New York, New York. Futuredata, Inc., New York, Macy's Herald Square, New York Moms Decision Systems, Inc., New York. ASD Office Systems. Poughkeepsie, The Computer Store, Rochester, Computer Systems Specialists. Inc Wappingers Falls. Entre' Computer Center. White Plains • **OHIO** • The Basic Computer Shop, Akron, Canton, Cleveland. Computerland Canton, Cincinnati, Cleveland, Columbus, Mayfield Heights, Miamisburg North Olmsted Warren, Youngstown, Microage Computer Store. Columbus. The Micro Center, Columbus Hudson Computer Systems, Hudson. Abacus II Microcomputers, Toledo • **OKLAHOMA** • Computer Solutions, Inc., Midwest City Oklahoma City. Computerland. Oklahoma City Tulsa. Microage Computer Store, Oklahoma City Tulsa • **OREGON** • Computerland, Portland. Salem, Tigard. New Day Computing, Portland. NWI Audio Vis. Sys (Photo & Sound), Portland • **PENNSYLVANIA** • Microage Computer Store, Allentown, Computerland, Dresher. Gibsonia, Lancaster. Mechanicsburg Paoli. Philadelphia Pittsburgh. Reading. Whitehall. Entre Computer Center, Mt Lebanon. VR Data Computer Center, Springfield • **RHODE ISLAND** • Computerland, Providence. Entre' Computer Center, Providence • **TENNESSEE** • Computerland, Chattanooga Kingsport, Knoxville, Memphis Nashville. Peter Drew & Associates, Chattanooga. The Computer Shoppe. Goodletsville Nashville Anderson Computers, Inc., Murfreesboro Tullahoma Microage Computer Store. Nashville • **TEXAS** • Computerland, Abilene, Amarillo. Austin Brownsville College Station Dallas El Paso. Fort Worth. Houston, Laredo. Longview Lubbock Lufkin. McAllen. Pasadena. Richardson San Antonio. Sherman, Tyler Waco. Computer Corner, Amarillo, Compushop. Inc., Arlington, Bellaire Dallas. Fort Worth, Houston. Irving N Richland Hills Plano Richardson. Webster. Computer Concepts, Beaumont. Compco Computer Centers, Dallas Entre' Computer Center, Dallas. Lubbock Computercraft, Inc., Houston. Photo & Sound Company. Houston. Agriplex Computer, Lubbock Computer Patch. Midland Odessa • **UTAH** • Personal Business Computers, Cedar City Salt Lake City Computerland, Murray Orem Salt Lake City CTI Computer Store, Orem • **VIRGINIA** • Computerland Charlottesville. Norfolk Richmond Vienna Virginia Beach, Woodbridge Entre' Computer Center (Triology Corp), Charlottesville Hampton, McLean. Rosslyn United Computer Center, Chesapeake. The Math Box, Inc., Fairfax Springfield. Small Business Computer Center, Virginia Beach • **VERMONT** • Computerland, Burlington • **WASHINGTON** • Computerland Bellevue Bellingham. Federal Way Kennewick Lynnwood Renton. Seattle, Spokane Tacoma Vancouver. Frederick & Nelsons Computer Depot, Bellevue. Valmont Northwest, Inc , Pasco, Photo & Sound Company, Seattle • **WISCONSIN** • Computerland. Eau Claire. Green Bay. Janesville, La Crosse Madison. Mequon, Milwaukee Oshkosh Stevens Point. Wausau. Microage Computer Store, Milwaukee



With AUTOMATED TELEMARKETING

Introducing the Personal Computer Automated Telemarketing system from Arlington Software+Systems.

Now even the smallest business can benefit from telemarketing without special telephone equipment or service. PCAT is a highly efficient system for managing and scheduling the phone calls that are so important to your success.

PCAT IS FLEXIBLE

- Telephone Sales
- Lead Qualification
- Customer Service
- Surveys
- Receivables Collection
- Inquiries
- Fund raising

PCAT IS EFFICIENT

- Stores customer or client information
- Schedules out-going calls by date and time
- Reschedules busy/no answer calls
- Automatic dialing of local, long distance and network calls
- Built in word processor for order confirmation, letters or memos
- Prompter scripts for consistently effective sales or service

PCAT IS COST EFFECTIVE

You'll be surprised just how cost effective PCAT can make your new or existing telemarketing operation. PCAT reduces your marketing costs, increases productivity and ensures that every contact can be followed up by callback, confirmation, or order entry.

PCAT IS EASY TO USE

In addition to automatic scheduling and dialing, PCAT uses function key prompts and help screens to guide you through the program. A comprehensive User's Guide is provided.

WHO NEEDS PCAT?

- Retailers
- Insurance Agents
- Stock, bond and commodity brokers
- Wholesalers and distributors
- Customer service or support depts.
- Real estate agents
- Accounts receivables depts.
- Collection agencies, etc.

HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS

IBM Personal Computer with 128k, at least one diskette drive, 80 column monochrome or color monitor, and a Hayes Smartmodem or Novation Smart-Cat. Printer is recommended.

Arlington Software+Systems, 97 Bartlett Ave. Arlington, MA 02174 (617) 641-0290

- Have someone call me: I'm interested.
- Please send me written information.

NAME: ______________________

ADDRESS: ______________________

CITY: ______________________

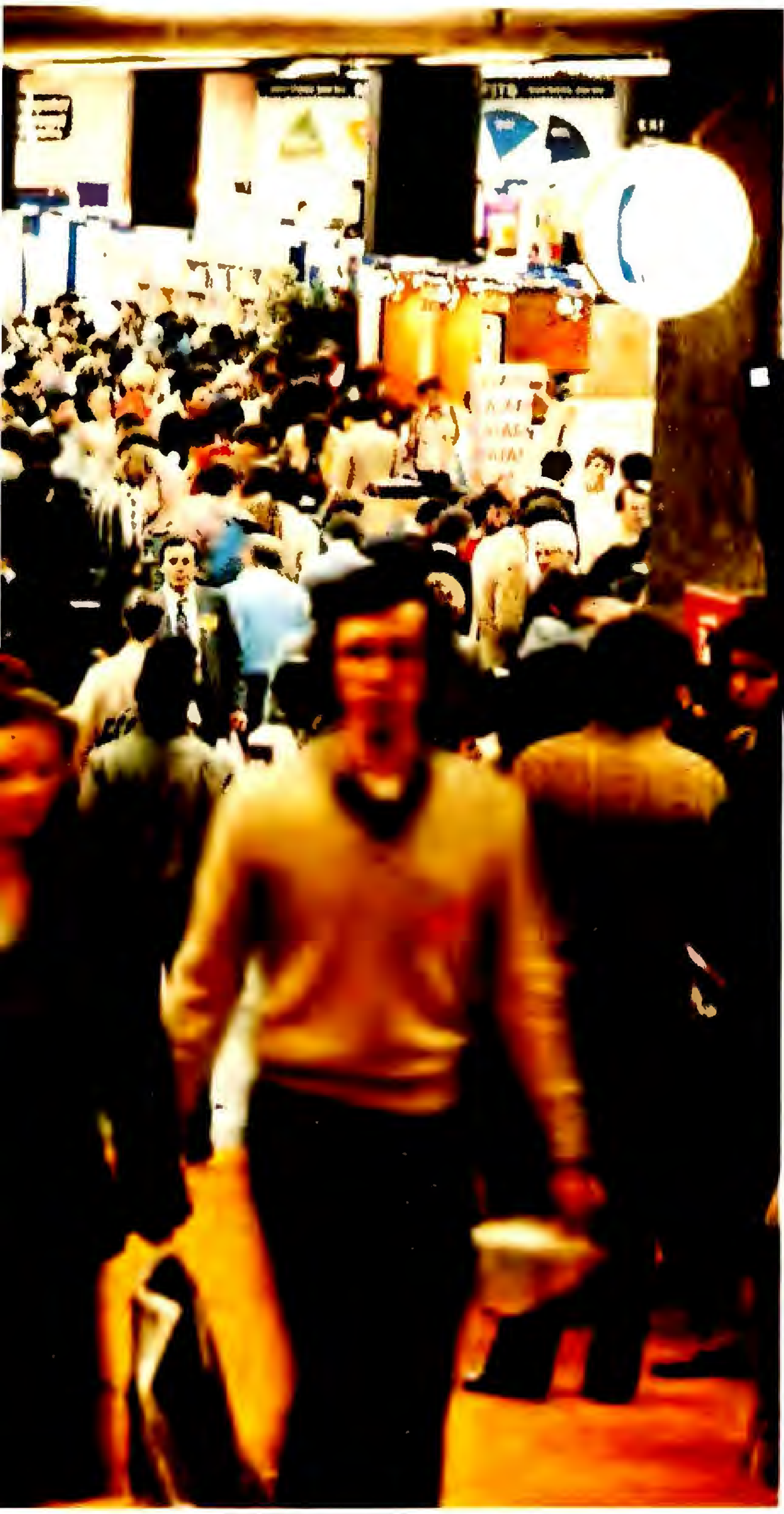
STATE: ____________ ZIP: ____________

PHONE #: (   ) ______________________

ARLINGTON
Software+Systems
97 Bartlett Ave.
Arlington, MA 02174
(617) 641-0290

Let Me Take You to the Faire

David Bunnell



For anyone interested in the personal computing phenomenon there was no better place to be from March 18-20 than in San Francisco at the 8th West Coast Computer Faire. PC World *Publisher David Bunnell went on a whirlwind tour of the Faire, collecting a variety of audio and visual samples, some of which are reproduced in this article.*

"Is Jim Warren in the '80s like Bill Graham was in the '60s?"

"Yeah, I bet he could get 200,000 people easily."

Hearing in post-Faire chatter some bright fellow comparing rock concerts to computer shows struck me as absurd and fascinating. Bill Graham started Fillmore West and Jim Warren started the Computer Faire. Both events reflect the broad social changes of their times.

The comparison has a certain validity, yet there are some fundamental differences too. In the '60s the focus was on personal freedom and political consciousness; in the '80s its on productivity and computer literacy.

No matter what you compare it to, the West Coast Computer Faire has always been intensely rewarding for the thousands of Faire attendees. And it has played a sig-

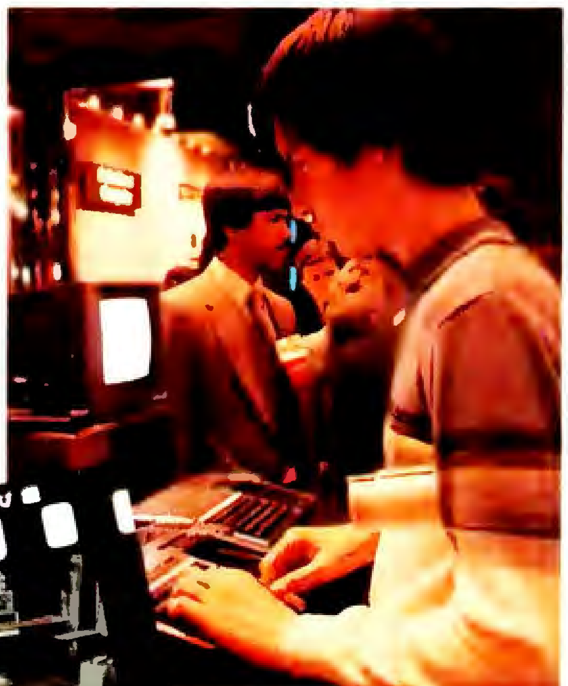
Starting from top left, row 1: Prelude to the Faire—crates containing the stuff of computer dreams; Thursday, March 17 was set-up day at the Civic Auditorium; on Friday the crowds moved in. Row 2: A look way behind the scenes; young project engineer Steve Innes with his portable synthesizer. Row 3: The Faire air was filled with computerese and video game sound effects; a budding young computer nerd.

Starting from top left, row 1: Video games and kids match wits; two Faire attendees meditate on a PCB as the row of printers scrutinizes other Faire goers. Row 2: A fighter pilot of the future battles the enemy in deep space. Row 3: You could fill a suitcase with the brochures, advertisements, magazines, and other printed matter available at the Faire.

Starting from top left, row 1: Famed BYTE cover artist Robert Tinney; Perfect Software's laser display. Row 2: After the Faire participants depart and begin preparing for next year's extravaganza; Mary Carol Smith, president of Avant Garde Creations, came dressed in her fighter-pilot suit. Row 3: Jason Matthews of Apparat explains their new hardware, including an unusual portable (see the tiny screen?).

Starting from top left, row 1: PC World Publisher David Bunnell interviews RB robot as RB's master, Sharon Smith, stands by; Ray Young and Rick Alber of the San Francisco IBM PC Users Group. Row 2: A representative from Corona Data Systems talks about Corona's PC-compatibles. Row 3: People standing several rows deep for a demonstration of Apple's mouse-based Lisa. From the expression on their faces, she was a big hit; the halls in the exhibit areas were filled for three days with a motley crowd of hobbyists and professionals.

Starting from top left, row 1: Jack Kroll explains the purpose of Computer Professionals for Social Responsibility; at $29.95 Spell-it from Berzurk Systems seems berzurk indeed. Row 2: A young computer whiz at the keyboard; a common sight at the Faire—serious perusal of a myriad of publications and products. Row 3: Sunday evening after the Faire; the PC World booth with Harry Miller in the foreground. Next in line are Brooke Hazard, Janet McGinnis, and Jacqueline Poitier.



nificant role in the personal computing story. The Apple II, the Commodore Pet, and *VisiCalc* are examples of products first introduced at the Faire.

The Faire is doubly blessed. It is the oldest and most recognized personal computer show, and the charming city it is located in happens to be less than an hour's drive from Silicon Valley. San Francisco, with Apple, Intel, Hewlett-Packard, and Stanford to the immediate south; Osborne Computers, Perfect Software, and Sybex to the immediate east; MicroPro, Information Unlimited, and dozens more to the north; and Japan looming over the western horizon, is the de facto capital of personal computing. In the words of Assistant to the Publisher Noreen Giannini, "There are more computer nerds per square inch here than anywhere else."

King of the Mountain

A major reason for the success of the Faire is Jim Warren himself. A lumbering, good-natured man whose heart is as big as the mountain top he lives on, Jim has a close kinship with both the user community and industry bigwigs.

Though I've heard Warren confess to hedonist tendencies (while sitting with him in his outdoor hot tub gazing at the sunset), I sincerely believe his highest priority is contributing to the future development of personal computers. His academic background is in computer science and education, and he has invested much of his Computer Faire profits in experimental projects such as electronic datacast. Although a commercial failure, the project proved that the subcarrier of the FM radio wave can be used to transmit large quantities of computer data to millions of personal computer users.

Warren is the founder of several publications including the *Intelligent Machine Journal*, which was sold to International Data Group and renamed *InfoWorld*. He also founded the first irregular newspaper focusing on microcomputers, *The Silicon Gulch Gazette*, of which he is still the editor and publisher, and he created a television show on personal computing that proved, like the electronic datacast project, to be somewhat ahead of its time. In addition, Warren has been known to make contributions in the form of cash, resources, and time to computer groups and educational organizations.

To really appreciate this man's talents, you have to visit his mountain-top house, which he designed and built himself. The house is an octagonal structure with features that include a swimming pool, three decks, solar heating, and a living room with a panoramic view of surrounding mountains and the Pacific Coast line all the way from Monterey, about 50 miles south of San Jose, to Point Reyes, about 50 miles north of San Francisco.

It is in this environment that the Faire is organized and managed. Jim's house and a couple surrounding buildings serve as headquarters of the Faire—the employees come to the mountain top.

Good Vibrations

To be sure, there are other big computer shows. The NCC (National Computer Conference) and COMDEX (Computer Dealer Exposition) are nearly as large as the Faire, but the Faire has the ultimate advantage of being a consumer-oriented event. Obviously, the Faire has a much larger potential draw than a show limited to people in the computer industry.

For that reason the Faire is the most electrifying of all personal computing shows. With street vendors standing outside its doors, robots running through its aisles, festive music spewing forth from computer synthesizers, people madly rushing about, balloons floating overhead, and literature tables piled high to the ceiling, the Faire has a definite carnival atmosphere. Several of my friends in the personal computer industry mentioned that they felt a sense of excitement in the air that was missing at other computer shows. A few complained that the Faire lacked dignity, saying that they prefer the more formal atmosphere of COMDEX or NCC.

Among the rows and rows of exhibits are not only major computer companies like IBM and Apple, but also start-up companies, computer clubs, video arcades, social action groups, computer bookstores, software companies, and numerous hands-on demonstrations. The Faire is both serious and fun.

To give our readers who were unable to attend the Faire a sense of what it was like, I went on a 2-hour tour of Brooks Hall and the Convention Center exhibit areas followed by photographer Phil Schermeister. During the tour, which took place Friday afternoon, the first day of the Faire, I visited the manufacturer of an IBM PC-compatible computer, chatted with members of a San Francisco-based IBM PC user group, got chased away from the IBM booth (their sales reps didn't like my tape recorder or my photographer), learned all about the Computer Professionals for Social Responsibility, discovered a $29.95 spelling checker for the IBM PC, bumped into a teenage project engineer standing in the aisle who was demonstrating an amazing sound synthesizer about the size of a cassette recorder, saw an unmarketed (and perhaps unmarketable) portable PC, talked to the cutest president of a software company you'd ever want to meet, who happened to be dressed in a space suit, and came across an ornery little robot named RB.

News From Compatibility Land

With photographer in tow, I pushed through the crowded isle in front of the Corona Data Systems booth. Corona recently announced two compatible PCs, a desktop unit and a portable. The desktop unit, which I am using to write this report, will be reviewed in the next issue of *PC World.* We haven't gotten their portable model yet. Corona, founded less than 2 years ago by Dr. Robert Harp and located in Westlake Village, California, also manufactures Winchester drives for the PC.

Buttonholing a Corona representative was easy enough, and on behalf of anyone interested in what appears to be well-engineered and highly compatible PC that sells at a significant discount from the IBM model, I asked Vice-president of Sales and Marketing George McMurtry the following questions.

DB: What do you want to tell our readers about the Corona PC compatibles that you're showing?

GM: We are shipping the desktop unit now, and we'll be shipping the portable unit soon. The Corona PC comes with 128K of memory, expandable to 512K without using any of the four expansion slots, and a half-size 320K disk drive. As far as compatability is concerned, we cannot be 100 percent compatible, nor can anyone, or IBM would sue. We are as compatible as we can be. We haven't found any programs that don't work yet, but I imagine there are a few that won't run on our machine. All the standard software, everything on the top-30 list, such as Lotus Development's *1-2-3* and Microsoft's *Flight Simulator,* have been tested. They all worked without problems.

The Faire has the ultimate advantage of being a consumer-oriented event.

DB: How would you compare your level of compatibility with the COMPAQ PC?

GM: I'd say it's about the same.

DB: What do you think of the IBM Personal Computer XT?

GM: We had that one pegged. We felt we knew exactly what they were doing with that product, and we hit it almost right on the nose as to what they were going to price it at. All they've done is come out with a hard disk version of the IBM PC. Our hard disk machine [Corona PC HD] has the same amount of memory as the XT—10 megabytes—and uses the same drive.

DB: Where do you see your main market, as far as the typical buyer is concerned?

GM: IBM has gone out to Sears and ComputerLand and a few selected dealers, and has less than 1000 authorized retail locations. We're not selling directly to the dealers; we're going to the regional, full-service distributors who offer sales support, training capabilities, and networks of authorized, independent dealers. Those dealers will be the outlets for our product and the front line of support. That's about 5000 locations, so we'll get our fair share.

DB: Do you have in mind capturing some percentage of the overall personal computer market?

GM: Yes, approximately 8 percent, but I can't produce enough units to grab 8 percent this year. I probably can next year and the year after that. The year after that, however, the product won't exist because something else will take its place.

Speculation and Words of Wisdom from IBM Users

The Corona booth was located in one of the wings of the Convention Center. Just outside the hall in the walkway was a row of miniature booths. One of them was occupied by the San Francisco IBM PC Users Group. I spoke with Rick Alber, editor of the group's newsletter, and Ray Young, newly elected president of the group.

DB: Can you tell us about the San Francisco IBM PC Users Group?

RA: We're the largest PC user group in San Francisco. We put out the best newsletter in the Bay Area, perhaps in the western half of the United States.

DB: You're referring to Blue Notes. *How many members do you have?*

RA: Climbing by the hour. Maybe around 110? We're expecting to double the amount this weekend.

DB: I wouldn't be surprised if you tripled it.

RY: Have you seen the Perfect Software exhibit?

DB: Yes, I thought it was an indoor US festival.

RY: I haven't walked in there yet. It looks rather ominous with all those glowing screens. It's like walking into space mountain, with the lasers and sounds.... Anyway, we've got ten user group library diskettes now, and various public domain software that seems to be circulating around the country.

DB: How often do you meet?

RY: We meet every third Monday. We have three speakers from IBM coming this Monday to talk about the XT and DOS 2.00. Maybe they'll be able to shed a little light on what's going on. I just came back from a couple of weeks of briefing in Boca Raton, so I thought it was nice to have them lined up for the first meeting after the Faire. They've got to be responsive to users and people who have fewer than 20 PCs.

DB: There's so much to know and learn, and it's very complicated.

RY: That's where user groups come in, filling in the gaps by collecting the information from IBM or finding out if they're unwilling to give out the information. Especially in the Bay Area, people who come to our user group meetings are in the field, involved in writing the software, putting together the hardware, and that sort of activity. We have a great information base to draw from in San Francisco. We've got a lot of new users who have never even touched a computer, and we've got people who've been programming in Pascal since it came out—so we've got quite a wide range.

DB: What do you think of the IBM announcement about the XT and DOS 2.00?

RY: What we really like about the XT is that it's not going to cut off people who already have a PC. The PC is going to be fully expandable up to the same capabilities as the XT. IBM could have gone with a completely different operating system or a different processor and left us out in the cold. At least they're thinking along those lines. We haven't heard enough about 2.00 to judge it. With 2.00 I imagine we'll all forget 1.10 before long. I suppose any of the software that runs on 1.10 will run on 2.00.

DB: You need more than 64K to run WordStar *on DOS 2.00, so it seems like people will be buying more memory.*

RY: In our user group we had a group buy on memory; we got 64K for $40, so there's no reason why anyone should have less than a 256K machine anyway.

RA: MS-DOS 2.00 for $60 is too much. There should be some kind of a deal for people to upgrade.

RY: Version 1.10 cost $40; $60 seems cheap, but after you do it three or four times a year, that's getting expensive.

DB: Do you think concurrency will put CP/M back in the picture as far as the IBM PC is concerned?

RY: Concurrent CP/M is really nice, but if all your applications run under MS-DOS, what choice do you have?

Computer Professionals for Social Responsibility

It turns out that Jim Warren gives small organizations like the San Francisco IBM PC User Group free exhibit space. This adds another dimension to the Faire and helps make it more than a commercial event.

Near the user group space was another organization that caught my attention. I spoke with Jack Kroll and Robert Henry of the Computer Professionals for Social Responsibility.

DB: Can you tell me about your organization?

JK: We are modeled after the Boston organization, Physicians for Social Responsibility. Like them, we are concerned about the threat of nuclear war and the buildup of nuclear weapons. As computer professionals we have a special responsibility to talk to computer colleagues and to help educate the general public about our concerns.

The computer plays a major role in our military and defense systems. Our military relies heavily on computers to warn us when there is a missile attack. New weapons systems that we're proposing in this country cut the lead time from about 30 minutes to 15 minutes or less. There have been instances when our computers indicated that we had an alert, missiles coming in, and it's been only human intervention that determined that it really wasn't the case and stopped our missles from being fired. As that time gap narrows we rely more and more on computers to make that decision for us, and that's our concern.

'We're working on ways to educate people, letting them know that there are people in the computer world who are indeed concerned.'

DB: I can appreciate that concern. What about computer professionals who work for the defense department and create computer systems. Do you encourage people to avoid that kind of work?

JK: No. We're educating mainly other professionals about our point of view.

RH: However, we've talked to people who work for the military contractors. They're generally receptive to what we have to say, but their bottom line is they have to have a job. There is an organization in Boston that encourages people coming out of colleges to interview with companies that are not involved in the military contract process. They operate an alternative employment agency in Boston, and they've had success. I think they've placed about 50 people so far.

We have not addressed that problem yet. Our interest is understanding the problem for ourselves and trying to find ways in which we can express to the general public our technical knowledge of what we feel is the unreliability of computers. We're working on ways to educate people, letting them know that there are people in the computer world who are indeed concerned. We are not nerds who do nothing more than program video games.

The Intersection of Art and Personal Computing

Although the Computer Faire is spread out over several halls and minihalls, conference rooms, loading docks, and hallways, it is ingeniously mapped out so that the aisles and passageways are broad enough to allow the heavy traffic to flow without bottlenecks.

My next stop was the main exhibit hall of the Civic Auditorium at the *BYTE* magazine booth where the major attraction was famed cover artist Robert Tinney, who was selling autographed reprints of his BYTE covers. Tinney's imaginative covers, done as paintings, are legendary in the personal computing business.

DB: How many covers have you done for BYTE?

RT: I haven't kept count. I imagine from 30 to 45.

DB: For a long time I've heard people talk about the BYTE *covers and how much they admire your work. Do you come up with these concepts?*

RT: Some of them I come up with, and sometimes it's between the *BYTE* editors and me. We throw the ball back and forth, and they'll come up with a suggestion. I do a series of sketches for them and we work it out.

DB: I'm always amazed at the quality and execution of the images and also at the cleverness of them.

> Each year at least one unique product comes out of this gigantic hornet's nest of technical hucksterism.

RT: I think one of the big advantages that I've had is that I'm not a computer person. I'm a commercial artist. I met Carl Helmers in Houston before he became the founding editor of *BYTE*. I got to be friendly with him, and he bought some of my original artwork. In 1976 Carl started *BYTE* in Peterborough, New Hampshire. Fortunately for me, he called me up and I've been with *BYTE* ever since. My perspective is a lay perspective. The result is that the covers are more conceptual than technical, and I think that makes it more interesting.

DB: The cover you did of the computer wristwatch with tiny floppy disks is the one I hear about most.

RT: That particular idea belongs to Chris Morgan, who was the editor-in-chief of *BYTE* and is now working at Lotus.

DB: That's wonderful. I think you've made a great contribution to BYTE.

RT: Probably not as much of a contribution as *BYTE* has made to me.

Welcome to the $29.95 Twilight Zone

After feasting on Tinney's classy images what should catch my eye but a crudely designed blue and white sign pronouncing the imminent availability of a $29.95 spelling checker for the IBM PC from a new Berkeley-based company called Berzurk Systems.

This could not go uninvestigated. I conversed with Ian Kettleborough about the program.

DB: Can you tell us about Spell-it.

IK: *Spell-it* is a new spelling checker, specifically for the IBM PC. It will be available on all MS-DOS machines in the future.

DB: How many words does it contain?

IK: It's got a 41,000-word literal dictionary, and you can specify up to 10 auxiliary dictionaries. You can also make unique dictionaries for your own applications.

DB: What about the $29.95 price—that seems extraordinary.

IK: That I think is the way a lot of software is going. It's the wave of things to come.

DB: Is this available by mail or through computer stores?

IK: Right now it's by mail order only. We're looking for distributors and dealers.

DB: Do you think that Spell-it *could be sold in bookstores?*

IK: Yes, especially if the price is kept down.

DB: I'll be looking for it next to Webster's Unabridged.

Hitting the Jackpot at the Faire

Each year, seemingly by divine deliverance, at least one unique product comes out of this gigantic hornet's nest of technical hucksterism. One new computer, piece of software, or marketing idea is such an instant hit that you know it's bound to become the stuff upon which Silicon empires are built.

As a perennial Faire observer I look for the one new product or marketing ploy that will rock the very foundations of our turbulent industry. On occasion, I have even found it.

At the 1977 Faire, for example, I was standing in one of the booths pushing *Personal Computing* magazine when editor Nels Winkless came running up excitedly saying, "David, you've got to see this."

PC World Day

Susan R. Keller

It was a Saturday just like any other, but there was a special excitement at the 8th annual West Coast Computer Faire. Twenty-six distinguished personal computer industry experts gathered to bat around their latest ideas with fellow members of the PC World Day seminars and to field questions from the audience that filled the auditorium.

The symposium sponsored by *PC World* featured five panel discussions open to Faire participants. Starting the day was "Systems Software for the PC" featuring Gary Kildall, President of Digital Research; Chris Larson, Director of Marketing for Microsoft; Gordon Bell, President of Quantum Software Systems, Ltd.; C. A. Irvine, Vice-president of Engineering for SofTech Microsystems; David Hughes of VRI Associates; and Kearney Rietmann, Associate Editor for *PC World.*

In discussing Digital Research's LOGO, Gary Kildall explained that the language was extended to be a complete programming environment that makes developing large programs, notation commenting, and workspace management facilities much easier. "We were able to do this with LOGO because we have a lot more space with the PC than with the smaller, 8-bit machines," Kildall explained.

With only a brief intermission after the first seminar, *PC World* President and Publisher David Bunnell headed another panel with the help of *PC World* Associate Publisher Cheryl Woodard. Also discussing "The PC Phenomenon" were Egil Juliussen, Chairman of Future Computing; Ronald Posner, Chairman of National Training Systems; and Martin Alpert, President of Tecmar. According to Alpert, the initial success of products such as Lisa and *VisiON* will be in their ability to emulate the office environment and work structure. In the long run, however, Alpert believes that the most important contribution these products will make will be in establishing personal computing as an integral part of the office environment.

With the help of Mitchell Kapor, President of Lotus Development Corporation and Gilbert Hoxie, President of Context Management Systems, *PC World* Associate Editor Harry Miller directed a panel discussion on "Second-Generation Software." Other panelists included Roy Folk, Division Marketing Manager for VisiCorp; Dr. Edward Currie, President of Lifeboat Associates; and Jeffrey Harbers, Associate Manager of the End-User Division for Microsoft. The panelists presented their projections on where the software market is headed in the future. "Second-generation software has a tremendous focus on ease of use and learning," explained Roy Folk, "but third-generation software will use mouse systems and third-party products."

The following panel focused on "PC Multiprocessing, Networking, and Communications." Participants included Harry Saal, President of Nestar; Bruce Eisenhard, Omni Project Manager for Corvus; Steven Pomeroy, Product Marketing Manager for 3Com Corporation; Knut Ojermark, EDP Audit Manager for Wells Fargo Bank; Drew Major, Software Systems Manager for Novell Data Systems; and *PC World* Technical Editor Steven Cook. Harry Saal summed up the panel's feelings with three reasons for having a personal computer network: to share peripherals, to share information between individuals, and to route information.

The final seminar, "PC Add-Ons," included a discussion on compatibility. Headed by *PC World* Editor Andrew Fluegelman, the panel also included William Murto, Vice-president of COMPAQ Computer Corporation; Robert Harp, Chairman of the Board of Corona Data Systems; Martin Alpert, President of Tecmar; and Karl Koessel, a Contributing Editor for *PC World.* To one manufacturer, the biggest problem in designing a PC-compatible computer was deciding on a definition of compatibility and then adhering to that definition while designing that PC-compatible machine. "We knew we had to take full advantage of as many of the standards set by the IBM PC as possible," said COMPAQ's William Murto, "including software, hardware add-ons and add-ins, documentation, quality, and human interface."

After 7 hours of far-reaching discussion, industry experts clearly emphasized product improvement for ease of use and learning as a primary concern.

If you missed the PC World Day symposium and would like to hear the panel discussions, cassette tapes are available. Send a check or money order to Cassette Services Co., 19745 Oakmont Dr., Dept. PCW, Los Gatos, CA 95030. Send $7.95 for each session or $34.95 for all five. Please include 75 cents per cassette (up to $5) for shipping and handling.

I dropped everything, leaving the booth unattended, and followed Nels. He took me to a computer store booth where we had to elbow our way through a small mob of people to see a new computer that has since changed the face of the planet. "Ain't that neat," Nels said. He was referring, of course, to the world's first Apple II.

On another occasion I was introduced to Dan Fylstra, who said he was a software publisher. Fylstra directed me to a a small room on the fourth floor of the Civic Center to show me something interesting that he called *VisiCalc*.

"What do you think of this," I remember him saying as I stood there thinking that I must be dreaming. It was such a wonderful idea; you just knew it had to be going places.

With this historical perspective always present I was on the lookout for that revolutionary new product that would make a name for itself. In fact, it was just as I was thinking of this when I ran into a scruffy blond kid standing in the middle of the aisle playing an amazing variety of zippy, eerie sounds through a miniature sound synthesizer strapped over his shoulder. There was a sizable crowd of curious people gathered about as a I recorded this interview with the "kid," composer/project engineer Steve Innes.

DB: What is this thing?

SI: Sci Fi 2. It does all sorts of different sound effects. It can do frequency sweeps, phase-shifter sounds, exponential sweeps, dualtones, and multitones. It can do all sorts of telephoning formats, morse code to ASCII, and it can translate talk to people in the deaf teletype network.

You can talk to computers directly at different baud rates, originate ads, plug it directly into your computer, download and upload, plug it into a TRS-80, download and upload, convert between TRS-80 at different formats and, of course, Morse code translation. You can send at any speed, from hundreds of words per minute to very slowly.

DB: What exactly is this product you're showing?

SI: It's a lunar crooner.

DB: Is this something that you made?

SI: Yes, it's a portable computer music synthesizer.

DB: That's fabulous. Are you selling them?

SI: I think I'd better.

DB: I think so too.

Life after Kid Innes

Trying to talk with the kid genius took my breath away. If he's for real, he may be going places.

I needed to speak to someone from the straight business community, like a solid IBM-compatible product company, just to keep in touch with the planet. Apparat, of course, I thought. I spoke with Jason Matthews, who showed me two intriguing new products: a half-sized 5¼-inch disk drive (so that four drives can fit in the same space now occupied by two) and a monitor that can fit into the drive enclosure to turn your PC into a portable unit.

DB: Tell us about these half-sized drives.

JM: They come double-sided, double-density with 320K of memory and cost about the same as a Tandem single-density, which is about $315. You can install up to four of them.

DB: Can you show us your portable monitor?

JM: This is our new idea to make the IBM a fully portable computer.

DB: Can you turn it on and show it to us.

JM: Well, it goofs up a little bit right now, but I can get it going. We also have a carrying case for it.

DB: What does the portable cost?

JM: We really don't have a cost at present. We're test marketing it right now and drawing reactions. The keyboard lies here, with plenty of room for cables, and the PC stands here.

DB: How many characters per line on the screen?

JM: It's a full 80 by 25 screen.

DB: That's a very interesting idea. What's the reaction of the people who have seen it at the show?

JM: Some amusement, some shock, and some very interesting counter ideas. People seem to like it a lot, but at the same time they don't want the thing to turn into an Osborne. But it's totally different. It is driven off the color graphics board, which means that I can run this monitor and the standard monitor at the same time if I have to. For example, if you go into your hotel room and you want a larger monitor, no problem—plug it in, that's all there is to it.

DB: It's really a new concept in portability.

Into the Wild Blue Yonder

Feeling that I had more than enough material for this article, I motioned to the photographer, and we headed back toward the *PC World* booth. Along the way, however, I bumped into two unusual women who I couldn't resist interviewing. The first was wearing a vinyl space suit with the words *Air Force* blazoned across it.

DB: Are you really in the Air Force?
AF: No.

DB: Can we take your picture?
AF: Sure.

DB: What company are you working for?
AF: Avant Garde Creations. I'm Mary Carol Smith, and I'm the president.

DB: And you sell a flight simulator?
AF: No, we sell a video game called *Jump Jet*.

DB: What does Jump Jet *do?*
AF: It's our answer to *Chop Lifter*, I guess.

DB: How does it work?
AF: You have your loyal forces, a fleet of ships including your mother ship. There are some kamikaze pilots that you have to destroy. When you get to the end of the game, the head of the other forces either surrenders to you or, if you haven't completely destroyed your enemies, they come out and bomb you.

DB: Is this going to be on the IBM PC as well as the Apple?
AF: We have plans to have it on the IBM, but right now it's just on the Apple.

DB: Do you have timetable for when it will be on the IBM?
AF: It'll be a few months, at least.

DB: Thanks. I'm sure our readers can't wait.

Who's that Little Guy Following You?
No sooner did I end my conversation with the Space Lady than who did I run into but the Robot Lady, Sharon Smith of RV Robot Corporation. No computer show would be complete without a robot, and this one, RB, though he can't yet talk, is one of the best I've seen.

DB: What does this robot do?
SS: It's for educational and experimental purposes at this point.

DB: Why would somebody buy one? What would they do with it?
SS: It's completely programmable, so it's ideal for studying programming. Rather than having a beginning programmer see things happen on the screen, he or she can actually make this robot do something. It's a mobile, three-dimensional product. The programmer can see the proof of his or her labors.

DB: How does it sense that it's approaching an object?
SS: It has a sonar detector on the front and eight tactile sensors around the bottom.

DB: So if you touch one of these sensors, it causes a reaction.
SS: The program that's loaded into it now tells it to move in a forward motion. The other thing that's interesting about this particular product is that it learns.

As a perennial Faire observer I look for the new product or marketing ploy that will rock the very foundations of our turbulent industry.

DB: It keeps running away from you. It's not very well behaved yet.
SS: It has the rudiments of artificial intelligence, and it learned earlier today that a 45-degree left turn when it meets an object allows it to keep moving. When a 45-degree left turn doesn't work, however, it resorts to random response.

DB: Amazing—it turns differently according to the situation that it's in.
SS: Right. It remembers its environment—it remembers successful responses—but if those successful responses don't work time and again, it resorts to random response.

DB: Are you going to add other features to it?
SS: Yes, we have an arm under development and data telemetry is also under development. A robot that has learned its environment, for example, will be able to communicate that information directly to a second robot; the second robot won't have to relearn the same environment.

DB: I can't wait to try one.

Back in Safe Harbor
Upon returning to the *PC World* booth, I was deluged with the usual questions from subscribers and advertisers. We had traveled through only a very small section of this marvelous event. The West Coast Computer Faire has such richness that I could do this again and again and it would never be redundant.

And you thought the IBM PC was only for business.

It was.
Until Mirror Images began designing computer games especially for the IBM PC.

Spyder is a fast-paced arcade-style game that pits you against an army of fierce, hungry spiders. Blast them with your laser gun. Or stomp on them as they come your way. **$39.95**

If you've ever dreamed of commanding a star cruiser, **Tachyon** is your game. As commander of The Avenger, your mission is to destroy the Galyon fleet with your computer-driven torpedoes and lasers before the enemy penetrates your shields and destroys your ship. **$39.95**

You'll need cunning strategy to beat the computer at **Hide and Sink.** A naval battel waged by subs, PT boats, cruisers, destroyers, and battleships rages on your screen. Hide your ships carefully. Then seek out and destroy the enemy with your guns and missiles. **$29.95**

And so we tempt you to take a well-deserved break from the day's stress and frustation. Then you may straighten your tie and head back to the board room. Completely refreshed and invigorated!

Contact your local dealer or send a check or money order to Mirror Images. Please include $1.50 for postage and handling. NY residents add 7% sales tax. Credit card orders are also welcome.

Dealer inquiries welcome.

Requires 64K, DOS 1.1, color graphics adapter. Tachyon: double-sided drive; Spyder, Hide and Sink: single-sided drive.

SPYDER™

TACHYON™

HIDE AND SINK™

MIRROR® IMAGES

Mirror Images Software, Inc.
Games Division
1223 Peoples Avenue
Troy, New York 12180
Telephone: (518) 274-2335

HAYDEN...the source

Cryptanalysis for Microcomputers (Foster) Crack and create secret codes with your micro! An introduction to using microcomputers for solving cryptograms and cryptographic systems. Three BASIC programs are discussed: the first converts plaintext to ciphertext, the second converts ciphertext to plaintext, and the third uses mechanical aids and standard attacks on cryptograms. **#5174, $14.95**

Codes, Ciphers, and Computers: An Introduction to Information Security (Bosworth) Describes the fundamentals of secret communication and provides an understanding of computer security through cryptography. Details and illustrates traditional cryptography techniques developed before computers, and discusses more recent concepts for the highest levels of information and data security. **#5149, $14.95**

Microcomputer Systems: Hardware / Software Design (Blasewitz and Stern) Emphasizing the design and integration of microcomputer systems and peripherals, this book offers a complete look at the world of microprocessor design and application. The book zeros in on information needed to become proficient in the design and use of microcomputers. **#5123, $27.50**

CP/M® Revealed (Dennon) Intended for CP/M users interested in improving their skills, this book is a guide to the CP/M operating system: the console monitor (CCP), the system manager (BDOS), and the input/output driver package (CBIOS). In addition to providing a clear understanding of the data structure of the CP/M disk and other essentials for using CP/M effectively, the text fills many of the information gaps left by the Digital Research CP/M manuals. Covers booting up, logging in, changing memory size, mapping disk space, calling all programs, and more. **#5204, $13.95**

Using Microcomputers in Business (Veit) Essential background briefing for any purchaser of microcomputer systems or software. In a fast-moving style, without the usual buzzwords and technical jargon, Veit answers the most often asked questions. **#5152, $10.95**

The 8086/8088 Primer: An Introduction to Their Architecture, System Design, and Programming, 2nd Ed. (Morse) Written by the man responsible for the design of the 8086 microprocessor. Updated to provide novices and professionals alike with a thorough introduction to Intel's 8086 and 8088 microprocessors. **#6255, $11.95**

The Investor's Computer Handbook (Packer) A valuable guide to help you manage your investments better using your micro. NO PREVIOUS MICROCOMPUTER EXPERIENCE IS NEEDED. Offers advice on choosing the system best suited to your particular investment applications, including information on hardware, software, peripherals, and a list of required and recommended components. The programs and principles discussed—primarily in terms of the stock market—transfer easily to other dynamic markets and portfolios, such as commodity futures and options, bonds, and treasury bills. **#5203, $11.95**

How to Cope With Computers (Logsdon) An entertaining yet informative discussion of the impact of computers on our daily lives and the future of our society. Includes a brief history of the computer, explanations of hardware and software, and an introduction to programming in BASIC. Provides an overview of computer career opportunities. **#5193, $7.95**

Available at your local computer store or

Phone 1-800-631-0856

operator IPC 53 • In NJ call 201-843-0550, ext. 382

Hayden

Mail to: Dept. #IPC 53 • Hayden Book Company, Inc. 50 Essex Street • Rochelle Park, NJ 07662

Please send me the book(s) indicated below by code number. If I am not completely satisfied I may return the book(s) undamaged within 10 days for a complete refund

☐ Enclosed is my check or money order.

Please bill my ☐ Visa ☐ MasterCard Expires ____________

Name ____________________________

Address ____________________________

City ____________ State ______ Zip ____________

Visa / MasterCard # ____________________________

Signature ____________________________ B412

We pay postage and handling. Residents of NJ and CA must add sales tax.

Say "Good-bye to Planne

Introducing The SandStar™ Series The First Modular Peripherals For The IBM* Personal Computer.

Now Maynard Electronics, a recognized world lea in peripheral technology, introduces the SandSt Series — a major breakthrough in IBM-compati peripherals. With an almost endless range of n capabilities, you can now add functions as yo need them. And as new components are crea the beauty of SandStar™ Series Cards and Modules is that they will *never* obsolete *themselves*. Their flexibility will allow you to add and interchange modules for years to come.

SandStar™ Multifunction Card

This card can really help you to extend the range of your IBM Personal Computer. The module locations allow you to configure your card with as many as six SandStar™ Modules. As with all SandStar™ Series Cards, all modules function independently.

SandStar™ 5¼" & 8" Floppy Drive Controller Cards

Now you can control up to four 5¼" floppy drives with the 5¼" Floppy Drive Controller Card. The 8" Card is engineered to the same specifications with the exception that it controls two 8" drives externally.

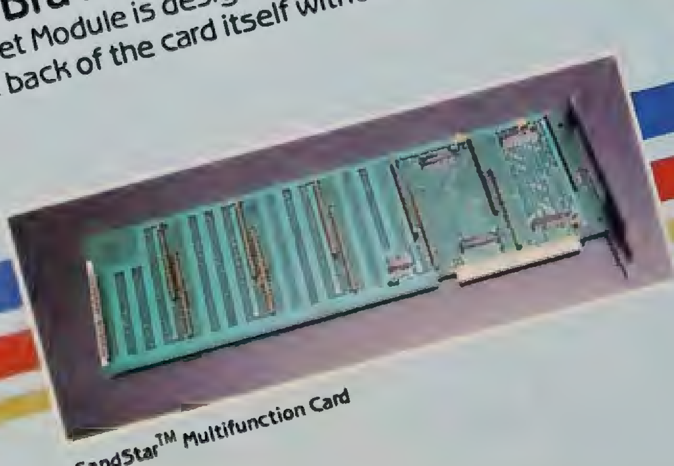
Both Cards will accept up to three SandStar™ Modules.

SandStar™ Game Adaptor Module

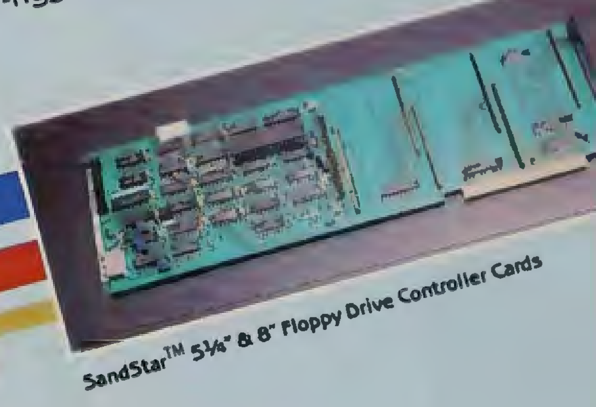
Playing your favorite game is now easier than ever. Up to four paddles or two joysticks can be attached. Also, the Module can be used for input with four digital inputs and four analog inputs which are useful for general purpose graphic applications. It uses the same type 15 pin "D" subminiature I/O connector as the IBM Game Control Adaptor.

SandStar™ Cable Bracket Module

The SandStar™ Cable Bracket Module is designed for easy connector mounting of the SandStar™ I/O Modules. It allows you to cable all modules from the back of the card itself without any troublesome jury-rigging.



SandStar™ Multifunction Card



SandStar™ 5¼" & 8" Floppy Drive Controller Cards

Analyze Faster and Easier with Sams Mind Tools™

Sams Financial Planning Mind Tools™ give you a head start on spreadsheet forecasting! ■ These 17 pre-set calculators instantly superimpose on your Multiplan™, VisiCalc®, or SuperCalc® spreadsheet the correct formulas and column headings for calculations involving compound growth, discounted cash flows, annuities, profit planning, statistics, and real estate planning. ■ Mind Tools let you focus on financial forecast and analysis instead of on tedious spreadsheet-setup, yet leave you free to return to manual setup whenever you wish! ■ All you need is your regular version of Multiplan, VisiCalc, or SuperCalc, plus the corresponding Mind Tool program for your microcomputer. ■ Sams Financial Planning Mind Tools come complete with one disk containing 17 financial calculators matched to your spreadsheet and microcomputer, a complete instruction manual and an easy-to-read, quick-reference guide. ■ Get Sams Mind Tools from computer stores and bookstores nationwide, or directly from Sams. To order by phone, call 800-428-3696 or 317-298-5566 and ask for Operator 330. Dealer inquiries invited. In Canada, contact Lenbrook Electronics, Markham, Ontario.

Available for	APPLE II®	IBM® PC	TRS-80® Model II
Multiplan	22058 $79.95	22063 $89.95	
SuperCalc		22061 $89.95	
VisiCalc	22059 $79.95	22060 $89.95	22062 $69.95

Howard W. Sams & Co., Inc.
4300 West 62nd Street, P.O. Box 7092
Indianapolis, IN 46206

Multiplan is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation ■ SuperCalc is a registered trademark of Sorcim Corporation ■ VisiCalc is a registered trademark of VisiCorp ■ IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Inc ■ Apple II is a registered trademark of Apple Computers Inc ■ TRS 80 Model II is a registered trademark of Radio Shack a Tandy Corporation ■ Mind Tools is a trademark of Expert Systems Inc

A> I DO

Something old, something new—the first on-line wedding

Owen Findsen

There have been weddings on water skis, weddings under water, and weddings in free-fall. It is probable that there have been weddings on 10-speed bikes and weddings while jogging. Weddings taking place under novel circumstances seem to be a fair indication of a new craze about to sweep the nation; whenever a game, sport, or pastime reaches fad proportions, some couple is bound to want to be the first to be married doing whatever it is that's currently trendy.

On February 14, Valentine's Day 1983, the first wedding via computer took place in Grand Prairie, Texas; Oakland, California; Columbus, Ohio; Ottawa, Ontario; and dozens of other cities across the continent. The wedding was held on CB Simulator, a telephone-linked computer network that is a service of the CompuServe Information Network. If the rule of novel weddings holds true, CB Simulator will be the next fad to sweep the nation—a teletext version of the citizens band (CB) radio fad of a few years back. Before long we'll probably be hearing country and western songs about CB Simulator, wearing T-shirts with slogans about it, and watching a made-for-TV movie about a CB Simulator love affair.

Only one CB Simulator wedding has taken place so far, but there have been a number of romances and countless flirtations. There seems to be something curiously amorous about chatting with distant strangers via keyboard, monitor, and modem. The computer revolution may turn out to be more emotional than anyone ever imagined. "If this is the first CompuServe wedding," one wag observed, "how long can it be before the first Radio Shack-up?"

Personal Computing (Very)

CB Simulator is designed to be similar to CB radio. Users log on to any of a number of channels and use "handles" rather than their names for identification. CB Simulator differs from CB radio in that the hookup is nationwide rather than limited to a few miles around an individual's radio. In addition, using a keyboard rather than voice communication seems to make users feel more confident about saying what's on their minds.

"It gets pretty wild at times," said Rae Lynn Stephens of Arlington, Texas, whose handle is "Canoeist." Stephens is a friend of "Silver," the computer bride, and was responsible for the on-site arrangements for the wedding. "When everybody's got a handle, there's no way to know who is male and female and who is married or unmarried. So people feel each other out by asking questions. Once they think they've got you pegged, the questions get more and more personal. Then they're asking you to switch over to the private conversation channel so they can set something up to meet you.

"I'll start talking about what *we* are doing and they see the *we* and figure out that I'm married. Still, it's a great way to flirt."

People play all kinds of games over CB Simulator. They arrange complicated games of Dungeons and Dragons. They attend imaginary parties—hot tub parties are particularly popular. Sex is an important topic of conversation, with people typing things into their keyboard that they would never say if anyone knew who they were. CompuServe does monitor and can jam a transmission if somebody gets too crude, but almost anything goes and people freely indulge in romantic fantasies.

Long-distance Love

"It all started as a joke," explained Silver, who is really Debbie Fuhrman and works for National Car Rental at the Dallas Fort Worth Airport. "It wasn't going to be a real wedding." Her partner in the joke was George Stickles, whose CB handle is Mike. George is the manager of American

```
(CHRISDOS,CBIG SYSOP) THE WEDDING OF <MIKE> TO <SILVER>.......
(CHRISDOS,CBIG SYSOP) PERFORMED BY THE REV. TIM PAYTON....
(CHRISDOS,CBIG SYSOP) REV. PAYTON:
([ MINISTER ]) WE HAVE COME HERE ON THIS VALENTINES DAY TO UNITE
      THIS MAN AND THIS
([ MINISTER ]) WOMAN IN HOLY MATRIMONY.
([ MINISTER ]) MARRIAGE IS ONE OF THE MOST IMPORTANT MOMENTS IN
      LIFE AND SHOULD
([ MINISTER ]) NOT BE ENTERED INTO UNADVISEDLY OR LIGHTLY BUT
      DISCRETELY AND
([ MINISTER ]) SOBERLY. MARRIAGE IS ALSO ONE OF THE MOST JOYOUS
      OCCASIONS
([ MINISTER ]) IN OUR LIFE AND SHOULD BE A TIME FOR MUCH
      HAPPINESS.
([ MINISTER ]) SO PLEASE JOIN YOUR RIGHT HANDS AS WE STATE THE
      VOWS.
([ MINISTER ]) DO YOU GEORGE TAKE DEBBIE TO BE YOUR LAWFUL WIFE
([ MINISTER ]) AND DO YOU PROMISE BEFORE GOD
([ MINISTER ]) TO LOVE HER,COMFORT HER, HONOR AND KEEP HER IN
      SICKNESS AND
([ MINISTER ]) HEALTH
([ MINISTER ]) SO LONG AS YOU BOTH SHALL LIVE?
([ MIKE & SILVER ]) MIKE: I WILL
([ MINISTER ]) DO YOU DEBBIE TAKE GEORGE TO BE YOUR LAWFUL HUSBAND
([ MINISTER ]) AND DO YOU PROMISE BEFORE GOD
([ MINISTER ]) TO LOVE HIM, COMFORT HIM,
([ MINISTER ]) HONOR, AND KEEP HIM IN SICKNESS AND IN HEALTH
([ MINISTER ]) SO LONG AS YOU BOTH SHALL LIVE?
([ MIKE & SILVER ]) DEBBIE : I WILL
([ MINISTER ]) DO YOU GEORGE GIVE THIS RING TO DEBBIE AS A TOKEN
      OF YOUR
([ MINISTER ]) LOVE FOR HER?
([ MIKE & SILVER ]) MIKE : I DO
([ MINISTER ]) IN THE PRESENCE OF GOD
([ MINISTER ]) CONSENTED TOGETHER
([ MINISTER ]) TO BE JOINED IN THE BONDS OF MATRIMONY I NOW,
      ACCORDING TO
([ MINISTER ]) THE ORDINANCES OF GOD AND IN THE NAME OF THE STATE
      OF TEXAS,
([ MINISTER ]) PRONOUNCE YOU HUSBAND AND WIFE.
([ MINISTER ]) YOU MAY KISS THE BRIDE
([ MIKE & SILVER ]) [[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[[ KISS ]]]]]]]]]]]]]]]]
```

The Ceremony

(The following has been edited.)

```
(SCOOP) <<<FLASH>>>>
(FARQUOR-ORGANIST) ALL==> (BRIDAL CHORUS.......)
(GANDOLF-USHER!) ALL RISE
(THE 34 KID) MAZEL-TOV
(BERSERKER) (RISING)
(*:JASMINE:*) <WIPING EYES>
(LOOLOO) I LOVE YOU BOTH!
(MOM AND DAD OF BRIDE) CONGRATULATIONS GUYS
(..ZIPP..) <SNIFF><SNIFF>
(*=>POLISH PRINCE<=*) (ROYALLY RISING)
(GANDOLF-USHER!) CONGRATULATIONS***************
(WIZ OF KESMAI) WHAT'S HAPPENING?
(ADMIRAL JAMES T KIRK) STANDING AT ATTENTION
(SCOOP) <<<<FLASH>>>>>
(MARGARITA) I TIP MY GLASS TO YOU
(*:JASMINE:*) CONGRATULATIONS!!!
(WIZ OF KESMAI) SOMEONE GET MARRIED?
(HALEH ISFAHANI) A TOAST TO THE BRIDE AND GROOM!!
(FARQUOR-ORGANIST) ALL==> (DA DA DE DEEE DA DA...)
(*:JASMINE:*) <THROWING RICE AND BIRDSEED!>>>
(NANCY) YES, WIZ..  RIGHT HERE ON CB
(CHRISDOS,CBIG SYSOP) ALL=> WEDDING MESSAGES MAY BE LEFT IN
     SECTION 3 OF CBIG !!
(HALEH ISFAHANI) (SNIFF) I ALWAYS CRY AT WEDDINGS!
( [<<>>] - CATERER ) ALL THE TABLES ARE SET UP
( [<<>>] - CATERER ) FOOD IS WAITING
(CUPCAKE <BRIDESMAID>) MIKE AND SILVER--BEAUTIFUL CEREMONY!!!
(POSTMAN IN TUX) YUM!!! WHERE?
(ZFLYR<HONEYMOON EXPR) DRINKS ARE IN ORDER!!!!
(FARQUOR) ALL=> RRRRRIIIIIIIIIICCCEEE  "" ""'  '''"''"''   ' '
(APOLLO 18) BEST WISHES FROM SEATTLE.......
(*:JASMINE:*) M & S==>BEST WEDDING IN YEARS!
(GANDOLF-USHER!) WE ARE TOUCHED....AND DRUNK!
(MARGARITA) HERE HERE
(*:JASMINE:*) .*.*.*.*.*.*.*.*.*.*
(CHRISDOS,CBIG SYSOP) SPEECH
(CHRISDOS,CBIG SYSOP) SPEECH
(MOM AND DAD OF BRIDE) SPEECH!!!!
(*:JASMINE:*) FARQ==>MY RICE LOOKS LIKE THIS .*.*.*.*.*
(CHRISDOS,CBIG SYSOP) CHAL => I WANT 8X10 GLOSSIES
(FARQUOR) ALL==> """-_-_-_----"''''_-''''''''''<RICE AND
     ITALIAN ALMONDS.>
(CHALLENGER [PHOTOG]) CHRIS==> YOU GOT 'EM!
(ZFLYR<HONEYMOON EXPR) <><><><><><><><><><><><
(LOOLOO) MIKE AND SILVER: COMPUSERVE IS GIVING YOU YOUR
     CONNECT TIME THIS EVENING!!!!!!!!!
(SCRUT (DRESSED IN SU) TO MIKE AND SILVER ON THEIR DAY OF
     UNITING...
([ MINISTER ]) THX AND NIGHT ALL!!!!!
(MOM AND DAD OF BRIDE) THANK YOU MINISTER
([ MANAGER (WITNESS) ) ____COPIES OF GUEST LIST ARE AVAILABLE___
(CUPCAKE <BRIDESMAID>) GNITE MINISTER!
(SCRUT (DRESSED IN SU) <<< RAISE GLASS>>
(NEWLYWEDS) THANK YOU EVERYONE!!!!!
(T.J.HOOKER) GOOD LUCK MIKE & SILVER::::::::::::::::::
(** PSYDOC **) THREE CHEERS!   HIP, HIP, HOOORAY!
(HALEH ISFAHANI) NEWLYWEDS==>THANKS FOR SHARING THIS MOVING
     OCCASION WITH US ALL!!
([ MANAGER (WITNESS) ) HOORAY!
(POSTMAN IN TUX) HOORAY!!!
(NANCY) SO, CHRIS...  ARE YOU PLANNING TO GET MARRIED THIS WAY?
(HORTO) WHERE IS THE RECEPTON?
(<<ONJ>>) GOOD LUCK MIKE AND SILVER!!
(- BLIP -) A GIFT TO NEWLYWEDS:   OUR FRIENDSHIP AND SUPPORT!
(MARGARITA) BEST WISHES MIKE & SILVER!
(HALEH ISFAHANI) GOODNIGHT, AND BEST WISHES FOR A LONG AND HAPPY
     MARRIAGE!!!
```

The Reception

Photocopy in Grand Prairie, Texas, where the actual wedding took place.

Debbie started chatting over CB Simulator last summer when she was living at home with her parents in Phoenix. She had plenty of flesh-and-blood dates, but she preferred the kind of people she was meeting on the computer monitor. "I called myself Pretty Lady at first," Debbie said. "That way I could get lots of guys to talk to me." After a while she found herself talking to Mike more than to anyone else, and Mike started getting jealous of the other handles he saw on the screen. "He made me change my handle," Debbie said. So Pretty Lady became Silver. Silver and Mike were so much in love that, although they had never met, they conducted a pretend wedding over CB Simulator.

"That was back in October," said Silver. "We were just kidding around, inviting all our friends to a computer wedding. It was so much fun that when Valentine's Day was coming up, we thought we'd do it again."

> The computer revolution may turn out to be more emotional than anyone ever imagined.

But by then things had changed—Silver and Mike had finally met in person, and Silver had moved to Dallas to be near him. "They were running up an awful bill on CompuServe," Rae Lynn Stephens said, "so Debbie came down over Thanksgiving to meet George, and that's all it took."

Stephens said that George (Mike) is "a real card. You can never tell what he's going to do next." What he and Debbie did next was issue invitations to a Valentine's Day wedding over CompuServe, just as a joke. But at CompuServe headquarters in Columbus, Ohio, they didn't know it was a joke. One of the people who was to be in the wedding was "LooLoo," and LooLoo is Pat Phelps, CompuServe publications manager. LooLoo was to be matron of honor. She had seen the opportunity for publicity and had already alerted the press about the first computer wedding. It was on Thursday afternoon that Silver and Mike first realized that they were getting married—really getting married—on Monday.

"I guess we would have gotten married, a regular wedding, sometime in the spring," Debbie said. "We really hadn't talked about it." Asked if her father was paying the CompuServe tab for the wedding service, Debbie said, "No, but he promised to buy the paper for the printouts." Debbie sets the CompuServe bill for the courtship at about a thousand dollars.

The press was expecting a computer wedding, but not between Silver and Mike. A news story in the *Chicago Tribune* was getting lots of attention. The romantic pair was "Chrisdos" and "Zebra 3." Chrisdos is Chris Dunn, a computer technician from New York City, described as a shy loner. CB Simulator was ideal for Chrisdos; even though he was still always alone, through his computer he had hundreds of friends, including Pam Jensen, an animal keeper at the Chicago Lincoln Park Zoo. Pam is Zebra 3, and although her favorite gorilla, Sinbad, is quite broken up about it, Chrisdos and Zebra 3 have become quite an item on CB Simulator.

Modem Marriage

But Silver and Mike beat Chrisdos and Zebra 3 to the altar, or to the keyboard in this case. The affair was set for 9 p.m. Texas time. The bride and groom shared the same terminal, while in another room the minister officiated on a separate terminal. Chrisdos acted as master of ceremonies, keeping the chatter under control. To keep out troublemakers, the ceremony was scrambled and only those who had been given the password *lovein* were on-line for the ceremony.

It began with casual conversation on an open channel, but as the 9 p.m. wedding time approached things got more serious. Fewer people were chatting. Most were "lurking," or watching without talking. Anyone who is on-line with CB Simulator can contribute to the conversation by typing up to 80 characters on their keyboard. Pressing ENTER sends a comment through CompuServe's Columbus computer and onto everybody's screen. Typing garbles a line or two of the typist's screen, but the message comes up neatly on other screens, preceded by the channel number and handle.

As a newspaper reporter, I had been invited to observe from the offices of Sive Associates, the Cincinnati-based advertising agency for CompuServe. We observed on a 40-column color monitor that displayed blue capital letters on a yellow background, lending a circus atmosphere to the proceedings. An 80-column monochrome monitor wedding would have been more dignified.

As the wedding approached, the screen looked something like this:

CHRISDOS) All right everybody, lurk
LOOLOO) A hush falls
HEAVY BREATHER)
ZULU) Where are the bride and groom?
MIKE) Awaiting
ZULU) Who's got the ring?
GANDOLF) I've got it
CHRISDOS) Organist?
ZULU) Dum dum dee dum dum dum dee dum
HEAVY BREATHER)
MINISTER) We have come here on this Valentine's Day to unite this man and this woman in holy matrimony.

With the exception of the "Heavy Breather" poking his ENTER button from time to time, the wedding went without a hitch. After the ceremony there were [[[HUGS]]] and

[[[KISSES]]] for the bride and groom and many on-screen SOB and SNIFF messages. Zulu typed, 'Love your dress, honey.'

In Phoenix, Silver's parents typed in their congratulations. In Columbus, matron of honor Loo Loo was attending another, conventional wedding, but took time out at the reception to watch a monitor as Silver and Mike typed their vows. Mike and Silver were envious when they heard that their guests at the reception in Cincinnati were drinking champagne.

There was television and press coverage in Cincinnati, and Silver was interviewed via keyboard on the 11 o'clock news. Another TV crew was taping at Silver's parents' house in Phoenix.

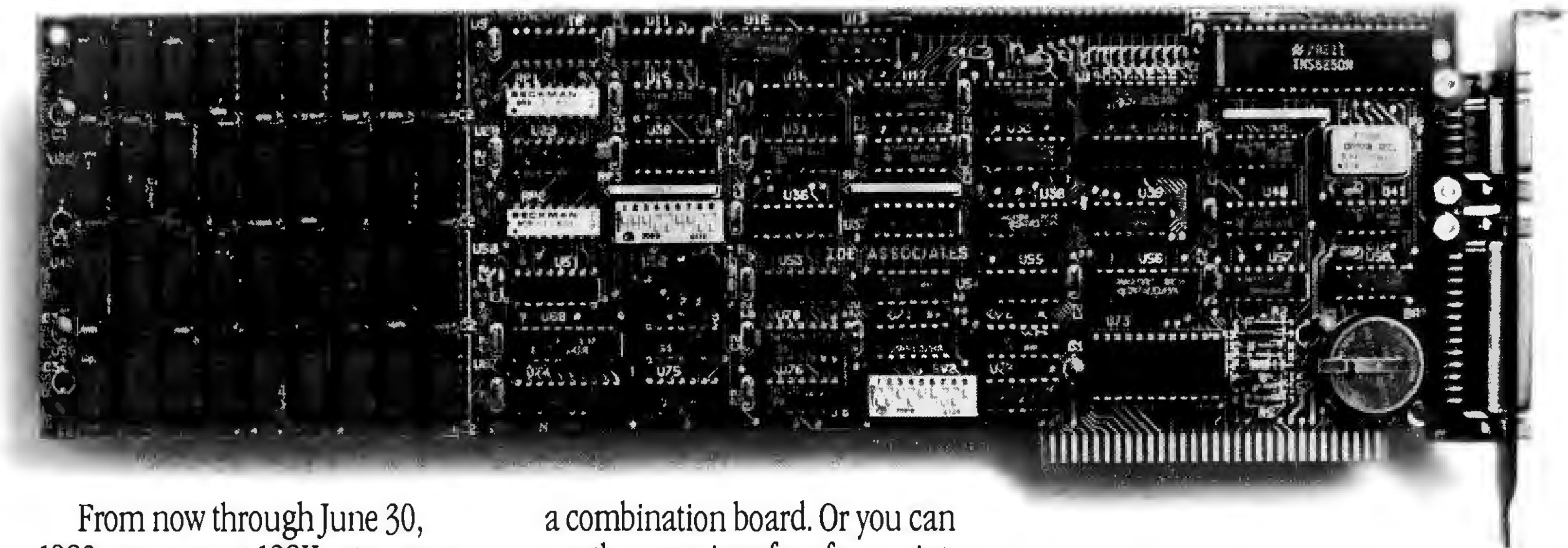
After the ceremony a user check showed 66 computer terminals online, from Seattle and Oakland to Fort Lauderdale and Quebec City. The names of the cities scrolled on and on up the screen. The joking was over. People began signing off or turning to other on-line services. A happy wedding party dissolved into dozens of lonely individuals across the continent sitting in the silent glow of their monitors.

Silly? Perhaps. Undignified? Maybe. There are those who will say that this small event is an example of how the computer is dehumanizing our lives, turning us into machines. But that's not what I saw. I saw people using computers to expand their horizons, to reach out to each other. The machine was never in control. It was a vehicle to put people in touch in a new way but for the same old reasons, love and understanding. Silver said that she won't miss talking to Mike on CB Simulator. Now they'll sit together at the computer terminal and talk to others.

Owen Findsen is a reporter who writes about computers for the Cincinnati Enquirer.

Introducing our best idea yet: Free memory.

Get free extra memory and RAMFloppy disk-emulation software when you buy IDE's 256K Combination Board for the IBM PC.



From now through June 30, 1983, you can get 128K extra memory absolutely free with the purchase of every 256K Combination Board from IDE.

And free memory isn't all. You also get free RAMFloppy disk-emulation software with each 256K Combination Board you order. Together, that's a savings of over $300.

But wait...there's more. Buy any IDE board other than the 256K and you'll get 64K extra memory at half price. *Plus* free RAMFloppy disk-emulation software. For a combined savings of over $100 per board.

This has to be the best idea from IDE since the Combination Board for the IBM PC.

The Combination Board that beats the knockout problem.

IDE's new Combination Board allows you to cable both serial *and* parallel interfaces from the back of the board itself. So even if your IBM PC doesn't have a knockout, you can now interface printers, disks, or communications devices. Without any troublesome jury rigging, without wasting expansion slots, and with the unit's protective cover still in place.

It's a technical knockout.

For the first time, you can get a Winchester disk drive interface on a combination board. Or you can use the same interface for a printer. You can also add a serial interface (RS232C Cable Adapter included) and/or clock/calendar with battery backup.

And the IDE Combination Board gives you these capabilities for *both* the IBM PC and PC XT. Including DOS 2.0 software support.

The winning combination: Price and support.

Look at our price structure.

You buy only the options you want, so you never have to pay for something you don't need.

And with IDE's helpful upgrade policy, you can trade up your board for one with more memory or options. For very little money.

Pricing table

Memory:	Regular Price	Offer Price*	
64K	$275	$275	One option: Add $75
128K	$375	$325	
192K	$475	$425	Two options: Add $120
256K	$575	$525	
256K + 128K	$825	$575	Three options: Add $150

*Includes free RAMFloppy software – a $60 value
Offer good through 6/30/83.

Plus, IDE backs up the Combination Board with a one-year warranty ...not just 90 days.

It's available for immediate delivery, and installation is free in major metropolitan areas.

Don't forget: Order now to get free extra memory and RAMFloppy software.

To get your free extra memory and RAMFloppy software, you must order your IDE Combination Boards by June 30. And the same is true for getting half-price extra memory and free RAMFloppy software with the other boards in our line.

So call us toll-free for the name and location of the nearest participating IDE dealer. (If there isn't one convenient to you, we'll be happy to take your order directly.)

Your IDE dealer will show you the whole line of IDE products: Combination Boards, memory boards, Winchester disk drives, printer spooler software, and disk-emulation software. He'll be glad to sell you the IDE Combination Boards or memory boards you need.

And help you take full advantage of the best free offer in memory.

1-800-257-5027
(In MA call (617) 275-4430)

IDE Associates, Inc.
Better ideas for personal computers.
7 Oak Park Drive, Bedford, MA 01730

Billing Address:

No Postage Necessary If mailed in the U.S.

BUSINESS REPLY CARD
FIRST CLASS PERMIT #36
REDWOOD CITY CA

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

User's Guide
TO CP/M SYSTEMS & SOFTWARE
P.O. BOX 3050
STANFORD, CA 94305

SAVE 25% off newsstand price

Send me the next six issues of ***User's Guide*** **(published every two months).**

Name

Company Title

Address

City State Zip

☐ $18 (Enclosed is CHECK, or CHARGE MY CREDIT CARD:) ☐ Visa ☐ Mastercard

Card # MC only Exp. Date

Signature

☐ BILL ME AT $21. (Put billing address on other side of card.)

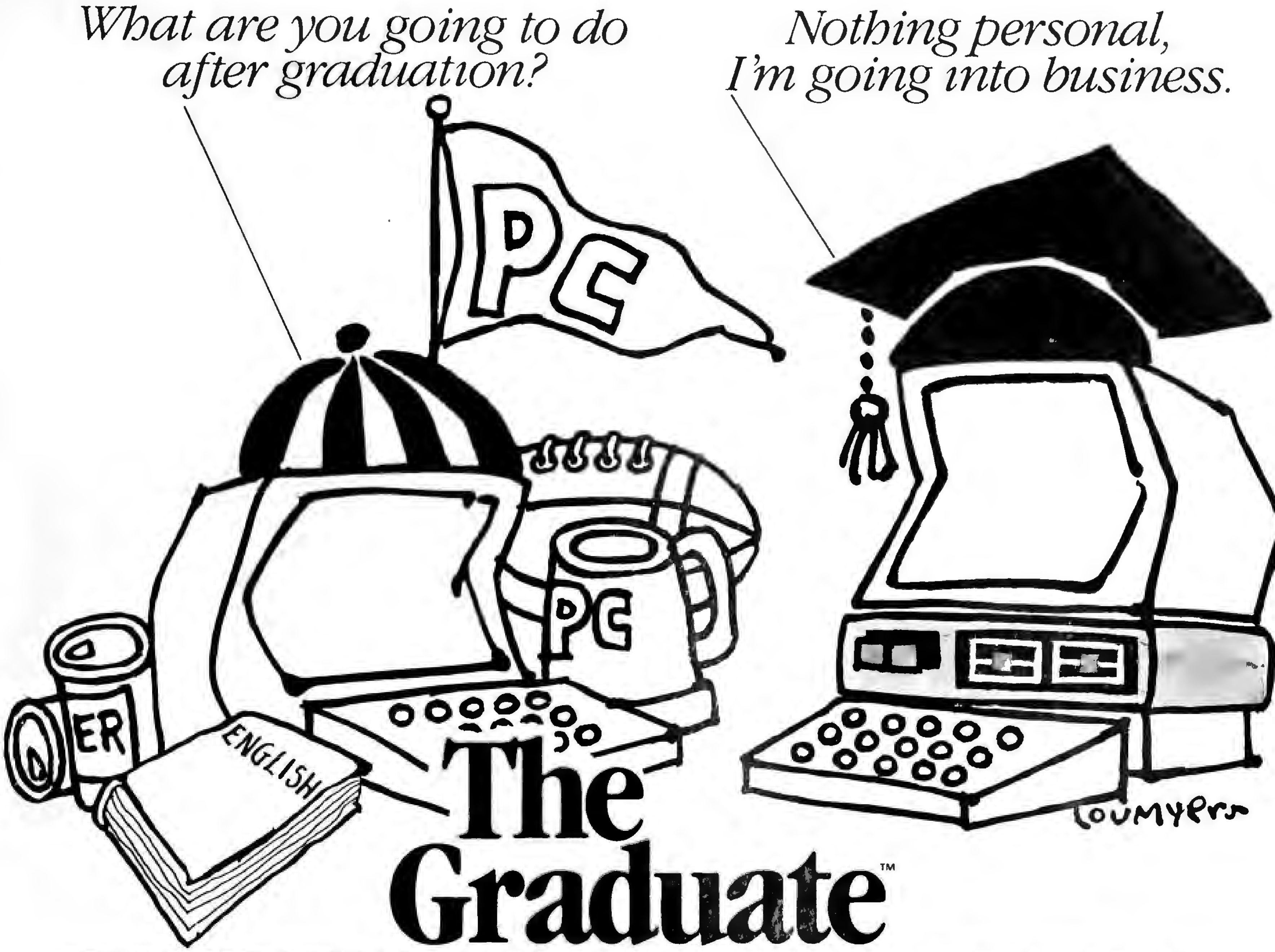
☐ BACK ISSUES (sent postpaid)

Issue #	Quantity		Price		Total Due
		x	$4	=	

Please allow 6-8 weeks for processing
MAIL TO: Box 3050, Stanford CA 94305
Make checks payable to: *USER'S GUIDE*

Offer expires 12/31/83.

PCW1



The Graduate™

IT'S LIKE SENDING YOUR PC TO BUSINESS SCHOOL.

Once you've discovered that your personal computer isn't really educated for business applications beyond a few limited, off-the-shelf software packages, you'll probably want to trade it for a business computer with a lot more power.

And a much bigger price tag.

Well, don't.

Because all you really need is the GRADUATE from Unidata.

With the GRADUATE, your PC instantly becomes an intelligent, powerful business computer with a capacity of up to 10 million characters.

But the GRADUATE's *real* power is what it knows: its CAP/CAB* software called Unisyn.

Unisyn is an advanced business software applications generator that provides professional level CAP/CAB capability in a truly user-programmable system.

It means that you can create sophisticated custom programs based on your existing business forms and office procedures—even if you know nothing about computer programming.

The GRADUATE connects to your Apple, IBM PC, DEC Rainbow or other personal via a universal RS 232 C port, so you need no additional, expensive interface. It will work with all CP/M compatible software.

And the cost of the GRADUATE—even added to the original purchase price of your personal computer—is less than that of most small business systems you can buy.

If you think the GRADUATE and your PC belong together, put on your CAP and go to the head of the class.

UNIDATA

Unidata Systems Inc.
Newington Park, Portsmouth, NH 03801 (603) 436-1100

See us at Comdex, Booth 251-255.

*Computer Aided Programming/for Computer Automated Business.

Purchasing Computer Power

Use a four-step outline to weigh the cost versus the benefits of memory or storage expansion for a small business.

Mark Phillips

In a world where successful businesses are made or broken by relatively small changes in productivity, the benefits provided by storage and memory expansion devices for the IBM PC can be critical. Many manufacturers have entered the field with hardware and software products ranging in price from under $100 to several thousand dollars. These products include hard disks for storage expansion, RAM boards and electronic disk emulation software for memory expansion, and software utilities such as print spoolers for increased flexibility.

The Business Plan

Choosing the best storage and memory expansion devices for a company is difficult enough for those who are knowledgeable about computers. But the choice is more difficult for the typical business person who is unfamiliar with the latest hardware and software developments. He or she must research technical information as well as balance business requirements against budgetary restrictions.

In general, purchasing additional storage for the PC should be approached in the same way as purchasing any large fixed asset; while not as large as some investments, storage devices such as hard disks carry the same kinds of long-term consequences.

Determining the fixed assets a company needs most requires an understanding of a firm's general business plan, methods of operation, predicted growth, and future markets. Surprisingly, many companies, both large and small, neglect to formulate a plan before plunging into business. However, this plan is the key to successfully understanding a company's goals and determining where improvements in productivity are most needed.

The Decision Process

Once the business plan is established, the next step is to establish a logical procedure for choosing appropriate storage devices. Doing so requires following a specific outline in order to identify what a business expects to achieve with storage and memory expansion and to determine the most cost-effective purchase. The outline should include the following four steps:

1) *Analyze the features of the various storage and memory expansion devices.* Businesses can choose among a number of products to enhance the productivity of the PC. Roughly, these devices fall into three categories: hard disk drives capable of mass storage, increased RAM capacity and multifunction RAM boards, and special software utilities such as print spoolers that allow the PC to perform several tasks simultaneously (see Table 1). A more detailed discussion of these products will follow later.

2) *Examine the nature of the business.* Does the firm require access to and storage of very large numbers of documents, customer files, or similar data? If so, a hard disk would be a good choice because of its large storage capacity. Does the company use software (such as *WordStar*) that returns frequently to a disk drive for program instructions or additional data? If so, memory expansion with RAM boards and electronic disk emulation software might be the wiser choice.

3) *Consider the office environment and the employees who will use the storage devices.* Are space, noise, or aesthetics critical? Who will operate the PC? Is there a sufficient budget to cover the cost of the device and possible training? Is there more than one PC or are other units a future consideration? Does the business work with copy-protected programs that can't be transferred to a hard disk?

4) *Create and implement a comparative rating system.* This system should evaluate the business requirements determined in the previous two steps against the advantages of each product analyzed in the first step. Budgetary restrictions must also be considered at this point.

Hardware and Software Options

Researching the alternatives for storage and memory expansion to determine the most cost-effective options for a business requires substantial time and effort. After considering the benefits and disadvantages of each option, discuss the final contenders with a knowledgeable salesperson or consultant.

Hard Disk

For the company that manages a great deal of information, a hard disk provides the greatest benefits. Although it's usually the most expensive addition to a computer system (typically $1500 to $3000), the hard disk offers tremendous amounts of storage, is relatively easy to use, and operates more rapidly than floppy disk drives. If used as a centralized disk from which information is shared, a hard disk can support several computers in a network.

Some hard disk drives for the PC can be installed internally (in place of one of the regular floppy disk drives). An internal hard disk significantly reduces the fan noise of external units and makes efficient use of space in smaller offices. External units are mounted in cabinets designed to complement the PC's styling. Tecmar offers a subsystem cabinet that is identical to the PC system unit. Inside are a separate power supply, additional expansion slots, and the hard disk drive in either 5- or 10-megabyte versions. Two alternatives are the new XT, which comes with a hard disk installed, or the IBM hard disk expansion unit for both the PC and the XT.

Computer consultants report that businesses frequently forget about data backup. This issue becomes important when you are dealing with the large amount of data stored on a hard disk. Critical data may be next to impossible to duplicate without a backup system. One consultant says that some of her clients had thought they could effectively rely on floppy disks to back up data from a hard disk. They had never stopped to realize how much time and energy this backup method would take each day. Various backup systems are available. Corvus has designed a system that stores backup data on a videotape recorder.

Increased RAM

The memory expansion obtained with RAM boards is cheaper and more easily accomplished than the storage expansion a hard disk provides. Anywhere from 64K to as much as 512K can be obtained on memory expansion boards for the PC. Prices range from $200 to $1000. The additional memory is helpful with many programs. With more memory, for example, *WordStar* performs print spooling and block moves more efficiently, and *VisiCalc* produces larger spreadsheets. An added benefit of RAM boards is that they don't use desk space.

Many manufacturers include electronic disk emulation software free or at a nominal charge with the purchase of a RAM board. This software addresses available memory just like a disk drive. Electronic disks function with much greater speed than mechanical disks. One risk involved in using electronic disks, however, is that all stored information is erased if the power fails or is turned off. As a result, data must be transferred to some other medium or it will be lost.

Electronic disk emulation is especially useful to businesses that have heavy word processing demands, because it allows faster access to data than mechanical disks. Even mass mailings on a limited scale can be handled when appropriate mail-merge software and an address list are loaded onto the electronic disk.

Competition has brought multifunction RAM boards into the picture. With only five slots in the PC main system unit, expansion space is at a premium. Adding combination boards is an easy way to ensure system growth in the future, and they usually don't cost much more than boards containing RAM alone.

Software Utilities

Perhaps the most cost-effective purchase for increased productivity is a multitasking program such as a print spooler, which dumps a file to be printed into memory and frees the PC to handle other chores. This type of software usually costs under $100, so it should bring an immediate return on the investment as a result of time and salary savings. Using multitasking programs in conjunction with RAM expansion should further increase productivity.

Rating System

To decide which method of storage and memory expansion is likely to bring the highest return on your investment, use a comparative rating system. First, list the hardware and software options under consideration and then your business goals in order of priority. Assign a weight to each goal according to its priority. Out of four priorities, for example, the highest priority receives a weight of 4, the next highest a weight of 3, and so on.

Hard Disk

Access time faster than floppy disk drive

Flexible, relatively secure mass storage

Easy to connect and operate

Requires extra controller board and modification of PC-DOS to address hard disk

Backup more difficult than floppy disks (can use removable cartridge, cassette tape, and videotape)

Large external units require additional office space; internal units replace one floppy drive inside PC chassis

Some units may have objectionable fan and operating noise

Can operate in a network environment

Illegal to transfer copy-protected programs to hard disk

Expensive: $1795 to $5000

RAM Board

Extremely rapid access (faster than hard disk) to electronic storage; certain programs (*WordStar, SuperCalc*) will operate more rapidly

Data stored in RAM subject to loss through power outages

Easy to operate

Easy to copy data to other medium (floppy disk or hard disk)

No desk space required

Quiet; fully electronic

Other functions (clock/calendar, additional printer ports) combined on some boards

Electronic disk emulation and print spooler software increase flexibility

Moderate Cost: $200 to $1000 (depending on optional functions such as clock/calendar and printer ports)

Electronic disk emulation software free or at a nominal charge with purchase of RAM board

Software Utilities

Permit multitasking such as print spooling

Operation easy and fast; improve productivity and speed of office tasks

Quiet

Inexpensive: $40 to $150

Table 1: Business Considerations for Hard Disk, RAM Board, and Software Utilities

Next, assign a score to each option according to its ability to achieve your goals. For example, if mass storage takes your number one spot, give the hard disk the highest score, say a 10, and the other devices proportionally lower scores. If speed and ease of operation weigh more heavily in your business, give the high score to RAM expansion. Do the same with each business goal.

To produce a score that reflects the importance of each option in relation to your business goals, multiply the assigned weight of a goal by the assigned score of an option. Total the scores and see which option brings the greatest benefit.

Finally, decide which of the highest-scoring devices are most affordable. If the top-scoring choice exceeds the budget, consider the second choice or a combination of less expensive alternatives. The process of elimination will determine the most beneficial, cost-effective options for your business.

The following discussion takes the hypothetical XYZ Company through an analysis of the best hardware and software options to meet its business requirements.

The Business

XYZ Company sells office supplies and equipment to small- and medium-sized businesses throughout a city of some 500,000 people. During each of the past three years, XYZ has shown a 10 percent annual increase in sales, which has been mostly offset by inflation. This year, as a result of the poor economy, the firm expects income to remain flat, with sales of approximately $1.5 million. XYZ maintains some 650 regular accounts and has from 100 to 150 walk-in customers daily. The average sale involves seven items totaling nearly $100. XYZ extends 30-day credit to its regular clients.

Last year, to help track inventory and handle correspondence, XYZ invested in an IBM PC with 64K of memory and two double-sided disk drives. Smith, the owner, and her assistant are the only people using the computer. Smith purchased inventory, spreadsheet, and word processing software. The company's budget prohibited additional purchases.

Smith is now interested in accounts receivable and accounts payable management. While the company could rely on its floppy disk drives for the bulk of its current requirements, Smith realizes account management would be easier and quicker with larger mass storage. At the same time, she wants to manipulate more of XYZ's sales and inventory records to predict sales trends. However, sales analysis software requires at least 128K of memory.

Complicating matters, a new office-supply company down the street with extremely competitive pricing has begun to attract XYZ's walk-in retail traffic. XYZ's budget allows the firm to spend a maximum of $4000 for both hardware and software this year. But obviously the company would like to keep overhead low by reducing expenditures for fixed assets.

		Hard Disk		RAM Board		Sales Analysis Software		Accounts Receivable/ Payable Software	
Weight Factor	Business Goals (in priority order)	Assigned Score	Weighted Score	Assigned Score	Weighted Score	Assigned Score	Weighted Score	Assigned Score	Weighted Score
4	Sales Analysis and Projections	3	12	10	40	10	40	1	4
3	Cost Containment	2	6	10	30	8	24	8	24
2	Ease of Operation	7	14	10	20	3	6	5	10
1	Improved Business Management Techniques (accounts receivable/payable)	8	8	5	5	5	5	10	10
Total Scores		20	40	35	95	26	75	24	48
Price Range		$1795–5000		$200–$1000		$350–$500		$800–$1000	

Table 2: Comparative Rating System for XYZ Company

XYZ's dilemma can be summarized this way: the firm could concentrate on the relatively inexpensive RAM card and see much more immediate amortization of the cost. Or it could select a hard disk and opt for a more long-term capital expenditure, which conceivably could result in manpower and other overhead savings.

Goals

To begin a logical analysis, Smith reviews the business' needs and establishes a list of goals for any new PC accessories, including secondary areas of convenience such as ease of operation, space, and noise. Next, she examines the time spent each month on bookkeeping. While the firm could realize some manpower savings through automating its accounts, competition is the more immediate concern.

XYZ is reasonably secure in its steady corporate customer base because the new firm refuses to extend credit. But walk-in business appears vulnerable. In spite of its inventory control system and an attempt to hold the line on prices, XYZ is having difficulty meeting the price competition from the nearby store. XYZ must continue to attack overhead and excess inventory, and reexamine its market position.

Smith believes her money will be better spent on a more powerful system for analyzing and forecasting sales and reviewing XYZ's market segment than on automating the firm's account management techniques. Analysis of current sales could lead to better inventory control. This in turn would help hold down costs and reduce lost sales resulting from items not being in stock.

So Smith values the company's need for automated accounting systems below sales analysis. Although these systems would be helpful, Smith decides XYZ's manual systems could be used for another year.

XYZ's final business priorities are: 1) sales analysis and projections 2) cost containment 3) ease of operation and 4) improved account management techniques.

Options

Smith then evaluates the hardware and software best suited to XYZ's requirements. First she reviews hard disks and RAM expansion boards. Earlier research showed the importance of increased internal memory with RAM for any complex analyses. While a hard disk would make account storage more efficient, without the expanded memory the hard disk really couldn't assist the store's immediate goals of sales analysis and cost containment. The sales analysis software is a higher priority than the accounting software because it addresses the firm's primary goal of achieving a better competitive position; however, accounting software would reduce labor costs.

> Purchasing additional storage for the PC should be approached in the same way as purchasing any large fixed asset.

Rating

Smith lists XYZ's business requirements in order of priority and then lists the hardware and software options that could support those requirements, as well as the cost of each. She judges the ability of each option to achieve every goal by using the comparative rating system described earlier.

For sales analysis and projections, Smith assigned the hard disk 3 points, cost containment 2 points, ease of operation 7 points, and improved business management techniques 8 points—a total score of 32. She applied the same approach to a RAM board and the sales analysis and accounting software (see Table 2).

Upon reviewing the capabilities and costs of both software packages, Smith finds a hidden benefit. With the money saved by not purchasing a hard disk this year, the company could purchase the accounting software as well as the RAM board and sales analysis software. With the accounting software in place, XYZ could begin to phase in an automated business management system this year, thus accomplishing an even lower priority goal. Total cost for all purchases would run approximately \$1900: \$400 for a multifunction RAM board, \$500 for the sales analysis software, and \$800 to \$1000 for the accounting software.

The succinctness and flexibility of this comparative rating system make it ideal for analyzing the cost versus the benefits of any major purchase. Additionally, for those who use a spreadsheet program, the listing and scores fit the format of *VisiCalc* or similar programs. With a spreadsheet, managers can perform any number of "what if" analyses to see how various combinations satisfy both business requirements and budgetary restrictions.

Small businesses can easily follow the four-step analysis presented in this article. After doing so, a company can rest assured that its decision about storage and memory expansion has a foundation in a logical appraisal of reasonable alternatives, rather than leaving decisions concerning profitability to luck.

Mark Phillips specializes in business and financial writing in the Seattle area.

ACCOUNTING SOFTWARE
for the IBM PC and Compatibles

This time-tested, interactive software was originally developed in 1975 for small-to-medium sized businesses Since then it has successfully proven itself in well over 5,000 companies in all 50 states and in 13 foreign countries It is used by hundreds of bookkeepers, accountants and CPA's. Order yours today

Dependable, High-quality Accounting System

IN STOCK
READY TO SHIP

Complete Package of Software, Training Aids, Manuals, and Users' Newsletter

ONLY
$495

Desktop Accountant™

FULL-FEATURE, FULLY-INTEGRATED ACCOUNTING SYSTEM
Everything you need to keep the books... at a price you can afford!

A Complete System

includes all four standard general accounting modules:

General Ledger
Accounts Receivable
Accounts Payable
Payroll with check writing

- Produces 42 reports & documents
- Gives you a "big company" image with pre-printed forms, statements, invoices, checks, reports, etc.
- Each module may be run "stand-alone" or fully-integrated to post automatically to General Ledger
- Manual & Automatic check writing
- Detailed A/R & A/P Aging Reports
- Comprehensive customer data files
- Departmental Reports/Statements
- Friendly and fully menu-driven
- Flexible Chart of Accounts
- Instant access to all information
- System-prompted data entry
- On-line data file updating
- Complete, detailed audit trails
- Compatible with floppy & hard disk
- A truly professional system!

Here's What You Get

1. A professional, full-feature, fully-integrated accounting system.
2. Six 5¼" Double-Density diskettes, or 14 Single-Density diskettes.
3. Four easy-to-follow, self-teaching User's Manuals (over 540 pages!).
4. An exclusive, new audio cassette tape with step-by-step instructions for installation and start-up.
5. "Read Me First," a unique 40-page system guide and start-up aid.
6. Complete sample data and sample reports for practice and training.
7. Free 1-year subscription to Users' Newsletter, "Debits and Credits".
8. Two 3-ring storage binders for User's Manuals and Newsletters.
9. Complete source code so you can easily customize any program.
10. Telephone "Hot Line" service for helpful Installation support, Start-up support, Technical support, and Training support.

Your Bookkeeper, Accountant, and Banker will love you for installing this great system!

For Portable, Personal, and Desktop computers... including formats for CP/M® and IBM PC (& compatibles).

Not sold in stores • Order Direct by Mail or Phone
FREE Information Pack showing printed reports, etc.

ORDERS and INQUIRIES CALL (415) 680-8378

ROCKY MOUNTAIN SOFTWARE SYSTEMS
Business Microcomputers and Software

Send Orders to: 1280-C Newell Avenue, Suite 147J • Walnut Creek, California 94596
VISA • MasterCard • COD • California residents add 6% State sales tax
Orders shipped within 24 Hrs. via UPS • Add $5.00 for faster Blue Label Air Service

GENERAL LEDGER

• Automates bookkeeping and financial reporting process • Produces up-to-the-minute income statements and balance sheets • Includes prior year comparisons • Flexible chart of accounts • Detailed audit trail • Trial balance includes all transactions • Income statements for up to 99 Departments • Instant on-line access to all information • Reduces effort and errors

ACCOUNTS RECEIVABLE

• Helps control cash flow! • Produces timely invoices and statements • Maintains comprehensive customer data files • Customer activity available instantly on screen or printer • Summary and detailed aging reports • Helps speed collections, make financial decisions, and monitor sales performance • Detailed audit trail • Includes automatic periodic customer/client billing option—ideal for service businesses • Open item or balance forward

ACCOUNTS PAYABLE

• Greatly improves cash management • Maintains complete vendor/voucher history • Tracks current and aged payables • Produces aged payable reports on command • Automatic pay selection program allows payment by due date or discount date • Accommodates both manual and automatic check writing • Includes check register • Uses commercially available forms • Detailed audit trail • An excellent cash management tool. The savings realized from improved cash control can pay for your Desktop Accountant™ within one year

PAYROLL

• Be the office hero each week when the checks come out on time! • Stores data for all hourly, salaried, and commissioned employees • Prints payroll checks with an absolute minimum of input • Maintains monthly, quarterly, and yearly totals for reporting purposes • **Multiple states(!)** • **User-modifiable tax tables(!)** • Prints W-2s • Prepares 941 reports • Uses commercially available forms • Offers popular, comprehensive employees' check stub • Stores and reports employee personnel and payroll information

PRODUCES 42 FINANCIAL REPORTS and DOCUMENTS:
(Displayed on Screen or Printed on Paper)

General Ledger

1. Chart of Accounts
2. Chart of Accounts with summary dollar amounts
3. Chart of Accounts with prior year comparisons
4. Daily Transactions Report
5. Itemized Monthly Transactions
6. Balance Sheet
7. Balance Sheet with prior year comparison
8. Income Statement
9. Income Statement with prior year comparison
10. Departmental Income Statement(s)
11. Departmental Income Statement(s) with prior year comparison
12. Detail report for individual accounts
13. Trial Balance Statement

Accounts Receivable

1. Daily Transactions Report
2. Invoices (with or without pre-printed forms)
3. Statements (with or without pre-printed forms)
4. Summary Aging Report
5. Detailed Aging Report
6. Itemized Monthly Transactions
7. Detailed Cust. Activity Report
8. Summary Cust. Account Report

Accounts Payable

1. Daily Voucher Report
2. Daily Credit Report
3. Checks with Detailed stubs
4. Check Register
5. General Ledger Transfer Report
6. Cash Requirements Report
7. Transaction Register
8. Open Voucher Report
9. Aged Payables Report
10. Detailed Vendor Activity Report
11. Summary Vendor Account Report

Payroll

1. Federal Tax Tables
2. State Tax Tables
3. Payroll checks with stubs
4. Payroll Check Register
5. Monthly Payroll Summary
6. Quarterly Payroll Summary
7. Gen'l. Ledger Transfer Report
8. Detailed Employee File Listing
9. 941 Worksheet
10. W-2 Forms Printing

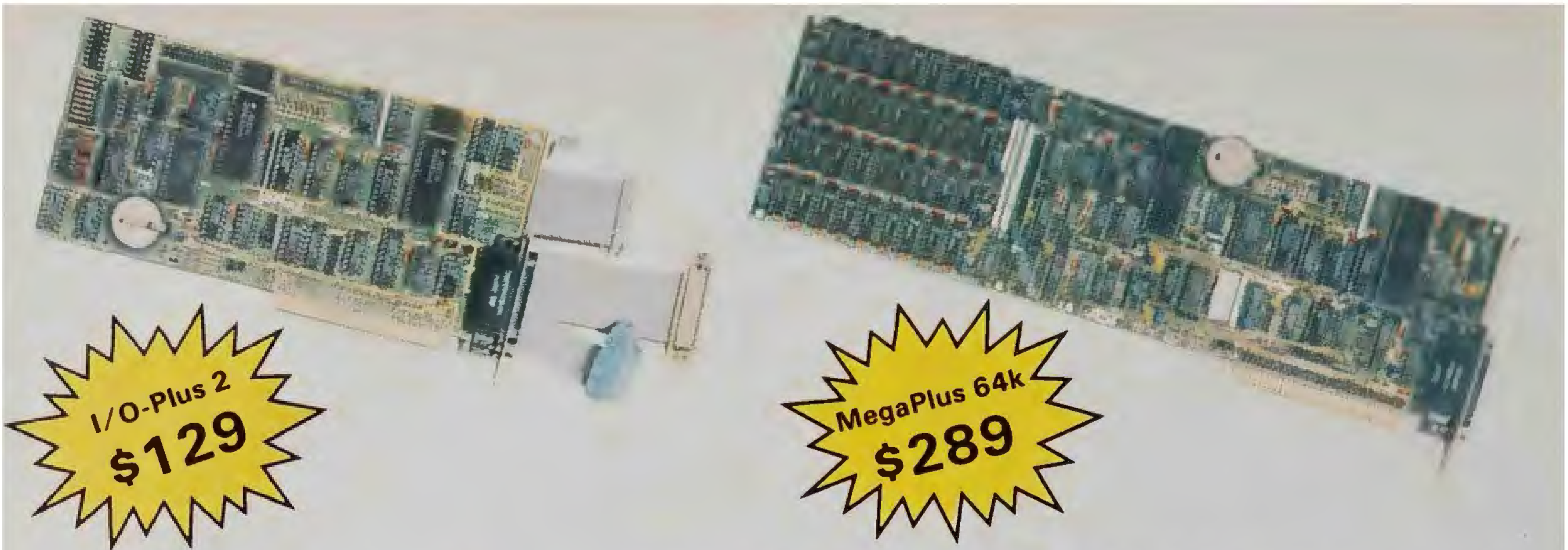
SYSTEM CAPACITIES

		Transaction Capacities per month (approximate)		
Accnt'g. Module	Master File Capacity	Single-Sided Diskette	Double-Sided Diskette	Hard Disk per Mb
GL	400 Accounts	800	1,600	7,000
AR	400 Customers	800	1,600	7,000
AP	400 Vendors	800	1,200	7,000
PR	400 Employees	—	—	—

IBM

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Requires either CP/M® or MS-DOS (PC-DOS), MBASIC for CP/M®, BASICA for MS-DOS; 56K to 64K RAM; 2 Disk Drives or Hard Disk; at least 200K of mass storage (we recommend more); 132 column printer (an Epson MX-80 or similar printer with compressed mode is acceptable); call for exact requirements on specific systems.



Now you can buy a QUAD function IBM PC board without having to buy more memory.

MegaPlus™ and I/O-Plus 2™ are the ultimate add-on products you will need to expand your **IBM PC** and **XT**. Which board you decide on depends on where you are headed. To take full advantage of your **IBM PC** and **XT** beyond 256k, you will want to expand with the MegaPlus™. It's features include two asynchronous ports, clock/calendar, printer port, and up to 512k of memory expansion. Ah! You say you already have all the memory you need? The I/O Plus 2™ gives you all the features of MegaPlus™ to operate your printers, plotters and modems, set your time and date automatically with the clock/calendar, without adding memory. Also a special game adapter is available, but more about that later. Both boards include SuperDrive™ disk emulation and SuperSpool™ print buffer software.

MEGA WITH MEMORY

The MegaPlus™ has three functions standard: Parity checked and fully socketed memory up to 256k in 64k increments; clock/calendar with battery back-up for automatic loading of time and date when the computer is turned on; and an asynchronous communication port (RS232C serial) which can be used as COM1 or COM2, (DTE for a printer, or DCE for a modem). Optional is a 100% IBM compatible parallel printer port, and a second asynchronous port for another $35 each. The MegaPak™ option plugs onto your MegaPlus™ "piggyback" style to give you 512k of additional memory. Now you can create disk drives in memory up to 360k, set aside plenty of space for print spooling, and still have memory for your biggest programs.

I/O-PLUS 2 WITHOUT MEMORY

The I/O-Plus 2™ comes standard with a clip-on battery powered clock/calendar, and asynchronous communication port (RS232C serial). Optional is a second asynchronous port (DTE for a printer, or DCE for a modem), a parallel printer adapter, and the best game paddle adapter on the market. What's so special about our game adapter? Not only is it an IBM standard game port, but it can also use low cost, widely available Apple compatible paddles and joysticks. If your memory needs are satisfied, for less than the price of most single function boards, I/O-Plus 2™ gives you all the input and output ports you might need.

FREE SOFTWARE

SuperDrive™ disk emulation software creates "disk drives" in memory which access your programs at the speed of RAM memory. SuperSpooler™ print buffer software allows the memory to accept data as fast as the computer can send it and frees your computer for more productive work. Some manufacturers sell hardware print buffers that do only this for hundreds of dollars. SuperSpooler™ eliminates the need for these slot robbing products. Both of these powerful pieces of software can be used with any expansion memory for your **IBM PC** or **XT**.

CHEAP SOFTWARE TOO

What good is great hardware without some great software to use it with? We offer some terrific prices on some of the popular programs you will want to use your board with. How about the cream of the spreadsheet programs, SUPERCALC, for just $159, or SUPERWRITER for $239. If you are looking for data base management you can get dBASE II by Ashton-Tate for $419.

WHY BUY IT FROM US?

Because we provide the service and support most companies just talk about. Each board is fully tested and burned in prior to shipment. We realize how integral this board is to the use of your computer. What good is a warranty if it takes weeks for repairs to be made? We offer 48 hour turnaround or a replacement board on all warranty repairs. Do you hear anyone else making this promise? If you still are not convinced, and want to compare prices, remember we don't charge extra for credit cards, shipping, or COD fees. We think the ultimate testimony to our good service and high quality is that one of our largest customers is none other than IBM! If you still want to buy elsewhere, ask any competitor if they will face the acid test.

THE ACID TEST

Qubie' (say que-bee-A) gives you a 30 day satisfaction guarantee on all board purchases. If you are not completely satisfied we will refund the entire cost of your purchase as well as pay the postage to return it. If you can get one of our competitors to give you the same guarantee, buy any other board you think compares and return the one you don't like. We're not worried because we know which one you will keep. We also offer a one year parts and labor warranty. An additional one year extended warranty is available for $50.

TO ORDER BY MAIL SEND:

- your name and shipping address
- board type, size, and options requested
- daytime phone number
- California residents add 6% sales tax
- company check or credit card number with expiration date (personal checks take 18 days to clear)

TO ORDER BY PHONE:

In California (805) 482-9829
Outside California
TOLL FREE (800) 821-4479

PRICES:

I/O-Plus 2™ with Clock/calendar, asynchronous communication adapter, SuperDrive™ and SuperSpool™ - **$129**

MegaPlus™ with memory, clock, async, SuperSpool™ and SuperSpool™ software:

64k	$289		
128k	$339	256k	$439
192k	$389	512k	$788

OPTIONS:

Parallel Printer Port	$35
Second Async Port	$35
Game Adapter (I/O-Plus 2 only)	$35
MegaPak™ with 256k of memory	$349
Cable to parallel printer	$35
Cable to modem or serial printer	$25
Memory Diagnostics Program	$10
SUPERWRITER by Sorcim	$239
SUPERCALC II by Sorcim	$159
dBASE II by Ashton-Tate	$419

SHIPMENT

We pay UPS surface charges. UPS 2 day air service $5 extra. Credit card or bank check orders shipped next day.

QUBIE' DISTRIBUTING
4809 Calle Alto
Camarillo, CA 93010

European Inquiries:
129 Magdalen Rd.,
London, SW18, England
Phone (01) 870-8899

How to get a fast 300% return on your IBM-PC investment.

Compared with COBOL interpreters, mbp's new COBOL Compiler runs programs four times faster. With mbp on your IBM-PC, applications that used to take four hours now take one; that's like a 300% return on investment.

How is it possible?
Interpreters translate and execute a program one statement at a time, every time the program runs. mbp's COBOL Compiler generates machine language object code, so the entire program is translated only once; it then can be executed as often as you want in a fast single step—with no retranslation.

Gibson Mix: BENCHMARK RESULTS Calculated S-Profile *(Representative COBOL statement mix)* Execution time ratio		
mbp COBOL	COBOL X	COBOL Y
1.00	4.85	7.04

And it's COBOL—
the language for commercial and administrative applications. Standardized and maintained like no other language, now COBOL brings mainframe benefits to business microcomputer users.

mbp COBOL meets ANSI '74 Standard. It features a full range of utilities: 'Compiler Intelligence' automatically corrects simple syntax errors; Run-time Debug; Index Check and Array-Bound Inspection; listing options allow source and object code, map and cross-reference tracking. 500+ error messages insure user-friendliness. There is plenty of existing software, and maximum portability protects software investments.

Just $500.
Compare mbp's advantages, then compare prices; you'll be pleasantly surprised— again. Plus, application software developers can make up to 50 run-time package copies with no royalty charge.

mbp has twenty-five years worldwide software experience and twelve(+) in mainframe custom COBOL implementations. The mbp COBOL Compiler makes this valuable expertise available for micro users. Take advantage of it, and start getting a 300% return on investment, today.

mbp COBOL is available now
for the IBM-PC* or any microcomputer with MS-DOS,* iRMX-86,* or CP/M-86;* soon for OASIS-16.*

*IBM-PC is an IBM TM; MS-DOS, Microsoft TM; iRMX-86, Intel TM; CP/M-86, Digital Research TM; OASIS-16, Phase One Systems TM.

IBM-PC +

mbp COBOL. 300% faster—just $500.

mbp®
7700 Edgewater Drive, Suite 360
Oakland, CA 94621 Phone 415/632-1555

Please send me complete mbp COBOL information and performance data.

Name__________
Company__________
Address__________
City__________
State_____ Zip_____
Phone #__________

OEM & distributor arrangements available.

QUANTUM'S MULTI-TASKING, MULTI-USER REAL-TIME DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM FOR THE IBM PC.

$650

THE QUANTUM SYSTEM FEATURES . . .

THE MULTI-TASKING MULTI-USER REAL-TIME MESSAGE-PASSING OPERATING SYSTEM

(QNX)*

FASTER, SMALLER AND BETTER THAN UNIX!**

- ☐ Up to 250 Simultaneous tasks
- ☐ Either Four or Sixteen simultaneous users (specify on order entry)
- ☐ Code sharing and re-entrancy
- ☐ 16-level task priorities
- ☐ Alterable time-slicing
- ☐ 1-megabyte memory management
- ☐ Device independent input/output
- ☐ Disk-loadable drivers
- ☐ Davong & Genii Drivers standard
- ☐ Ramdisks standard
- ☐ Disk-loadable command shell
- ☐ Pipes in the shell
- ☐ Task Creation
  - Create a new task
  - Fork (make exact copy of a task)
  - Transform to new task
- ☐ Inter-Task Communication
  - Messages: Send, Receive & Reply
  - Ports: Attach, Detach & Signal
- ☐ 9.6KB Real-Time
- ☐ Command recall & Re-execute
- ☐ Type-ahead & command line editing
- ☐ Serial & Parallel printer support
- ☐ Printer spooling

THE QUANTUM C COMPILER &
8086/8087 ASSEMBLER
Full Kernighan & Ritchie V7

FILE SYSTEM

- ☐ Hierarchical file structure limited only by disk storage availability
- ☐ Time & date stamping of all files
- ☐ 16-character file and directory names
- ☐ User, File, Directory & Disk Security Record Locking via "Agent" tasks
- ☐ Multiple readers but one writer
- ☐ Random file input/output
- ☐ 32-megabytes per logical drive (8 total)

FULL SCREEN EDITOR

- ☐ Memory resident, Ultra-Fast
- ☐ 256 column window
- ☐ Insert, block copy, move & delete
- ☐ Autosave
- ☐ Word-wrap & autofill
- ☐ Powerful pattern matching and replacement
- ☐ Global commands and extensive macro capabilities
- ☐ Complete keyboard translation
- ☐ Color card supported
- ☐ The Quantum Line Editor is a subset

SYSTEM UTILITIES INCLUDE

- ☐ General listing & sorting
- ☐ Backup files by date, time & pattern
- ☐ Async Communications to 9.6KB
  - "TALK" to mainframes or micros
  - Secure (CRC, block re-send)
- ☐ Read and Write PC DOS files
- ☐ Debugger
- ☐ On-line command syntax help

*QNX is a trademark of Quantum Software Systems, Ltd. **UNIX is a trademark of Bell Laboratories

TO ORDER CALL TOLL FREE: (800) 538-8157, ext. 926 • (800) 672-3470, ext. 926 (In California)

ADDITIONAL QUANTUM COMPILERS

All compilers use the INTEL 8087 coprocessor for floating point calculations
Separate compilation & cross linking, link modules from different languages for rapid system development
Single large shared library
Simple library update mechanism which allows new modules to be added using the editor alone

DOC – TEXT FORMATTER
A powerful imbedded text processing system
Recursive, macro extendable
Form letter and mailing list capabilities

BASIC (Compatible with PC Basic)	$300.00
FORTRAN (ANSI 77)	$300.00
PASCAL (With full extensions)	$300.00
INTEL 8087 COPROCESSOR	$250.00
MANUALS	$100.00
ON-LINE SYSTEM DOCUMENTATION	$100.00
SOURCE FOR THE SHELL	$100.00
ANNUAL SYSTEM UPGRADE	$200.00
DOC – TEXT FORMATTER	$300.00

QUANTUM
SOFTWARE SYSTEMS, INC.
7219 Shea Court
San Jose, California 95139
Tel: (408) 629-9402

I am a ☐User ☐Dealer ☐Distributor
☐Please send me a brochure

Name ____________ Title ____________

Company ____________

Address ____________

City ____________ State ________ Zip ________

QUANTUM
SOFTWARE SYSTEMS, LTD.
P.O. Box 5318, Station "F"
Ottawa, Ontario, Canada K2C 3H5
Tel: (613) 235-4297

I am a ☐User ☐Dealer ☐Distributor
☐Please send me a brochure

Name ____________ Title ____________

Company ____________

Address ____________

City ____________ State ________ Zip ________

TO ORDER CALL:
1-800-451-2502
617-641-1241
Technical Support
617-641-1235
SoftwareBanc
661 Massachusetts Ave, Arlington, Ma.02174
TEACH YOUR COMPUTER WHO'S BOSS!
ATTEND A dBASE II™ OR 1-2-3™ CLASS
Taught by ADAM B. GREEN
Author of the dBASE II™ USER'S GUIDE
"Green's approach introduces dBASE II™ on a conceptual level, helping people learn to think about their information in a constructive way."
Jim Taylor, Product Manager, Ashton-Tate
Monday dBASE II™ Fundamentals
Tuesday dBASE II™ Programming
Wednesday Advanced dBASE II™ Techniques
Friday Business Planning With 1-2-3™
Each day of instruction runs from 9:00 AM to 5:00 PM and costs $175. Extensive notes and a buffet lunch are included. Call or write for a detailed description of each class, and a copy of our impressive client list.
Register now for a class near you!
ANCHORAGE August 11-12
CHICAGO October '83
DALLAS Nov. 14-18
HONOLULU January '84
LOS ANGELES July 18-22
NEW YORK Sept. 19–23
ORLANDO February '84
SAN DIEGO Dec. 12-16
WASHINGTON, D.C. Aug. 29-Sept. 2
dBASE II™ and 1-2-3™ classes are presented by SoftwareBanc Seminars
™ — MANUFACTURER'S TRADEMARK

NEW PRODUCTS!

THE ANSWER — NORTH AMERICAN BUSINESS SYSTEM, INC.
NOW YOU CAN TRULY HAVE INFORMATION AT THE TOUCH OF A BUTTON FROM THE WORLD'S FIRST SELF-TEACHING DATABASE SYSTEM. THE ANSWER USES "ELECTRONIC CARDS" OR COMPUTERIZED VERSIONS OF INDEX CARDS. THESE CARDS HOLD ALL YOUR PERTINENT INFORMATION IN THE SEQUENCE YOU WANT IT. WITH THE ANSWER'S REPORT GENERATION FEATURE, YOU CAN ALSO DO MAILINGS, BUSINESS REPORTS, MATH, AND HIGH LEVEL SEARCHING.
LIST PRICE: $295.00 — **MICROHOUSE PRICE: $249.00**

FAST GRAPHS — INNOVATIVE SOFTWARE
FAST GRAPHS IS A COMPLETE GRAPHICS AND PLOTTING PROGRAM DESIGNED FOR THE IBM-PC WITH A COLOR OR HIGH RESOLUTION BLACK AND WHITE MONITOR. COMPLETELY MENU DRIVEN, FAST GRAPHS AUTOMATICALLY SCALES AXES, TITLES, AND CREATES GRAPH LEGENDS; USING MANUAL DATA INPUT OR DIRECT DATA INPUT FROM VISICALC, OR MOST OTHER SPREAD SHEET AND DATABASE PROGRAMS. SPECIAL DRAW MODE WITH PAINTING AND ERASING FEATURE ALLOWS YOU TO CREATIVELY EDIT YOUR GRAPHS AND CHARTS.
LIST PRICE: $295.00 — **MICROHOUSE PRICE: $189.00**

THE CREATOR — SOFTWARE TECHNOLOGY
THE CREATOR FOR YOUR IBM-PC IS A UNIQUE SOFTWARE PROGRAM IN THAT IT ALLOWS YOUR COMPUTER TO WRITE ITS OWN PROGRAMS. EVEN WITHOUT THE KNOWLEDGE OF BASIC OR ANY PROGRAMMING SKILLS WORD PROCESSING, DATA BASE MANAGEMENT, BAR GRAPHING, ETC. CAN BE DONE IN A MATTER OF MINUTES. A MAJOR SOFTWARE BREAKTHROUGH.
LIST PRICE: $300.00 — **MICROHOUSE PRICE: $155.00**

VOLKSWRITER
THE EASY TO USE, WORDPROCESSOR DESIGNED ESPECIALLY FOR THE IBM-P.C. WHAT YOU SEE ON THE SCREEN IS WHAT YOU GET ON PAPER. COMPATIBLE WITH VISICALC, SUPERCALC, SPELLGUARD, DBASE II, EDLIN AND ALL LANGUAGE COMPILERS. LEARN IN 60 MINUTES FROM THE SCREEN, NOT THE MANUAL!
VOLKSWRITER SUPPORTS THE FOLLOWING PRINTERS:
IBM 80 CPS, BROTHER HR-1, SMITH-CORONA TP-1, NEC 8023A, NEC SPINWRITER, CITOH PROWRITER, EPSON MX 80 IDS, OKIDATA & F10-STARWRITER COMING SOON.
LIST PRICE: $195.00 — **MICROHOUSE PRICE: $155.00**

SPECIAL PACKAGES$$	COMBINED LIST PRICE	MICROHOUSE PRICE
WORDSTAR/MAILMERGE/SPELLSTAR	$945.00	$444.00
WORDSTAR/MAILMERGE	695.00	349.00
WORDSTAR/MAILMERGE/INFOSTAR	1190.00	589.00
RANDOM HOUSE ELECTRONIC THESAURUS/PROOFREADER	200.00	149.00
dBASE II/DUTIL	799.00	555.00
dBASE II/DUTIL/QUICKCODE	1094.00	679.00
dBASE II/QUICKCODE	995.00	599.00
FASTGRAPH/VISICALC	545.00	345.00

THE ANSWER IS A TRADEMARK OF NORTH AMERICAN BUSINESS SYSTEMS, INC. CP/M IS A REGISTERED TRADEMARK OF DIGITAL RESEARCH, INC., IBM IS A REGISTERED TRADEMARK OF INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES. THE CREATOR IS A TRADEMARK OF SOFTWARE TECHNOLOGY FOR COMPUTERS. FAST GRAPHS IS A TRADEMARK OF INNOVATIVE SOFTWARE, VOLKSWRITER IS A TRADEMARK OF LIFETREE. PRICES MAY VARY WITH DIFFERENT FORMATS. NOT ALL PROGRAMS ARE AVAILABLE FOR ALL FORMATS. ALL PRICES AND SPECIFICATIONS ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. PLEASE CALL OR WRITE FOR SPECIFICS.

MICROLINE:℠

MICROHOUSE OFFERS 24 HOUR COMPUTER SHOPPING WITH MICROLINE. MICROLINE IS A COMPUTERIZED ORDER-ENTRY SYSTEM THAT ENABLES YOU TO ACCESS SPECIFIC INFORMATION ON OVER 1000 MICROCOMPUTING HARDWARE AND SOFTWARE PRODUCTS, IN ADDITION TO NUMEROUS SUPPLIES AND ACCESSORIES.*

1·215·868·1230 MICROLINE OPERATES AT 300 BAUD, 8 BITS, NO PARITY, 1 STOP BIT.

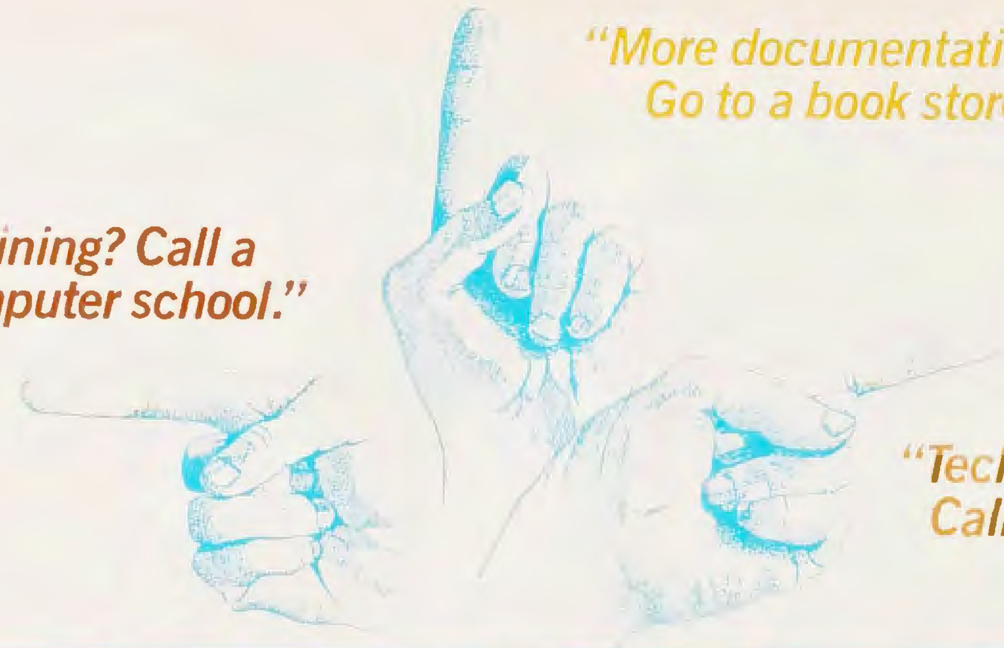
1444 LINDEN ST./BOX 499 BETHLEHEM, PA 18016

WE WANT YOU TO KNOW ...

MICROHOUSE

"More documentation? Go to a book store."

"Training? Call a computer school."



"Technical support? Call the publisher."

Interested in dBASE II™ or 1-2-3™? Beware The Dreaded Finger Pointers!

Sound familiar? Does your dealer turn into a "finger pointer" when you need help?

At SoftwareBanc we offer a complete system that doesn't stop when your software is delivered.

Careful Product Selection

Do you get bewildered by the endless lists of software you find in most ads? Let us be your quality control department.

We only sell the best programs on the market. After a thorough evaluation we chose dBASE II™ for data processing, and 1-2-3™ for financial management.

Our complete line of add-on products help you to continue to get the most from your software.

Expert Technical Support

When you buy software from us, you can rest assured that help is only a phone call away. Just call us at (617) 641-1235 for all the free support you need.

Free dBASE II™ User's Guide

Order dBASE II™ from us, and you'll receive a free copy of our dBASE II™ User's Guide. You can also buy the User's Guide first for only $29, and then receive a full credit when you buy dBASE II.™

French Translation
La Commande Electronique
5 Villa Des Entrepreneurs
75015 Paris, France

Japanese Translation
JSE Int'l
9F Toyo Bldg. 6-12-20 Jingmae
Shibuya-ku Tokyo, Japan 150

Free 1-2-3™ Utility

1-2-3 TRANS is a menu driven program that will quickly and easily transfer files from dBASE II™ to 1-2-3™ and back again. Free with 1-2-3™ purchase!

1-2-3™ & dBASE II™ Classes

Want more in-depth information about dBASE II™ or 1-2-3™? Attend a SoftwareBanc seminar near you. Each session runs from 9 to 5, and costs $175.

Los Angeles
July 18-22

Washington, D.C.
Aug. 29-Sept. 2

Anchorage
August 11-12

New York City
September 19–23

Prices You Can Afford

†1-2-3™	Call for price*
†dBASE II™	$479
†ABSTAT™	$379
dBASE II™ User's Guide	$29
DBPlus™	$95
dGRAPH™	$199
dUTIL™	$69
dNAMES™	$109
QUICKCODE™	$199
TEXTRA™	$70*

*Only available for IBM PC with MS-DOS.
†No-risk 60 day money back guarantee

Free Catalog

If you want to learn more about SoftwareBanc, call or write for our free product catalog.

SoftwareBanc

661 Massachusetts Avenue
Arlington, Mass. 02174

To order call: (800) 451-2502
(617) 641-1241 in Mass.

For technical support call:
(617) 641-1235

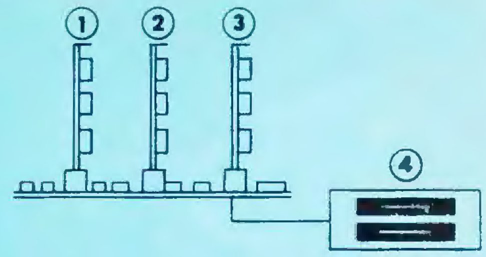
™Manufacturer's trademark

Payment may be made by: MasterCard, Visa, check, C.O.D., money order. Mass. residents please add 5% sales tax. Add $5.00 for shipping and handling.

Meet Baby Blue's Family

CPU PLUS

TM



Enhance your IBM PC

1 Baby Blue™ — $600

PLUS

CP/M® Co-processor.

The co-processor concept that gave the IBM PC user instant access to 20,000 CP/M programs. Its Z-80™CPU-based design, plus 64K RAM makes BABY BLUE a powerful co-ordinator of all PC-DOS functions and CP/M programs.

2 256K RAM — $256

No-Frills Memory Board

Plugs right in your IBM PC, "plain vanilla" memory expansion at a buck a kilobyte. For full parity, you add $49. For another $49.95, we'll send you our RAM Drive, a program that turns your RAM into a virtual disk system for super fast access to files. Either way, you have a solidly designed well-crafted 256K of memory. Remember, it's from the same people who built the BABY BLUE. Fully warranted for a year.

3 Disk Controller — $395

8″ Floppies

This Microlog-designed controller package (board and support software) gives you 8″ format utility, CP/M transfer (read/write) for CP/M programs on large floppies. Also works under MS-DOS. Easy to install, enhances your Baby Blue capabilities.

4 Large Floppy

Single $995
Dual $1495

8″ Single/Dual Systems

These Microlog disk systems give you 1.2 M/Byte of 8″ double-density, double-sided floppy disk storage — either single drive or dual drive — complete with cabinetry and power supplies. Requires the Microlog Disk Controller ($395).

Special Offers

With Baby Blue, you can get a variety of discounts on combinations of items listed above; including business software (data-base management, electronic spread sheet and word processing). Please inquire. Call us at 914-357-8086. Microlog, Inc., 222 Rt. 59, Suffern, NY 10901.

Ordering Information: For fastest delivery send certified check, money order or bank wire-transfer. Credit cards accepted include MasterCard or Visa. All items shipped UPS unless otherwise specified; add $5 for shipping. (NY State Residents, add 4.5% sales tax.)

Microlog, Inc.
A TU INTERNATIONAL COMPANY

. Star-Dot-Star

A Global Exchange of Personal Computer Discoveries

Edited by Andrew Fluegelman

We're receiving a wealth of *.* submissions—some simple, some sophisticated, and all very useful. With the complex submissions however, we're becoming concerned that we accurately reproduce listings, routines, and tables. Our copy editors have therefore requested that we inaugurate the Star-Dot-Star Disk Incentive Program. Here's the deal: If you submit your *.* item to us on a PC-DOS disk in standard ASCII or *WordStar*-readable form, we'll return your disk plus an additional free disk as thanks for making our editing job a bit easier.

Now to sample the wares. We guarantee that the lead item this issue will come to the rescue at some time during your computing career.

Saving Lost Files

Have you ever erased a file due to a typing error or a momentary short circuit in your brain? Don't panic, cry, or swear. Your file is retrievable.

DOS does not actually erase a file from the disk when you issue the ERASE or the DELETE command. Instead, DOS slightly changes the way a file is stored on the disk by replacing the first letter of the "erased" file in the file allocation table with an *e*. This *e* tells the system that it can write over the file's disk sectors. So your file is still on disk and is retrievable as long as you don't write or save any information on the disk until you use DEBUG to restore it.

It is important that you do no further operations with the disk. Place your data disk in drive B, and place your DOS disk in drive A. Reboot the system by pressing Ctrl-Alt-Del. The file retrieval process can then be performed by the following steps:

```
A>DEBUG
```

This command calls up the DEBUG program, which prompts you with a hyphen. Type

```
L 100 1 03 08
```

This command loads sectors 03-08 from the 1 (B) disk drive. Type D. This command displays data from the sectors that were loaded by the L command. You will see eight lines of numbers and letters across the screen. The lines begin with two 4-character addresses separated by a colon. The segment address is on the left of the colon and the offset address is on the right. The line endings on the far right of the screen show file names and coded information about the file. Continue issuing the D command until you see your erased file, now listed with an *e* as its first letter on the right of the screen. Note the offset address of your file's line. Type E and the offset address. For example, E 0100.

Press ENTER and the screen automatically displays both the line's segment address and offset address followed by E5, the hexadecimal value for an ASCII e. Type 40 (the hexadecimal value for an ampersand) after the period. Here is an example of what should appear on the screen:
-0983:0100 E5.40'

Now issue a WRITE command using the same disk number and sectors specified in your load command by typing

```
W 100 1 03 08
```

Now quit the operation by typing Q. Call up your directory. Your erased file, now with an ampersand as its first character, will be listed, and you can rename it back to its original form.

Richard R. Sands
Portland, Oregon

This hint led PC World *staff members to experiment with the DEBUG program on files stored on A, B, and C drives. In each case we modified the L and W commands to correspond with the correct disk drive designation: 0 for drive A, 1 for drive B, and 2 for drive C.*

We successfully used the DEBUG command on the emulated C drive of a PC loaded with the JEL *electronic drive software from Tall Tree Systems and on the C drive of an IBM XT hard disk. In both instances the C drive was designated by 2 in the L and W commands, but we had to experiment with the sector numbers. For example, on the emulated C drive we used*

```
L 100 2 02 10
```

and on the C drive of the XT we used

```
L 100 2 10 20
```

We suggest you use these sectors as starting points.

The WordStar WIP File

You can greatly improve the performance of *WordStar* by writing your text file on an E-drive (emulated electronic disk drive—see "Faster than a Spinning Floppy" in this issue). If you are working on a long document and making use of extensive searches, block moves, and reformatting, the annoying delays caused by floppy disk access can be reduced to less than a second.

The problem, of course, is that you're in big trouble if there's a power glitch. Even if you have assiduously saved to disk with Ctrl-KS, your saved file is no more permanent than your power supply.

The following command sequence can be assigned to a key macro with a utility such as *Keynote* or *ProKey*.

```
10 REM
20 REM This program makes the DOS command FLIP ---
30 REM
40 REM Copyright (c) 1982 Thomas J. Foth
50 REM Permission granted to copy and distribute this source with
60 REM inclusion of this notice but not for profit
70 REM
80 REM Author makes no warranty, expressed or implied, as to
90 REM the correct nature and operation of this software.
100 REM
110 REM Command syntax
120 REM
130 REM FLIP |NUM | |ON |      - Flip numeric pad on or off
140 REM      |CAP | |OFF|      - Flip caps lock on or off
150 REM or
160 REM FLIP |MONO |           - Flip to monochrome adapter
170 REM      |COLOR|      |40| - Flip to color adapter in either 40 or
180 REM                   |80|   80 column mode
181 REM
182 REM
190 FOR I = 1 TO 258 : READ N : C = C + N : NEXT
200 READ N : IF N <> C THEN 330
210 RESTORE : OPEN "R",#1,"FLIP.COM",1
220 FIELD #1,1 AS N$
230 FOR I = 1 TO 258: READ N:LSET N$=CHR$(N)
240 PUT 1:NEXT:CLOSE
250 END
260 DATA 184,64,0,142,216,179,64,190,93,0,191,203,1,185,3,0,252,243,46,166
262 DATA 131,249,0,116,19,179,32,190,93,0,191,206,1,185,3,0,243,46,166,131
264 DATA 249,0,117,44,190,109,0,46,161,198,1,38,59,4,116,26,190,109,0,191
266 DATA 200,1,185,3,0,243,46,166,131,249,0,117,44,128,243,255,32,30,23,0
268 DATA 205,32,8,30,23,0,205,32,190,93,0,191,209,1,185,4,0,243,46,166
270 DATA 131,249,0,117,25,128,14,16,0,48,184,7,0,205,16,205,32,186,222,1
272 DATA 140,200,142,216,180,9,205,33,205,32,190,93,0,191,213,1,185,5,0,243
274 DATA 46,166,131,249,0,117,226,190,109,0,46,161,218,1,38,59,4,117,8,177
276 DATA 32,187,2,0,235,15,144,46,161,220,1,38,59,4,117,197,177,16,187,0
278 DATA 0,176,207,34,6,16,0,10,193,162,16,0,139,195,205,16,205,32,79,78
280 DATA 79,70,70,67,65,80,78,85,77,77,79,78,79,67,79,76,79,82,56,48
282 DATA 52,48,10,13,70,76,73,80,32,105,103,110,111,114,101,100,58,32,73,110
284 DATA 118,97,108,105,100,32,112,97,114,97,109,101,116,101,114,10,13,36
286 DATA 24871
330 PRINT "Checksum Error: verify data statements"
340 END
```

Listing 1

Giving this macro command will save your working file to a file on drive B called WIP (for *work in progress*) and return you to your present cursor position in the E-drive text file.

^K1^QR^KB^QC^KK^KWb:wip<ENTER>
y^KH^Q1^K1

Some comments on the macro: ^K1 sets a place marker, ^QR moves to the beginning of the file, and ^KB marks the beginning of a block. ^QC moves to the end of the file and ^KK marks the end of a block. At this point the entire text file has been marked as one block.

^KWb:wip<Enter>

writes the block to the file WIP on drive B. The letter *y* is necessary because, once the file B:WIP has been created, *WordStar* will ask you whether you want to overwrite it. The remaining commands erase the marked block, return to the place marker, and erase the place marker.

If you have assigned this macro command to a keystroke, such as Alt-S, it is executed very quickly with an E-drive. You'll find this macro a convenient way to back up without breaking your work flow. Since the backup file is always called B:WIP, you do have to remember to save the file on disk under another name when your writing or editing session is completed.

A.F.

Flip Lock

One of the most conspicuous failings of the PC keyboard is the lack of indicators regarding the status of the CapsLock and the NumLock keys. Why else would people keep trying to come up with the definitive way of correcting the problem? If you're willing to type 384 bytes worth of data statements, you can create a DOS.COM file to do the job.

Listing 1 is a BASIC program that creates a program file called FLIP.COM. Enter the program while in BASICA to make it run. After entering line 340, be sure that the DOS disk is in drive A and that the write-protect tab is removed. Then either press F2 or type RUN <ENTER> . If a message appears saying 'Checksum error; verify data statements', a mistake has been made entering the numbers in lines 260 through 286. Otherwise a new file will have been created on the DOS disk called FLIP.COM.

Now go back to DOS by typing SYSTEM and run the new program. It can be used by entering any of the following command lines:

FLIP CAP ON sets keyboard to uppercase letters.
FLIP CAP OFF sets keyboard to lowercase letters.
FLIP NUM ON sets numeric keypad to numbers.
FLIP NUM OFF sets numeric keypad to cursor control keys.
FLIP MONO changes default monitor to the monochrome display.
FLIP COLOR 40 changes default monitor to a 40-column color graphics display.
FLIP COLOR 80 changes default monitor to an 80-column color graphics display.

Now you might say that it's easier to reach over and press the CapsLock or NumLock key than to type in this command. That may be true; however, you still have to remember to do that. By including these commmands in an AUTOEXEC.BAT file, the computer will remember to do that procedure for you. The procedure to set up an AUTOEXEC.BAT file is covered on page 2-16 of the DOS manual. Remember that this will work in DOS only. To do the same thing in BASICA you need to include the lines in Listing 2 in your BASIC programs (they may be included near the beginning of your program or as a GOSUB routine elsewhere in the program).

Tom Foth
Madison, Wisconsin

FORTRAN vs. BASIC

We have performed a benchmark test using FORTRAN and BASIC on several computers. The program was a simulation of the dynamics of a "floating-ring seal" used in high-speed turbomachinery. This is a typical scientific/engineering application that involves lots of number crunching. The motivation here was to assess the speed of the IBM PC when it is used for engineering or scientific applications, and to compare it with

```
800 `START NUMERIC SHIFT
900 DEF SEG=&H40:B%=PEEK(&H17)B%=B% OR &H20:POKE &H17,B%
905 `START UPPER CASE SHIFT
910 DEF SEG=&H40:B%=PEEK(&H17)B%=B% OR &H40:POKE &H17,B%
915 `RESTORE CURSOR MOVEMENT SHIFT
920 DEF SEG=&H40:B%=PEEK(&H17)B%=B% AND &HDF:POKE &H17,B%
925 `RESTORE LOWER CASE SHIFT
930 DEF SEG=&H40:B%=PEEK(&H17)B%=B% AND &HBF:POKE &H17,B%
935 `SWITCH TO 40 COLUMN COLOR
940 WIDTH 80:DEF SEG=0:A=PEEK(&H410):POKE &H410,(A AND &HCF) OR
    &H20:WIDTH 40:SCREEN 1:SCREEN 0:LOCATE,,1,6,7
945 `SWITCH TO MONOCHROME DISPLAY
950 WIDTH 40:DEF SEG=0:A=PEEK(&H410):POKE &H410,A OR &H30:WIDTH
    80:LOCATE ,,1,12,13
```

Listing 2

other personal and mainframe computers. All tests were performed in single-precision. The results are shown in Figure 1 (numbers in parentheses indicate timing with the Intel 8087 Math Coprocessor and appropriate libraries).

In a further test we ran the NBS Methane properties package on the IBM PC under FORTRAN 3.03. Execution time was 16.5 seconds without the 8087, and 2.5 seconds with the 8087. A time of 90 seconds was obtained for this program on the Xerox 820.

Two results deserve special comment. First, both the original IBM release of Microsoft FORTRAN and the new 3.03 release (presently under Beta Test) are laughably slow. Note that even the 3.03 version is practically as slow as the 8-bit FORTRAN of the Xerox 820. This result is presumably due to Microsoft's decision to write its FORTRAN in Pascal, thus burdening it with all of Pascal's inefficiencies. Even Microsoft's own BASIC Compiler is faster. These FORTRANs are therefore nearly useless as serious tools for engineering work, and we can only hope that some enterprising firm will fill the need for a fast FORTRAN for the IBM PC.

Next, the BASIC Compiler with the 8087 does not achieve anything like the speed improvement that FORTRAN does. Whether this is due to inefficiencies in the MicroWare BASIC 8087 library or to problems with the BASIC Compiler itself is an open question.

Jim Glass
Chris Landis
Source mail

Bug Hunt

I have run into an annoying error in IBM BASIC. It's the VAL function. VAL is used frequently to detect the presence (or absence) of a numeric sequence at the beginning of a string. VAL is also often used to extract the leading numeric content of a string. I've used both in programs running in MBASIC under CP/M. These same programs do not work properly in MBASIC under PC-DOS.

For example, a string with *E* or *D* (or lowercase *e* or *d*) causes an overflow error. It appears that on the PC BASIC is looking at the *E* or *D* as part of a scientific notation instead of a simple alpha character. That's in violation of the functionality of VAL.

Attempting to convert the string '15%' causes a syntax error. That one is a total mystery to me. Strings such as '15#' and '15!' convert OK.

Try these for yourself: `X$="E45"` or `X$="D45"` or `X$="5E45"` or `X$="15%"` and type

```
PRINT VAL(X$)
```

If VAL sees a purely numeric string, it works alright. If the string has alpha characters in it, however,

.

under some conditions VAL will not work as documented. The presence of the percent sign is also apt to cause errors.

Royall Dossett
Excelsior, Minnesota

Timeout, Timeout

In using the PC parallel printer port from BASIC (DOS 1.10), timeout problems can occur if a printer with a large internal buffer is attached. This has been encountered while using a Mannesman-Tally printer with a 4K internal buffer; a similar problem might be expected with the new Epson line of printers.

Within BIOS the timeout interrupt is programmed to occur after an elapsed time of 20 seconds of non-response from the printer. This setting negates the spooling advantage to be gained from the printer's buffer. The problem can be overcome, however, by altering the timeout parameter to a higher value. Since the pertinent code resides in ROM, a direct change could not be made in the existing code. One solution is to reset the appropriate interrupt vector to point to an area outside the BASIC work space (for example, the uppermost 115 bytes of high memory could be used), and PEEK/POKE the necessary code containing the desired modification into that area.

The BASIC program in Listing 3 can be used to affect a timeout parameter change, permitting full use of the printer's internal buffer.

R. S. Parrish
Athens, Georgia

Machine	Language	Seconds
CDC-176	FORTRAN	0.8
IBM 3033	FORTRAN	1.63
UNIVAC 1100/83	ASCII FORTRAN	12.00
TEKTRONIX 4081	FORTRAN	196.00
PDP-11/34	FORTRAN	94.00
IBM PC	BASIC Compiler	866.00
Xerox 820	FORTRAN	3384.00 (773)*
IBM PC	IBM FORTRAN (original)	4440.00 (1711)*
IBM PC	FORTRAN 3.03	3284.00 (585)**
IBM PC	BASIC Interpreter	11935.00
Apple	BASIC Compiler	5153.00
Apple	BASIC Interpreter	16937.00

* Using MicroWare 8087 Library
**Using Microsoft 8087 Library

Figure 1: Benchmark Test

Stop Step

The instructions in Listing 4 explain how to insert STOP commands between each line of a BASIC program, thereby making it easier to debug the program, and how to remove the STOP commands.

Press F9 continuously until the automatically generated line numbers exceed the highest line number of your program. Then press Ctrl-Break to exit from the automatic line number generator mode.

Run the program. The program executes one line at a time, enabling you to examine all intermediate results and discover any errors. Correct the errors, adding new line numbers if needed, but do not add any line numbers that end with 5 (e.g., 15, 25, 35, or 45). Then press F5 to continue.

If you have previously redefined F5 to its original setting, then define it as follows:

KEY 5, "CONT"+CHR$(13)

If the line that the program stops at prompts you to input data, do so.

If the program stops but gives no prompt and doesn't respond with 'Break in (line x)', you have probably encountered a line with the INKEY statement. To continue, press the appropriate key. When the response on the screen is 'break in (the line number)', you may use the LIST command (perhaps to determine which variables are in the line on which the program execution was broken). Subsequently, you can have the value of the variable printed (PRINT Varname) or add new line numbers.

Finally, press F5 to continue beginning with the next line following the line at which the program execution was broken. However, with some changes to your program, you may not be able to continue by pressing F5. In the event the computer re-

```
10  'Routine to modify the printer timeout value
20  'Currently in DOS 1.1, it is set to 20 seconds
30  '
40  'DEFINT I-N
50  NEWVALUE=60              'set value as desired
60  DEF SEG=&HF000           'peek at BIOS
70    DIM M(114):J=0
80    FOR I=&HEFD2 TO &HF044:M(J)=PEEK(I):J=J+1:NEXT
90  M(43)=NEWVALUE
100 DEF SEG=&H1E00           'poke into high memory of 128K system
110   FOR  I=0 TO 114:POKE I,M(I):NEXT
120 DEF SEG=0                'alter interrupt vector
130   POKE &H5C,0:POKE &H5D,0:POKE &H5E,0:POKE &H5F,&H1E
140 END
```

Listing 3

```
LOAD "PROGRAM"
RENUM 10,10                 'to renumber the line numbers beginning
                            with ten and incrementing by ten.
KEY 9, "STOP"+CHR$(13)      'defines the function key.
AUTO 15,10                  'generates line numbers automatically
                            beginning at fifteen and incrementing by ten.
```

Listing 4

sponds with 'Can't continue', you will have to rerun the program.

To remove the STOP commands, type

AUTO 15,10

Hold down the ENTER key until the automatically generated line numbers either exceed the highest line number of the program or are no longer followed by an asterisk. Then press Ctrl-Break.

If you wish to debug again with the current program in memory or with another program, you don't need to include the statements that define the function keys (e.g., KEY 9).

Here is the entire procedure, without explanations.

LOAD "PROGRAM"
RENUM 10,10
KEY 9, "STOP" + CHR$(13)
AUTO 15,10
<F9>
<Ctrl-Break>
RUN
<F5>
AUTO 15,10
<ENTER>
<Ctrl-Break>

Gary J. Goldstein
Tampa, Florida

Eye of the Beholder

I have found editing with *WordStar* more enjoyable and easier on the eyes when the displayed text is in reverse video (RV) instead of normal default mode. In RV mode the characters are black on a white background, which I find more appealing. Also, highlighting of blocks and soft hyphens is more pronounced.

To modify your current version of *WordStar*, enter the following commands:

>DEBUG WS.COM
-E 028B 70
-E 02D5 70
-W
-Q
>

These commands assume that you have DEBUG and *WordStar* on the same drive. Remember to press the ENTER key after each command. After you've entered the commands, run *WordStar* (WS.COM) just as you would normally.

Try the modification for yourself and see if you like it as much as I do.
Vic Westhall
Upper Marlboro, Maryland

Printing in French
A number of owners of the IBM PC, *WordStar* 3.24*, and NEC Spinwriters have voiced interest in being able to access the special print characters that are available on some of the NEC thimbles. I have solved this problem with a French Pica 10 thimble in two ways that may help those who have been struggling with similar problems.

Using DEBUG from PC-DOS and the appropriate ASCII codes for this particular thimble, the four user patches on *WordStar* can be programmed to access whatever special character is desired and that is available on the print thimble (in this cas diacritical markings). This is, however, a rather cumbersome process, and all those embedded commands do not look very attractive on the screen. The more direct approach to this problem is to access the diacritical markings on the French Pica 10 directly from the PC keyboard. The following keys will generate these markings:

\ = ç
¦ = ù
{ = é
} = è
~ = ¨
@ = à

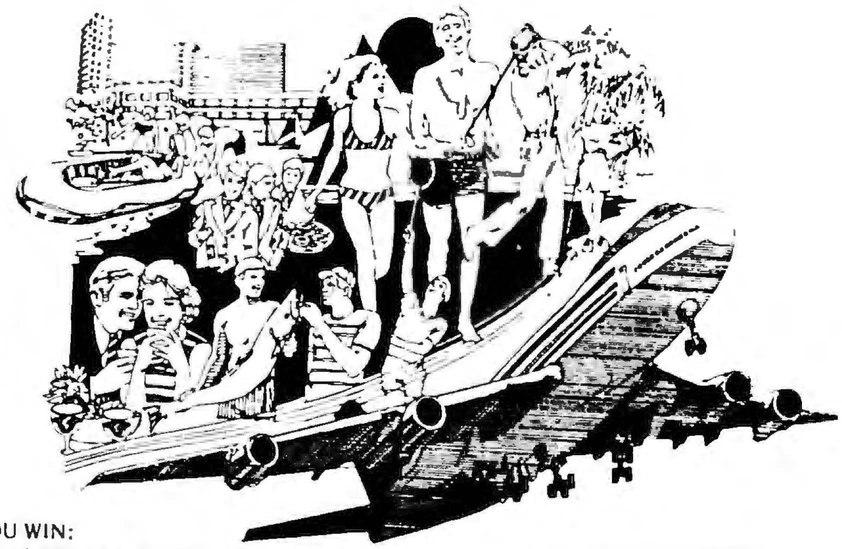
While the text of the screen document will still show the embedded commands and not the French characters, this is a faster, easier, and more attractive method than using *WordStar*'s user patches. The ideal solution to this problem is a program that will allow the user to display the characters on the screen as they will look on the printed page, but until that day comes along, my suggestion will produce most of the special diacritical markings needed to produce French text.
Robert F. O'Reilly
Syracuse University
Syracuse, New York

*Join the *.* global exchange. We'll pay $25 to $100 for each item published. Send your personal computer discoveries to PC World, 555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107; CompuServe 74055,412; Source STE908.*

NOW, when you buy software from

you can THE **BARD** SOFTWARE PUBLISHERS & DISTRIBUTORS

WIN A DREAM VACATION IN HAWAII!



HERES HOW IT WORKS:

1. When you make a software purchase from the BARD, for each $50 worth of software that you purchase you are entered one time in the WIN A TRIP TO HAWAII contest, (e.g. buy $100 and you are entered twice, buy $300 worth and you are entered six times, etc.)
2. On September 1, 1983, a winner will be selected from the pool of entries and notified.

HERE'S WHAT YOU WIN:

1. Round trip, FIRST CLASS air fare for two from your home town to Honolulu via UNITED AIRLINES (or other airline if United does not fly to your home town).
2. Two weeks LUXURY ROOM at the HILTON HAWAIIAN VILLAGE hotel in Honolulu.
3. Two weeks free use of a MERCEDES 380 SL convertible supplied by Hertz Rent-A-Car.
4. A few surprise extras.

THE BARD strives to give you the best values and lowest prices in software purchases. Now, the BARD gives you an added plus which none of our competitors can match — the chance to win the dream vacation of a lifetime when you purchase your software from THE BARD.

ALL STATE AND FEDERAL TAXES ARE THE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE RECIPIENT. PARTICIPANTS MUST BE 18 OR OVER TO ENTER. VOID IN STATES WHERE PROHIBITED BY LAW. ENTRY AVAILABLE WITHOUT PURCHASE. CONTACT THE BARD FOR DETAILS.

TRIP MUST BE TAKEN NO LATER THAN JUNE 30, 1984.

the BARD says:

DON'T BE FOOLED!
READ THE SMALL PRINT!

Some of our competitors may seem to offer lower prices, but after you finish adding in their 3 - 4% credit card surcharge and their 3 - 6% shipping charges, you will find that NOBODY undersells the BARD!!
NO CREDIT CARD SURCHARGES!!!
Only $3 for shipping/UPS Ground
(Add $3 for UPS Blue)

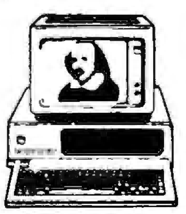
SOFTWARE PRODUCTS FOR THE IBM PERSONAL COMPUTER:

THE CALIFORNIA PAYMASTER

A complete easy to use Payroll Program written by THE BARD for California Employers with IBM Personal Computers $75.00

Manual only $15.00

Ashton-Tate:	
dBASE II	$ 445.00
Condor:	
Condor 20-1	$ 229.00
Condor 20-3	445.00
Context:	
MBA	$ 575.00
Continental:	
Home Accountant Plus	$ 119.00
Digital Research:	
Concurrent CP/M	$ 299.00
Level 2 Cobol 86	1250.00
Pascal MT 86	475.00
Eagle Software:	
Money Decisions	$ 149.00
Tax Decisions	235.00
Fox & Geller:	
QuickCode	$ 225.00
dGRAPH	225.00
dUTIL	65.00
Information Unlimited:	
EasyWriter II	$ 235.00
EasySpeller	139.00
EasyFiler	299 00
Innovatives:	
T.I.M. III	$ 345.00
Lexisoft:	
Spellbinder	$ 250.00
Lotus:	
1-2-3	$ 365.00
Mark Of The Unicorn:	
The Final Word	$240.00
MetaSoft:	
Benchmark (Word Processor)	$ 350.00
Benchmark (Maillist)	199.00
Micropro:	
WordStar	$ 285.00
MailMerge	145.00
SpellStar	155.00
MicroSoft:	
MultiPlan	$ 220.00
MicroStuf:	
CrossTalk	$ 149.00
Peachtree:	
Peach Pak 4 (GL/AP/AR)	$365.00
Organic:	
Milestone	$ 325.00
Databook	350.00
Sorcim:	
SuperCalc	$ 185.00
Visicorp:	
VisiCalc (256K)	$ 189.00
VisiDex	189.00
VisiFile	245.00
VisiTrend/Plot	229.00
DeskTop Plan	229.00
VisiSchedule	229.00



THE **BARD** SOFTWARE
PUBLISHERS & DISTRIBUTORS
4261 Norwalk Drive, #107
San Jose, California 95129

CALL TOLL FREE

OUTSIDE CALIF: 800-222-2622

IN CALIF: 408-244-2622

WE ACCEPT VISA, MASTERCARD

Also money order, cashiers check, company or personal check (please allow 14 days to clear) add $3 for postage and handling.

Guaranteed Lowest Prices!

Call 1-800-223-3860

Pennsylvania: (215) 934-6990

MONTHLY SPECIALS:

Supercalc	$175	Visicalc (256K)	$169
Easywriter II	$219	Okidata 82A	$425
Crosstalk	$119	64K Combo Card	$325
dBase II	$449	256K Memory Board w/64K	$229
		320K Disk Drive	$289
		Disk Controller	$165

Software

Ashton-Tate	
dBase II	$ 449
Continental Software	
Home Accountant +	$ 109
1st Class Mail	$ 89
Innovative Software	
T.I.M. III	$ 390
Fast Graphs	$ 225
I.U.S.	
Easywriter II	$ 219
Easy Speller	$ 119
Easy Filer	$ 269
Easy Planner	$ 179
A/R A/P G/L (ea.)	$ 399
Payroll	$ 395
Inventory	$ 395
Order Entry	$ 395
Microsoft	
Multiplan	$ 190
Microstuf	
Crosstalk	$ 119
Transporter	$ call
Sorcim	
Supercalc	$ 175
Spellguard	$ 119
Superwriter	$ 229
Visicorp	
Visicalc (256K)	$ 169
Desktop Plan	$ 229
Visitrend/Plot	$ 215
Visidex	$ 189
Visifile	$ 229

Hardware

AST Research	
Combo Plus 64K with Superdrive and Super Spooler	$ 365
64K with SPC	$ 325
256K with SPC	$ 550
Davong	
5 MB Hard Disk	$1495
10 MB Hard Disk	$ call
(Includes controller card and software)	
Epson	
MX80 F/T w/Graftrax	$ 495
MX100 F/T w/Graftrax	$ 645
Cable	$ 30
FX80 NEW 160 CPS	$ 579
Hayes	
Smartmodem 300	$ 209
Smartmodem 1200	$ 509
Cable	$ 30
Maynard	
256K Memory Board w/64K	$ 229
Disk Controller w/Parallel Port	$ 209
Disk Controller w/Serial Port	$ 229
Okidata	
Microline 82A	$ 425
Microline 83A	$ 695
Microline 84	$1100
Microline 92	$ 565
Cable	$ 30
Control Data	$ 289
320K Floppy Disk Drive	$ 259
(Comes with installation instructions.)	
Techmar	
Complete line	$ call

Programmers Alert!

Programmers Tools

PASCAL and BASIC

This Machine Language utility will enable you to access the full power of the IBC PC. And it does it under 2K.

PASCAL:

Give your PASCAL programs the ability to: Locate X, Y coordinates anywhere on the screen; create multiple windows and scroll each independently; screen dump to printer; read any key pressed, including all the special keys; format, read, write to any sector on a diskette; communicate over RS232; set color palette; read light pen; reboot system; and over 30 more functions. Just link during compiling.

BASIC:

All of the functions listed above are also available for BASIC. Although some routines are already in BASIC, this utility makes your program faster and simpler. Try setting up multiple windows with the ability to scroll up and down. With this utility you can. In under 2K. Just load and call.

Utility includes documentation and examples of how to use each function. No royalties charged. Source code available.

PASCAL Utility	**$ 79.95**
PASCAL Library	**$ 49.95**
BASIC Utility	**$ 49.95**

Terms:

Send Check or Money Order. C.O.D. add $4.00/item. Printers and monitors add 2%. Other products add $3.00 for postage and handling. UPS Blue Label add $4.00/item. Penna. residents add 6%.

VISA

APPLIED COMPUTER PRODUCTS INC.

1916 Welsh Road #6, Philadelphia, PA 19115

IF YOU KNOW WHAT YOU WANT...

IBM PC

	LIST	SALE
Advanced Operating Systems		
The Programmer	200	150
Alpha Software		
Mail List	95	67
Type Faces	125	87
Apple-IBM Connect.........	195	135
Data Base Manager	245	169
American Training International, Inc.		
ATI-Power for P.C. DOS	75	56
ATI Other Training Powers	75	56
Applied Software Technology		
Versaform	389	269
PC Qbase	189	143
Aptec		
Rainbow Writer ..		125
Epson to Prism ..		38
PC Ticker Tape ...		22
Ashton-Tate		
D Base II [4]	700	419
with Book		439
Financial Planner	700	489
Aspen Software		
Grammatik	75	56
Proofreader	50	38
Beaman Porter		
Powertext		369
Best Programs		
PCI Personal Financial Program		66
Bible Research		
THE WORD Processor		146
Byrom Software		
BSTAM (micro to micro)	200	149
BSTMS (micro to mainframe)	200	149
Central Point		
Copy II PC	40	35
Comprehensive S/W Supp.		
PC Tutor	80	60
Comshare		
Target Financial Modeling	325	264
Master Plan	325	253
Conceptual Instruments		
Desk Organizer ..		245
Continental Software		
Home Accountant Plus	150	97
FCM	125	77
Property Management	500	359
Level 2 Cobol 86 .	1600	1200
Pascal MT + W/SPP	600	468
SID 86	150	94
SPP 86	200	168
Eagle Software		
Money Decisions Vol. I	200	129
Money Decisions Vol. II	230	169
Money Pac (I-II) .	400	299
Emerging Technology		
• EDIX	195	149
• WORDIX	195	149

EDIX/WORDIX
$149 (ea.)

Condor Computer Corp.		
Condor 20-1	195	147
Condor 20-3	650	488

CONDOR 3
$488

Fox and Geller		
Quickcode (w/Quickscreen)	295	195
D GRAPH	295	195
D UTIL	99	59
Friendly Software		
Friendly Ware	50	38
Hayes		
Smartcom II	119	90
Howard Sams		
Programmer	200	150
Howard Software		
Real Estate Analyzer	250	185
Tax Manager	250	185
Info Solutions		
25:01	100	74
Innovative Software		
T.I.M.—III	495	349
Fast Graphs	295	221
INSOFT		
Data Design	225	169
Intellect Assoc.		
P.C. Text	100	73
Window	150	113
ISM		
Mathemagic	90	69
Graphmagic	90	69
Combo Pack	160	119
IUS		
Easy Writer II	350	229

EASYWRITER II
$229

Easy Speller II	225	135
Easy Speller II (Webster's Legal)		229
Easy Speller II (Webster's Medical)		229
Easy Planner	250	188
Accounts Receivable	600	389
Accounts Payable	600	389
General Ledger ..	600	389
Financial Management Series (AP, AR, GL) [4]	1495	1019
Payroll	600	389
Inventory	600	389
Order Entry	600	389
Lexisoft		
Spellbinder	495	259
Lifeboat		
Lattice C Compiler	500	415
Lifetree		
Volkswriter	195	129

VOLKSWRITER
$129

Lightning		
Master Type . .	50	38
Link		
Datafax	300	224
Mark of the Unicorn		
Final Word	300	223

FINAL WORD
$223

Mince. . . .	175	153
Meta Soft		
Benchmark Word Processor*	500	367
Benchmark Mail List	175	154
Microfocus		
CIS COBOL 86 ...	850	637
Microcraft		
Legal Billing/Time Keeping	750	385
Professional Billing/Time Keeping	750	385
Micro Lab		
Tax Manager	250	188
Data Factory	500	375
Micro Pro		
Infostar [5]	495	327
Report Star	350	231
Wordstar [4]	495	327
Spellstar	250	165
Mailmerge	250	165
Wordstar/ Mailmerge [4] ...	695	426
Wordstar/Spell [4]	695	426

TELEPHONE ORDERS

Outside Calif.: (800) 222-8811
Inside Calif.: (415) 324-3730

Order lines are manned 6:30–6 Monday thru Friday and 9–5 Saturday. Other lines are open 9–5 Monday thru Friday

Technical Support *(415) 324-0311*
Order Status *(415) 324-0306*
Sales Manager *(415) 324-0305*

More CP/M®, APPLE®, IBM PC®, UNIX™, UCSD p-System™ software, hardware, etc: call for quote.

MENTION THIS AD TO QUALIFY FOR THESE LOW LOW PRICES

TERMS: All prices subject to change without notice and availability. Cashier's check/MO/bank transfer. Allow time for company or personal checks to clear. Prices reflect cash prepaid discount. VISA/MASTERCARD/COD/PO's + 3%. CA residents add sales tax. All sales final for games & special orders.

SHIPPING: $2 per item for UPS surface ($6 for Blue Label) within continental USA, except where shipping cost is specified in square brackets.

RETURNS: Must have authorization number, obtained at 415-324-0305. Unauthorized returns will be refused; damaged goods will be refused. All returns subject to 15% restocking fee. No return after 30 days.

WHY PAY MORE?

Wordstar/ Mailmerge/ Spellstar [4]	845	558
Microsoft		
Flight Simulator	50	38
Multiplan	275	212
MU Lisp/Star	250	188
MU Math/Simp	300	225
Micro Stuf		
Crosstalk	195	135

CROSSTALK $135

North American Business Systems		
The Answer	250	159
Northwest Analytical		
Statpak	495	369
Norton		
Utilities	80	60
OASIS		
The Word Plus	150	112
Punctuation and Style		109
Organic Software		
Datebook	395	331
Milestone	395	269
Textwriter	125	97
PBL Corporation		
Personal Investor (128 K)	145	99
Peachtree		
Series 4 Peachpak [5]	595	349

PEACHPAK $349

PC Software		
CREATA Base	75	67
Ryan-McFarland		
RM/COBOL		
• Full Dev. System	950	713
• Run Time only	250	188
Scripps Data		
Job Costs	495	371
Select Information System		
Select with Superspell	595	339
Software Products International		
Logi Calc	190	142
Pro Calc	350	262
Logi Quest II	250	188
Logi Quest III	550	412
Softword		
Wordmak	500	340
Sorcum		
Super Spellguard	195	129
Super Calc	295	177
Super Writer	395	269
Southeastern		
Data Capture	120	90
Software Arts		
TK Solver		224
Software Technology		
The Creator	300	224
Software Publishing		
PFS File	145	109
PFS Report	125	99
PFS Graph	145	109
Star		
Legal Timekeeping, Billing & Accts.	950	771
Structured Systems		
GL, AR, AP, Payroll, Inventory, OE (ea.)	1250	790
Analyst	250	188
Letteright	200	150
NAD	100	75
QSORT	100	75
Supersoft		
Optimizer	200	149
Personal Data Base	125	93
Synapse		
File Mgr.	150	112
Synergistic		
Data Reporter	250	169
Texasoft		
Versatext	200	172
Thinker (spread sheet)	75	56
Versa Computing		
Graphics Hardcopy System	25	19
VisiCorp		
Visicalc (256 K)	250	169

VISICALC $169

Visispell	225	183
Visitrend/Plot	300	215
Desktop Planner	300	229
Visidex	250	189
VisiFile	300	229
Business Forecasting	100	78
Woolf Software Systems		
Move It	150	99

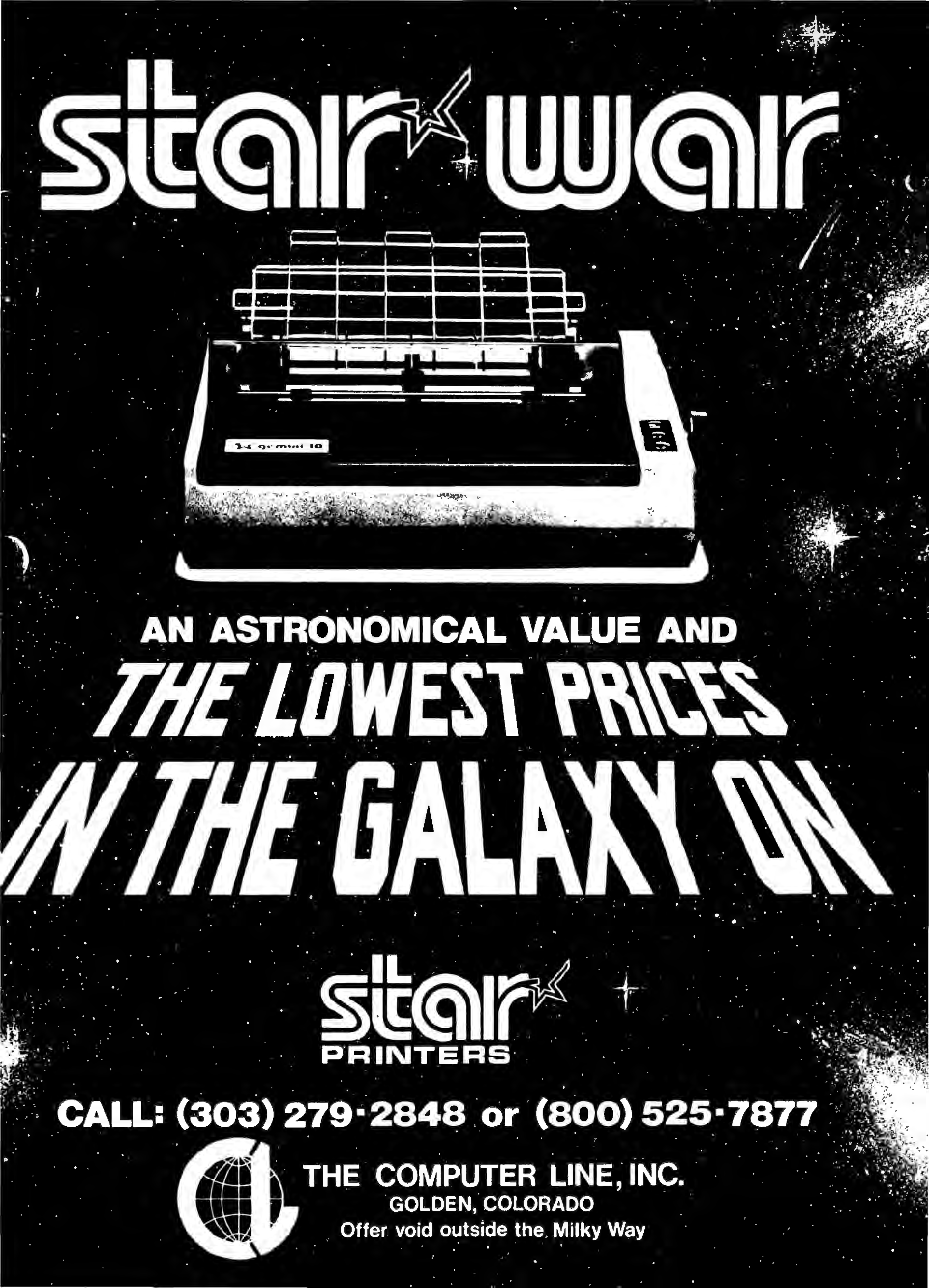
IBM PC HARDWARE

Amdek	**LIST**	**SALE**
300 (12" Green) [10]	200	157
300 A (12" Amber) [10]	210	167
Color II, RGB [10]	899	689
AST Researd		
Combo Plus 64K	595	429
Mega Plus 64K	595	429
Corvus		
6 MB Hard Disk, w/o Interface	2395	1895
• 11 MB	3195	2695
• 20 MB	4195	3495
PC Interface, Manual, Cable	300	239
Daisywriter		
Printer [10]	1395	1235
Epson		
Printer (call for details)		
Hayes Microcomputer Products		
Hayes Stack Chronograph (RS-232) [4]	249	199
Hayes Stack Smart Modem (RS-232) 300 Baud [4]	279	209
Hayes Stack Smart Modem (RS-232) 1200 Baud [4]	699	509
Our PC-Hayes Cable		29
Kraft		
Joystick	70	52
Microsoft		
RAM Card 64K	350	249
RAM Card 128K	525	379
RAM Card 192K	700	499
RAM Card 256K	875	624
NEC		
12" Green Hi-Res CRT [10]	285	167
7710 Printer [10]	3085	2295
3530 Printer [10]	2290	1735
8023 Printer [10]	795	520
Novation		
J-Cat [4]	149	119
Smart-Cat 103 [4]	259	207
Smart-Cat 103/212 [4]	595	476
QCS		
Big Blue	595	449
Quadram		
Quadboard 64K	595	435
• 256K	395	289
Symtec		
Light Pen	150	126
Tandon		
TM 100-2 Drive (5¼", Double Sided)	650	249
Tech Designs		
Adam & Eve Paddles	40	15
TG Products		
Joystick	65	49
Versa Computing		
Versa Writer Graphics Tablet	299	249

PROGRAMMING INTERNATIONAL

505 HAMILTON AVE. • Suite 301 • PALO ALTO, CA 94301


HAINE © 1982


star war
gemini 10
AN ASTRONOMICAL VALUE AND
THE LOWEST PRICES
IN THE GALAXY ON
star
PRINTERS
CALL: (303) 279-2848 or (800) 525-7877
THE COMPUTER LINE, INC.
GOLDEN, COLORADO
Offer void outside the Milky Way

European and Foreign Exports. U.S. Dollars Cash. • Fortune 1000 Inquiries Welcome

BUSINESS AT A DISCOUNT!

Printers

EPSON FX80 (160CPS) . . . Best Price!

EPSON MX100 (100CPS) $629

OKIDATA MICROLINE 92(160CPS) Best Price!

OKIDATA MICROLINE 93(160CPS) Best Price!

OKIDATA MICROLINE 84(200CPS) $999

C-ITOH Prowriter $399
Prowriter 2 . . . . . $695

C-ITOH Starwriter (40CPS) $1295
Printmaster (55CPS) $1595

IDS PRISM 80 3.4K Buffer 2.00 Sprint . . . . . . Best Price!

IDS PRISM 132 3.4K Buffer 2.00 Sprint $1195

NEC 3550 Spinwriter $1895

NEC 7730 Spinwriter $2150

GEMINI Dot Matrix . . . . Best Price!

TRANSTAR COLOR PRINTER . . . Best Price!

COMREX CR-1 . . . . $829

Monitors

PGS HIGH RES. 690 DOT RGB . . . . Best Price!

Improved Alternative to IBM Monochrome
AMDEK 12" 310 Amber $185

For Color Graphic Card
AMDEK 12" 300 G . . . . $149 or A $159

At Last!
QUADRAM High Res Color Card CALL!

Modems

HAYES SMARTMODEM 1200 . . . . $499

HAYES SMARTMODEM 300 . . . . $209

Memory Boards

QUADRAM • 64K-256K • RAM DISC • Spooler
QUADBOARD . . . . $299/$465

MAXIMUM: 8 FUNCTIONS — 64K-512K
AST Megaplus Board . . . . Best Price!

Multifunction 64K-512K
PERSYST Time Spectrum . . . . . . Best Price!

64K or 256K & RS232 & Flash Disc
SEATTLE BOARD . . . . . $239/$399

512K. J. RAM—w/Jet Drive
TALL TREE $650

64K-256K, Parallel Port, Serial Port, Clock
2 Game 1-0's, Print Spooler, Disk Emulator
MONTE CARLO CARD . . $339/$439

64K-512K (one Board-no Piggyback)
RAM PLUS: 2 serial, clock, ram drive, print spooler
RAM Elite: 1 parallel, 1 serial, clock, ram drive, print spooler
PROFIT SYSTEMS . . . . $299/$699

3 External I/O Ports • Using Only One Slot!
"answerRAM" 64K-256K
ANATRON . . . . Best Price!

64K Multifunction CPM Card
BYAD . . . . Best Price!

64K CPM Card, Xedex
BABY BLUE $399

64K RAM CHIPS
64K-9 Chip Upgrade Kit $55
192K-27 Chip Upgrade Kit $159

Hard Disks

TALL GRASS 12.5 or 20 MEG/F with Streamer Backup . . . . . CALL!

DAVONG 5, 10, or 15 MEG/F HARD DISK . . . . . Starting at $1395

CORVUS EXTERNAL HARD DISK . . . . CALL!

VERBATIM DISKETTES
DATALIFE • 5 YEAR WARRANTY
DOUBLE SIDED Box of 10 ($39) Case of 10 ($339)
SINGLE SIDED Box of 10 ($30) Case of 10 ($249)

MICROFAZER (8K-128K) Spooler . . . . . Starting at $149

MICRO MART

ATLANTA WAREHOUSE SHIPPING

6889 Peachtree Industrial Blvd., Norcross, GA 30092

MICROMAIL®

MONITORS

AMDEK
Color I **$340**
Color II **$650**
Color III **$390**
PRINCETON GRAPHICS SYSTEMS
Hi-Res Color **$550**
NEC, DYNAX
ELECTROHOME .... CALL

PRINTERS

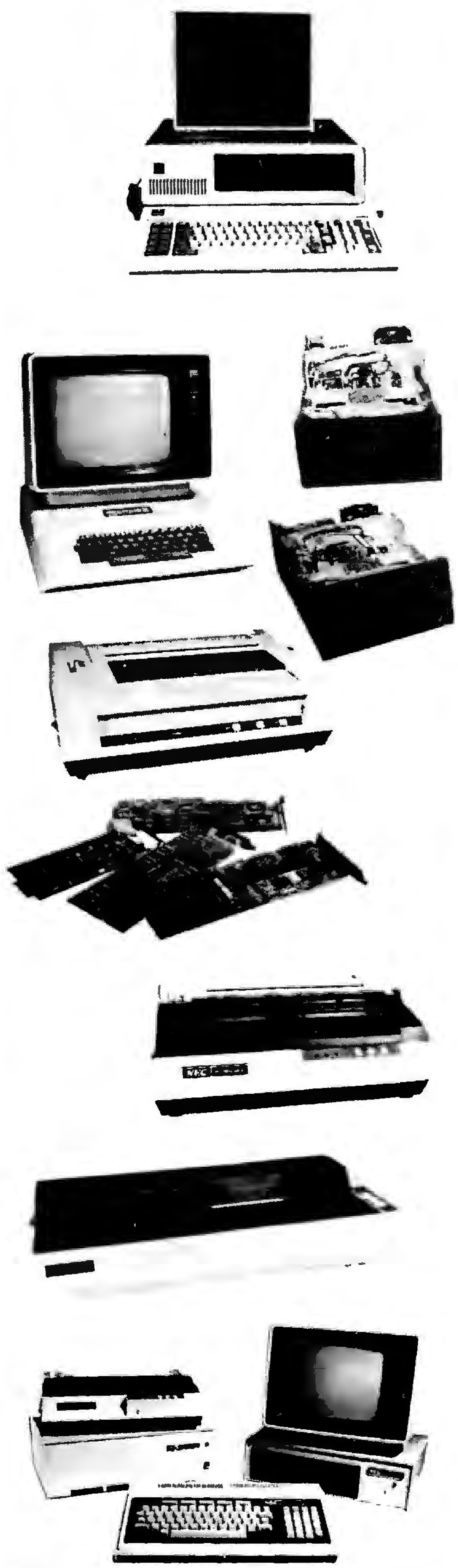
C-ITOH
GX-100 (50 CPS) Matrix **$240**
8510 .... **$460**
1550 (15″) **$690**
F-10 (40 CPS) Letter Quality . **$1290**
F-10 (55 CPS) Letter Quality . **$1690**
EPSON (W/GRAFTRAX PLUS)
MX 80 FT **$490**
FX 80 FT **$575**
MX 100 FT **$690**
FX 100 FT **$790**
OKIDATA
82A **$440**
83A **$690**
84A **$975**
92A **$575**
93A **$970**
BROTHER
HR-1 .... **$750**
SMITH CORONA
TP-1 .... **$520**
STAR MICRONICS
Gemini 10 .... **$370**
Gemini 15 .... **$540**

NEC
SPINWRITER

7710-1	**$1950**	3510	**$1350**
7715-1	**$2100**	3515	**$1350**
7720-1	**$2400**	3530	**$1550**
7725-1	**$2400**	3550	**$1850**
7730-1	**$1950**	PC8023A	**$450**

MEMORY BOARDS

AST
Combo Plus. 4 function card. Fully pop. 256K **$490**
Mega Plus. Fully pop. 512K .. **$990**



MEMORY BOARDS

QUADRAM
Quad Card. Fully pop. 256K **$500**
Big Blue **$470**
Hercules graphics card **$490**

IBM PC
PC System includes 64K IBM-PC with two 320KB Floppy Disk Drives, Controller, Color Graphics Card, Monochrome Monitor.
All for only **$2490**
IBM PC/XT
Complete System with Floppy Disk Drive, Hard Disk, Color Graphics Card, Monitor **$4990**
LOTUS 1-2-3 Software $390

HARD DISKS FOR APPLE AND IBM
DAVONG
5 MB **$1450**
10 MB **$1650**
15 MB **$2250**

TAVA CORP.
TRUMPCARD 1
256K Ram **$450**
TRUMPCARD 2
512K RAM **$650**
FDC
FOR IBM PC
W/Par. Port **$220**
W/Ser. Port **$240**
DEC RAINBOW 100
Complete system 64K PC, Keyboard, Two Floppy Drives DS/DD, Monochrome Monitor **$2990**
APPLE II +
Compatible Computer with 64K, Disk Drive, Controller, and Monitor **$990**
APPLE IIe
64K System, W/Controller, Disk Drive, Monitor, 80 Column card, Stand **$1790**
DISK DRIVE FOR APPLE
Slimline, or Standard **$250**
KAYPRO II COMPUTER
Complete System **$1690**
EPSON QX-10
64K Ram, Z-80 CPU, Monitor, Etc. **$2200**
HX-20 Notebook Computer . **$690**

MICROMAIL

631 E. First St., Tustin, CA 92680

Prices subject to change without notice.

(714) 838-9100

APPLE is a trademark of Apple Computers, Inc.
IBM is a trademark of IBM Corp.

BBS Watch

Starting Your Own Bulletin Board System

Gene Plantz

Past columns of *BBS Watch* covered the process of calling and using a bulletin board system, but we haven't yet talked about what it takes to start your own BBS. I've received many inquiries from user groups, retail stores, and individuals who want to run their own bulletin board systems for the IBM Personal Computer. This column will tell you what it takes in hardware, software, and manpower to get a system up and running.

Planning

Bringing a bulletin board system on-line requires \$3500 to \$4000 worth of computer equipment, about \$300 in software, and a person to maintain day-to-day operations.

Before putting the equipment and software together, you should sit down and make some decisions about the way your bulletin board system will work and the services and features you want to offer callers.

Think about these questions: What hours will the bulletin board system be on-line? Will the system be restricted to a certain group of callers, or open to everyone? Will callers be able to upload and download programs? What communications speeds will be needed? Where will the computer equipment be located? Will someone maintain the system on an ongoing basis?

The busiest hours for a bulletin board are 7 p.m. to midnight. If you decide that your bulletin board will be a part-time system, it is unwise to limit its operation to daytime hours since most callers will be people who have 9 to 5 jobs and want to dial your system after work.

Restricting access to members of a group, such as an IBM PC user group, prevents many knowledgeable people outside the group from participating in the exchange of information. One of the most important benefits of a BBS is the free exchange of technical information between people more experienced in computers and those just getting started with the machines. Callers also share information about new software and equipment.

> Before putting the equipment and software together, you should make decisions about the way your bulletin board system will work.

Whether the BBS restricts access or not, you need to decide if bulletin board callers will use passwords. Passwords ensure that only the addressee can access personal or confidential messages.

Program uploading and downloading, usually called file transfer, is a popular feature on many bulletin boards. For many people who don't have user groups in their areas, file transferring is the primary way to acquire public domain programs and computer information.

Including file transfer in your BBS increases your hardware requirements and the amount of time the systems operator (SYSOP) must devote to the bulletin board. Many SYSOPs like to keep several utility and applications programs and programs written in different languages in their file transfer list so that callers have a variety of programs to download. To provide enough disk space for such a mixture, some systems use two double-sided floppy disk drives (320,000 characters each), while other bulletin boards use hard disks to increase the number of programs they can keep on-line.

Because people send programs to the BBS (uploading), the SYSOP must periodically check these new files to make sure that the programs were transmitted without error and run properly. When the BBS first starts operation, the SYSOP has to find some public domain programs to put on the system. You can find programs by dialing other bulletin boards and transferring files, or by calling the operators of other systems and asking to exchange some files on disk.

The best communications speed for your BBS depends on several factors. If your system includes file transfer, you should consider a dual speed modem, one that supports both 300 and 1200 baud. At 1200 baud files are transferred four times faster than at 300 baud. Many people are now changing to the faster speed because 1200 baud modem prices have dropped from \$1000 to the \$400 to \$700 range. If you decide to offer a message exchange system only, 300 baud will satisfy most of your callers' needs.

Regardless of which speed you decide to use, you will need a modem with auto-answer capability. With this feature the modem can answer the phone after a specified number of rings and tell your BBS software that a call has been received. Most bulletin board systems do not need an auto-dial feature on their modems.

BBS hardware should be located in an area with adequate ventilation and electrical connections. The hardware also has to be near the telephone line that will be used for the BBS. The equipment should not be placed where someone could accidentally unplug the electrical connection or be tempted to play with the keyboard. For these reasons placement is an especially important consideration if you have small children or curious pets in your home.

If you plan to run your BBS 24 hours a day, you should contact your local telephone company and request a new telephone line to be used for the bulletin board only. Request the cheapest telephone service that the phone company offers. Since you will not use the line for outgoing calls, try to get a "zero measure unit" package. You will not need to rent or buy a telephone handset, but you will need to give the phone company the FCC registration number on the system's modem.

Even if you decide to run a part-time BBS, installing a new phone line is still a good idea. Although you ask callers to phone only during specified times, you will receive calls at all hours from people who think the system runs 24 hours a day.

Finally, perhaps the most important consideration is the manpower required to maintain and oversee the bulletin board system. The SYSOP should be a person who knows about telecommunications and the IBM PC. He or she must be prepared to answer callers' technical questions about the system. The operator should also get to know the callers' equipment, software, and areas of interest and expertise.

At least once a week the SYSOP should make backup copies of all the message files and the new transfer files on the system. If the bulletin board is accidentally unplugged or loses power because of a blackout, this precaution will ensure that the system can be put back on-line with most of its information intact. While making backup copies, leave the phone off the hook so that callers receive a busy signal. If callers hear the phone ring without an answer, they may think the system is no longer operating.

The amount of time a person needs to devote to a BBS varies according to the system's use. A busy 24-hour system requires more disk file maintenance and question response time than a part-time system. For a full-time system you can expect that the operator will have to spend at least 1 hour a day tending to chores.

Equipment

The minimum equipment for running a BBS on the IBM PC is 64K, one disk drive, an asynchronous communications adapter, a modem with auto-answer capability, and a telephone line. This minimum system is suitable for a BBS that has few callers and offers user-to-user messages only.

A system offering more extensive services such as file transfer, sophisticated message handling with passwords, and restricted system access requires 192K of memory and two double-density disk drives. A hard disk is useful for faster access to files and greater storage capacity. Some systems have software that sends caller information and logging errors, if any, to a printer. In this way the SYSOP has a printed record of every call the system receives.

Software

Once you know the features your BBS will offer, it is time to choose software to control the computer. Surprisingly, few companies sell complete, ready-to-run bulletin board system software. The most popular commercial product on the market is *HOSTCOMM* by Janadon. Check each software package to find out if the package contains the utility programs—such as message, user, and mailbox files—necessary to maintain the BBS support files. Look for a program that makes the SYSOP's job as easy as possible while providing callers with the greatest number of features. Be sure to ask your dealer if the software you are considering works with the type of equipment you will use. Find out how much memory the software requires and if it supports different baud rates from the modem. Ask if it works with DOS 2.00 as well as DOS 1.10.

Public domain programs that run bulletin boards can be obtained from other systems. These programs are usually poorly documented, but they provide an inexpensive way to set up your BBS. A benefit of public domain programs is that you have the source code (the original statements and commands written by an author that define what a program does), so you can make changes if you want to. The disadvantage is that you must use an interpreter or compiler to make changes if you do adapt the program. Source code is not usually offered with commercial programs.

Test Run

Once all the hardware has been hooked up and the operating system (most IBM PC bulletin boards run under PC-DOS) and BBS files have been loaded into the system's disk storage, it is time for a test run. Start the BBS software according to instructions. When your system is initialized and awaiting a caller, place a call from another terminal and telephone line to make sure everything works. You will probably want to have a friend call from his or her terminal while you watch your screen.

Test all the functions described in the bulletin board software documentation until you are sure you understand how the software works. People will most likely ask for explanations when things don't work, so you must know the software very well. Remember to test any special functions that are limited to the SYSOP, such as renaming and deleting messages or modifying the file transfer list.

Advertising

Once the system is up and running, it's time to let people know about your bulletin board. Call other IBM PC bulletin boards and leave messages describing your system, its location, hours, modem speed(s), and features. You should also write to the IBM PC magazines and ask them to include your system in their BBS listings. Type up notices describing your system and ask local computer retailers to post them.

Setting up and running a bulletin board takes planning and research, but it is not beyond most computer enthusiasts' capabilities. If you have questions about some of the points mentioned here, contact a SYSOP in your area for more information. If you have already purchased bulletin board software, talk with the author of the program. If you can't find any SYSOPs in your area and have no luck tracking down program authors, I will be glad to try to answer questions. Please mail your questions to the post office box listed below and include a phone number where you can be reached. I will respond as soon as possible.

Send correspondence to Gene Plantz, P.O. Box 95638, Hoffman Estates, IL 60195. CompuServe: EMAIL 70040,245; Source: SMAIL STG476

HOSTCOMM by Janadon
NF Systems, Ltd.
P.O. Box 76363
Atlanta, GA 30358
404/252-3302
List Price: $170
Requirements: 128K, 320K disk storage, Hayes Smartmodem, (printer suggested)

IBM PC Bulletin Boards

Following is a partial listing of the IBM PC bulletin boards on-line in the United States. The list is updated as the author receives information about new bulletin boards.

CompuServe now has a bulletin board for IBM PC users. The bulletin board has messages and uploading and downloading options. Once logged on to CompuServe, type `GO PCS131` after the '!' prompt. If you have trouble accessing the BBS, call CompuServe's customer service number, 800/848-8990.

201/678-6670
New York, New York
SYSOP: Donald David (TC7057)
24 hrs

213/649-1489
Culver City, California
SYSOP: George Peck
24 hrs, download & upload, messages

213/390-3239
Source: TCG147
Santa Monica, California
SYSOP: Marc Schoenberg
24 hrs, download & upload, 10 MB disk, 300/1200

215/250-0173
Easton, Pennsylvania
SYSOP: Jerry Lotto
24 hrs, download & upload, 300

301/949-8848
Rockville, Maryland
SYSOP: Rich Schinnell
24 hrs, download & upload
(Passwd = IBMPC)

301/251-6293
Gaithersburg, Maryland
SYSOP: Larry Jordan
24 hrs, communications info
(Passwd = IBMPC)

301/460-0538
Bethesda, Maryland
SYSOP: Ramona Landberg
24 hrs, upload newsletter articles

301/937-4339
Beltsville, Maryland
Small People Software
SYSOP: Chet Rhodes
24 hrs, games, messages

312/259-8086
Chicago, Illinois
SYSOP: Gene Plantz
(PCMODEM)
24 hrs, download & upload, messages, 300/1200

312/376-7598
Chicago, Illinois
SYSOP: Pete Coniceak
24 hrs, download & upload, messages, 300

404/252-9438
Atlanta, Georgia
SYSOP: Rod Roark
24 hrs, messages, download & upload, tips, news

416/499-7023
Toronto, Canada
SYSOP: Doug Peel
24hrs, download & upload, messages, 300/1200

608/262-4939
Madison, Wisconsin
PC Users Group
SYSOP: Read Gilgen
5 p.m. to 8 a.m. weekdays, 5 p.m. Fri. to 8 a.m. Mon., download & upload, messages

703/680-5220
Dale City, Virginia
Dale City Info Exchange
SYSOP: Tim Mullins
24 hrs, news, new product review—all PCs

703/560-7803
Vienna, Virginia
ABBS with IBM PC Conference
24 hrs, download & upload, messages

703/978-0921
Fairfax, Virginia
SYSOP: Bruce Churchill
(Hostcomm)
24 hrs, software eval/purchase
(Passwd = IBMPC)

703/978-9592
Fairfax, Virginia
SYSOP: Don Withrow
(Hostcomm)
24 hrs, download & upload, tips
(Passwd = IBMPC)

714/624-1767
Claremont, California
SYSOP: Laurance Staples
24 hrs, software eval/purchase
(Passwd = IBMPC)

913/842-5749
Lawrence, Kansas
24 hrs, download & upload, messages

BBS of the Month

Beginning this issue *BBS Watch* will feature a different IBM PC bulletin board each month. The bulletin board's file transfer programs will be listed so that readers can see what types of public domain programs the BBS offers.

Culver City, California, IBM PC Bulletin Board System 213/649-1489

Files available for transfer:

KEYLOC.HEX	3K	Lock the Shift, Ctrl, and Alt keys
KEYLOC.DOC	2K	Documentation for above
MAIL1.BAS	24K	BASIC mail list generating program
MAIL1.DOC	3K	Documentation for above
MEMORY.HEX	3K	Set memory DIP switches from your keyboard
MEMORY.DOC	3K	Documentation for above
PWRUPCLK.HEX	2K	Set date/time in one command
PWRUPCLK.DOC	.4K	Documentation for above
DM.BAS	1K	Set up dot matrix printer for *WordStar*
LQ.BAS	1K	Set up letter quality printer for *WordStar*
DMLQ.DOC	.9K	Documentation for above 2 files
RV-EDIT.BAS	12K	BASIC full screen editor
RV-EDIT.DOC	9K	Documentation for above
GRAFNEW.BAS	5K	Plot curves on Epson or other dot matrix printer
PEEKPOKE.DOC	3K	BASIC PEEK and POKE tips
GUMUP.DOC	7K	Additional documentation for some programs
XFERDIR	6K	This file

CATALOG.HEX	2K	Alpha Disk Directory
CATALOG.DOC	.1K	Documentation for above
SORT.BAS	3K	Sort arrays in memory
FASTDISK.BAS	.5K	DOS 1.0 speedup program. Creates SPEEDUP.COM
BIORYTHM.BAS	5K	Biorhythm to printer or screen
HELPFILE.DOC	1K	PC BBS command list
MAILHELP.DOC	2K	PC BBS MAILBOX commands
NEWS.DOC	varies	PC BBS news
DESCRIPT.DOC	.5K	PC BBS system description
OSCAR.BAS	9K	Amateur radio satellite finder
XREF.BAS	6K	Generates cross-reference of BASIC program
HAMMODEM.BAS	3K	Demonstrates amateur radio with SMARTMODEM
PACMAN.BAS	12K	Play it slowly on the PC
PACMAN.HEX	30K	Play it faster and better than .BAS
UNPROTCT.HEX	.2K	"Unprotect" protected BASIC programs
UNPROTCT.DOC	2K	Documentation for above
ATTRIB.BAS	.3K	Sets up video attributes
DOC	.4K	Documentation for above
BEEP.HEX	.3K	Does a BEEP in DOS. Helps with batch files
BEEP.DOC	.4K	Documentation for above
CD.HEX	1K	Displays name—information—directory for a disk
CD.DOC	.3K	Documentation for above
CLS.HEX	.4K	Clears the screen in DOS
CLS.DOC	.2K	Documentation for above
CRETURN.BAS	.9K	Puts linefeeds in a downloaded program
CRETURN.DOC	.5K	Documentation for above
DISKRTN.HEX	20K	Look at a disk directory—hide & recover files
DISKRTN.DOC	.5K	Documentation for above
DSKPGM2.BAS	2K	Create a batch file to copy a disk alphabetically
DSKPGM2.DOC	.5K	Documentation for above
FILTER.BAS	2K	Filter nasty codes out of a file
FILTER.DOC	.5K	Documentation for above
FK.HEX	5K	Latest function key program with new features
FK.DOC	5K	Documentation for above
GRAFTRAX.HEX	2K	Print your screen three different ways on your Epson

GRAFTRAX.DOC	2K	Documentation for above
HEXCNVRT.BAS	9K	Convert a file to HEX for downloading & back again
HEXCNVRT.DOC	1K	Documentation for above
HOST.BAS	14K	A HOST program for your PC. Go on the air!
HOST.DOC	.4K	Documentation for above
LF.HEX	1K	Produce a different kind of sorted directory
LF.DOC	.2K	Documentation for above
SHIFTBS.HEX	.4K	Change the Shift key to the backslash (\)
ATTRIB.DOC	.4K	Documentation for above
SHIFTBS.HEX	.4K	Change the Shift key to the backslash (\)
SHIFTIBM.HEX	.4K	Change the Shift to the standard character
SHIFTBS.DOC	.5K	Documentation for above 2 files
SPOOLER1.HEX	2K	Set up a print spooler for your PC
SPOOLER2.HEX	2K	Set up a print spooler (different printers)
SPOOLBAS.BAS	2K	Continue spooling when going from DOS to BASIC
SPOOLER.DOC	1K	Documentation for above 3 files
SYSTAT.HEX	3K	Print the status of drives plus other system info
SYSTAT.DOC	1K	Documentation for above
TUNE.HEX	1K	Play one of five different tunes in DOS
TUNE.DOC	.2K	Documentation for above
UTSCAN.BAS	1K	Scan a BASIC program for a particular string & print
UTSCAN.DOC	.4K	Documentation for above
VDEL.HEX	2K	Delete files through a prompt. Prevents disasters
VDEL.DOC	.2K	Documentation for above
WAIT.HEX	.3K	Pause the system for 3 seconds in DOS and then go on
WAIT.DOC	.1K	Documentation for above
XREF.HEX	60K	Faster cross-referencing of a BASIC program
XFER.DOC	.9K	Documentation for above
PC-TALK.BAS	42K	PC terminal & communications programs
PC-TALK.DOC	40K	Documentation for above
ESCWDWN.BAS	.6K	PC-Talk fix
AUTODIAL.BAS	1K	PC-Talk fix
LONGDIR.BAS	1K	PC-Talk fix
INSERTCR.BAS	.9K	PC-Talk fix
FILENOTE.DOC	1K	Documentation for above 4 files
TIMEFIX.BAS	.5K	Fixes PC-Talk connect-time calculation
PC450.BAS	.6K	Supports 450 baud with PC-Talk

User Group Dispatch

User Groups Go to the Faire

Anna Bunker

The West Coast Computer Faire has become a San Francisco tradition. "A tradition," according to Jim Warren, founder of the Faire, "that sprang up out of the early days of computing." The first two or three West Coast Computer Faires were attended by computer hobbyists and professionals. In those days the personal computer was viewed as a hobby, and there wasn't much, Warren says, that you could do with a computer if you weren't willing to play with it.

User groups have also grown out of those early days when breakthrough innovations were brewed up late at night in basements or garages. Warren was a member of one of the original Silicon Valley user clubs along with Steve Wozniak and Steve Jobs of Apple. As a result Warren has always supported hobbyists, clubs, and professional organizations, which in his opinion are "the part of the computer community from which innovation and creativity have grown." Warren gives free booth space to nonprofit user groups attending the Faire.

The 8th West Coast Computer Faire was held March 18-20 in San Francisco. The San Francisco IBM PC Users Group, Diablo Valley PC, and the Silicon Valley Computer Society were among the groups attending.

Ray Young, president of the San Francisco IBM PC Users Group, has attended the Faire as a spectator for the past five or six years. He has witnessed the success of other groups at the Faire in gaining membership, building finances, and publicizing their activities.

The San Francisco IBM PC Users Group started in June 1982. Before the Faire its paid membership had reached 95 and the attendance at monthly meetings averaged between 60 and 70. The group publishes a first-rate newsletter, *Blue Notes*, that is full of programs, patches, reviews, announcements, gossip, and monthly columns. Some of the other services the group offers its members include a library of public domain software (available to group members for $5 a disk) and discounts on software and hardware purchased in bulk by the group.

Not for Profit

Warren gave the San Francisco group free booth space at the Faire. Though the space dedicated to nonprofit groups was in the wings of the building and not in the center of the main floor, it was located in a well-frequented area—right next to the IBM room.

Warren also donated funds to print 5000 fliers for the group. The only expense the group incurred was the cost of copying public domain software and printing back issues of *Blue Notes* to be sold at the Faire. The cash outlay came from members and totalled $3200. The group sold 419 disks, 84 packages of *Blue Notes* back issues, and 29 memberships. The net sales totalled $1867, but half of the disks and three-quarters of the newsletters were left over and will be sold at future meetings and computer shows.

Worth the Effort

Group members handed out nearly 4000 fliers and membership forms at the Faire. Judging by the interest generated, they expected to double their membership in the following weeks. The first meeting the group held after the Faire confirmed these expectations: 125 people attended, twice the average pre-Faire attendance. The group sold $1000 in memberships and public domain software, bringing its finances back into the black.

Many of the manufacturers exhibiting at the Faire stopped at the group's booth. Impressed with the quality of *Blue Notes*, they gave the group free software for review. The group also received free copies of books and magazines.

Many groups at the Faire attended an open IBM PC user group meeting. The San Francisco Bay Area groups came up with a proposal to join forces so that they could cooperate in some future ventures.

Having a booth at a computer show can be an important step in a user group's growth.

Young was at the group's booth all three days of the Faire. He had donated his hardware, so he "didn't want to wander too far away." He enjoyed meeting people and finding out what they expect and need from user groups. "Personally," says Young, "one of the benefits that I got from the Faire was being able to meet the people—getting their feedback and finding out what they were interested in."

The group was able to serve as a source of information for novice users attending the Faire. Members gave advice to people who were considering buying a computer. According to Young they didn't always recommend the IBM PC to those whose needs could be served by another, less expensive computer.

Judging from the San Francisco IBM PC Users Group's experience, having a booth at a computer show can be an important step in a user group's growth. Young advises groups to sign up for shows as far in advance as possible. His group signed up for next year's West Coast Computer Faire while they were at this year's since spaces were already going fast.

In order to sell merchandise at a computer show in California, a group needs a resale number, which can be acquired directly from the state Board of Equalization provided the group has a bank account. Groups planning to attend computer shows should check the laws of the state where the show will be located.

Future Shows

Computer shows are a good place to build membership and finances and to contact other groups, users, manufacturers, and publications. Many organizations sponsor computer shows, but not all of them donate space to nonprofit groups. Check *World Events* for information on shows. The following are major show sponsors:

Computer Faire donates booth space to nonprofit groups. It is sponsoring The IBM PC Faire, August 26-28, 1983, at Civic Auditorium and Brooks Hall in San Francisco. Computer Faire, Jim Warren, 345 Swett Rd., Woodside, CA 94062, 415/851-7077.

Northeast Expositions donates booth space to nonprofit groups.

It is sponsoring two PC '83 shows: June 17-19, 1983, at Civic Auditorium and Brooks Hall in San Francisco; and October 8-10, 1983, at the Bayside Exposition Center in Boston. Northeast Expositions, National Computer Shows, 822 Boylston St., Chestnut Hill, MA 02167, 617/739-2000.

The Interface Group does not offer free space to nonprofit groups. It sponsors the COMDEX shows and The Computer Showcase Expos nationwide. The Interface Group, Inc., 300 First Ave., Needham, MA 02194, 800/325-3330.

The CW Conference Management Group does not offer free space to nonprofit groups. It is sponsoring the Executive Microcomputer Conference and Exposition, June 23-25, 1983, at the Sheraton Centre in New York City. CW Conference Management Group, 375 Cochituate Rd., Rt. 30, Framingham, MA 01701, 617/879-0700.

H.A. Bruno, Inc. does donate space to nonprofit groups if they meet certain criteria. It is sponsoring PC Expo, June 8-10, 1983, at the New York Coliseum in New York City. H.A. Bruno Inc., Ralph Ianuzzi, Jr., 110 Charlotte Pl., Englewood Cliffs, NJ 07632, 201/569-8542.

We welcome reader participation and suggestions. We would like to receive subscriptions to group newsletters so that we may report on group ideas and activities. Address pertinent information to User Group Dispatch, PC World, *555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107.*

User Group Directory

PC World publishes a User Group Directory every month. If your group is not in this list but would like to be, send the group's name, address, contact, and other information to *User Group Dispatch, PC World,* 555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107.

Alabama
Birmingham User Group
Chet Ellis
ComputerLand, 215 W. Valley Ave.
Birmingham, AL 35209
205/942-8085

Arizona
IBM PC Idea Exchange
Lisa May
United Systems Corporation
1074 E. Sandpiper Dr.
Tempe, AZ 85283
602/831-9363

IBM PC User Group
Theresa Baudier
711 E. River Front Dr.
Tucson, AZ 85719
602/622-4751

Phoenix Personal Computer Club
Fred Lynch
P.O. Box 44218
Phoenix, AZ 85064
602/266-6634

California
Diablo Valley PC
Al Hunt
1415 Oakland Blvd. #101
Walnut Creek, CA 94596
415/687-8037

Greater South Bay IBM-PC Users Group
Mike Immel
P.O. Box 665
Lomita, CA 90717
213/325-7533

IBM Users Group of California
Neil Zachary
P.O. Box 4136
Los Angeles, CA 90028
213/937-1314

IBM PC Users Group of Santa Maria
Ray Smyer
575 Ferndale Dr.
Santa Maria, CA 93455
805/937-7490

Marin-Sonoma PC Users
William O. Ward
P.O. Box 2909
San Francisco, CA 94126

Modesto-Turlock PC User Group
Liz Leedom
P.O. Box 1122
Modesto, CA 95353
209/578-2358

San Diego Computer Society
John Field
1384 Caliente Loop
Chula Vista, CA 92010
714/421-9686

San Fernando IBM PC Users Club
David Nussbaum
11558 Riverside Dr. #207
North Hollywood, CA 91602
213/985-8337

San Francisco IBM PC Users Group
4411 Geary Blvd. #33
San Francisco, CA 94118

San Francisco PC Club
Max Brioski
1880 California St. #12
San Francisco, CA 94109
415/775-8882

Santa Barbara City College Computer Science Department
Stu Swartz
721 Cliff Dr.
Santa Barbara, CA 93109
805/966-2919

Silicon Valley Computer Society
Peter Harris
P.O. Box 60506
Sunnyvale, CA 94088
408/248-9057

Colorado
Denver User Group
Steve Leibson
4040 Greenbriar Blvd.
Boulder, CO 80303
303/494-4062

Connecticut
Central Connecticut User Group
Rich Paterson
ComputerLand, 131 S. Main
West Hartford, CT 06107
203/561-1446

IBM PC User Club of Stamford
Dave Foulger
69 River St.
New Canaan, CT 06840
203/966-9378

Delaware
PC Professional Users Group
P.O. Box 2350
Wilmington, DE 19899

District Of Columbia
Capital PC
Janet Withrow
P.O. Box 3189
Gaithersburg, MD 20878
703/978-1530

IBMICRO
Mike Todd
1414-C Wright Circle
Bolling AFB
Washington, DC 20336
202/433-4380

Florida
Manasota IBM PC User's Group
Richard Reynolds
1102 Mallorca Dr.
Bradenton, FL 33529
813/792-5400

Hawaii
Hawaii IBM PC User Group
Doug Long
P.O. Box 22967
Honolulu, HI 96822
808/735-5769

Idaho
Idaho PC User Group
Bruce Burns
ComputerLand, 687 S. Capitol Blvd.
Boise, ID 83702
208/344-5545

Illinois
Association of PC Users
Glenn Yunashko
4727 S. Lavergne St.
Chicago, IL 60638
312/284-5872

Northern Illinois IBM PC Users Group
James L. Szafranski
5195 Castaway Ln.
Barrington, IL 60010
312/934-8133

Indiana
ComputerLand User Group
Susan Shields
ComputerLand, 5450 N. Coldwater Rd.
Fort Wayne, IN 46825
219/483-8107

Indianapolis IBM User Group
David Reed
6704 Hoover Rd.
Indianapolis, IN 46260
317/259-7892

NEI User Group
George Gynn
9904 Goshen Rd.
Fort Wayne, IN 46818
219/693-3147

Northern Indiana IBM PC User Group
Dr. Terry Alley
316 N. Ironwood Dr.
South Bend, IN 46615
219/289-5506

Iowa
Cedar Falls User Group
Lee Ann Moore
Black Hawk Village Shopping Center
Cedar Falls, IA 50613
319/277-1700

IBM PC User Group
Gary Wilcox
P.O. Box 246
Des Moines, IA 50301
515/967-5880

Kansas
Topeka Library User Group
Becky Hinton
Topeka Public Library
1515 W. 10th St.
Topeka, KS 66604
913/233-2040

Louisiana
New Orleans PC Club
Mike Lacefield
3517 19th St.
Mettarie, LA 70002
504/831-1138

Maryland
Baltimore PC
1910 Trout Farm Rd.
Jarrettsville, MD 21084

Massachusetts
IBM PC User Group
Boston Computer Society
Three Center Plaza
Boston, MA 02108
617/367-8080

Miller Microcomputer Services
61 Lakeshore Rd.
Natick, MA 01760
617/653-6136

MS-DOS Users Group (SIG/86)
Joseph Boykin
47-4 Sheridan Dr.
Shrewsbury, MA 01545

Minnesota
IBM PC Users' Group—Minneapolis
Peter LeNeau
P.O. Box 3163
Minneapolis, MN 55403

New Jersey
North Jersey IBM PC Club
Irving Lang
7 W. 45th St.
New York, NY 10036
212/869-5066

Personna Computer Association
The Int'l Association for the PC
Paul Cowan
P.O. Box 759
Point Pleasant, NJ 08742
201/840-0300

New York
Long Island Computer Association
Marvin Freifeld
3 Lindron Ave.
Smithtown, NY 11787
516/724-0574

Manhattan IBM Micro Club
Helaine Head
360 Central Park West
New York, NY 10025
212/222-9027

NYPC, The NY IBM PC Users' Group
Eric A. Jaffe M.D.
Cornell University Medical College
1300 York Ave.
New York, NY 10021
212/472-6140

North American Amateur Computer Club
Brian Glasser
P.O. Box 106 Church St. Station
New York, NY 10008
212/674-1185

PECO Club
P.O. Box 255
Garnerville, NY 10923

Ohio

ACORN: Greater Cincinnati IBM PC User's Group
Jerry Daiker
P.O. Box 3097
Cincinnati, OH 45201
513/741-8279

Greater Cleveland PC Users Group
Roy McCartney
30704 Royalview Dr.
Willowick, OH 44094
216/944-5173

Pennsylvania

International Personal Computer Owners
James B. Cookinham
IPCO, Inc., P.O. Box 10426
Pittsburgh, PA 15234
412/561-1857

South Carolina

PC Users' Group
P.O. Box 2794
Columbia, SC 29202
Source: ST5033

Tennessee

IBM PC User Group
Ross Burrus
Science Applications, Inc.
Plaza Tower #801
Oak Ridge, TN 37830
615/482-6649

Texas

Basic Society, Inc.
An Int'l Users Group
Drawer 345099
Dallas, TX 75234
214/484-9900

Central Texas IBM PC User Group
Charles Weller
5602 Bennett Ave.
Austin, TX 78751
512/261-6566

Dallas Fort Worth User Club
Samuel P. Cook
309 Lincolnshire
Irving, TX 75061
214/253-6979

HAL-PC
Rob Taylor
P.O. Box 610001
Houston, TX 77208
713/937-1342

IBM Club
David Andrews
3110 Honey Tree Ln.
Austin, TX 78746
512/327-0029

Texas User Group
Ken Holcombe
178 Tipperary
San Antonio, TX 78223
512/333-7163

Utah

Utah ComputerLand
Debby Williamson
ComputerLand, 161 E. 200 South
Salt Lake City, UT 84111
801/364-4416

Virginia

Central Virginia IBM PC User's Group
Jim Love
P.O. Box 34446
Richmond, VA 23234
804/271-6173

Washington

PNW IBM User Group
Eileen Bagdonas
P.O. Box 3363
Bellevue, WA 98009

Wisconsin

Madison IBM-PC Users' Group
Philip J. Niehoff
P.O. Box 83
Madison, WI 53701
608/255-7641

Canada

IBM.PC Users Group of Winnipeg
c/o BDI Business Development International
P.O. Box 5, Station A
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3K 129 Canada

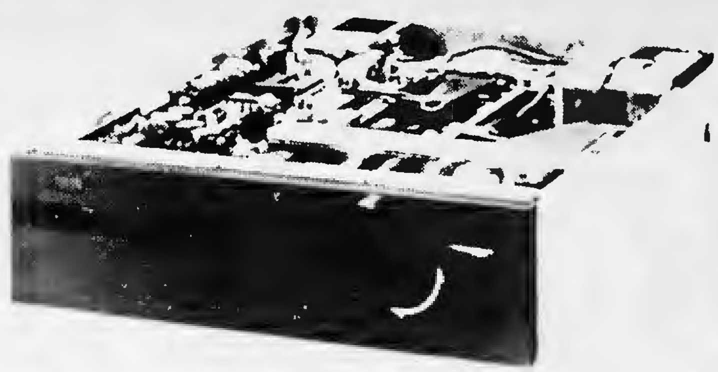
Northern Alberta PC User Group
Gerry J. Danen
106 Abbotsfield Rd.
Edmonton, Alberta
T5W 4S9 Canada
403/474-0732

Vancouver PC Users Group
Allan Kelly
P.O. Box 48297 Bentall 111
Vancouver, B.C.
V7X 1A1 Canada
604/271-3883

France

Mikro-Cerio
Jean Roch
134 bis, Rue Du Vieux
Pont De Sevres
Boulogne, France 92100
609.94.14

THE TEAC ATTACK!



80 Track Double Sided $325.00 **40 Track Double Sided $289.00**

International Disk is dedicated to serving the IBM-PC user community by providing quality peripherals and software at the lowest prices. We are basically cash and carry. However, you may put 50% down with personal check, cash, or Visa-M/C and 50% cash C.O.D.

8" THIN DISK SYSTEM

Beautifully matched to the PC this sytem is PC-DOS compatible using the JFORMAT program below Take 20 off the #1 MEH controller below when purchased with this system Case power supply and cable ID **#3CMH** **$395**

8' system with one Single Sided-Double Density Tandon 848 1 **$895**

8 System with one Double Sided-Double Density Tandon 848-2 **$995**

8 System with two Double Sided Double Density Tandon 848 2 **$1560**

5 1/4" HALF-HEIGHT DISK DRIVES

Easy to follow step-by-step instructions included.

"The first time I saw these TEAC drives I couldn't believe it The price—the quality—simply amazing They're built like a fine piece of German optical equipment "

—M R Downing Pres International

We supply two types of TEAC Disk drives for the IBM PC the FD 55B and the FD 55F The FD-55B is electrically equivalent to the standard IBM double sided 40 track drives and two will simply plug in one side of the PC and replace both IBM drives The FD-55B yields 320 k bytes of storage or 400 k bytes using the J Format program J Format is $30 00 when ordered with this drive

ID # 7FD55BH **$289.00**

The FD-55F is the Quad Density half height drive with 80 tracks per side yielding 640 k bytes or 800 k bytes per drive using the J Format program One of these replaces both IBM double-sided drives J Format is $30 00 when ordered with this drive

ID # 8FD55FH **$325.00**

Strapping bracket Drive C D cable and y power cables are included when purchasing 2 or more drives J Format is also included when purchasing 3 or more drives We also stock the equivalent Mitsubishi 4853 Drive

2 MITSUBISHI DRIVES YIELDS 2 4 MBYTE

1.2 MBYTE ½ Height Drives!

This is the most storage available on a mini floppy for the IBM PC The 4854 electrically looks like an 8 Double-Sided Double Density disk drive yet it is a half height 5' mini floppy drive Using the JFORMAT program this yields 1 2 megabytes with PC-DOS Great for Winchester back up! Take 20" off the #1 MEH controller card which is required with this drive Comes complete with cable and power connector ID # 9 **MB4854H** **$495**

WAKE UP!

AlarmClock When the alarm goes off and you hear its piercing audible signal you'll know why because The AlarmClock prompts the message on the screen you entered when you set the alarm The AlarmClock silently resides in memory as you are working with any IBM PC program, compiler or even while in BASIC it will jolt you out of computer nirvana at a pre-set time Then you can enter another setting or just press Enter and go back to what you were doing Optionally The AlarmClock will constantly display the time in the upper right corner of your display ticking off the seconds as you work or play The AlarmClock is compatible with both the monochrome and color displays Available now No waiting Delivered on PC-DOS data diskette as a EXE file The AlarmClock is written entirely in assembly language

ORDER NOW AT THIS INTRODUCTORY PRICE!

ID # 1ACS **$ 39.95**

Maynard Electronics SandStar Series Cards

The modular card philosophy is the one we recommend All of our prices are 10' off list

Multifunction card. Will hold 6 mo les ID # **3MEH** **$99.00**

5¼", 8" Floppy Controller. Compatible with IBM drives and single or double density 8' drives ID # **1MEH.** Holds 3 modules **$239**

Serial Port Module. Strappable as Port #1 or #2 ID # **2MEH** **$95**

Centronics Parallel. The IBM printer can be attached using this module ID # **4MEH** **$68**

Clock Calendar. A natural with The Alarm Clock Take 20 off The Alarm Clock when purchased with this Includes battery and boot-up software ID # **5MEH** **$77**

Game I/O memory and hard-disk modules also available

PC-DOS TO CP/M REFORMATTING transfer utility

PX C is the transfer utility many people have been waiting for While operating under CP M 86 on the IBM PC you can insert a PC DOS diskette and transfer any or all files on it to a CP M 86 diskette By watching your BASIC syntax your BASICA programs become instantly available for CBASIC-86 CB-86 MBASIC etc PX-C is delivered on a CP M-86 formatted diskette PX C is written entirely in assembly language

ID # 2PXS **$ 49.95**

SALE!

John Henderson's

JFORMAT

- HARD DISK SUPPORT
- ELECTRONIC DISK
- PRINT SPOOLER
- 25% MORE STORAGE ON YOUR FLOPPY
- 80 TRACK DOUBLE SIDED FLOPPY DRIVE SUPPORT (TEAC, TANDON, etc.)
- 8'' DISK DRIVE SUPPORT (PC-DOS)

You ll have a smile on your face when you use JFORMAT This is the set of utilities and patches virtually all of the add-on disk drive vendors are delivering to patch PC-DOS for drive compatibility It will format PC-DOS disks with 10 sectors per track for 25% more storage You can mix any combo of 5 and 8 drives up to drive F The features of this group of programs are just too numerous to mention Even includes the assembly language source code for the hard disk drivers Too good to be true at this price

ID #3JFS **$ 39.95**

IBM BINDERS AND CASES!

These are the identical offset D-ring binders and slipcases made for IBM We purchase these from the same factory Lead time is required on some colors and sizes so call for size and color availability Available in cases of 5 sets of binders and slipcases only ID # **10CPH** **$49.95**

84,000 WORDS!

Word grinder is an alphabetized word list of 84 000 English words in ASCII files It is compatible with SpellStar* and will increase your dictionary size to over 90 000 words Available on most popular computer media Requires 1 Megabyte of storage

ID # **6WGS** (3 DSDD Diskettes) **$149**

ID # **7WGS** (6 SSDD Diskettes) **$159**

LOOK FOR INTERNATIONAL DISK'S PRODUCTS AT YOUR LOCAL DEALER OR WRITE OR CALL.

VISA

INTERNATIONAL DISK

22458 VENTURA BLVD., STE. E • WOODLAND HILLS, CA 91364

TELEPHONE (213) 992-0514

MasterCard

CALIFORNIA RESIDENTS ADD 6% L A ADD 6½ All mail order personal checks held 10 days C O D is cash only Basic shipping charges $1 80 Add $1 00 for 2 day service C O D add $1 50 All foreign orders (except Canada) $10 00 shipping and handling Minimum credit card purchase — $49 95

*The AlarmClock PX-C and CX-P are registered trademarks of International Disk SpellStar is a registered trademark of MicroPro International San Raphael California

GRAND OPENING

THE FIRST AND ONLY INDEPENDENT STORE IN NYC DEDICATED TO IBM PC SOFTWARE AND PERIPHERALS

Monte Carlo card by MBI

The only distinguishable card you need for your IBM PC with FIVE true functions

- 64K to 1 Megabyte of Memory
- ONE IBM Compatible Centronics Parallel Port
- ONE IBM Compatible Asynchronous Communications Port
- Clock/Calendar (Battery Backed) with Alarm Features
- Dual-Port Joystick Interface
- **Future Upgrade Option:** Direct Connect Plug-On Modem

$ CALL *

The Ultimate Programmable I-C-Magic Chip

- Full Color or B & W Graphics Screen Dump
- Buffer Selectable 16K to 64K
- Terminal Emulator RS-232 Direct or Modem Connect to Remote Computer
- Plugs Into IBM Mother Board

$ CALL

Software

DATA CAPTURE	115.00
dBASE 11	449.00
DESKTOP PLAN	219.00
EASY FILER	269.00
EASY PLANNER	189.00
EASY SPELLER	139.00
EASY WRITER 11	245.00
1ST CLASS MAIL	89.00
HOWARD REAL ESTATE ANALIZER	180.00
MAILMERGE	CALL
MICRO TERMINAL	99.00
MONEY DECISION I & II	269.00
MULTIPLAN	199.00
PEACHTREE A/R	$CALL*
PEACHTREE A/P	CALL*
PEACHTREE G/L	CALL*
PEACHTREE PEACH PAK	CALL*
PERSONAL PEARL	190.00
P.F.S. FILE	115.00
P.F.S. REPORT	105.00
SMART COM II HAYES	$CALL
SPELL STAR	CALL
SUPERCALC	177.00
THE HOME ACCOUNTANT PLUS	CALL*
TIM 111	359.00
T.M.Q. FILE FACTS	145.00
VERSAFORM	275.00
VERSATEXT	$CALL*
VISICALC 256K	189.00
VISICALC (ADVANCED)	$CALL
VISI PLOT/TREND	219.00
VISIFILE	219.00
WORD STAR	CALL
WORDSTAR/SPELLSTAR	$CALL
WORDSTAR/MAILMERGE	$CALL
WRITE ON	95.00

Entertainment and Educational

APPLE PANIC	$22.00
BUG OFF	29.00
CHAMPIONSHIP BLACK JACK	25.00
COSMIC CRUSAUDERS	29.00
DEADLINE	39.00
FRIENDLY ARCADE	49.95
FRIENDLY WARE	49.95
FROGGER	25.00
FLIGHT SIMULATOR	35.00
GORGON	29.00
HI RES #4	29.00
MASTER TYPE	45.00
PC TUTOR	65.00
POOL 1.5	25.00
PROFESSIONAL BLACK JACK	69.00
SNACK ATTACK II	29.00
SPACE STRIKE	25.00
STAR CROSS	29.00
ZORK I, II, III	ea. 29.00

Diskettes

MAXELL S.S./S.D.	$31.00
D.S./D.D.	47.00
KANGAROO (10 Year Warranty) S.S./S.D.	$22.95
D.S./D.D.	31.95

Accessories

KRAFT JOY STICKS	$49.00
FLIP & FILE	24.50
DISKETTE CASES	1.95

All prices listed in this ad valid till June 30, 1983

* Indicates our Grand Opening Specials

ALL BRANDS ARE REGISTERED TRADEMARKS

IBM IS A REGISTERED TRADE MARK OF IBM CORPORATION

Monitors

AMDEK 310A	$189
310G	$179
COLOR I	$379
COLOR II	$CALL*

Modems

HAYES SMART MODEM 300	$215.00
HAYES SMART MODEM 1200	525.00

TANDON TM 100-2	$255.00
64 RAM CHIPS	89.00

Printers

DIABLO 620	$CALL
DIABLO 630	$CALL*
TRACTOR FEED FOR 630	$249
NEC 8023	$479
OKIDATA 84P	$CALL*
92P	$649
93P	$1009
CITHO 10P	$449
10S	$609
15P	$685
15S	$749
SANYO PR 5500 (Spin Writer)	$CALL*
PRINTER CABLES	$CALL

TO PLACE YOUR ORDER CALL: **TOLL FREE 800-221-0343**

NEW YORK STATE **1-212-730-8036**

AD 61 C

PC LINK™

PC LINK, CORP. 29 WEST 38TH ST. 2ND FL., NEW YORK, NY 10018

STORE OPENS JULY 1ST, 1983

Come in for our Grand Opening Specials

STORE HOURS: 9:00 A.M.—5:30 P.M. E.S.T—MONDAY THRU FRIDAY

TERMS & CONDITIONS

All prices reflect 3% cash discount. We reserve the right to repair, replace or return to manufacturer for repair, all goods acknowledged faulty or damaged on receipt by customer. *Customer must call for Return Authorization Number before returning any goods.* Prompt attention will be given to all damaged and faulty returned goods. Any goods returned for credit are subject to 10% re-stocking charge, plus shipping charge. No returns for credit on any software. Customer must deal with the manufacturer directly if the customer finds any false claims made by the manufacturer. Prices subject to change without notice. All advertised products are from our present stock and subject to availability. All goods are shipped U.P.S. surface unless otherwise authorized by customer. Add 2% of price, or minimum of $3.00 for shipping. We do not ship C.O.D. Please allow one to two weeks for personal an corporate check to clear. To ex-pidite shipping, send money order, certified or cashier's check, or charge to your **VISA—MasterCard**. N.Y.C. add 8¼% sales tax N.Y.S add appropriate sale tax. Corporate accounts welcomed. *Terms, conditions and prices differ in our store.*

VISISCHEDULE SUPERCALC VISICALC WORDSTAR D.B. MASTER MULTI PLAN VISIFILE dBASE II

ZORK II CENTIPEDE STAR RAIDERS DEADLINE CANYON CLIMBER PREPPIE WIZARDRY—SCENARIO I SUBMARINE COMMANDER AZTEC

VOLKSWRITER DATA PERFECT FILE MANAGER 80+ SCREENWRITER PROFESSIONAL PFS: GRAPH THE SENSIBLE SPELLER VISITREND/PLOT

RENT SOFTWARE BEFORE YOU BUY!

from our

SOFTWARE
RENTAL LIBRARY

You can now RENT the most popular software available for just 20-25%* of Manufacturers' Retail Price

- Eliminate the risk—rent first!
- 100% of rental fee applies toward purchase
- All purchases are 20% Off of Manufacturer's Suggested List
- Rentals are for 7-days (plus 3 days grace for return shipping)
- No Membership Fees

Now currently available for:

Apple	IBM, PC	Standard CP/M
Eagle	TRS-80 II	Xerox 820
Northstar	Osborne	Heath/Zenith 89
	Franklin	

REMEMBER, THESE ARE NOT DEMOS, BUT ORIGINAL UNRESTRICTED SOFTWARE PROGRAMS

(complete with manuals in original manufacturers' packages)

To Immediately Order, or for more information:

UNITED COMPUTER CORP.
Software Rental Library
Culver City, California

Toll Free CALL 1-800 992-7777
In California CALL 1-800 992-8888
In L.A. County CALL 1-213 823-4400

MasterCard AMERICAN EXPRESS VISA

*Plus postage and handling

FROGGER CHOPLIFTER GORF DAVID'S MIDNIGHT MAGIC EASTERN FRONT (1941) ZORK I

How to dress up your IBM.

Fred Molinari, President

Low cost data acquisition and control for the IBM Personal Computer.™

Data Translation is fashioning a new look in the personal computer market.

Our new single board plug-ins bring complete analog and digital I/O capability to your IBM Personal Computer.

The complete DT2801 I/O system fits on just one board. It includes A/D with programmable gain, D/A, digital I/O, and a programmable clock and has direct memory access capabilities. The DT2805 features the same functionality, with provision for low level analog input.

With power and performance to match that of the IBM PC, either board provides 12-bits of resolution with over 14kHz throughput rates under BASIC.

And whether your application is in laboratory data acquisition or in industrial process control, you will find both boards highly reliable at a very low cost.

The DT2801 and DT2805 are easy to use. Just plug either one into an IBM Personal Computer expansion slot. No need for separate housing or cables. A screw terminal panel with optional thermocouple cold junction compensation is available for connecting analog and digital input signals.

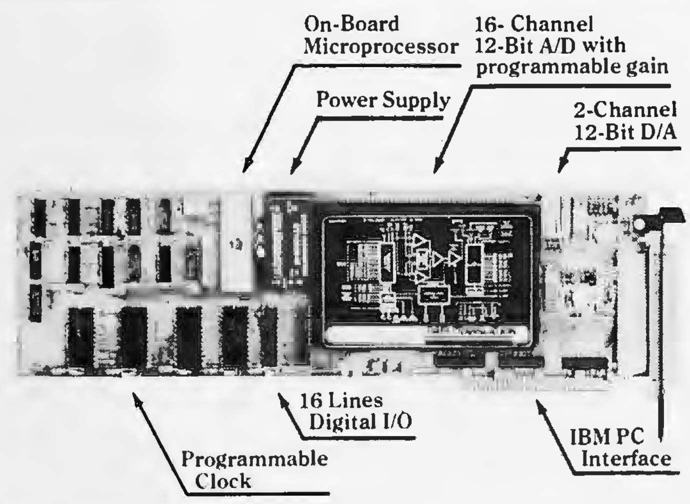
And they're easy to program. More than 30 I/O functions are accessed with just 3 commands from BASIC. Programming instructions and sample routines are detailed in the comprehensive User Manual.

Plus, as with all Data Translation products, the DT2801 and DT2805 are fully backed by our service and support team.

No other analog I/O system for the IBM Personal Computer offers such quality, power, and performance for such a reasonable price.

But, by now you probably expect that from Data Translation.

We don't just follow the latest trends. We set the style.



The DT 2801 and DT 2805 are complete single board data acquisition systems for the IBM Personal Computer.

DATA TRANSLATION

World Headquarters: Data Translation, Inc., 100 Locke Dr., Marlboro, MA 01752 (617) 481-3700 Tlx 951-646.
European Headquarters: Data Translation, Ltd., 430 Bath Rd., Slough, Berkshire SLI 6BB England (06286) 3412 Tlx 849-862.

The Help Screen

PC World Offers Answers and Advice at Every Level.

Karl Koessel

We at *PC World* receive numerous letters from PC users asking for help and advice. Some of the requests are quite broad. One reader wants to know how to use the internal calls and interrupts of DOS. Other readers would like a tutorial on DEBUG. (Authors, take note!) Subjects like these call for entire articles, but some requests are more specific. In response to these questions, we have created *The Help Screen.* If you have questions about the IBM PC or compatibles, send them in and we will track down the answers and share them with our readers.

Spaced Out

Q. *I have been using an Ohio Scientific C4-Mp for four years. Because of its disk drive problems and other shortcomings, I have recently purchased an IBM PC. I typed the BASIC program that I use on my OSI to keep track of my Coast Guard Auxiliary Division records of Public Education Classes into the IBM, but it will not run. I keep getting 'subscript out of range', and as there are no subscripts greater than 10, I cannot figure out what I am doing wrong. I am enclosing copies of the program listing for both machines in hopes that you or some clever staffer will immediately see the error of my ways. Any help would be most appreciated.*

Herman A. Goetz VFC
U.S. Coast Guard Auxiliary
Levittown, New York

The following lines are excerpted from the IBM PC listing sent by Mr. Goetz.

```
290 FOR K=1 TO N 'Print headings
300 PRINT TAB((K-1)*10-1);H$(K);
310 NEXT K
315 UL$="————"
320 FOR K=1 TO N 'Underline headings
330 PRINT TAB((K-1)*10+1);UL$;
340 NEXT K
```

A. The problem here is simple but elusive. BASIC uses parentheses for two slightly different purposes. One use is to enclose subscripts for variables. For example, ALIAS(1), ALIAS(2), and ALIAS(3) are three different variables, each of which may be set to a different value. Parentheses are also used by some BASIC statements and by almost all BASIC functions to enclose the arguments required for a particular operation. For example, to find the square root of 4 we type

```
PRINT SQR(4)
```

and the computer responds with

```
2
Ok
```

If we type

```
PRINT SQR (4)
```

(note the space between the R and the opening parenthesis), we will receive the same result. However, if this extra space is included before the opening parenthesis in the functions SPC(*n*) or TAB(*n*) (as in line 330), BASIC will not recognize the intended function; instead, BASIC interprets the intended function as a subscripted variable. Although BASIC will properly interpret all other statements, functions, and subscripted variables containing spaces before parentheses—e.g., KEY (*x*) ON, SIN (*y*), and VARIABLE (*z*)—it would be wise to avoid having spaces before any parenthesis in all statements, functions, and subscripted variables of a BASIC program.

Display Dilemma

Q. *I loaded a BASIC program on my monochrome PC, typed RUN <ENTER>, and then, deciding to run a different program, pressed Ctrl-Break. Next I pressed Ctrl-Home to clear the screen. The screen was immediately covered by approximately (I didn't count them) 25 evenly spaced horizontal lines. I've had my PC for only about two weeks and was very frightened. I quickly turned the system unit off. When I turned the PC on again, the lines were gone. I thought Ctrl-Home was supposed to clear the screen. Can you explain what happened? Did I do something that damaged my PC? Is my monochrome display or its adapter card defective? Should I take my machine in to be serviced?*

Deborah A. O'Connor
Indianapolis, Indiana

A. Put your fears aside. It is virtually impossible for input from the keyboard to damage your PC, and your computer is not defective. What you saw were underlined blanks. The monochrome display and adapter card are able to produce a variety of types of characters: green characters on a black character cell, black characters on a green character cell, blinking characters, bright characters, underlined characters, and other combinations. (A character cell is a box in which characters are printed. The monochrome display has 80 cells per line.) In BASIC the COLOR statement is used to indicate the type of character to be printed on the display.

Do you want to see those lines again? Load BASIC and type `COLOR 1,0` `<ENTER>`. Notice that the Ok prompt and the following blank are underlined. Now press Ctrl-Home. There are the lines! Ctrl-Home prints blanks in each character cell, but

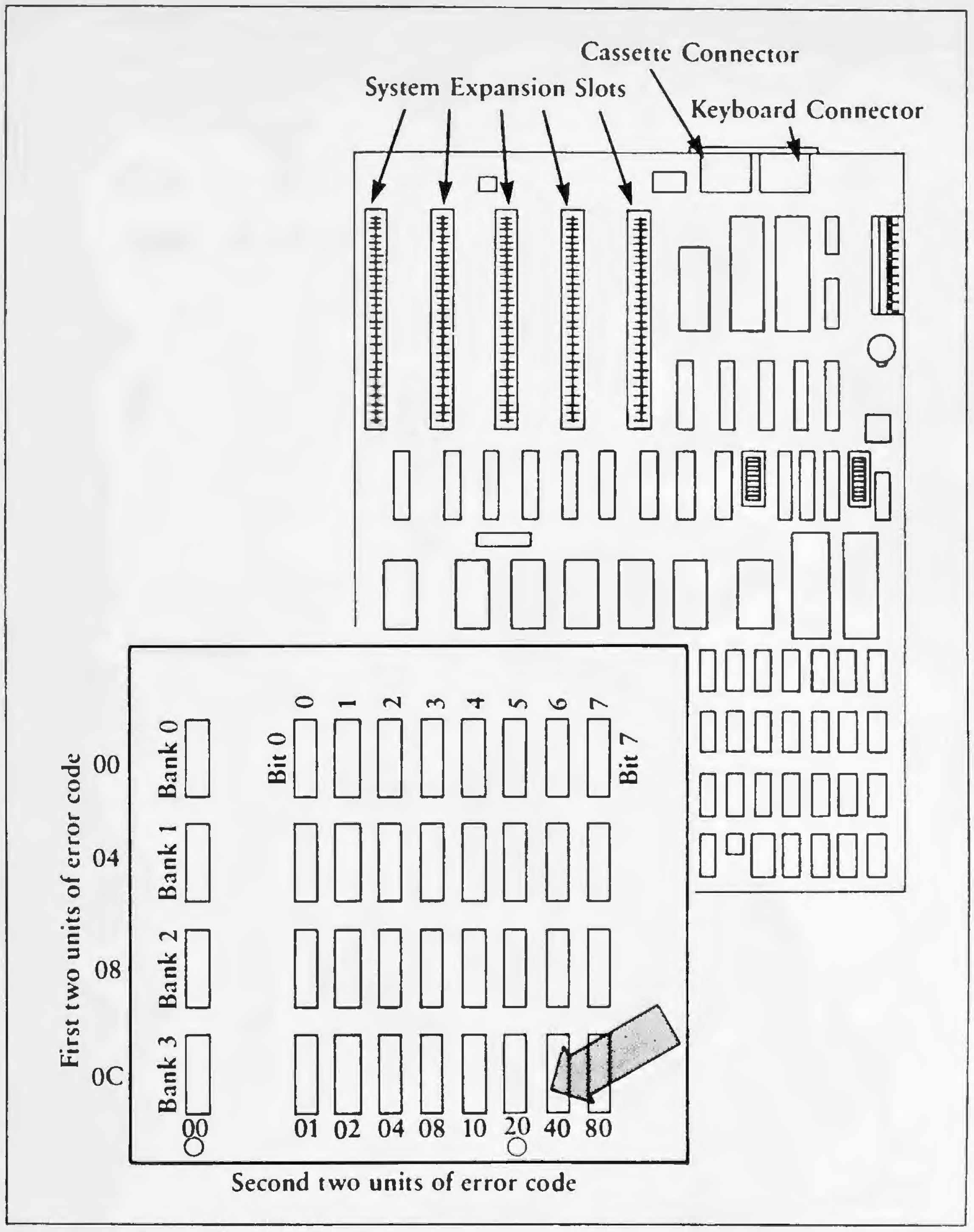


Figure 1: Decoding Parity Errors

these blanks happen to be underlined. Now type COLOR7,0 <ENTER>. Notice that the Ok prompt and the following blank are not underlined. Press Ctrl-Home and, presto, the lines are gone! When you pressed Ctrl-Break, you simply halted the program while the underline mode was in effect. To learn more about the different types of characters possible on the monochrome display, consult your BASIC manual, pages 4-43 through 4-46.

Check Those Chips

Q. What does 'Parity Check 1' mean? One morning, two months after delivery of my PC, I turned on the system unit and instead of the usual beep and drive A access, I saw some numbers (and a letter?) flash on the top line of the screen, and then the screen displayed 'Parity Check 1' and I could not get keyboard response (Ctrl-Alt-Del wouldn't reset the machine). Looking in the Guide to Operations *manual under Problem Determination Procedures (PDP) only indicated that the problem was in the system unit, which would have to be serviced. The next afternoon my dealer called to say that the system unit had been repaired. I was told only that the repair was simple and that since the machine was still under warranty there would be no charge. Can you tell me what was wrong and what was done to fix it?*
Robert Goldman
Kansas City, Missouri

A. 'Parity Check 1' means that there is a defective memory chip in the computer. The first four characters of the error message that flashed on your screen indicated which chip needed to be replaced. (The last three characters were 201, indicating a memory problem.) Your dealer compared the error message's alphanumeric code with a chart like the one shown in Figure 1 to determine the failing chip. If the bad chip is on the system board, the first digit of the error message is 0. For example, the error message '0C40 201' corresponds to the memory chip at Bank 3, Bit 6 (identified by the arrow in Figure 1). If the first digit of the error message is not 0, the failing memory chip is on an expansion board, and a chart for that particular board is required to determine which chip is bad.

Replacing a chip is fairly easy, assuming you have the tools and parts. The system unit must be opened and all installed expansion boards carefully removed. Next, using a chip-pulling tool, the bad chip may be removed. A new chip is gently pressed into the chip socket. Care must be taken to correctly orient the notch on the end of the new chip. If the chip is placed backward in its socket, it will rapidly become hot enough to burn an unsuspecting finger after the machine is turned on. Finally, the system must be reassembled and tested using the diagnostic disk in the *Guide to Operations* manual.

Do you have any questions concerning the PC or the new compatibles? Although we haven't the time to answer every question that comes in, we will print the answers to the more interesting questions as well as any frequently asked questions. If you have questions, don't be shy—ask! Send them to The Help Screen, PC World, *555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107.*

Call "THE COMPUTER-LINE" in Colorado

"Committed to bringing computers within the reach of all Americans"™

The Computer-Line believes that it is important to be competive by offering low prices; however, we regard service as the most important aspect of a mail-order organization. All our lines are available so that you, the customer, are able to talk to fully qualified computer specialists trained to answer all your questions pertaining to our line of microcomputers. We are renowned for our excellent after-sales support and our promptness for delivery. Peace of mind and excellence in service is our pledge to all our customers.

Products for the IBM® PERSONAL COMPUTER

Hard Disk System for the IBM® PERSONAL COMPUTER

DESCRIPTION: The Davong System's Hard Disk Drive fits conveniently inside the second floppy disk location of the IBM Personal Computer chassis, providing more than 30 times the capacity of a floppy diskette, plus greater speed and reliability.

The Davong Hard Disk System is compatible with IBM software and supports IBM DOS. The System includes all necessary components and software for installation.

DAVONG HARD DISK

5 Megabytes **$1375.00**
10 Megabytes **$1775.00**
15 Megabytes **$2175.00**
(Internal or External)

PERCOM HARD DISK

for your IBM, Apple, TRS-80

5 Megabytes **$1095.00**
10 Megabytes **$1395.00**
15 Megabytes **$1795.00**
20 Megabytes **$2195.00**

MAYNARD ELECTRONICS

Floppy Disk Controller for IBM PC
With Parallel Port .... **$ 219.00**
With Serial Port .... **$ 249.00**

TANDON Drive Speci

Double Sided/Double Density;
320K Bytes of Storage
TM-100-2
ONLY $245.00

SEIMANS DISK DRIV

Double Sided/Double Density;
320K Bytes of Storage
ONLY $245.00

SHUGART HALF HEIGHT DRIVE

Shugart Quality now available
for your IBM.......... **$245.0**

C.ITOH PRINTERS **(Call for Printmaster 55 Pricing!!)**

F-10

1550

F-10 Daisy Wheel Printer:

- 40CPS printing
- Diablo standard Daisy Wheel
- Parallel or Serial available
- Built with a commitment to Quality **$1195**

Pro/Writer 8510/1550 Dot Matrix Printers

- 120 CPS Printing
- Parallel or Serial available
- Performance features at a surprisingly low price

8510.......... **$379.00**
1550.......... **$649.00**

QUADRAM CORPORATION

Quadboard:

The memory board for the IBM featuring:

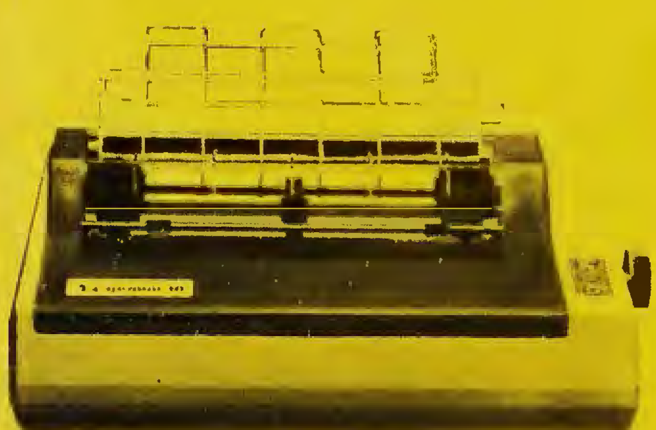
- Fully expandable from 64K to 256K
- Parallel Port
- Asynchronous (RS232) Serial Port
- Clock/Calendar
- RAM Disk Drive
- 64K, 128K, 192K, and 256K

PRICE IS TOO LOW TO PUBLISH CALL FO

Microfazer:

- Buffering from 8K to 64K (4-32 pages of text)
- Printer and Computer Independent
- Parallel/Parallel; Parallel/Serial; Serial/Serial availab
- Compute while you print!

PRINTERS



GEMINI 10

Okidata

Microline 92:
160 CPS bidirectional with 40 CPS correspondence, 80 columns **$575.00**

Microline 93:
160 CPS bidirectional with 40 CPS correspondence, 136 columns **$995.00**

Pacemark 2350:
350 CPS bedirectional/2 color printing/136 columns; Parallel **$2195.00**
Serial **$2295.00**

Pacemark 2410:
350 CPS bidirectional/2color printing/85 cps correspondence mode.
Parallel **$2495.00**
Serial **$2595.00**

Call for prices on the entire line of Okidata Printers.

Smith Corona:
TP-I Parallel or Serial **$569.00**

Integral Data Systems:
Prism 132 Color Printer all options
200 CPS sprint mode
4-color printing
friction/tractor feed **$1495.00**

NEC 8032A **$495.00**

(Call for New 3500 and 7700 Series Prices)

Brother HRI Letter Quality **$795.00**

Star Micronics:
Gemini 10 & 15

- 100 CPS Printing
- Parallel or Serial available
- Friction/tractor feed
- 10" & 15½" carriage

PRICE IS TOO LOW TO PUBLISH

NEW FEATURE:

"AN INTRODUCTION TO MICRO/PERSONAL COMPUTING WORKSHOP

Computer-Line is now offering a comprehensive 1 (one) day "hands-on" workshop in micro/personal computing.
WHO SHOULD ATTEND: Anyone who owns, is interested in, or is considering purchasing a micro computer.
FOR MORE INFORMATION, please contact our training director at:

(303) 279-2727 OR (303) 279-2848

(CORPORATE WORKSHOPS NOW AVAILABLE)

For 24-hour/7 days a week ordering and product information, call "INFO-LINE," our Computer Modem Line.

(full duplex, 300 Baud) **1-303-279-4218**

DISKETTES

Kangaroo:
The disks with the "jump on the competition. Outstanding value with Library Case and a ten year warranty.
- 5¼" SS/DD (Box of 10) .... only $19.95
- 5¼" DS/DD (Box of 10) .... only $28.95

New!! Dysan:
Outstanding LOW Price
- 5¼" SS/DD (Box of 10) $31.95
- 5¼" DS/SS (Box of 10) $39.95

Verbatim Diskettes:
- 5¼" SS/DD (Box of 10) $23.95
- 5¼" DS/DD (Box of 10) $39.95

Elephant Diskettes:
- 5¼" SS/DD (Box of 10) $22.95
- 5¼" DS/DD (Box of 10) $29.95

Library Cases 5¼" .... only $1.75 ea.

SOFTWARE

Ashton-Tate:
- D. Base II $475.00

Continental:
- Home Accountant Plus .... $ 99.00

Lifetree Systems:
- Volkswriter $149.00

Sorcim Software:
- Supercalc $199.00
- Superwriter $299.00
- Spellguard $149.00

Visiccorp:
- 256K Visicalc $185.00
- Visitrend/Visiplot $229.00
- Visidex $185.00
- Visiword $299.00
- Advanced Visicalc $329.00
- Business Forecast .... $ 79.00
- Desktop Plan $229.00
- Visischedule $229.00

The Business Manager™
A complete accounting/word processing spread sheet/hard disk system for your IBM PC .... $CALL

MONITORS

Amdek:
- Color I $299.00
- Color II $499.00
- 300G Green $145.00
- 300A Amber $159.00
- 310 G Green (IBM) $179.00
- 310A Amber (IBM) $179.00

BMC:
- 15MHZ Green .... $ 85.00
- 20MHZ Green $149.00

NEC:
- 1201 Green $159.00
- 1212 Color Composite $299.00
- 1203 RGB Hi-Res Color $599.00

Zenith:
- ZVM-121 15MHZ $109.00

Taxan:
- Amber $145.00

MODEMS

D.C. Hayes:
- Smartmodem 300 Baud $209.00
- Smartmodem 1200 Baud $525.00

Novation:
- J-Cat PS232 Direct Connect $119.00
- Smart Cat 1200 Baud $455.00
- Cat (Acoustic) $149.00

Cermetek:
- 1200 Baud Modem $549.00

NEW: U.S. Robotics:
D.C. Hayes Smartmodem compatible 2-year warranty
- 300 Baud $179.00
- 1200 Baud $469.00

ACCESSORIES

T & G Products:
- Trak Ball .... $ 45.00
- Joysticks .... $ 45.00

MBI:
- Monte Carlo Joysticks .... $ 39.00
- Joystick Adapter .... $ 14.95

Gibson: Light Pen (IBM) $259.00

Outstanding MONITOR SPECIAL PRINCETON GRAPHICS SYSTEMS

- 690 Dots Horizontal
- Non-Glare Screen
- 16 Colors
- Color at its finest!

OUR PRICE IS TO LOW TO PUBLISH

MBI

CALL FOR PRICE

Five Functions Memory/Serial/Parallel/Clock/Joystick

MONTE CARLO™ CARD

- 64K-1 Megabyte of Memory
- One IBM Compatible Centronics Parallel Port
- One IBM Compatile Asynchronous Comm. Port
- Clock/Calendar (Battery-backed) with Alarm
- Dual Port Joystick Interface
- Future Update Options: Direct Connect Modem

For Your Convenience:

Computer-line is Now Open 7 Days a Week

Product Information and Orderlines: (Mountain Standard Time)
Mon.-Fri. 7 a.m. to 8 p.m. Sat. & Sun. 8 a.m. to 6 p.m.

CALL FOR BEST PRICES ON

- Colby Portable Computer
- IBM® Personal Computer

ALL FOR $3395.00

COLUMBIA DATA PRODUCTS, INC.

IBM® Compatible Computer

- 16 Bit 8088 Processor
- 128K on Motherboard
- 2 Drives
- Disk Controller
- 2 RS232 Serial Ports
- Centronics Parallel Port
- Qubie Keyboard
- 8 Expansion Slots
- Color Graphics Card
- Amdek 300 A or G

MS DOS Superpak:
- MS DOS
- Basica (with color graphics)
- Macro Assembler
- Asynchronous Communication Support
- Perfect Writer
- Perfect Speller
- Perfect Calc
- Perfect Filer
- Columbia Tutor
- Diagnostics
- Software Customer Support Hotline

ATLANTIC CABINET COMPUTER FURNITURE

- A range of work stations designed specifically to house all micro-computers.
- Delivered heavily packed, in self-assembly form needing only a Phillips screwdriver and a few minutes of your time to assemble.
- Manufactured from 1" all wood, solid core particle board surfaced with hard-wearing melamine veneer, available in either oak or walnut.
- All work stations have discrete near slots for wiring, and paper in-feed.
- Extremely strong and rigid when assembled.

PCD50

CALL OR WRITE FOR DEALER PRICING

Call "THE COMPUTER-LINE"

Write or Call for Our Comprehensive Catalog.

We have leasing terms available on all our equipment.

Product Information & Order Lines: (303) 279-2848 or (800) 525-7877

Customer Service & Order Inquiry Line: (303) 278-8321

ORDER DEPARTMENT: COMPUTER-LINE, Inc. • 1019 8th Street • Golden, CO 80401

COMPUTER-LINE of Denver • 1136 So. Colorado Blvd. • Denver, CO 80222

Look for our "Computer-Line" Stores opening throughout the U.S. Write for our Franchise Package.

TERMS: All prices reflect a 2 9% cash discount All goods acknowledged faulty on receipt by the customer will be repaired or replaced at our discretion Customers must call for a RMA number before returning any goods This facilitates our quick attendance to faulty goods We reserve the right to repair or return to the manufacturer for repair all goods becoming faulty within the specified warranty period Any goods (hardware or software) returned for restocking are subject to a 15% restocking fee at our discretion The charge for cancellation of orders is 20% at our discretion No returns on software We accept no responsibility for any false claims made by manufacturers Prices quoted for stock on hand are subject to change without notie Specialists in APO and international deliveries Please add 5% (mimum $5 00) for shipping APO and add to all prices 2% for shipping (minimum $3 00) Please allow 10 working days plus mail time (if an order is mailed) in for receipt of all UPS delivered goods All goods (other than APO or international) delivered UPS ground

World Events

A Calendar of Regional, National, and International Events

Edited by Patricia Navone

June 3-5
East Coast Computer Faire
Hynes Auditorium
Boston
A personal computer show featuring software and computer-related products and services.
National Computer Shows
822 Boylston St.
Chestnut Hill, MA 02167
617/739-2000

June 6-8
National Educational Computer Conference
Baltimore Convention Center
Baltimore
Technical programs, scientific papers, seminars, and exhibits. Focus on educational computing. Over 100 computer and publishing companies exhibiting.
Gerald H. Leach-Lewis
IEEE Computer Society
1109 Spring St. #300
Silver Spring, MD 20901
301/589-8142

June 7-10
Hong Kong Computer '83
New Hong Kong Exhibition Centre
Hong Kong
Second international computer technology exhibition held in Hong Kong. Over 130 exhibitors expected, both manufacturers and suppliers of computer services.
Terry Hill
Industrial and Trade Fairs International, Ltd.
Radcliffe House, Blenheim Court
Solihull, W. Midlands, B91 2BG, UK
021/705-6707

June 13-16
Syntopican XI International INFO WORD PROCESSING
Moscone Center
San Francisco
Aimed at the information systems practitioner in office environments.
Prestige Expositions, Inc.
201/444-0505

June 14-16
Ohmcon/83 Electronic Show and Convention
Detroit
Ohio and Michigan's newest and most comprehensive electronics and high-tech exhibition and convention. Directed at OEM marketplace.
Dale Litherland
Electronic Conventions, Inc.
999 N. Sepulveda Blvd.
El Segundo, CA 90245
213/772-2965

June 14-16
InteRobot/International Robot Conference and Exhibition
Long Beach Convention Center
Long Beach, California
Show for factory automation products and services, largely robotics. An applications-oriented technical program with sessions on research, education, and human factors.
Tower Conference Management Co.
Bill Harrington
143 N. Hale St.
Wheaton, IL 60187
312/668-8100

June 17-19
PC '83
Brooks Hall Civic Auditorium
San Francisco
International conference and exposition featuring IBM PCs. Seminars, including PC applications, technical information, and general sessions for users.
Northeast Expositions
822 Boylston St.
Chestnut Hill, MA 02167
800/841-7000

June 20-23
Microcomputers in the Science Lab
TERC offices
Cambridge, Massachusetts
Hands-on workshop for teachers and administrators at all levels, elementary through college.
Technical Education Research Centers, Inc.
8 Eliot St.
Cambridge, MA 02138
617/547-3890

June 22-23
Toronto Computer Show
Automotive Building
Canadian National Exhibition
Toronto
Computer show for dealers. Features hardware and software. Two-day conference on word processing, PCs, office automation. Management workshops.
Whitsed Publishing Ltd.
P.O. Box 190
Port Credit, Ontario L5G 4L7 Canada
416/271-1601

June 23-25
Executive Microcomputer Conference and Exposition
Sheraton Centre
New York City
A micro show for business people and professionals. Emphasis on corporate and office applications. Hands-on demos with vendors.
CW Conference Management Group
375 Cochituate Rd. Rt. 30
Framingham, MA 01701
617/879-0700

June 26-August 7
Computer Tutor Camps at Stanford University
Stanford, California
Four 2-week sessions for children aged 11 to 17.
Five hours of computer instruction balanced with recreational activities.
Computer Tutor Camps
980 Magnolia
Larkspur, CA 94939
415/461-7533

June 26-30
NCGA '83
McCormick Place
Chicago
Fourth annual National Computer Graphics Association conference and exposition. Approximately 185 exhibitors expected.
NCGA
8401 Arlington Blvd.
Fairfax, VA 22031
703/698-9600

June 26-July 22
Computer Tutor Camps at Dartmouth College
Hanover, New Hampshire
Two 2-week sessions for children aged 11 to 17.
Five hours of computer instruction per day balanced with recreational activities.
Computer Tutor Camps
980 Magnolia
Larkspur, CA 94939
415/461-7533

June 27
International Institute on Microcomputers in Education
Stanford, California
Intensive, 5-week course. Gives background needed to establish successful computer programs in schools. Jointly sponsored by Stanford's School of Education and Interactive Sciences, Incorporated. Uses Computer Tutor peer tutoring method.
School of Education
Stanford University
Stanford, CA 94305
415/497-2102

June 27-29
Videotex '83
New York Hilton
New York City
International conference and exhibition examining business and consumer applications of Videotex technology.
Sally Summers
London Online, Inc.
1133 Avenue of the Americas #3314
New York, NY 10036

July 5-8
Software Development Workshop
TERC offices
Cambridge, Massachusetts
Hands-on workshop to train teachers and administrators at all levels, elementary through college.
Technical Education Research Centers
8 Eliot St.
Cambridge, MA 02138
617/547-3890

July 11-22
Summer Institute in Math, Science, and Computer Literacy
Trinity College
Vermont
For teachers and administrators at all levels, elementary through college.
Technical Education Research Centers
8 Eliot St.
Cambridge, MA 02138
617/547-3890

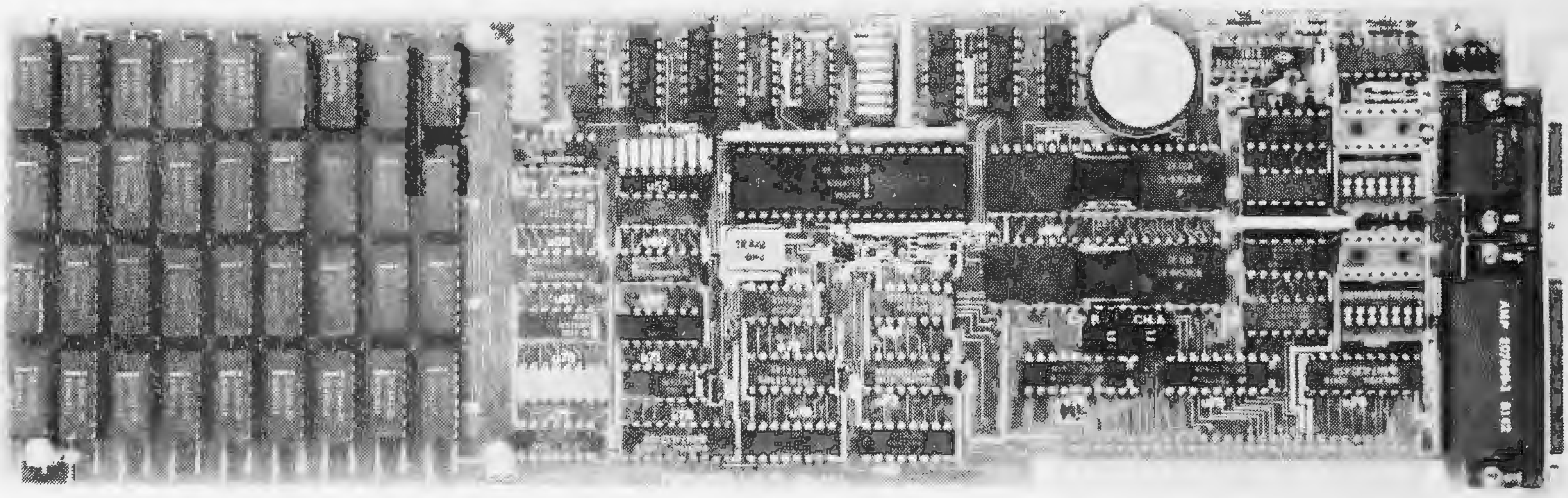
July 25-29
Siggraph '83
Cobo Hall
Detroit
A computer graphics conference with special emphasis on CAD/CAM robotics.
Siggraph '83 Conference Office
111 East Wacker Dr.
Chicago, IL 60601
312/644-6610

Are you sponsoring an event for the computing community? Please let us know. Whether it's regional, national, or international, send details, as far in advance as possible, to World Events, PC World, *555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107. CompuServe: 74055,412. Source: STE908.*

Enjoy the RAMifi

PDI464

Pure Data presents the unparalleled combination board for your IBM* Personal Computer.



The PDI464 features six separate functions — expansion memory, two asynchronous serial channels, a real-time clock, a disk emulator, and a print spooler. Together with its high quality, the PDI464 offers a price-performance ratio that is tough to beat.

The memory section of the PDI464 provides up to 256KB of fully socketed expansion memory with parity generation and checking. Four memory sizes are available from 64 up to 256KB to meet a variety of needs. Regardless of memory size ordered, each PDI464 is tested with a full compliment of 256KB of memory to ensure trouble-free future expansion. Disk-based memory diagnostics are included which can test memory integrity and report problems down to the chip level.

Two asynchronous serial channels are provided which are completely compatible with IBM serial channels. Each channel can be selected to reside at one of four addresses to allow for future expansion. A unique feature is provided which allows simple selection of data terminal or data communication equipment [DTE/DCE] configurations, thus eliminating the need for special cables or null modems. Each channel comes complete with a 6 foot RS-232 cable.

The Real-Time Clock section features quartz-crystal control and lithium battery back-up to ensure years of trouble-free operation. The RTC features hours, minutes, seconds, day-of-the-week, date, month, and year with automatic leap year adjustment. Software is provided to initialize system time and date information automatically upon power-up.

p-Disk™, a disk-emulation package provided with the PDI464 allows memory to be treated as an ultra-fast disk drive. p-Disk™ can be configured as a single or double-sided drive and can appear as drive B, C, or D. p-Disk™ does not require modification or patching of the BIOS or DOS files on system diskettes and is fully compatible with IBM software and diagnostics.

A background printer spooler is included with the PDI464 which allows files to be printed on a printer while other software is being used in the foreground. The spooler offers features such as menu-selectable configuration, multiple copies, and upper case options.

Comprehensive documentation is provided with numerous illustrations to simplify installation procedures. All documentation fits neatly into existing 3-ring binders provided with the Personal Computer.

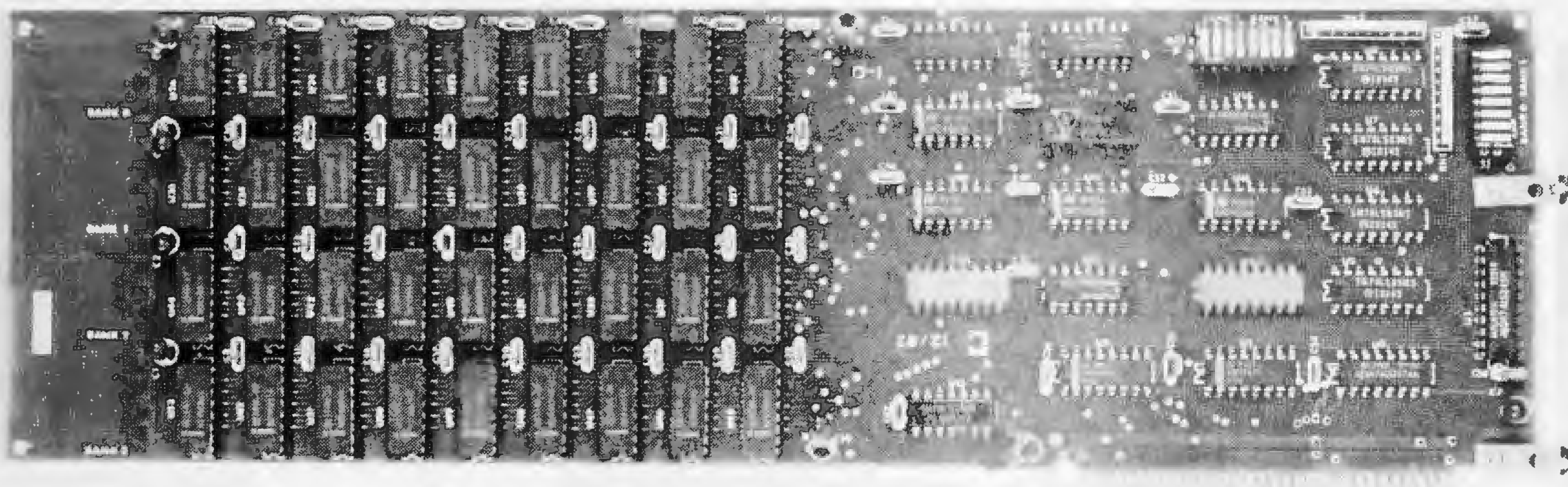
Each PDI464 is "burnt-in" at elevated temperatures and fully tested. Packaging material provides protection from static and mechanical shock during shipment to further ensure reliability. The PDI464 is covered by a one year limited warranty.

p-Disk™ is a trademark of Pure Data Ltd.

ations of Pure Data.

PDI256

256KB Expansion Memory for your IBM Personal Computer.



- ☐ Configured as 4 banks of 64K bytes each
- ☐ Each 64K bank is individually addressable and locatable on 64K byte boundaries
- ☐ On-board parity generation and checking
- ☐ Refresh is synchronized with Planar Memory insuring present and future compatibility
- ☐ Full speed, no wait-states
- ☐ Intel 200 ns ceramic DRams are used throughout
- ☐ Active delay line incorporated for precise refresh
- ☐ Comprehensive installation and operation manual provided
- ☐ Source listing for exhaustive memory testing included
- ☐ Extensive dynamic testing during burn-in. Available in: 64KB [PDI 256-64];128KB [PDI 256-28]; 192KB [PDI 256-92]; 256KB [PDI 256-56]
- ☐ Field expandable up to 256K bytes
- ☐ Guaranteed for 1 full year, same-day service
- ☐ Nickel-plated bracket and card guide included

The PDI 256 provides up to 256KB of user memory with parity on a single expansion board for the IBM Personal Computer. Memory is organized as 4-64KB memory banks, each bank can be set to any 64K boundary within the 1 MB address space. Individual memory banks may also be deselected. All address mappings are made by DIP switch settings for easy configuration. All RAM chips are socketed to allow for easy memory add-on or replacement. Memory refresh for PDI series memory boards coincides with the planar board's refresh. No wait-states are required for expansion memory accesses. The PDI 256 is also available in 64, 128 and 192KB versions which are easily upgraded in 64K steps to a maximum capacity of 256KB.

*IBM Personal Computer is a trademark of IBM Corp.

Dealer Inquiries Welcome.

PURE DATA LTD

950 Denison Street, Unit 17, Markham
Ontario, Canada L3R 3K5 (416) 498-1616

Pure Data products are available from ASAP Computer Products Ltd., Computer Innovations, Computerland, Information Connection ECOSEA Technologies Corp. and Compucentre.

Is Your New PC Still Intimidating You?

Plug in MENU/POWER!®
PC-DOS is a fantastic operating system. Too bad it's so hard to use.

If you're like most new owners of MS-DOS-based computers, just learning how to use the fundamental commands is hard enough—let alone trying to get extra handholding and learning sessions from your busy dealer. That's frustrating!

Solution. Plug in a brand new, exciting software called MENU/POWER! It simplifies PC-DOS commands and utilities so much, even a first-time computer user won't be embarrassed to put his or her hands onto the keyboard.

What MENU/POWER! Does.

It's an ingenious menu-driven utility package that demystifies PC-DOS, doing all the housekeeping for you.

No more undecipherable commands to deal with.

No more typing errors with alphabet-soup file names again. MENU/POWER! numbers all the disk files. All the user has to do is pick the file number and PC-DOS is fed the file names.

And no more glitched disks, too.

In Plain English!

From a screen menu of about 20 commands, you pick the number to COPY, ERASE, SPACE, TEST, RECOVER, RENAME, RUN, COMPARE, TYPE, SIZE, PROTECT, UNPROTECT, etc. Your computer feeds the file name automatically. No more typing errors. And you can even run programs from the numbered menu.

MENU/POWER! includes a special program that lets you lock sensitive files, so that only you can access them. Without the secret PASSWORD which you can create and change at will, no prying eyes will ever know your secret file even exists.

Making Friends With Your Computer!

Let's face it. Whether you're a beginner or veteran computer-user, you bought your MS-DOS-based computer to make life and business easier for yourself. What better reason for buying MENU/POWER! It makes friends with the PC-DOS operating system for you, controlling it to let you enjoy the ease of computer use every day of the year. Just plug in the MENU/POWER! disk and it's ready to go. The menus are automatic, so there's no set up or installation needed.

How to Get MENU/POWER! Fast.

You don't have to spend another day wrestling with PC-DOS. **MENU/POWER! costs only $149.** (In Calif. add 6½% sales tax). COD, VISA and Mastercard orders are welcome. Call our toll free number today. (MENU/POWER! is available for all MS-DOS, CP/M-86 and CP/M-based computers). COMPUTING! also offers a more powerful software package of over 55 utilities, called POWER!, which costs only $169.

Call Today!

Toll Free: (800) 428-7825 Ext. 96P

In CA: (800) 428-7824 Ext. 96P

DEALERS AND OEM's: (415) 567-1634 Ext. P

COMPUTING!
2519 Greenwich,
San Francisco, CA 94123

Call For MENU/POWER!®

ADVANCED COMPUTER PRODUCTS

Serving Computer Professionals Since 1976

HOOKED ON IBM

If You're Thinking IBM PC™,
READ THIS!

IBM LOW COST MEMORY — AVAILABLE NOW!

HARDWARE

	List	ACP
ABM		
BSR-X10 Interface	$95	$85
Color to Mono I/O Module	95	85
Telephone Receptionist adapt	995	875
PS3276/Bisyn Emulator	1295	1150
AMDEK Dual 3" Amdisk		
(2) Hitachi DS (250K)	899	649
AST Megaplus™ Card		
P/N MG-064, 64K, Ser, Clk	595	449
P/N MG-064SP, add'l Ser, Par	695	499
P/N MG-256, 256K, Ser, Clk	995	695
P/N MG-256SP add'l Ser, Par	1095	749
AST Communications		
AST-3780 Bisync/SDLC/HDLC	945	799
CC-232 Comm. Card	295	239
AST-3270 SNA Emul. w/CC332	895	799
AST I/O Plus™ Card		
P/N I/O-SP, Clk, (2) Ser, Par	265	199
AST Combo Plus™ Card		
P/N MC256SPC 256K, clk, P/S	995	695
AST PC Disk++™ Card		
P/N MD-064, 64K, Host, Par	655	495
CACTUS TECHNOLOGY		
200 Baud Direct Modum	349	299
COEX		
Extender Card	40	19
Prototype Card	69	42
37 Pin "D" Connector	19	8
Snap-in Card Guides (5)	8	5
CORONA Hard Disk System		Call
CORVUS Hard Disk System		Call
DAVONG		
5Mb Hard Disk	1995	1490
12Mb Hard Disk	2495	2295
MAYNARD Disk Drive Card		
Floppy Card w/Parallel	295	249
Floppy Card w/Serial	325	260
ORCHID		
Hi-Res Graphics Adapter	495	429
PERSYST Spectrum (64-256K)		
P/N SP64-CCP, 64K, S, S, P		499
P/N SP64, 64K		375
64K Upgrade Kit (9 chips)	130	50
QUADRAM Quadboard (64-256K)		
P/N O64, 64K w/4 functions	595	429
TANDON TM 100-1 (160K)	295	195
TM 100-2 (320K)	395	289
TG PRODUCTS Joystick	65	49
Track Ball	65	52
VISTA "Multicard™" (exp. 64-256K)		
P/N V-064, 64K	395	249
P/N V-064PSC 256K w/PSC	495	289
64K Upgrade Kit (9 chips)		50
"MAXICARD™" 576K	1295	999
"PC MASTER™" 7 I/O's	669	495
DISKMASTER, handles 5¼", 8" and Cartridge Floppies	349	249
XEDEX Baby Blue CP/M	600	445

PRINTERS

	List	ACP
COEX 80F/T 80cps	$499	$299
STAR MICRONICS - NEW!		
Gemini 10 100cps	499	379
Gemini 15 15"	649	479
OTC Daisywhl w/48K Buf	1450	1049
EPSON MX80	645	429
MX80F/T	695	499
MX100	895	649
FX80	699	549
INTEGRAL DATA		
Microprism 480	799	689
Prism 80 Color (all)	1795	1495
Prism 132 Color (all)	1995	1685
BROTHER HR-1	1195	895
Daisywriter	1495	1295
IBM PC to EPSON Cable	60	45
OKIDATA Microline 82A	599	489
Microline 83A	899	729
Microline 84AP	1399	1099
Okidata 92	699	549

MONITORS

	List	ACP
AMDEK CORP		
300 Green 12"	$199	$155
310 Amber 12"	210	175
Color I Composite	399	339
Color II RGB Hi-Res	899	790
Color III RGB Comm'l		Call
Color IV RGB Analog	1299	1059
NEC 12" Green **-NEW**	199	155
12" RGB (690 x 230)	895	799
PRINCETON GRAPHICS		
RGB IBM Lookalike	700	599

DISKETTES for IBM PC

	List	ACP
DYSAN 5¼" SS SD	10/$55	$38
DYSAN 5¼" DS SD	10/65	48
IBM 5¼" SS SD	10/60	43
IBM 5¼" SS DD	10/65	47
VERBATIM 525-01 SS	10/45	23
VERBATIM 550-01 DS	10/55	34
MAXELL MD1 SS	10/50	29
MAXELL MD2 DS	10/60	39
Flip Box 5¼" (80 disks)		14
BULK SPECIAL SS	10/25	19
With Sleeve and Box	100/195	149

MORE IBM GOODIES

	List	ACP
CURTIS PC Pedesta	$80	$65
Extension Cable	50	44
INTEL 8087 IC		199
RAM EXPANSION		
16K Motherboard (16 IC's)		19
64K Memory Exp. (9 IC's)		50
KRAFT IBM Joystick	70	49
IBM Paddles	50	40

SOFTWARE

BUSINESS

	List	ACP
ASHTON-TATE		
dBase II for CP/M86™ 128K	$700	$445
dBase II for PC-DOS 128K	700	445
APPLIED SOFTWARE TECHNOLOGY		
Versaform	390	259
BEST PROGRAMS		
Personal Finance Program	95	85
COMSHARE TARGET		
Target Planner Calc		Call
CONSULTANT SYSTEMS		
The Real Estate Consultant	275	225
DATAMOST		
Real Estate Investment	130	89
Write-on IBM	130	89
DENVER SOFTWARE		
Executive Acct Sys (easy)	725	555
EAGLE SOFTWARE		
Money Decisions	150	130
FINANCIER Personal Series	195	179
Tax Series	130	119
HOWARDSOFT		
Real Estate Analyzer	250	189
INFORMATION UNLIMITED		
Easywriter II Word Proc	350	255
Easyfiler Data Base	400	295
Easyspeller 88K Words	225	160
Easyplanner	250	185
INNOVATIVE SOFTWARE		
T.I.M. III Data Base	495	365
INSOFT		
Data Design Data Base	225	175
ISA Spellguard	295	225
ISM Math Magic	90	70
Graph Magic	90	70
Graph/Math Combo	160	115
LEXISOFT Spellbinder	495	250
LIFETREE SOFTWARE		
Volkswriter	195	165
MICRO INVESTMENT		
Stock Chart II		Call
MICRO LAB Tax Manager	250	190
MICROCOM Microterminal	100	89
MICROPRO Wordstar™	495	299
Spellstar™	250	169
Mailmerge™	250	169
MICROSOFT		
Multiplan™ MS-DOS	275	190
NO. AMERICAN BUS. SYSTEM		
The Answer	250	169
NORELL Easy Data DBMS	250	165
Visualize	100	73
OWL Text Plus Exec. Info Sys	240	215
PEACHTREE		
Peach Pak 4 (GL, AR, AP)	595	390
PERFECT SOFTWARE		
Perfect Writer™	389	239
Perfect Speller™	189	120
Perfect Filer™	289	178
SELECT Select WP	595	337
SORCIM Supercalc™	295	179
Superwriter™	395	260
SYNERGISTIC Data Reporter	250	165
VISICORP		
Visicalc™ 256K	250	175
Visitrend/Visiplot™	300	219
Visidex™	250	189
Visifile™	300	219
Visischedule™	300	219
Visiterm™	125	85
Desktop Plan 1	300	235
Business Forecasting Model	100	79

IBM PC UTILITIES

	List	ACP
COMPUTER INNOVATIONS		
C86C Compiler	395	369
EMERGING TECHNOLOGY CONSULTANTS, INC. EDIX Editor	195	179
COPY II Plus Utility	40	32
DATA CAPTURE		
Data Capture PC	120	99
NAGY SYSTEM		
Copy PC Backup	35	30
NORELL Bit Copier	50	37
NORTON Utilities (14 progs.)	80	68

PERSONAL/ENTERTAINMENT

	List	ACP
AUTOMATED SIMULATIONS		
Temple of Apshai	$40	$30
Oil Barons	100	75
BRODERBUND Apple Panic	30	22
CAVALIER Champ Blackjack	40	32
CONTINENTAL Home acct+	150	115
DATAMOST Pig Pen	30	22
Space Strike	30	22
INFOCOM		
Zork I, II, or III	40	30
Ulysses Golden Fleece	35	26
Golf Challenge	25	19
Deadline	50	38
FRIENDLYWARE PC Intro Set consists of: Disk 1, PC Intro + Games, Disk 2, 13 Games, Disk 3, 8 Business Progs.	49	40

MEMORY AT UNREAL! PRICES

64K w/serial parallel clock-calendar exp. to 256K **$199.00**

256K version **$335.00**

PLUS! . . .with Purchase of either Memory card above

SUPERCALC™	only	**$99.00** (299.00 value)
Disk Emulator	only	**$10.00**
Print Spooler	only	**$10.00**

ACP PC "FEATURE OF THE MONTH"

	List	ACP
1. **VISTA** "maxicard" 576K (exp 64K to 576K) with Dynadisk		
Version A. "maxicard" with 64K and Dynadisk™	$379	$299
FREE SUPERCALC — **Version B.** "maxicard" with 576K and Dynadisk™	1299	
"Supercalc" Electronic Spread Sheet	299	
Total	1598	$999
2. **VISTA** "PC master" Multi-function I/O (7 Functions)	699	$495
3. **TEAC or SHUGART** Half-Height Double-Sided Drives (320K)	399	$299

TRAINING for IBM PC

- Interactive Training Disks •
- Step by Step in English •
- Handy Reference Guide •

PLAN POWER-Visicalc	75	59
PLAN POWER-Supercalc	75	59
PLAN POWER-Multiplan	75	59
DB POWER-dBase II	75	59
POWER PACK-Wordstar	75	59
ATI POWER-IBM DOS	75	59
BASIC POWER-IBM MBASIC	75	59

MODEMS

	List	ACP
SIGNALMAN Mark I (RS232)	$99	$79
HAYES		
Smartmodem (RS232)	289	225
Smartmodem 1200	699	549
IBM PC to Modem Cable	40	30

FLOPPY DISKS FOR IBM PC

TEAC DSDD (320K)	$299
TANDON TM-100-2	289
SHUGART DSDD (12" high)	299
QUME DSDD (12" high)	299

(External Case and Power Supply Also Available)

SEND FOR YOUR FREE 1983 CATALOG!

TERMS: MO Cashier's Check Bank Wire Personal checks allow 2 weeks for processing Include Drivers License and credit card #s Visa, AMEX, CB add 3% service charge Add 3% shipping & handling or $2.50, whichever is greater Add 10% for foreign orders or US Parcel Post. Include Telephone number. NO CODs Prices subject to change without notice Some items subject to prior sale We reserve the right to substitute manufacturer. Retail prices may vary.

Mail Order: P.O. Box 17329 Irvine, CA 92713

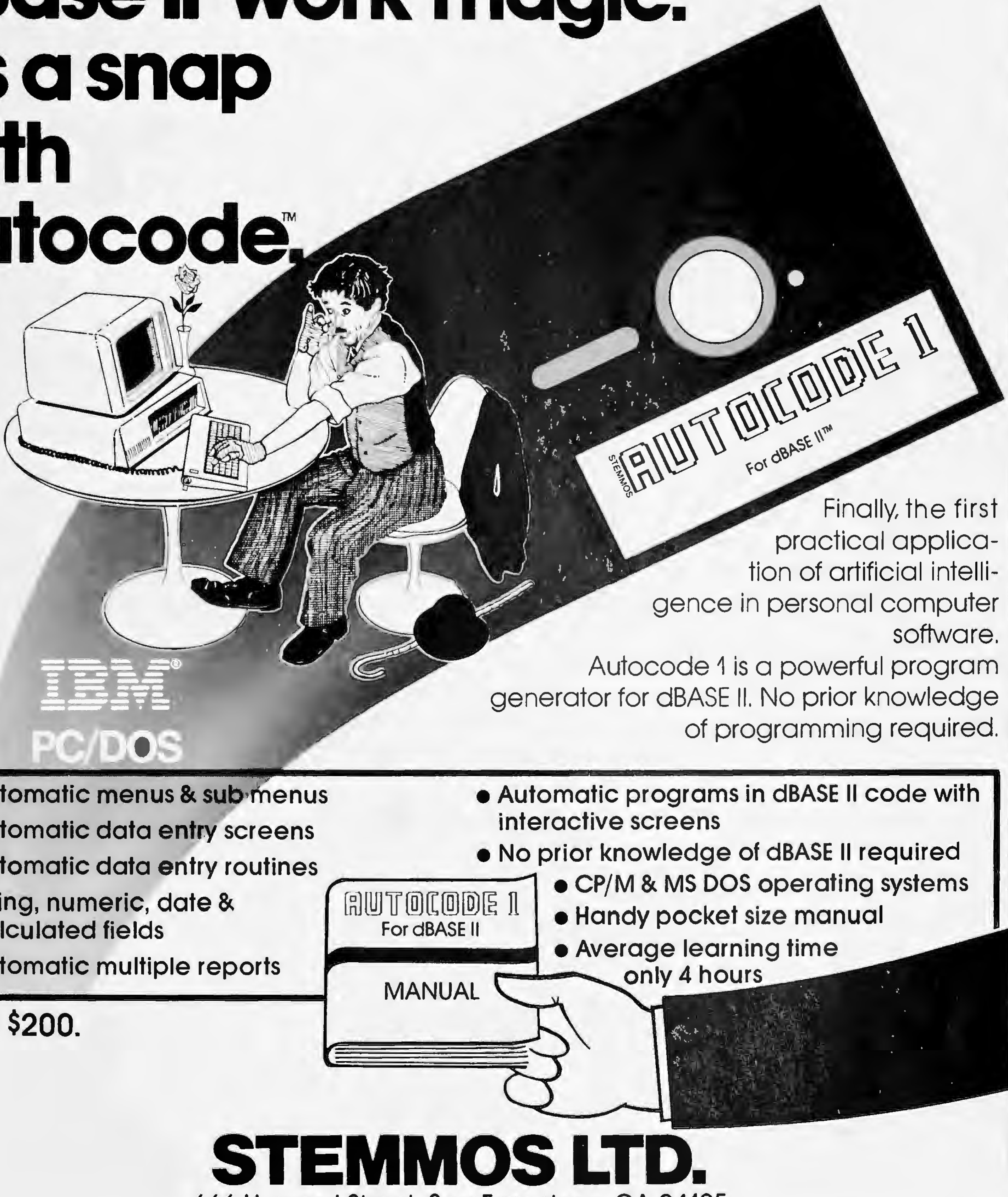
Retail: 1310B E. Edinger, Santa Ana CA 92705
(714) 558-8813

542 W. Trimble, San Jose, CA 95131
(408) 946-7010

TOLL FREE
800-854-8230
TWX
910-595-1565

IBM MEMORY + P.S.C. $199.00

How to make dBase II™ work magic. It's a snap with Autocode.™



Finally, the first practical application of artificial intelligence in personal computer software.

Autocode 1 is a powerful program generator for dBASE II. No prior knowledge of programming required.

- Automatic menus & sub-menus
- Automatic data entry screens
- Automatic data entry routines
- String, numeric, date & calculated fields
- Automatic multiple reports
- Automatic programs in dBASE II code with interactive screens
- No prior knowledge of dBASE II required
- CP/M & MS DOS operating systems
- Handy pocket size manual
- Average learning time only 4 hours

ONLY $200.

STEMMOS LTD.

666 Howard Street, San Francisco, CA 94105

Just send the following to address above today.

- Your diskette format & hardware
- How many Autocodes you want at $200 each*
- Your name & complete address
- A check or money order.

*In CA add 6% sales tax.

MasterCard VISA

Credit card buyers may substitute their card number and expiration date for the check. Or call us toll free and save the trip to the mail box

ORDER TOLL FREE 800-227-1617 (Ext. 417)
IN CA CALL 800-772-3545 (Ext. 417)

U.S. Address: 666 Howard St., San Francisco CA 94105
Tel: (415) 777-3800

U.K. Address: 344 Kensington High Street, London W14
Tel: 01 602 6242

Dealer inquiries invited.

dBASE II™ Ashton Tate

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines.

Autocode 1™ Stemmos Ltd

PC World Directory

PC World Directory is a comprehensive listing, by category, of products and services for the IBM PC, lookalikes, and compatibles. It provides rapid access to the burgeoning PC marketplace for both readers and advertisers.

FORMAT: The standard format includes a product ID, a 300-character descriptive ad, and company name, address, and telephone number. Use of a company logo is optional.

Advertisers may choose among categories already being used or may create their own. Display advertisers can cross-reference their current ad to the PC World Directory *for increased exposure at low cost.*

RATES: Listings are accepted for 3-time consecutive insertions at a rate of $300 ($100 per issue). Listings must be prepaid (except for established display advertisers) upon submission of ad copy and logo art. Checks, money orders, VISA, and MasterCard are acceptable.

DEADLINE: For space reservation and artwork deadlines, contact a PC World Directory *sales representative at 415/861-3861. Please send copy, optional artwork, and prepayment to:* PC World Directory, *555 De Haro Street, San Francisco, CA 94107.*

See you next issue!

Accessories

Cases

Computer Shipping Cases
Tough, high quality shipping and carrying cases for computers, displays, printers, peripherals, and instruments. All case designs available in three models: Airline, Deluxe, and Economy. (See display ad this issue.) *Data Case, P.O. Box 8459, Scottsdale, AZ 85252, 602/252-8060*

DataCase

Computer Covers

Contemporary Dust Covers
"You've waited long enough!" High quality, custom design, protective dust covers are available for your IBM PC. Embroidered rose, woven binding, and unique fabric ensure quality, fit, and protection. Beige color blends with any decor. Order Now: (1pc,2pc)Sys/Mon:$36/ Kybd:$16/Prntr: $18. CA add 6%.*Contemporary Covers, 1320-36th Ave., San Francisco, CA 94122, 415/564-0506*

Furniture

System Unit & Printer Stands
New! The Highest Quality Stands on the market today! Sturdy Welded Steel Construction, tapered sides w/mitered corners and textured finish. *PC Stand: Designed for the IBM PC; Raises System Unit for Keyboard Storage and Cable Routing under unit. $34.95. *Printer Stands: sm. $32.95, Lg. $42.95, Lg. w/slot $49.95. *Personal Computer Accessories, 4456 Partridge Court, San Jose, CA 95121, 408/578-7798*

PCA

Jewelry

Computer Jewelry
Signifying professional involvement in the microcomputer industry. Unique designer pieces are perfect for gifts, awards, or premiums. Lapel pins, tie tacks, and stick pins in 18K gold vermeil ($12) or sterling silver ($10). Satisfaction is guaranteed, or your moneyback. (See display ad this issue.) *MC/N, Computer Jewelry, Simms Center / Box 9393, San Rafael, CA 94912, 415/453-7033*

MC/N, Inc.
COMPUTER JEWELRY

Supplies

B.L.& W. Originals
Custom fit monogramable design in durable, attractive, washable poly/cotton will not crack or dry out and allows ventilation. Colors-cranberry, navy, pewter, sand. Choose 1pc or 2pc - $19; Printers - $16. 7-10 day delivery - satisfaction guaranteed. *B.L.& W., Box 381076, Germantown, TN 38183, 901/754-4465*

Continuous Computer Forms
Over 350 computer forms including checks, statements, invoices, purchase orders, tax forms, and letterhead. Forms designed for Peachtree Series 8,40,4,5,BPI, open systems, MBSI, State of the Art, Accounting Plus, Great Plains, Continental, Fedder, and Structured Systems. 24 hour shipment on blank stock. *Checks To-Go, 8384 Hercules St., La Mesa, CA 92041, Nat. 800/854-4261, CA 800/552-8817*

Checks To-Go

Consultants

Alaska

Construction/Computer Mgmt.
Computer consultant specializing in construction management, hardware/software selection, custom programming and software such as Estimating, Job costing, and Critical Path Scheduling for MS-DOS. Applications are ready and only a phone call away. *Rambow Enterprises, 7-480 A "I" St., Elmendorf AFB, AK 99506, 907/753-2291*

RAMBOW ENTERPRISES

California

Manual Aversion?
Learn computing one-on-one at your own speed from friendly training specialists. Use your computer or ours.

Also, keyboard enhancement and customization of WordStar™ and other software. See our article, "WordStar™ Made to Order," in issue #2. *Computer Hand Holding™, 1800 Market St. #91, San Francisco, CA 94102, 415/561-9189*

computer hand holding

Advance Info Systems
A micro is still a computer! Let me help you save your time & money. Services offered include user needs analysis , hardware & software selection & personalized training. Ask me about dBASE II spreadsheet programs, networking, telecommunications etc. IBM PC system integration is my specialty. *Advance Info Systems, 2818 Clay St., San Francisco, CA 94115, 415/922-6539, 346-0329*

PC and Mainframe Consulting
- PC system configuration
- Mainframe interface
- Audits and Controls
- Networking
- Applications Development
- Support for non op users
- System evaluation and selection.

MIS Consultants, Inc., 1065 E. Hillsdale Blvd. # 114, Foster City, CA 94404, 415/345-6000

Diskettes

No-Flop Floppy
100% certified AND guaranteed diskettes. Box of 10 soft sector, 5¼ inch, reinforced hub. To keep cost down, mail order only.
MEMOREX SSDD $27.00 DSDD $37.00
MAXELL SSDD $29.00 DSDD $40.00
No EXTRA CHARGE! CA residents add 6.5% sales tax. Please send check or M.O. to: *Ramsys, 225 W. Broadway # 500, Glendale, CA 91204, 213/240-9521*

Elephant Memory Systems
Quality diskettes are available in all popular 5¼" and 8" models and custom formats. They're guaranteed to meet or beat every industry standard for quality. They come standard with reinforced hub rings and they sell at some of the lowest prices in the business. *Leading Edge Products, 225 Turnpike St., Canton, MA 02021, 800/343-6833, 617/828-8150*

Diskette Copy Service

Superior Diskette Copying
Lifetime guaranteed duplicating for most systems and formats using sophisticated reliable equipment. Serialization, copy protection (encryption), and packaging available. Double boot for Apple and TRS. Supplied on OEM Allenbach diskettes. Rapid delivery for 100 to 100K copies. *Allenbach Industries, Inc., 2101 Las Palmas, Ste. A, Carlsbad, CA 92008, 800/854-1515, 619/438-2258*

ALLENBACH INDUSTRIES INC

Educational Seminars

PC Training for Business
Silicon Valley training and consulting firm offers hands-on work shops for corporate executives. Workshops include WordStar, 1-2-3, dBASE II, SuperCalc, MultiPlan, local area networks and decision support systems. In-house courses available. Send for our corporate training brochure. *Personal Computer Seminars™, 525 University Avenue, Palo Alto, CA 94301, 415/324-1759*

Hardware

Add-On Boards

AST, MAYNARD, QUADRAM Boards
AST ComboPlus (SPC, 64k) $269
AST MegaPlus (SC, 64k) $269
I/O Plus (SC) $114.
Extra Parallel or 2nd Serial or game for Mega Plus $35.
MAYNARD Disk Controller $155 - with PP add $50, SP add $70.
QUADRAM Quadboard or Quadboard II $289.
Set of nine 64k, 200ns chips $55.
VLM Computer Electronics, 10 Park Place, Morristown, NJ 07960, 201/267-3268

Quality Boards at Low Prices
RAM CARD 64K Expandable - 256K w/parity, price $149. 64K expansion kit $79. EPROM PROGRAMMER for most 4K to 64K 24 P10 EPROMS $129. COMBO CARD w/parallel printer asychronous communications (RS232C) & clock calendar, price $199. PROTO CARD holds 85 14 pin chips, ground plane design 3.5 X 8" $29.95. *Apparat, Inc., 4401 S. Tamarac Pkwy., Denver, CO 80237, 303/741-1778*

Apparat,Inc.

Quadboards & Quadram Products
256K Quadboard $465 delivered!
Coda, Inc. has all QUADRAM Products at mail order prices. All products carry the QUADRAM warrantees and can be used for any special offers from QUADRAM. We will meet or beat any advertised prices. Call or write for a complete price list. *Coda, Inc., P.O. Box 1054, Lilburn, GA 30247, 404/925-0640*

CODA INC

256K Slotless Memory
Let us install up to 256K RAM on your EXISTING SYSTEM BOARD using NO SLOTS. We improve your IBM-PC so it can address the 64K ram chips. 128K-$192, 192K-$256, 256K-$320 (expandable & warranted). DO-IT-YOURSELF KITS PC-KNB-$39.95 & PC-KPC-$59.95 64K-PUR-($5.95 each) 64K RAM chips. *Add-MEM, 22151 Redwood Rd.,Castro Valley, CA 94546, 415/886-5443*

Add-MEM

9 Function EASIBOARD™
IBM quality plus Easitech Excellence exclusively at IBM PC dealers worldwide. Memory (64K-256K), spooler, printer and modem connections, three electronic disks, chronograph and more! No need to search for low prices. Our lowest prices are at authorized IBM PC dealers only. $325 to $595. Easiboard by Easitech. *Easitech Corporation, 4357 Park Dr., Norcross, GA 30093, 404/923-3186*

EASITECH CORPORATION

Computer Graphics

Professional Color Workstations
High-resolution color graphics systems. Convert the IBM PC to a professional 640 x 480 16 color workstation. High-resolution board (640 x 480 x 16 color), complete graphics software (HALO), RS 170 monitors, digitizers, plotters, application software, slide cameras, frame grabbers and more. *Media Cybernetics, Inc., 36 Columbia Ave., Tacoma Park, MD 20912, 301/270-2272*

Computer Graphics Camera

Videoslide35
A computer graphics camera that records video images onto 35mm color film & is compatible with microcomputers & most color graphics terminals. Inputs accepted include RS-170 RGB, TTLRGB and NTSC. The price is $2799 complete with camera cables & IBM PC interface. *Lang Systems, Inc., 1010 O'Brien Dr., Menlo Park, CA 94025, 415/328-5555*

LANG SYSTEMS, INC.

Disk Drives

Versatile Space Saver
2 TEAC Disk Drives fits in space of 1 standard unit. 40Tr DS & 80Tr DS available. DOS 1.1 compatible on 80Tr w/ JFORMAT program. Capacity to 800KB. Available w/mounting brackets. Price 40Tr DS $299 - 80Tr DS $435. Winchester Hard Disk Systems w/capacities to 20Mb are available. *Apparat, Inc., 4401 S. Tamarac Pkwy., Denver, CO 80237, 303/741-1778*

Apparat, Inc.

Hard Disk III
Leading Edge® hard disk III is a 5¼" Winchester disk subsystem. Features a (Z80A) microprocessor which provides 18 high level commands. TRS-80 model III & I and IBM PC compatibility. Provides power for 2 Winchester disk drives. Full sector buffer 256-512 bytes. *Leading Edge Products, 225 Turnpike St., Canton, MA 02021, 800/343-6833, 617/828-8150*

Disk Drives for PC
Save on Tandon Disk Drives.
TM100-1, SS, 40T: $189
TM100-2, DS, 40T: $249
TM100-4, DS, 80T: $339
All drives are new. VISA/MC or checks. NJ residents add tax. Shipping extra. *VLM Computer Electronics, 10 Park Pl., Morristown, NJ 07960, 201/267-3268*

Microcode Series 5000
Microcode Series 5000 hard disks are for IBM PC and COMPAQ portable computers. Operating system software support includes DOS 1.1, Dos 2.0 and concurrent CP/M-86. Self-documenting software provides easy installation and file backup utility. Price: $2495 for 10MB, $2995 for 15MB, and $3595 for 30MB. *Microcode, 45277 Fremont Blvd. #4, Fremont, CA 94538, 415/657-4411*

MICROCODE

Monitors

RGB Monitors & Mods. for SONY
RGB conversion kit, SONY 19" & 25" PROFEEL: 16 color display, 8' cable, complete instructions, $99. RGB interface for 12" SONY KX1211HG, 16 color display, no mod. req., just plug in, $139. Modified SONY 19" & 25" PROFEEL, 16 colors, 19" $825. 25" $1375, Comp. with 8' cable. 23" CONRAC B&W, recond. $225. *Telemax, Inc., Video Marketing Division, 780 Lorraine Dr. Box 339, Warrington, PA 18976, 215/343-3000*

HI RES with 16 Colors for IBM
The only HIGH resolution 13" RGB color monitor that gives TRUE 16 colors. [TRUE BROWN] for IBM PC and APPLE II. Great for 80 COLUMN and GRAPHICS. Displays 2,000 CRISP characters. [80x25 lines]. RES; 640x400. Input level ANALOG or TTL. No adaptor req. Immediate delivery. Sug. retail: $799. NOW ONLY $599. *KSI, Kawa Systems Int'l., 450 San Antonio Rd. #31, Palo Alto, CA 94306, 415/856-0926*

Peripherals

IBM PC Products to Remember
*Dual I/O PCB, 2 IBM Printer port 2 Async RS232 I/O, clock with battery backup $192.40. * Multifunction PCB, Mem expandable 256KB with Parity check, 1 IBM Printer port, 1 Async RS232 port, clock with battery backup, 64KB at $495. * Others include Mem PCB expandable 512KB, Mem with Async I/O, Mem with parallel I/O. *Computer Peripherals, Inc., 1117 Venice Blvd., Los Angeles, CA 90015, 213/298-1297, Telex: 194561 LSA*

Plotters

Sweet-P Personal Plotter
Adds high resolution, hard copy graphics to the IBM PC. Software & interface hardware incl., $795. Sweet-P Graphics Software enables users to draw colorful pie charts, bar graphs, line graphs and illustrations on paper or transparancies. BPS Business Graphics software is avail. See display ad this issue. *Enter Computer, Inc., 6867 Nancy Ridge Drive, San Diego, CA 92121, 619/450-0601*

Power Protection

Ramlok
Standby power supply/line voltage conditioner. Automatically switches to standby power if incorrect line voltage is reaching equipment. Contents in memory are saved. Requires auto battery. Includes 10 amp battery charger, overcharge and reverse-polarity protection. *Ladco Development Co., P.O. Box 464, Olean, NY 14760, 716/372-0168*

Ladco Development Co.

Printers

Starwriter F-10
This 40 CPS daisy wheel includes low profile design, industry standard ribbons and print wheels, standard centronics parallel or RS 232C, and extensive built-in word processing functions. The Starwriter F-10 printer is supported by a full year warranty and national authorized Leading Edge service centers. *Leading Edge Products, 225 Turnpike St., Canton, MA 02021, 800/343-6833, 617/828-8150*

Printmaster F-10
The 55 CPS model with all the same features as the Starwriter F-10 plus faster print speed and carriage return time, accept data transmission up to 0.600 baud, dual-color ribbons, and original plus 4 copies. The Printmaster F-10 is supported by a year warranty and national authorized Leading Edge service centers. *Leading Edge Products, 225 Turnpike St., Canton, MA 02021, 800/ 343-6833, 617/828-8150*

Prowriter
Offers a printing speed of 120 CPS, bidirectional printing, 8 character sizes, and 5 alphabets. Prowriter's NX9 matrix produces correspondence quality print and high resolution graphics. The Prowriter 85 IOA provides a 10" carriage. Prowriter 1550 provides a 15" carriage. *Leading Edge Products, 225 Turnpike St., Canton, MA 02021, 800/343-6833, 617/828-8150*

Storage Devices

Versatile Print Buffer
SPOOL/64 increases operator throughput by letting printer operate from 64K buffer while operator uses PC for other tasks. Program control space compression & copies parallel version $319. Optional serial board for serial/serial & parallel/serial conversion. Option price $99. Cables available. *Apparat, Inc., 4401 S. Tamarac Pkwy., Denver, CO 80237, 303/741-1778*

Winchester Hardfile Subsystems
Tallgrass Technologies offers a family of high performance, high capacity HardFiles with formatted capacities from 6.25 Mb to 70.0 Mb. With integral streaming tape cartridge backup, the Tallgrass HardFile System has set the industry standard on Performance and reliability. From $3,095 with integral back up. *Tallgrass Technologies Corp., 11667 West 90th St., Overland Park, KS 66214, 913/492-6002*

Insurance

Safeware™
If your computer is important to you, insure it! SAFEWARE provides full replacement of hardware, media and purchased software. As little as $35 a year covers: fire, theft, power surges, earthquake, water damage, auto accident. *Columbia National General Agency, 88 E. Broad St., Columbus, OH 43215. Toll free 1/800/848-0598. In Ohio 1/800/848-2112*

Leasing

PC & XT Rental & Leasing
Don't tie up cash! Attractive terms and flexible rates. Quick delivery anywhere in the U.S. Both configurations available. A portion of your payment can apply to purchase. Lease terms of 3 months and up. Customized leases available to fit special budget requirements. Call or write for no obligation quote. *Computer Maintenance Management Corp., Attn: Leasing Division, 12800 Industrial Park Blvd., Minneapolis, MN 55441, 612/559-7096*

Mailing Lists

IBM PC Mailing List
16,000 IBM PC owners mailing list available now! We are the largest dealer of microcomputer owner's names, with over 300,000 total. . . many different brands. Plus 7 store lists, 1880 computer clubs, educational lists, micro publications, and much more. Write or call for free catalog. *Irv Brechner, Targeted Marketing, Box 453, Livingston, NJ 07039, 201/731-4382*

Mail Order

Guaranteed Lowest Prices!
We offer a complete line of software and hardware products, for the PC, at the lowest prices. We also provide advice and support at no extra charge. See our ad this issue and compare our prices. We're sure that you will be pleasantly surprised. *Applied Computer Products, Inc., 1916 Welsh Rd. #6, Philadelphia, PA 19115, 800/223-3860*

Publications

Advertising Tracking
Analysis of ad space, expenditures and market share in over 30 computer publications. Used by ad managers, publishers, space reps, media buyers. Call for complimentary newsletter. *Adtrak, Inc., 1901 Old Middlefield Way, Mountain View, CA 94043, 415/965-7473*

Educational Publishers

CBS Publishing
Now one of the leading publishers of machine specific text/tutorials produces software too! We've expanded our extensive IBM PC series to include diskettes. Other 1983 features include a timely book on Apple//e, and texts on UCSD p-system, CP/M 86 and Unix. *CBS Educational & Professional Publishing, Att: Deborah Mitera, 383 Madison Ave., New York, NY 10017, 212/872-2000*

CBS EDUCATIONAL AND PROFESSIONAL PUBLISHING

Retailers

California

Large Group Hardware Buys
Cost-effective multiple PC buys. CTI expertise in IBM-PC and PC Workalike machines, peripherals and sources enables us to assist you make the most cost-effective total systems buy and helps you get the most out of it after purchase. See our ad this issue! *CTI-Computer Technology Innovations, 1037 North Fair Oaks Ave., Sunnyvale, CA 94086, 408/745-0180*

cti

Columbia MPC
IBM compatible, both hardware and software! Software included: CP/M-86, MS-DOS, PERFECT Writer+Speller+Calc+Filer, Fast Graphs, BASICA, and more! STD are 2 320KB disk drives, 2 RS-232 ports, printer port, COLOR graphics board, all for $3995, PLUS a FREE RGB monitor from: *Excellonix, 7180 Woodrow Wilson Dr., L.A., CA 90068, 213/650-5754, 714/973-1939*

EXCELLONIX

New York

IBM, Columbia Systems
PGS, Amdek, Electrohome, Pi-Tech, USI, Taxan, BMC monitors. EPSON, IDS, NEC, SCM, Okidata, C.ITOH, Diablo printers. Tallgrass, Corvus, Tecmar, Davong hard disks. Xedex, Quadram, AST, Hayes, Maynard, Hercules, Seattle peripherals. A full range of software, including lots of games. *Greenwich Village Computers, 687 Broadway, New York, NY 10012, 212/254-9191, Mon.-Sat., 10 a.m.-7 p.m.*

Greenwich Village Computers Inc.

Texas

IBM PC-Compatible
A dealer of PC compatible hardware, software, supplies and furniture oriented for business users. Manufacturers include Okidata, NEC, PGS, VisiCorp, MicroPro, Quadram and much more. IBM trained personnel with strong business orientations are available for follow-up support after sales. *Las Colinas Computer Co., 125 E. John Carpenter Frwy. # 660, Irving, TX 75062, 214/556-2424*

LCC
Las Colinas Computer Company

Sales

Marketing

Software Publishing
Digital Marketing provides complete marketing services for getting your IBM PC software into the market. We publish, promote and advertise a complete line of business applications, communications and entertainment software for the IBM PC. *Digital Marketing, 2670 Cherry Lane, Walnut Creek, CA 94596, 415/938-2880*

DIGITAL MARKETING

Software Marketing
We package and market software on a non-exclusive agreement basis and pay authors a royalty equal to 25% of the gross receipts. We are looking for all types of software - business, educational, games, or whatever you think IBM PC owners will need. Call or write for information. *Stone Software Marketing, Inc., 7910 Ivanhoe Ave. # 319, La Jolla, CA 92037, 619/459-9173*

STONE

International Software Sales
French, Spanish, German versions? We adapt, translate, publish, market, distribute, and support your software for PC in Europe and South America. *Edisoft, 1925 Brickell Ave., Miami, FL, 305/854-5404 or Edisoft, 11 Bis, Rue Du Colisée, F-75008, Paris, France, 331/504-3030, Telex 620000F*

Software

Accounting

Personal Financial Assistant
Accounting system for personal or small-business users. Double entry accounting. Complete financial reports: Balance Sheet/Income Statement, Trial Balance, General Ledger. Up to 5 check journals automatically integrated into ledger. Complete system $100. Documentation only, $25. *L.C. Systems, P.O. Box 5360, Coralville, IA 52241, 319/354-2630*

LC Systems

The Software Fitness Program™
30,000 users in 200 different industries are currently running these 7 interactive account applications: AR with billing & sales analysis, AP, GL, IN, payroll, job cost & order proc. MS-DOS compati-

ble. Source code, on-line computer lessons, self-instructional manuals available. Fast installation. *Open Systems, Inc., 430 Oak Grove, Minneapolis, MN 55403, 612/870-3515*

Business Applications

Powerful Business Software
Order Entry Invoicing, Inventory Control, Accounts Receivable, Sales Analysis pkg. on most MD DOS Compatibles. Includes history & forecasting graphics, multi-selective Mailing List module, call Planning & Commission Statements. $695 complete. Demo pkg. sample data $50 refundable or applicable toward purchase. *Distributed Computing Systems, Martha & Randolph Streets, P.O. Box 185, Lombard, IL 60148, 312/495-0121*

Critical Path Scheduling
PMS-II project management system. Plan & manage any complex project — R & D, mfg, construction. 500-2500 events. Plots critical path, network, gantt, funding. Many sorts/reports. Team with RMS-II for capacity planning and load leveling. Professional tools to cut cost and time. *AHA, Inc., P.O. Box 2003, Santa Cruz, CA 95063, 408/475-7247, 408/475-8705*

WES
Equals Word Processing + CALC + Editing + Mail Merge + Data Base Management. WES is your formula for success. Certainly the first (maybe the only) program you'll need. Businesses, families, and lawyers are now using WES to save time and improve accuracy in accounting, financial, and text applications. Manual and 25 lessons included. *WB Systems, 137 Main Street, Westerly, RI 02891, 401/596-1811*

11 from DATA*EASY™

EZ*COMPRESS	$25	EZ*TELEPHONE	$35
EZ*SCREENAID	$35	EZ*UTILITIES	$65
EZ*MAILLABEL	$85	EZ*MAILSALES	$95
EZ*INVENTORY	$95	EZ*INVOICE	$195
EZ*TIMEBILL	$195	EZ*PURCHASE	$195
EZ*RETAIL	$245		

PC World special...take a 10% discount with this ad. Write/call for product details. CA +6.5%. *DATA*EASY™, Data Consulting Group, 877 Bounty Dr. #EE203, Foster City, CA 94404, 415/571-8100*

Custom Business Applications
Business applications specialists providing user friendly custom programming, troubleshooting, hardware and software selection advice. Our extensive experience can help you tailor your IBM PC to meet your unique requirements and integrate it into your office, store or shop environment. *Bottom Line Software Inc., 8093 Hyannisport Dr., Cupertino, CA 95014, 408/252-3481*

Integrated Business Software
- Manufacturing STD COST SYS: Bom-Oper RTG Prod Sched-Matl & Manpower Planning Shop Floor RPTG-Production Costing
- Business Acctg: Order Entry Inventory A/R-S/A-A/P-P/R-G/L & Financial Stmt
- Insurance Agy Mgt Sys...Plus Auto Rating Professional Time Mgt... Client Acctg.

MDS Associates, P.O. Box 108, Orchard Park, NY 14127, 716/662-6621

Catalogs

IBM PC Software
Looking for IBM Personal Computer Software? Write for IBM PC catalogs, $2 each. Contains descriptions and key features of leading word processing, spread sheet, data base management and other important software packages for the IBM PC. Also software review references. Nothing like it. *UOI Company, 7716-B Balboa Blvd., Van Nuys, CA 91406, 213/785-5050*

Communications

Remote Access
Have complete use and control of an unattended IBM PC. Develop and run programs, transfer binary or ASCII files, etc. Password protection and full simulation of the IBM keyboard. $89 with full-screen support, $50 without. Call or write for information. VISA/MC. *Custom Software, P.O. Box 1005, Bedford, TX 76021, 817/282-7553*

Video Display Terminal Emulator
VDTE emulates HP26xx and VT52 terminals, including hi-res HP26xx vector graphics. Transfers files, uses either display. Ten speeds include 300, 1200, 9600 baud. 36 page user's manual. Available now! Only $50 postpaid (Californians add 6% sales tax). Write for free brochure. *Inner Loop Software, P.O. Box 45857, Dept. J, Los Angeles, CA 90045, 213/645-5162*

The Apple IBM Connection
Increase VisiCalc and WordStar power by transferring files between Apples and IBM PCs and between IBMs with no retyping or errors. Easy-to-use; transfer any file with a cable or a modem. Communicate using electronic mail mode. Other Alpha products: Type Faces (for presentations) & mailing lists. $195. *Alpha Software Corp., 6 New England Executive Park, Burlington, MA 01803, 617/229-2924*

Relay
Compare and try RELAY. HELP Key, Hayes support, saves phone numbers, send spreadsheets PC to PC, Send/Rec. simultaneously, full-screen Editor, Up & Download, APL keyboard, 50-9600 baud with error checking. Don't underestimate RELAY because of its $89 price. *VMPC, 60 E42 St. New York, NY 10165 (212) 697-4747*

Videolink 88
Full-featured, menu-driven communication software. Works with any 300 or 1200 BAUD modem & offers special support for the Hayes Smart Modem. Features auto single/key log-on, full up/download facilities and transmission of disk files. Data may also be sent to disk, screen or printer. *Windmill Software, Inc., 2209 Leominster Dr., Burlington, Ontario, Canada L7P 3W8, 416/336-3353*

WINDMILL SOFTWARE INC.

Lync
You can't buy a better communications program! Lync is powerful, easy to use and easy to install. Transfers ANY files between PCs or PC and CP/M systems. TERMINAL mode for connecting to databases. REMOTE mode to run your computer remotely. Free brochure. $155. *International Software Alliance, 1835 Mission Ridge Rd., Santa Barbara, CA 93103, 805/966-3077*

ISA

Compilers

C Compiler-Debugger
Designed around the c-systems optimized C Compiler, the c-window™ package provides source statement execution and breakpoints; variable display and alteration is accomplished using C expression syntax. A must for all C programmers. 128K, two floppy drives required. C Complier $195, c-window $195. *c-systems, P.O. Box 3253, Fullerton, CA 92634, 714/637-5362*

c-systems

Data Management

VersaForm Business Form Processor
VersaForm uses existing or new form designs to compile and process data. Includes many data entry validation features, automatic entry filling, automatic calculations. Produces analytic/management reports using record/data selection, sorting, totals, subtotals. Formats data for output on paper forms. *Applied Software Technology, 14125 Capri Drive, Los Gatos, CA 95030, 408/370-2662*

Multistat
Multivariate database/statistics/report package. Up to 64 variables, 10,000 data points each, limited by disk size. Uses ASCII data files. Calculated columns, multilinear regression, plots or printer. Manual and diskette $290. Requires 128K, 80 column display, printer. *Davell Custom Software, P.O. Box 4162, Cleveland, TN 37311 615/336-3055*

Development

Screen Map Generation Module
Allows on line construction of screen layouts. Generated in machine level code. Map saved as disk file. Accessed by 2 lines of supplied code. Function keys used to draw, alter intensity, and reserve input fields. Line del/insert supported. Listing of reserved field locations provided. Genesis, $50. *Information Systems, 4303 Alcosta Pl., Pittsburg, CA 94565, 415/427-4381*

IS

KSAM/PC
KSAM/PC allows fast access keyed/indexed files. Functions: create/open/close/position/read/read next & previous/write/rewrite/delete. Several access levels = good file security. Disk-based key storage = larger files with no data loss if system crashes. Key file build utility, tutorial program. $69.95. *Prodata Inc., 663 South Capitol Blvd., Boise, ID 83702, 208/342-6878*

PRODATA INC.

The BASIC Development System
An integrated set of software tools that will greatly increase the efficiency and productivity of programmers using BASIC. Single Step Trace, cross-reference, dynamic dump of all program variables, renumber with program line relocation, program compression and expansion. $79. *SofTool Systems, 8972 E. Hampden Ave., # 179, Denver, CO 80231, 303/793-0145*

STS

Metafile
The METAFILE Software System creates a development and operational environment that includes integrated facilities for high level programming, word processing, data base management, modeling, report generation and communications. Interactions can be impromptu through the keyboard or programmed. *Sensor-based Systems, Olmsted Federal Building, Chatfield, MN 55923, 507/867-4440*

METAFILE

ISAM Subroutines & Utilities
Index Sequential Access Method for the IBM PC. Process files on disk by keys with this package. Sorting capabilities built-in. Menu driven for ease of use. Improves disk utilization and storage, $39.95. Many other development tools available. Call or write for further information. *RES Consultants, 2635 Ferry Landing, Sugarland, TX 77478, 713/980-4395*

Documentation

User-Oriented Documentation
User guides and tutorials created for micro software packages by a professional writer. User-oriented documents written to sell your software, ensure its effective use, and reduce costly customer support. IBM PC user guides a specialty. Services also provided for document design, editing, and packaging. *James E. Richardson, 442 Mariposa Ave., Sierra Madre, CA 91024, 213/355-5445*

DOS Database

EZ*DATABASE™
DATA*EASY brings you the easy way to enter, edit and display data. Reports and labels are just as fast. You fill in the blanks on instruction screens

and EZ*DATABASE does the rest. Normally $245, pay just $195 with this ad. Write/call for information on this and other DATA*EASY items. CA add 6.5%. *DATA*EASY™, Data Consulting Group, 877 Bounty Dr. #EE203, Foster City, CA 94404, 415/571-8100*

Educational

PC Primer
IBM PC Primer Series will teach everyone with or without computer knowledge to quickly use and get the most benefit from the PC. These CAI courses are highly interactive, friendly, and self-paced. Six modules: PC components, BASIC, DOS, computer concepts, keyboard use, diagnostics. *Computer Systems Research, Inc., 40 Darling Dr., Avon, CT 06001, 203/678-1212*

CSR Trainer
3000 Administrative Reporting System (STARS) for administrative control on CAI course use provides for student registration, performance tracking on progress, time used, scores. Records correct and incorrect answers at detail and summary levels. Full set of reports available. *Computer Systems Research, Inc., 40 Darling Dr., Avon, CT 06001, 203/678-1212*

PC Tutor
PC TUTOR allows the first time IBM PC user to easily learn computer concepts, PC-DOS and the care and use of the computer. PC TUTOR is simple. Just insert the plain language diskettes into the Personal Computer and learn by doing. SEE DISPLAY AD THIS ISSUE. *Comprehensive Software, P.O. Box 90833, Los Angeles, CA 90009, 213/370-6355*

Comprehensive Software

CSR Trainer
3000 Presentation System provides cost-effective, fast-response course presentation. Upload/Download feature allows courses using large-scale IBM IIS and courseware developed with CSR Trainer 3000 Authoring System presentation on PC. This IIS simulator offers a full CAI delivery system. *Computer Systems Research, Inc., 40 Darling Dr., Avon, CT 06001, 203/678-1212*

PC/Pilot
Language for education and training. By MicroPi, the source of PILOT on the other major personal computers. Meets Common PILOT standard. Extensions for color, graphics, user fonts, windows, files and video disk/tape control. Includes EZ editor. Lic: $100 single, $550 multiple. *Washington Computer Services, 3028 Silvern Lane, Bellingham, WA 98226, 206/734-8248*

CSR Trainer
3000 Authoring System. Complete CAI development tool, menu-driven, compatible large-scale IBM IIS systems. Provides rapid, low-cost, quality courseware development, minimal author training. 3 authoring levels provide user-friendly prompting for simple to complex courseware development. *Computer Systems Research, Inc., 40 Darling Dr., Avon, CT 06001, 203/678-1212*

The Instructor
A self-paced tutorial program that teaches first-time users how to interact with the PC. Designed to be the first serious software run by new users of all ages. Uses graphics, sound and color to create friendly interaction. See retailer or send $44.95 + $2 shipping to: *Individual Software Inc., 24 Spinnaker Pl., Redwood City, CA 94065*

individual SOFTWARE INCORPORATED

Filing

KWIC-REF/1
A general-purpose text filing system. It is designed to file and cross-reference documents, notes, letters and any text records. It can keep track of up to 32,000 key words and 32,000 documents. Retrieval is by key words with "and" "or" and "xor" combinations. $450. *Chen Information Systems, Inc., 1499 Bayshore Hwy. # 205, Burlingame, CA 94010, 415/692-4358*

CHEN

Financial

Money Maestro
A financial record-keeping package that provides budget tracking and tax reporting. Money Maestro reports totals by category or payee, including monthly and year-to-date budgeted vs. actuals. Data files are stored in BASIC sequential format. MONEY MAESTRO requires 64K, DOS. *Innosys, 2150 Shattuck Ave. # 901, Berkeley, CA 94704, 415/843-8122*

Money Maestro™

The Purse Strings
Easy-to-use money management program features simple, fast data entry, and 52 user-defined budget categories. Balance with each check. Display/print by category, range of check numbers or months. Reconciles bank statement. Requires 64K, 1 dd, 80 col. display. $59.95 + $2 s/h. *Puyallup Valley Software, Inc., P.O. Box 1313, Puyallup, WA 98371, 206/863-4277*

Tax Relief
Want to do tax returns (Yours or others') with ease, speed & accuracy? Want a tax-planning aid? Then get TAX RELIEF. Easy data entry, very fast editing. Prints signature-ready returns. Great for tax planning. Different modules-basic to professional (all schedules, many forms) $39.95 -$129.95. *Micro Vision, 135 Herzel Blvd., Lindenhurst, NY 11757, 516/226-7130*

Games

Cashman
An arcade-style game featuring fast action and sound effects. The object is to make your fortune by manuevering thru a maze of business deals while staying ahead of cut-throat competition. Available: monochrome or color graphics interface or joystick interface. Price $39.95. Requires 64K, 1 dd. *Gross National Products, Inc., 174 Central St., North Reading, MA 01864, 617/664-3815*

GNP

Air Traffic Controller
Air Traffic Controller is a real time, action filled, strategy game for the PC. You are commissioned for the safe & expedient travel of aircraft within your sector. Aircraft are scheduled for arrivals/departures at airports within your sector, other may pass through. Top 10 scores/difficulty factor. Req. 64K, 1 dd. $29.95 *Sparry Research, 16 Parklane Ave., Milford, MA 01757*

Space Miner
Take an incredible mining voyage at new levels of animation excellence and arcade excitement! Maneuver ships to grab ore with controllable robot arm. Blast aliens with twin missile launchers. Top 10 players; stop action; 3 play levels; J.S. Bach; More! Req: 64K, colorcard, PC-DOS, 1dd. keybrd. control. $29.95. *Resolution Software, 8 Edgewood Blvd., Providence, RI, 02905, 401/461-2417*

Resolution

Chomp Arcade Game
Chomp has superb animation, sound, speed playability and excitement. Maneuver the Chomp in a maze to score points, catch monsters or collect bonus prizes. Four different mazes. Runs on all displays. 64K. Money back guarantee. Free catalog. Bank cards and phone orders are welcome. *Ensign Software, 7337 Northview, Boise, ID 83704, 208/378-8086*

Educational Games

SpelBound
Sure to hold your child spell bound! Teaches current spelling/vocabulary homework with 13 fascinating games like hangman, word search, crossword puzzle. Parent edits data sets, codes available games. Manual and 3 disks $79. Requires 2 dd, 80-col. display, printer optional. *Davell Custom Software, P.O. Box 4162, Cleveland, TN 37311, 615/336-3055*

General

5 Exceptional IBM PC Packages
FAMILY TREE, $65, produces multigeneration pedigree charts and family group sheets. F.A.S.B. 13 LEASE CLASSIFICATION, $75. PERSONAL FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT, $55. SORT/MERGE, $45. INDEX, $35. Requires DOS and DISK BASIC, PC Matrix Printer, two diskette drives, 80 column monitor. VISA or MC accepted. *Personal Software Company, P.O. Box 776, Salt Lake City, UT 84110, 801/277-3174*

Graphics

PC Draw
Transform your PC into a fast, flexible drawing tool. Eliminate costly and time consuming flow chart (or any other business document) preparation and revision while gaining unlimited flexibility to create, maintain and print drawings. Comes with 2 symbol menus plus the ability to create your own. List price: $250. *Micrografx, 8526 Vista View Dr., Dallas, TX 75243, 214/343-4338*

Alt-PrtSc
Language-independent graphics screen print program for IBM or EPSON MX-80 printers with GRAFTRAX option. Prints contents of graphics screen by pressing Alt-PrtSc sequence. No modifications to programs necessary. Normal PrtSc operation not affected. $24.95. *The Second Source, Inc., P.O. Box 23567, Washington D.C. 20024, 703/522-8833*

P-Plot
Complete graphics for IBM DOS PASCAL & FORTRAN featuring over 30 easy to use graphics, memory, I/O, screen utilities. Beats IBM Basic 2.0 graphics. Great for science, engineering, business graphics and sound/animation for video games. Introductory offer $39.95(+ 6.5% tax CA buyers only) for diskette and manual. Manual only at $12. Checks or money order.
Livermore Associates, Box 2435, Livermore, CA 94550, 415/449-5438

HALO-The Complete Graphics Tool
HALO, OEMs choice for graphics applications under MS DOS. HALO, the ad hoc MS DOS standard. Versions for BASIC/PASCAL/"C"/MACRO Assembler & FORTRAN. Complete tool box of optimized subroutines for every graphics application. Custom installations & configurations avail. All major graphics boards supported. *Media Cybernetics, Inc., 36 Columbia Ave., Tacoma Park, MD 20912, 301/270-2272*

New VideoGraph Plus
A totally machine-language graphic prints utility. The Prtsc key triggers automatic printing of four-color shaded graphics or monochrome characters set. Create variable sizes as well as rotated and inverted images. Also prints pictures from disk files or your own programs. *Windmill Software, Inc., 2209 Leominster Dr., Burlington, Ontario, Canada L7P 3W8, 416/336-3353*

WINDMILL SOFTWARE INC.

Home Use

Home Finance, Games
Home Finance provides audit trail of expenditures for 1 yr. and up to 48 categories. Provides % of income spent by category. Search/edit by check no. payee or category. Price $34.95. Apparat Games Disk (64K) color or monochrome monitor. Others are Blackjack, Matches & Spiralgraph $24.95. *Apparat, Inc., 4401 S. Tamarac Pkwy., Denver, CO 80237, 303/741-1778*

Apparat, Inc.

Diet and Nutrition Package
Diet Monitor is the most sophisticated nutrition analysis system available on Micros. It analyzes over 750 foods by 29 important nutrients. It gives you six reports including graphs of deficiencies, statistics and diet recommendations. Also allows you to set targets and adjust your individual diet. *Camrass Corporation, P.O. Box 118, Boonton, NJ 07005, 201/328-8917 (24 hours)*

Insurance

The Agency Manager™
Designed by insurance professionals for independent insurance agents, this integrated system performs Complete Customer Acctg., General Ledger, Client Data update & retrieval (# files depends on your storage), over 100 Marketing Reports & Sales Tools, ACORD'S. Easy main menu & HELP feature. Ivans. IBM-XT, CP/M, Turbodos. *Applied Systems, Pauling Rd., Monee, IL 60449, 312/534-5575*

Languages

FORTH-32
The language for the IBM PC. Now you can program using the entire megabyte of memory. FORTH-32 Development System: $150. Package Builder Utility: $50. Floating Point and Math Library: Software $50, 8087 Hardware $50...see our display ad this issue. *Quest Research, Inc., P.O. Box 2553, Huntsville, AL 35804, 800/558-8088, 205/533-9405 (AL)*

Quest™
Quest Research, Inc.

Mailing Programs

Merge 'N Print/Mail Label
Powerize your Easywriter/ Volkswriter letterwriting with MBS Software tools: Merge 'n Print for automatically repeating-customized form letters (keyboard & file insertions, etc)-$100; MBS Label Program w/fast, 6-way sorting-$95; and Data Base for other follow-up/client data-$225. Visa/MC/MO. *MBS Software, 12729 NE Hassalo St., Portland, OR 97230, 503/256-0130*

Mailtrak™
This package does it all! Mail labels up to 4 across; phone directories; instantly locate records by Name, Company, City, State or Zip. Create WordStar or EasyWriter files for form letters. Sort & select on all data. Tracks 2 phone #'s, 5 user-defined profiles plus 4 activities with dates. $65 Visa/MC. *TCI Software, 6107 West Mill Rd., Flourtown, PA 19031, 215/836-1406*

Manufacturing

MRP*BMS*MCS*SFC
Manufacturing systems for the IBM PC:
- Accounting Interface
- Vendor Control System
- Full Manufacturing Reporting
- Multiple PC Support
- Mainframe interface
- Installation Support

MIS Consultants, Inc., 1065 E. Hillsdale Blvd. # 114, Foster City, CA 94404, 415/345-6000

Twin Oaks MRP-II
Quality Manufacturing Software for the IBM PC.
• Bills of Material • Inventory Control • Purchasing • Material Planning • Shop Floor Control • Capacity Planning • Cost Development • Cost Variance • Physical Inventory • Modular Design • Full System Features • Online Realtime • Accounting Interface • Multi User Design • 128K PC DOS Hard Disk. *Twin Oaks, 2650 Colfax Ave. N., Minneapolis, MN 55411, 612/588-2685*

TWIN OAKS

Medical

Threshold
Medical office management software featuring automatic insurance preparation w/teleprocessing to Blue Shield & Medicare, unattended statement processing, total security w/audit trails, statistical information, complete inquiry & management reports & online help. List $5,500. *Physicians Practice Management, Inc., 1810 South Lynhurst Ste.# Q, Indianapolis, IN 46241, 317/248-0357*

Physicians Practice Management

Physician's Office System
POS/1 is a medical billing and accounts receivable system. POS/1 facilities: immediate access to patient status by account number or name, automatic RVS or ICDA codes with manual overrides, receivable aging report, track next visit date, menu driven with online help screens. $950. *Chen Information Systems, Inc., 1499 Bayshore Hwy., # 205, Burlingame, CA 94010, 415/692-4358*

CHEN

Operating Systems

Development System Tools
Operating System Development Tools Universal Development Interface and iRMX86 implementations for PC DOS/ MS-DOS based systems. A complete family of Develop-

ment Tools. See display ad this issue. *RTCS/Real-Time Computer Science Corp., P.O. Box 3000-886, Camarillo, CA 93010, 805/482-0333*

RTCS REAL-TIME COMPUTER SCIENCE CORPORATION

Personal

PerFin
Simplify your money management. Provides 40 user-defined categories, checkbook, budgets and reports. Handles checks, cash and credit transactions. Only $65. NUTRITION/EXERCISE PROGRAM COMING SOON. (Custom software and consulting services. Available for small and large systems.) *Digital Engineering Group, Inc., 11999 Katy Frwy. # 150, Houston, TX 77079, 713/531-6100*

Real Estate

DSS Real Estate Analyzer
Designed for real estate professionals involved in analyzing sales or purchases of properties, syndications, or complex limited partnerships. Provides operating statements, cash flow & tax analysis, IRR, partnership investor analysis, loan and depreciation schedules. *Decision Support Systems, 3234 Prospect Street, N.W., Washington, DC 20007, 202/342-8172*

DSS Decision Support Systems

Sort

Opt-Tech•Sort/Merge
Extremely fast Sort/Merge program for the IBM-PC. Can sort or merge multiple files containing fixed or variable length records. Run as a DOS command or call from BASIC, plus many other features. Compare before you buy any other. Write or call for more info. $75. *Opt-Tech Data Processing, P.O. Box 2167, Humble, TX 77347, 713/454-7428*

DP

Stock Market

Stock Portfolio Reporter
Provides up to the minute information on key parts of investor's stock account. Market price updates by DOW JONES; easy link to Hayes Smartmodem. Sort by P/E, gain/loss, yield or any item in SPR's 8 useful reports. Friendly menu displays & manual. Requires 128K, 2dd. Demo disk avail. $179. VISA/MC welcome. *Micro Investment Systems, Inc., P.O. Box 8599, Atlanta, Georgia 30306, 404/892-3194*

MICRO INVESTMENT SYSTEMS, INC.

Market Trend Analyzer
Graph, tabulate, do moving averages and other computations using major market, technical (3 exch.), psychological and fundamental indicators. Package $300 with 3 months data. Demo/manuals available separately with credit. Historical and update data available. 128K, 1 or 2 drives, mono/color. *Personal Equity Computing, Inc., P.O. Box 2105, Dept PCW, Ocean, NJ 07712, 800/431-6082, NYS 914/331-6663*

PECS™

Wall Street Window
Historical stock prices from the Dow Jones service.
*Retrieve historical quotes
* Automatic portfolio update
* Chart Hi-Lo-close, volume
* Chart Moving averages
* Chart Relative strength
* Chart to Epson printer
* Chart comparison of stocks
* Chart on volume
* Spreadsheet compatible
Package $395, Demo $49. *R & D Software Associates, Box 2727, Reston, VA, 22090, 703/620-2509*

Systems

Multiple Users Under PC-DOS
MultiLink turns PC-DOS into an efficient multi-user multitasking operating system. Additional users are supported by attaching inexpensive CRT terminals or modems to serial ports on the PC, and can run normal applications designed for PC-DOS. Includes host communications software for public dial-in. *Software Link, Inc., 6700 23-B Roswell Rd., Atlanta, GA 30328, 404/255-1254*

Tools

Disassembly Cross-Reference
The ultimate research tool for the assembly language programmer. Captures output from the PC-DOS DEBUG utility; prints a disassembly listing marking each referenced address, then a sorted cross-reference of all hexadecimal byte and word values. $49. *SofTool Systems, 8972 E. Hampden Ave. # 179, Denver, CO 80231, 303/793-0145*

STS

Utilities

Diskette Catalog
DC keeps track of all your files on all your disks. Functions include add, alphabetize, delete, list, and search. Entries are handled by DC, not your typing. Written in machine lang. for speed, DC can hold 3000 files (w/ 96K). For PC Dos (all) 1 drive, 80 col. display, 64 K. $20 plus $1 for MC/VISA. *Creative Programs Unlimited, 16533-37th Avenue NE, Seattle, WA, 98155, 206/367-7949*

CPU

Funkey
Program the function keys to suit your own needs. Funkey makes using word processing, spreadsheet and other applications programs easier and faster. Uses are limited only by the imagination. See display ad. *Bourbaki Inc., 431 Main St., Boise, ID 83702, 208/342-5849*

Alta Link
Alta Link-intelligent communications package allows IBM PC to communicate with other PCs and mainframes across asynchronous telecommunications lines. Menu control using function keys. User control over-baud rate, line control, communications port. 30 user function keys. Many other functions. $97. VISA/MC. *Alta Systems, Inc., P.O. Box 9802 #181, Austin, TX 78766, 512/836-7351*

PrettyPrinter for BASIC
Are your BASIC programs over 100 lines long? Then you need the PrettyPrinter for BASIC. It prints BASIC programs so you can read and un-

derstand them: indented and block structured (like PASCAL), keywords in lowercase, remarks highlighted, cross reference. 64K required. Just $39 or write for details. *Personal Computer Things, Inc., P.O. Box 207 - PCW, Centreville, MD 21617*

The Creator™
An amazing way you can generate word processing, mailing lists, Data Base Management, invoicing programs, and more without any programming knowledge. Now your computer can write its own programs! All in a matter of minutes. Not only that, but a lot more can be produced as well (even program lines.) *Software Technology for Computers, 430 A Main St., Watertown, MA 02172, 617/923-4334*

Peeks 'n Pokes for the IBM PC
BASIC and Pascal programmers - discover the secrets of the PC! Find out how to access and modify configuration, keyboard, disk, printer, communications, and monitor status. Perform DOS and BIOS function calls! Learn how to find more Peeks 'n bels or to a listing. Also allows recovery of files erased inadvertently. Requires PC-DOS 2.0, 1 disk. $30. *ErgoSoft, P.O. Box 454, Oakhurst, NJ 07755, 201/493-8352*

ARCHIVES V Diskette Backup
Reduces diskette back-up costs by 90 percent. The PCs' built-in cassette interface can save six full diskettes on one ninety minute audio cassette. The utilities process only required information reducing transfer time and tape usage. Specify 64K or 96K version when ordering; $39.95. *Indiana Digital Corporation, P.O. Box 3755, South Bend, IN 46619, 219/288-7280*

ARCHIVES V

Alta Systems Packages
Super Zap ($47) accesses file/absolute disk sectors. DIR-lift, sector saving, customization. PC Toolbox ($37) EDIR-formatted info about files. List-file printing, total printer control. File Utility-assign/remove "hidden" status, recovers deleted files. Comes with other utilities. VISA/MC. *Alta Systems, Inc., P.O. Box 9802 #181, Austin, TX 78766, 512/836-7351*

User Groups

Newsletter/Software Exchange
International PC Owners Inc.
This group publishes a newsletter IPCO INFO every other month and runs a software exchange. The software exchange consists of about 160 user developed programs for the PC. Membership in the US is $20/year. Send for free catalog of programs. *International PC Owners, Inc., P.O. Box 10426, Pittsburgh, PA 15234, 412/561-1857*

PC World Directory *is a comprehensive listing, by category, of products and services for the IBM PC, lookalikes, and compatibles. It provides rapid access to the burgeoning PC marketplace for both readers and advertisers.*

FORMAT: The standard format includes a product ID, a 300-character descriptive ad, and company name, address, and telephone number. Use of a company logo is optional.

Advertisers may choose among categories already being used or may create their own. Display advertisers can cross-reference their current ad to the PC World Directory *for increased exposure at low cost.*

RATES: Listings are accepted for 3-time consecutive insertions at a rate of $300 ($100 per issue). Listings must be prepaid (except for established display advertisers) upon submission of ad copy and logo art. Checks, money orders, VISA, and MasterCard are acceptable.

DEADLINE: For space reservation and artwork deadlines, contact a PC World Directory *sales representative at 415/861-3861. Please send copy, optional artwork, and prepayment to:* PC World Directory, *555 De Haro Street, San Francisco, CA 94107.*

See you next issue!

Just Announced

The Wide World of PC Products

Edited by Adrian Mello

In the fast-paced personal computer marketplace *Just Announced* acts as an alert service to keep you abreast of the latest developments in IBM PC and compatible technology. Information for this department is provided by manufacturers; these write-ups are not reviews. Many of these descriptions will be followed up by reviews in this or future issues.

Hardware

Boards

RAMPLUS

A multifunction board that allows memory expansion with 64K chips and will permit use with 256K chips when they become available. The board requires a system with 64K already in place. Maximum memory expansion using 64K chips is 256K. A memory-mapping feature allows a maximum memory of 1 megabyte with 256K chips. In addition to memory expansion, the board includes serial port, parallel port, and clock/calendar with battery backup. List price: $575. Raytronics, 4901 Morena Blvd., Bldg. #900, San Diego, CA 92117, 800/854-1085, 619/270-4000.

AddRAM Plus

A multifunction board that provides up to 512K of memory expansion, two serial ports, and a clock/calendar. A system must have 64K in place before the board is installed. The board includes software that performs disk emulation and print spooling for a parallel or serial printer. Tascmaster software provides an extension to the MS-DOS operating system and creates a multitasking environment for up to 9 background tasks. Tascmaster can be used with the disk emulator and print spooler and is compatible with software running under PC-DOS. List price: 64K $595, additional 64K increments $125 each. Profit Systems, Inc., P.O. Box 1039, Berkley, MI 48072, 313/559-0444.

Quadlink

A board that emulates a 64K Apple computer and allows a PC to use Apple software. The only system requirement is a single expansion slot. Apple's DOS 3.3 software is translated by the board into language the IBM PC can understand, so that most programs designed for the Apple II, Apple II Plus, or Apple IIe are compatible with the PC.

No conversion or reformatting of disks is required to run Apple software. The user can change between the Apple and IBM modes with a single command. Without any modification, Apple programs will appear on the IBM's monochrome or color monitor and can use Apple high-resolution color graphics. All peripherals that can normally be used with the PC will operate with the Apple software.

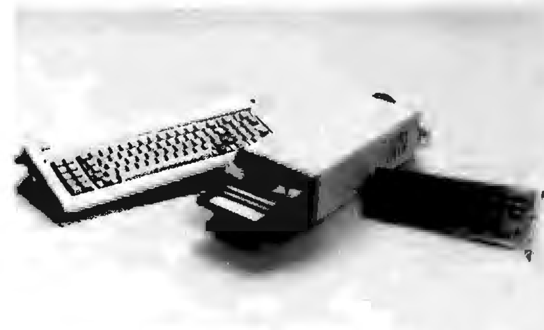
Quadlink comes with 64K, a parallel port, serial port, and a game port that is both Apple and IBM compatible. It will be available in late June. List price: $680. Quadram Corporation, 4357 Park Dr., Norcross, GA 30093, 404/923-6666, TWX: 810-766-4915.

Storage Devices

V1200

An unusual storage device that uses a removable cartridge to hold up to five 5¼-inch floppy disks for a total of 6 megabytes of formatted storage. It requires 64K and uses single-sided, 170 tpi (tracks per inch) floppy disks. The device is aimed at users who are familiar with floppy disks and offers the media transportability associated with floppies. Files cannot run over the 1.25-megabyte capacity of a single floppy in the cartridge.

The controller board included with the V1200 uses an expansion slot in the system unit. The V1200 uses five of the eight logical drives that can be attached to the controller. Up to four regular floppy disk drives can be attached, either four 5¼-inch drives or three 8-inch drives and one 5¼-inch drive. A disk emulator included also uses one of the controller's eight drive options. Switches on the controller allow it to read and write automatically to the preset disk configuration. The V1200 also includes software, a cable, and one cartridge with five floppy disks. List price: $1549. Vista Computer Company, Inc., 1317 E. Edinger, Santa Ana, CA 92705, 714/953-0523, Telex: 910-595-1565.



V1200 multiple floppy disk drive and Diskmaster disk controller card, Vista Computer Company

Miscellaneous

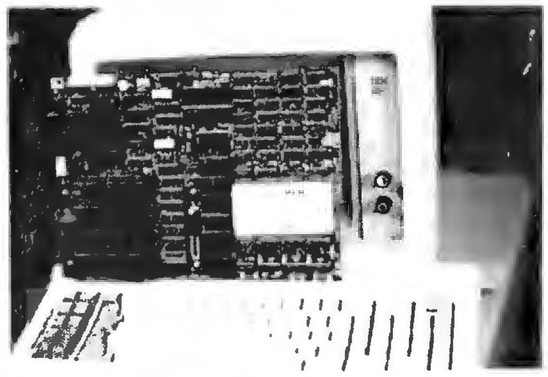
DAS Series 500
A measurement and control system that allows the PC to interpret real-world analog signals and control remote instruments. The system requires 192K and one disk drive. The basic 500 unit holds the power supply and base board with 12 expansion slots that enable the unit to perform a variety of functions. A set of six expansion boards called Analog Input Modules (AIM) permits direct connection of analog devices

DAS Series 500 measurement and control system, Data Acquisition System

such as thermocouples, photodetectors, and strain gauges. The offset and gain of each signal channel are programmable and range is switch selectable.

An interface card that uses an expansion slot in the PC system unit and software are also included with the basic 500 system. The software is an extension of the BASIC operating environment that includes a library of machine language subroutines. The software enables application development that can be drawn upon with BASIC and take advantage of the speed of machine language operations, essential for real-time measurement and control procedures. Statistical and graphics functions, and conversion to engineering units are additional features of the software. List price: System 500, $2045. Three preconfigured systems are available: 510 measurement system $2900; 520 measurement and control system $4100; 530 high-accuracy measurement system $4400. Individual modules for specific configurations may be purchased separately. Data Acquisition Systems, Inc., 349 Congress St., Boston, MA 02210, 617/423-7691.

PC System Memory Enhancement
Memory expansion that is achieved without using any PC expansion slots. Add-MEM makes the necessary modifications to the PC motherboard, removes the resident 16K chips, and replaces them with 64K chips. The user must carry in the system unit to an Add-MEM service location or remove the motherboard and mail it to Add-MEM. Users may have systems configured with 128K, 192K, or 256K, after which 64K upgrade kits are available to augment memory to a maximum of 256K on the motherboard. List price: 128K $192, 192K $256, 256K $320, 64K upgrade kits $80 each. Add-MEM, 22151 Redwood Rd., Castro Valley, CA 94546, 415/886-5443.



PC System Memory Enhancement, AddMEM

Systems Software

Utilities

UltraFAST
Three utilities—a disk emulator, a parity error handler, and a dynamic memory allocation program—that use 8K of memory and require one disk drive. *UltraFAST* emulates up to four double-sided, 40-track drives. Any combination of mechanical and emulated drives can be used and allocated to drive locations A through D. This configuration can be performed from the keyboard. The program also allows the user to execute a warm boot from the keyboard. List price: $39.95. Daystar Systems, Inc., 10511 Church Rd., Ste. L, Dallas, TX 75238, 214/341-8136.

D2BAKRST
A program that allows the user to back up hard disk files on floppy disks. The program requires 64K and one disk drive. The user can back up hard disk files longer than the storage space available on the floppy disk by initially giving the drive's maximum storage limit. Once the backup operation begins and the storage limit is reached, the user is notified. The user

must then remove the full floppy disk and replace it with another so that the rest of the file can be copied. Files that have been backed up to floppy disks can also be restored to the hard disk. List price: $35. D2 Enterprises, P.O. Box 871, Shalimar, FL 32579, 904/651-3108.

D2FORM
A utility that allows the user to design forms on screen. The program requires 64K and one disk drive. The length and mapped location of each field on screen is stored automatically in a file, and the file can be recalled without using data statements. The coordinates and size of each field are provided on the printed copy of the form. List price: $45. D2 Enterprises, P.O. Box 871, Shalimar, FL 32579, 904/651-3108.

SimpliFile
A program that organizes file menus and simplifies file selection. Requirements for the program are 32K and one disk drive. *SimpliFile* displays a chart that lists files, one to a line, by name, size, and date of last change, and by the user's description. The user may scroll forward and backward if the file list extends beyond a single screen.

Simplified commands can be executed by pointing the cursor arrow to the desired file and then pressing a single character for each of the following operations: backup, copy, erase, rename, list, and view the file contents in text or hexadecimal. A number of files can be executed at once by marking them with an *M* and issuing a single command for backup, erase, or list. The user can sort files by name, type, or size. List price: $100. Durant Software, 2532 Durant Ave., #250, Berkeley, CA 94704, 415/540-0912.

Peeks 'n Pokes
A package of programs and functions for BASIC and Pascal programmers that requires 48K, one disk drive, and an 80-column monitor. Assembler subroutines that perform the same functions as the BASIC commands PEEK, POKE, INP, and OUT are included for the Pascal programmer. With *Peeks 'n Pokes* the user can access system configuration, unprotect interpretive BASIC programs, and read and change the keyboard status. The program features techniques that allow the user to pass data from one program to another using safe locations in RAM and perform DOS/BIOS functions including print screen, boot system, get/change default drive, change video mode, and read/write the screen. The user can change printers, monitors, and communications adapters without altering hardware. List price: $30 (plus $2.50 for shipping). Data Base Decisions, 14 Bonnie Ln., Atlanta, GA 30328, 404/256-3860.

Norton Utilities 2.00
A new version of a set of utility programs that supplement and match the new features of DOS 2.00. A system is required with 64K and one disk drive. The utilities have been upgraded to work with the new disk formats and directories of DOS 2.00. Hard-disk versions of the key utilities have been added to support IBM's new 10-megabyte hard disk. Three utilities have been added: LABEL, BLOAD, and SSAR. LABEL allows users to add, change, and remove volume ID labels. BLOAD converts programs to the BASIC BLOAD format. SSAR (special search and repair) is a new file recovery program that has been added to the three preexisting file recovery routines. List price: $80; to owners of previous versions $20. The Norton Utilities, 2210 Wilshire Blvd., Santa Monica, CA 90403, 213/399-3948.

Applications Software

Finance

OptionCalc
A financial forecasting tool that calculates the value, expiration date, and hedge ratio of put and call options. It requires 64K, one disk drive, and a color/graphics adapter. The Black and Scholes model is used to determine the call value, and the arbitrage method is used to evaluate the put value. The screen is divided into input and calculated results. "What if" calculations are possible. One-page hard copy reports are produced with the PrtSc key. *OptionCalc* has a relatively free style of input. Dates can be entered in a number of ways. Words that aren't misspelled too poorly can be interpreted by the program. List price: $65. Savant Software, P.O. Box 42888, Houston, TX 77042, 800/231-9900, 713/556-8363.

Accounting

EZ Entry
An order entry and invoicing program designed for small-business and personal use. It requires 64K and two disk drives. The user can maintain a file of 200 product codes and

prices and 500 orders per single-sided disk. Invoices can be sorted by number, account, state, or date. A utility for interfacing with accounting software is available. Invoices and reports can be customized with a letterhead if printed on IBM's dot matrix printer. List price: $99.95. Systemics, 3050 Spring St., West Bloomfield, MI 48033, 313/851-2504.

Spreadsheets

StretchCalc

A program that extends the abilities of *VisiCalc* to provide graphics and sorting and rearrangement of spreadsheet columns and rows. A system with 128K, one disk drive, and the IBM Color/Graphics Adapter is required. The program allows users to produce eight types of charts and graphs: bar, stacked bar, pie, and high/low/close charts; and line, scatter, dot, and area graphs. Any portion of a spreadsheet can be represented with a graph without leaving *VisiCalc*.

The program provides two additional commands to reorder data on the spreadsheet. A Sort command rearranges the spreadsheet based on the numeric values in any column or set of columns. A Rearrange command repositions the spreadsheet columns by giving the command and listing the desired order of the columns. These two commands can be used for either a permanent change to the spreadsheet or for temporary viewing.

Another feature of the program allows the user to store command sequences and invoke them with a single character command. The last 75 keystrokes are constantly retained by *StretchCalc* to allow the user to store the sequence and reuse or edit it. A *Mini-StretchCalc* product without graphics is also available. List price: *StretchCalc* $99, *Mini-StretchCalc* $49. Multisoft Corporation, 18220 S.W. Monte Verdi, Beaverton, OR 97007, 503/649-9458.

Data Management

Info-Gen, Info-Reporter, Info-Sort

A series of integrated data management programs that require 64K and two disk drives. With *Info-Gen* the user can create a customized data base. The program helps the user define files and determine calculations and report formats. *Info-Gen* provides entry and update screen formats, but the user has the option of creating a customized version.

Info-Reporter interfaces with *Info-Gen*'s data files to produce hard copy reports. Using the printer spacing chart displayed on the screen and the sequence definition function the user designs customized report formats. *Info-Reporter*'s features include multiple headings, footings, calculations, and subtotals. *Info-Sort* reads and sorts 1000 records in less than 10 seconds. List price: *Info-Gen* $245, *Info-Reporter* $125, *Info-Sort* $95. LM Systems, Inc., 1340 E. Katella Ave., Anaheim, CA 92805, 714/937-1641.

PFS:File, PFS:Report, PFS:Graph

An integrated data management series that requires 64K and two disk drives. *PFS:File* files, retrieves, and summarizes data. Data forms are user designed. Samples forms are provided. Forms can be up to 32 pages long with up to 100 items per page. Files can be sorted and merged.

PFS:Report accesses the information in *PFS:File* to produce presentation-quality reports. The report formats are user designed with up to 16 columns per report. Totals, subtotals, averages, subaverages, counts, and subcounts can be included in every column. *PFS:Report*'s features include sorting, page numbering, and title printing and centering. Eight report formats can be saved to disk.

PFS:Graph produces bar, line, or pie charts from data in *PFS:File* or *VisiCalc* DIF files. It interfaces with a wide variety of printers and plotters including Epson printers, the IBM Graphics Printer, and the HP7470A plotter. List price: *PFS:File* $140, *PFS:Report* $125, *PFS:Graph* $140. Software Publishing Corporation, 1901 Landings Dr., Mountain View, CA 94043, 415/962-8910.

Word Processing/ Text Editing

MemoPlan

A word processing package designed for the composition of memos, letters, and reports by the inexperienced word processor. It requires 64K and two disk drives. *MemoPlan* features a split screen that allows the user to work on two documents simultaneously, transferring material from one document to another. Five files may be open at the same time. The user can flip from one to another with one keystroke. *MemoPlan* features right justification, text reformatting, word wrapping, centering, scrolling, and proportional spacing. Blocks of text or lines can be moved, copied, or deleted. Deleted text is saved and can be "undeleted."

MemoPlan automatically saves documents during power outages with backup files. List price: $195. Chang Labs, 5300 Stevens Creek Blvd. #200, San Jose, CA 95129, 408/246-8020, Telex: 334431.

Graphics

MicroCAD

A three-dimensional graphics modeling system that allows the user to plot up to 4000 points. It requires 64K and two disk drives. With *MicroCAD*, the user can design objects by moving the cursor on the screen. The objects can be rotated, appended, moved, viewed in perspective, and edited. The user may also display spreadsheet data from *MicroCAD*'s electronic spreadsheet or *VisiCalc* files as high-resolution graphs. Points and lines are entered directly on the screen. Images are edited either by changing *x,y,z* coordinates or by changing bearings and line lengths. Circles and other geometric shapes can be drawn, and objects can be stored and recalled. Text can be mixed with images on screen, allowing the user to label objects. List price: $500. Computer Aided Design, 764 24th Ave., San Francisco, CA 94121, 415/387-0263.

DIFmaster

An integrated series of utility programs designed for graphic display of spreadsheet data stored in DIF files. The programs require 64K, one disk drive, and a color/graphics adapter. Though a color/graphics monitor is required, the user has the option of switching to a monochrome monitor.

CHARTDIF displays spreadsheet data in bar chart form. PLOTDIF provides a three-dimensional display of spreadsheet data that allows the user to visually observe and compare values and trends.

GRAPHDIF reads and displays spreadsheet data in scaled, three-dimensional line graphs. GRAPHDIF gives the user the option of high- or low-resolution plotting. The user can either select automatic sizing or determine the column size, the row size, and the scale for the height of the vertical values. The graph may be redrawn on a different scale.

SCATRDIF constructs a scatter diagram of a two-column spreadsheet with two values in each row. It performs linear regression calculations, plots *x* and *y* intercepts, draws the appropriate regression line overlaid on the points, and calculates the correlation coefficient of the two values. The correlation coefficient allows the user to determine whether the values in the first column have a direct relation to the values in the second.

DIFmaster also includes the Graphics Drawing System, a set of mechanized routines that allow the user to create diagrams, charts, and graphs. All the charts, graphs, and diagrams produced with DIFmaster can be saved to disk or printed out. List price: $79.95. Starside Engineering, P.O. Box 18306, Rochester, NY 14618, 716/461-1027.

Graphics Utility

A graphics package that can be used as a stand-alone graphics generator or to create character sets and shapes for a BASIC program. It requires 64K, one disk drive, and a color/graphics adapter. Character sets may be designed with different sizes and fonts. Shape size may vary, with the maximum size 39 by 39 pixels. Shapes may be combined and saved as one large picture. Three subroutines demonstrate how to incorporate the shapes into a program. The subroutines include animation, accessing a string binary array, and separating characters out of the binary array. List price: $85. Savant Software, P.O. Box 42888, Houston, TX 77042, 800/231-9900, 713/556-8363.

Games

Suspended

An adventure game that challenges players to save as many people as possible by repairing a damaged planet. The game requires 48K and one disk drive. The players remain in a state of suspension while they direct the actions of six robots, their only source of communication with the outside environment. Players use a 600-word vocabulary to communicate in complete sentences with the game's program. *Suspended* has advanced levels of play. List price: $49.95. Infocom, Inc., 55 Wheeler St., Cambridge, MA 02138, 617/492-1031.

Tachyon

A fast-moving, arcade-style video game with color graphics, multiple screens, and sound effects. It requires 64K, one double-sided disk drive, and a color/graphics adapter. Players travel through the galaxy aboard *The Avenger*, a star cruiser equipped with scanners, energy shields, lasers, and computer-driven torpedoes. The object is to destroy the attacking enemy before *The Avenger* runs out of energy. The cruiser can restore its resources at refueling stations. List price: $39.95. Mirror Images Software, Inc., 1223 People's Ave., Troy, NY 12180, 518/274-2335.

Spyder, Hide and Sink, and Tachyon games, Mirror Images Software

Spyder

A fast-action, arcade-style video game with color graphics and coordinated sound effects. The game requires 64K, one disk drive, and a color/graphics adapter. Players defend themselves from the web-spinning spiders that descend from the roof of the cave or crawl across the floor. Once a player is caught in a web, a new round begins. List price: $39.95. Mirror Images Software, Inc., 1223 Peoples Ave., Troy, NY 12180, 518/274-2335.

Hide and Sink

A strategy game with color graphics that requires 64K, one disk drive, and a color graphics adapter. The player's naval fleet, hidden on a 10 by 10 sea grid, is pitted against the computer's fleet of equal strength. Hits and misses are displayed along with the status of both fleets. The game includes a nighttime option. List price: $29.95. Mirror Images Software, Inc., 1223 Peoples Ave., Troy, NY 12180, 518/274-2335.

Accessories

P.C. Stand

A stand for the IBM PC system unit that provides storage space for the keyboard when the computer is not in use. When the computer is being used, the stand makes it possible for the keyboard cord to run under the system unit, eliminating the need for extension cables. The stand raises the monitor for viewing comfort. List price: $34.95 (plus $2 shipping and handling). Personal Computer Accessories, 4456 Partridge Ct., San Jose, CA 95121, 408/578-7798.

PC Stand, Personal Computer Accessories

IBM PC BASIC Reference Guide

A four-panel, 6-by-12-inch reference card that lists and defines BASIC statements, system controls, input/output processing statements, memory statements, error messages, video and graphic controls, basic functions, and arithmetic operation symbols. List price $2.95. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 605 Third Ave., New York, NY 10158, 212/850-6000.

Just Announced *uses information provided by manufacturers. It does not evaluate products or corroborate manufacturers' claims. Send a description and a photograph of your new product to* Just Announced, PC World, *555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107.*

Products

Would you like further information on a product that's advertised in *PC World*?

PC WORLD

Reader Inquiry Service

Well, it's easy and best of all—FREE!

Just follow these simple instructions:

- Print or type your name and address on the attached card. One card per person, please.
- Circle the number(s) on the card corresponding to the Reader Service number in either the Advertiser Index or Product Index.
- Drop the card in a mailbox and wait to receive the literature that will be mailed to you free of charge from the manufacturer.

The address on the attached card is for product information only. Send editorial comments or inquiries to: *PC World*, 555 De Haro St., San Francisco, CA 94107.

PC WORLD

Name________________________________

Company________________________________

Address________________________________

City/State/Zip________________________________

(Zip code needed to insure delivery.)

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50
51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75
76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100
101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124	125
126	127	128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139	140	141	142	143	144	145	146	147	148	149	150
151	152	153	154	155	156	157	158	159	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175
176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200
201	202	203	204	205	206	207	208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	223	224	225
226	227	228	229	230	231	232	233	234	235	236	237	238	239	240	241	242	243	244	245	246	247	248	249	250
251	252	253	254	255	256	257	258	259	260	261	262	263	264	265	266	267	268	269	270	271	272	273	274	275

Card valid through 8-29-83 1/4

PC WORLD

Name________________________________

Company________________________________

Address________________________________

City/State/Zip________________________________

(Zip code needed to insure delivery.)

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50
51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75
76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100
101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124	125
126	127	128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139	140	141	142	143	144	145	146	147	148	149	150
151	152	153	154	155	156	157	158	159	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175
176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200
201	202	203	204	205	206	207	208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	223	224	225
226	227	228	229	230	231	232	233	234	235	236	237	238	239	240	241	242	243	244	245	246	247	248	249	250
251	252	253	254	255	256	257	258	259	260	261	262	263	264	265	266	267	268	269	270	271	272	273	274	275

Card valid through 8-29-83 1/4

PC WORLD

Reader Inquiry Service

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY CARD

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 27346 PHILADELPHIA, PA.

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

PC WORLD
P.O. Box 13897
Philadelphia, PA 19101

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY CARD

FIRST CLASS PERMIT NO. 27346 PHILADELPHIA, PA.

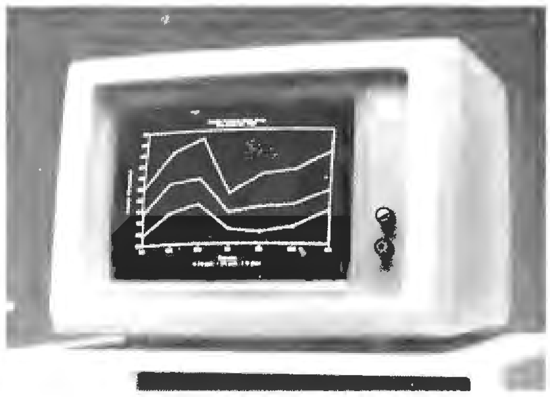
POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

PC WORLD
P.O. Box 13897
Philadelphia, PA 19101

Reader Service No.

New Inmac Catalog jam-packed with computer/wp supplies.
Yours free!
Accurately called "the bible of the industry," it's loaded with great products and ideas for your personal computer, minicomputer or word-processing system. You'll enjoy:
■ One-stop shopping. Over 2,000 products to choose from.
■ Easy ordering. Mail, phone, or TWX. Verbal P.O.'s welcome.
■ Fast delivery. 24-hour shipment. Overnight emergency shipments available.
■ 45-day trial. Full refund if not completely satisfied.
■ Guaranteed quality. All products field-tested to highest standards.
■ Lower shipping costs. 7 fully stocked distribution centers serving the U.S.
Send today for your free 100-page Inmac catalog. Or phone (408) 727-1970.
inmac
Catalog Dept., 2465 Augustine Drive, Santa Clara, CA 95051
Please be sure to include your phone number.
NAME
PHONE
COMPANY
ADDRESS
CITY
STATE
ZIP

Advertisers



Getting 1·2·3™ to do graphics on an IBM® Monochrome takes a lot...

Exactly one Hercules Graphics Card.™

What a lot of people have learned the hard way is that you can't run 1-2-3's graphics on the IBM PC monochrome display. That is, until now.

Now, with the Hercules Graphics Card, you *can* run 1-2-3's graphics on the monochrome display. (Of course, 1-2-3's spreadsheet and information management functions work too.)

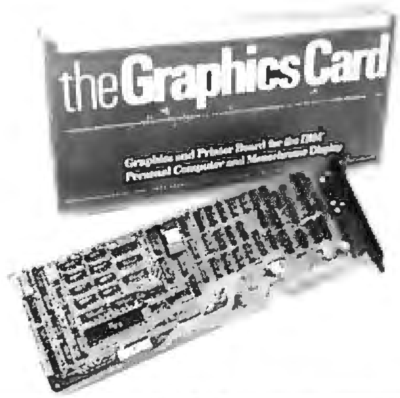
But naturally the Hercules Graphics Card does a lot more than just make a great program like 1-2-3 better. It gives you high resolution bit mapped graphics on the monochrome display—something the IBM monochrome card simply can't do.

The Hercules Graphics Card replaces IBM's monochrome card giving you text compatibility *or* two pages of graphics, each with a resolution of 720h × 348v. You'll get the monochrome's high quality character set, software compatibility with programs like VisiCalc,® WordStar® and dBase II,™ and a printer interface for any parallel port printer.

Included with each Hercules Graphics Card is software that enables you to use the PC's BASIC graphics commands. Or you can program in other languages and use Graph X,™ our set of assembly language graphics subroutines. (Graph X is available now for only $50 and includes a graphics screen dump.)

The Hercules Graphics Card. Only **$499.** A small price to pay for graphics on the monochrome display. Call or write for the name of the dealer nearest you.

Hercules Computer Technology
3200 Adeline Street
Berkeley, CA 94703
(415) 654-2476.



HERCULES

Graphics software requiring the IBM Color Graphics Adapter is not compatible with the Hercules Graphics Card. Hercules compatible software from other vendors includes programs for business graphics, CAD, and word processing with scientific characters. Call or write for more information.

(About Our Gatefold)

The image inside the facing gatefold cover was created by Jim Ludtke, magazine illustrator and cofounder of Brain Boy Studios of San Francisco, California, using an IBM Personal Computer with the Plantronics COLORPLUS card and software.

Jim said he had "literally never touched a computer before." Because of the linear, mechanical quality of his airbrush work, however, he found the transition to electronically generated graphics relatively easy.

Although learning to use the computer did have some pitfalls, as when he lost his first image through neglecting to save it to disk, on the whole Jim found working with the IBM PC and COLORPLUS "fascinating."

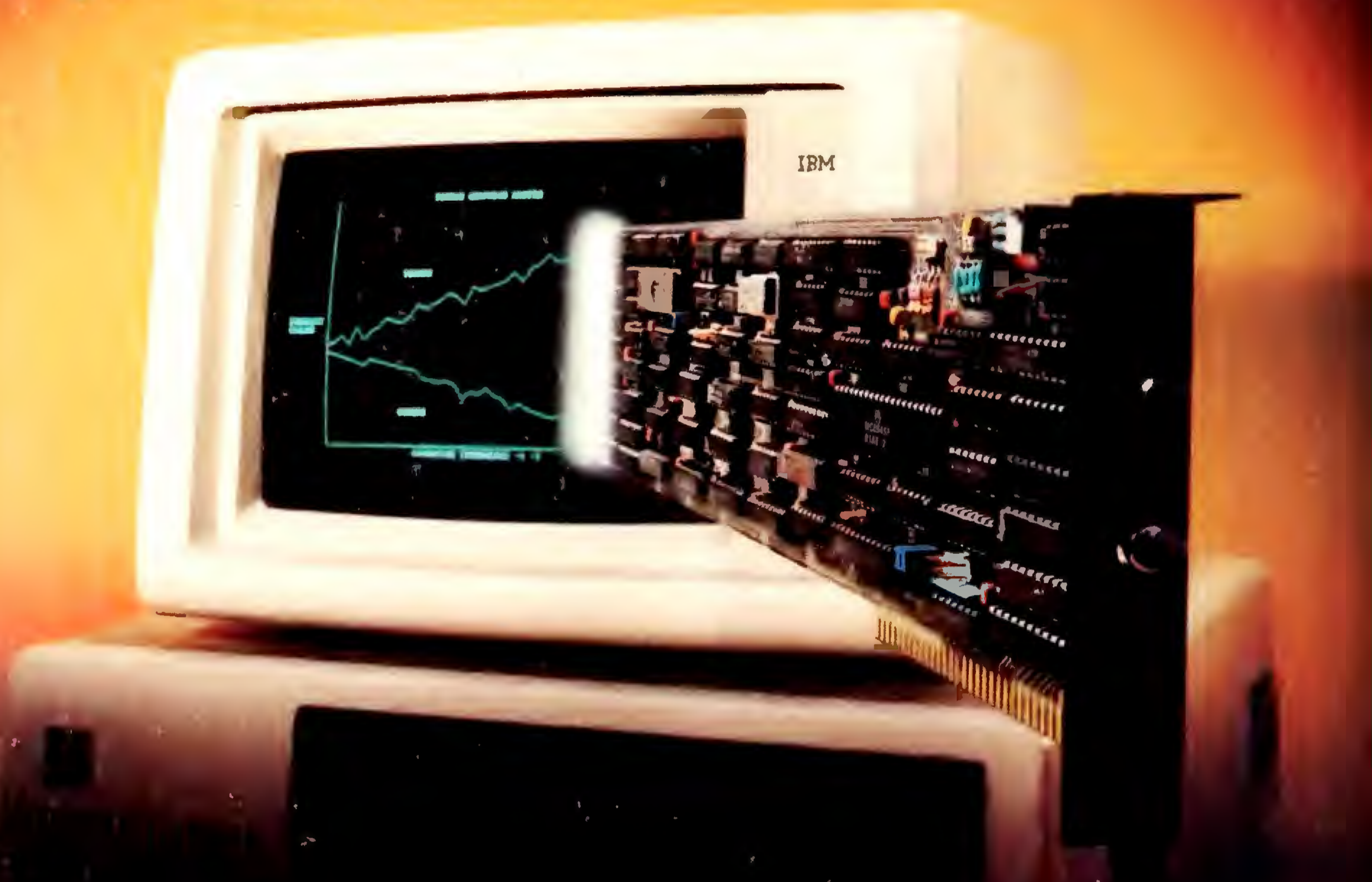
"The big reward of using the computer is the fact that you can work up your ideas on the screen and then alter an almost finished piece of art, which you cannot do with paints."

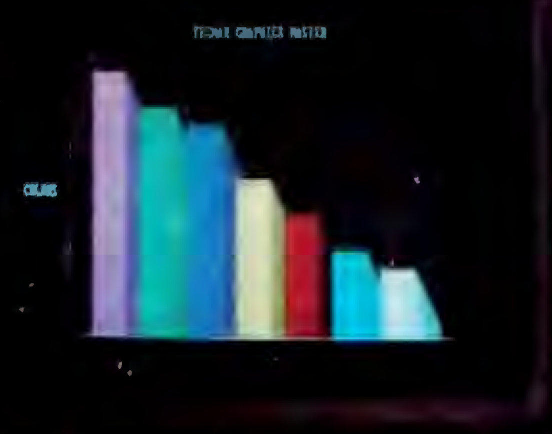
The Plantronics gatefold is a regular feature of *PC World*. Each month we ask a different artist, architect, or designer to experiment with this system and create an image.

At the end of the year a *PC World* blue-ribbon panel will evaluate the series and award a cash prize and a plaque to the artist who makes the most dazzling use of COLORPLUS. If you would like to be considered for the contest, please contact our editorial department.

TECMAR'S GRAPHICS MASTER.™

It adds graphics to your IBM Monochrome Display, or 16 high-resolution colors to your color monitor!





Now your IBM-PC can run monochrome or color displays with remarkably enhanced graphics... and all from this one multi-function board — no other video board needed!

With your IBM Monochrome Display, the Graphics Master™ board gives you truly high resolution graphics, allowing 640 horizontal x 350 vertical pixel display.

With other monochrome display screens you can obtain even higher resolutions — up to 640 H x 480 V, with full-page 80-character x 60-line text display.

With a color monitor, it extends your color graphics to 640 horizontal x 400 vertical 16-color interlaced display.

Graphics Master™ accepts external sync, so you can add labeling to images. You can overlay characters or other computer-generated images on a video picture using the PC-Mate™ Video Cassette Recorder Controller.

This remarkable new board fully supports all IBM advanced BASIC color graphics functions.

For further information about our Graphics Master™ and the largest line of options available anywhere for the IBM Personal Computer, call or write for the latest catalog of PC-Mate™ peripherals from Tecmar.

TECMAR
The Next Step

Personal Computer Products Division
23600 Mercantile Road
Cleveland, Ohio 44122
Phone 216-464-7410/Telex 241735